

**A Thesis Submitted for the Degree of PhD at the University of Warwick**

**Permanent WRAP URL:**

<http://wrap.warwick.ac.uk/88160>

**Copyright and reuse:**

This thesis is made available online and is protected by original copyright.

Please scroll down to view the document itself.

Please refer to the repository record for this item for information to help you to cite it.

Our policy information is available from the repository home page.

For more information, please contact the WRAP Team at: [wrap@warwick.ac.uk](mailto:wrap@warwick.ac.uk)

# **Master John Hall's Little Book of Cures: a Critical Edition**

**by**

**Laurence Gregory Wells  
FFPHM, M.A.**

A thesis submitted in fulfilment of the requirements for the  
degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy in the History of Medicine

University of Warwick, Department of History

December 2016

## CONTENTS

	Page
Contents	2
Lists of Figures, Tables and Charts	4
Acknowledgements	5
Declaration	6
Summary	7
 Introduction	 8
 Background to the Critical Edition	 24
John Hall's Manuscript	24
Editorial Principles	35
Editorial Practice	36
Themes in Hall's Manuscript	45
The Appendices	55
 The Critical Edition	 58
 Chapter 1: Recreating John Hall's Working Library	 517
Early Modern Medical Libraries	518
Recreating the Working Library	521
The Frequency of Hall's Use of Sources	531
Genres and Categories of Latin Medical Texts	533
Early Modern Bibliographies and Hall's books	538
Comparisons with Other Medical Libraries	544
When did John Hall Acquire his Books?	548
How did Hall Acquire his Books?	553
Changes in Hall's Use of Books over Time	555
Conclusions	557
 Chapter 2: John Hall's Manuscript in the Context of Casebooks	 560
John Hall as seen by Medical Practitioners	560
Casebooks and John Hall in the History of Medicine	563

Describing and Defining Casebooks	568
John Hall's Manuscript Considered as a Casebook	573
Conclusion	599
Appendices	610
A The Methodology for Identifying John Hall's Borrowings	610
B New Patient Identifications	613
C John Hall's Pharmacopoeia	618
D A Medical and Pharmaceutical Glossary	625
Bibliography	638



## **LIST OF FIGURES**

1. Page 1 of Hall's manuscript	25
2. Page 67 of Hall's manuscript	27

## **LIST OF TABLES**

1. Sources named in <i>Select Observations</i> and Hall's manuscript	521
2. Authors and texts identified from anonymous borrowings in Hall's manuscript	525
3. Authors most commonly used as sources	529
4. Authors most commonly used as sources for remedies	530
5. Hall's books listed under Draud's general headings	539
6. Hall's books listed under Draud's single topic headings	539
7. Authors in Hall's library and in other library lists	554
8. Most frequently used texts, with numbers of consultations they appear in, and dates of earliest and latest known use	554

## **LIST OF CHARTS**

1. Consultations dated by Hall in manuscript order, with median year of consultation	581
2. Consultations dated by Hall, Lane and Wells in manuscript order, with median year of consultation	582
3. Consultations dated by Hall, Lane and Wells in manuscript order, with median years of consultations by half-centuries	583
4. Consultations for scurvy and uterine complaints in manuscript order, with half-century divisions	585

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

Many people have helped me at various stages of writing this thesis.

I gratefully acknowledge in particular the help I received from my supervisors, Claudia Stein and David Lines. Their constant patience and guidance as I struggled with new and challenging ideas was exemplary, as were their sympathetic responses to my changing circumstances at different times and stages.

At the University of Warwick I was also greatly helped by advice from Vivian Nutton on the medical literature of the early modern period. Paul Botley helped me with technical problems of producing a critical edition, and also with the occasional Greek word in John Hall's sources. As my examiners, Vivian Nutton and Guido Giglioni provided me with some useful insights.

The library and archive staff of the Shakespeare Birthplace Institute were all unfailingly helpful as I asked for increasing numbers of records and items. Other colleagues in Stratford upon Avon who provided help and encouragement were Susan Brock, Robert Bearman, Paul Edmondson, and Sir Stanley Wells, all of whom are owed my thanks.

Two of my predecessors in the study of John Hall deserve mention, though I cannot thank them as I wish. A chance meeting with Joan Lane shortly before her death inspired me, years later, to undertake this research. I have updated some of her information and identification of Hall's patients, but my debt to her work is visible the thesis. At a greater remove, I owe a debt to James Cooke (? – 1693) for his original translation of Hall's manuscript. Though I have criticised and corrected his editions at several points, the

process of working on this critical edition has given me an insight into the problems he must have faced some 350 years ago. I have turned to his version more than once when faced with a difficult point of translation.

Finally and most importantly, I thank my wife Mary, whose involvement with John Hall has been second only to my own. She has stoically accepted the intrusion of John Hall into our marriage, and my lengthy visits to the seventeenth century. Beyond this, her constant encouragement and help with many drafts and redrafts has helped me more than I can say.

All those mentioned here helped me in different ways. Any remaining errors and imperfections are entirely my own responsibility.

## **DECLARATION**

This thesis is submitted to the University of Warwick in support of my application for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy. It has been composed by myself and has not been previously submitted in any previous application for any degree.

Some material arising from work on the thesis has appeared in print before the thesis was completed or examined: Greg Wells, 'His son-in-law John Hall', in Paul Edmondson and Stanley Wells (eds), *The Shakespeare Circle: an Alternative Biography* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2015) pp 86-100.

## **SUMMARY**

This thesis presents a critical edition of John Hall's casebook (composed around 1634-1635) and commentaries on aspects of it.

My research involved close reading of Hall's Latin, and its translation into English. In the process it became apparent that Hall had made considerable use of unattributed borrowings from Latin medical books, making up between thirty and forty per cent of his text. These were mostly identified by detailed word searches of on-line databases. This is a use of medical texts not previously noted, and makes a clear connexion between Latin medical texts and routine medical practice.

The thesis is presented in four sections, plus introduction and conclusion. The first section, the Background, gives the history of Hall's manuscript from its composition in 1634-35 to its acquisition by the British Library. It sets out the reasons for producing a new translation, the editorial principles and practice followed, and some medical themes running through Hall's case reports.

Section two contains the critical edition itself, with parallel Latin and English texts. Footnotes to the Latin text give the sources of all of Hall's borrowings from and references to medical and other texts.

The third section (Chapter 1) analyses the process and results of identifying Hall's working library, of forty-three authors and sixty titles, from his borrowings. It puts his library in the early modern medical context in terms of its contents and categories of composition. I show that there were changes in the books Hall acquired over time, from those suitable for a student through to his later interests in chymical practice and the diagnosis of scurvy. Despite these changes, he continued to rely on old familiar texts for most of his remedies throughout his life.

The fourth section (Chapter 2) examines Hall's manuscript in the context of casebooks generally. It differs from the majority of casebooks, the differences being explained by its composition as the draft for a book to be published. It shows that a casebook can have an internal structure related to the chronologies of its composition and the cases it draws on.

This thesis demonstrates the importance of Latin sources in at least one medical casebook of the early seventeenth century. I show that borrowings such as Hall's were not unique even if rarer in other texts. The possibility of a Latin textual source should be considered for any Latin text in a casebook of that period.

# JOHN HALL'S *LITTLE BOOK OF CURES*: A CRITICAL EDITION

## INTRODUCTION

This thesis reconstructs the medical practice and writing of a single physician, concentrating on a single document as a source. The physician is John Hall (1575-1635), best known as the son-in-law of William Shakespeare. The document is his manuscript entitled '*Curationum historicarum et empiricarum, in certis locis et notis personis expertarum et probatarum, Libellus*' or in English, '*A Little Book Of Cures, Described in Case Histories and Empirically Proven, Tried and Tested in Certain Places and on Noted People*'.<sup>1</sup> The Latin words *historicarum* and *empiricarum* are not easy to put into English. I have been guided by Gianna Pomata's explication of their varied meanings.<sup>2</sup> Throughout this thesis I refer to Hall's original document as his manuscript, my Latin transcription as the *Libellus* and the English translation as the *Little Book*.

The details of John Hall's life are well-established.<sup>3</sup> In brief, he was born in 1575 in Bedfordshire, the son of William Hall of

---

<sup>1</sup> BL, Egerton MS 2065. The title is based on that of a book well used by Hall: Martin Ruland the Elder, *Curationum empyricarum et historicarum, in certis locis et notis personis optime expertarum et rite probatarum, centuriae decem* (Lyons: Pierre Ravaut, 1628).

<sup>2</sup> Gianna Pomata, 'Praxis Historialis: the Uses of *Historia* in Early Modern Medicine', in Gianna Pomata and Nancy Siraisi (eds), *Historia: Empiricism and Erudition in Early Modern Europe* (Cambridge MA: MIT Press, 2005) pp. 106-146 (pp.106-114).

<sup>3</sup> For a recent life of John Hall, see Greg Wells, 'His Son-in-law John Hall' in Paul Edmondson and Stanley Wells (eds), *The Shakespeare Circle: An Alternative Biography* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2015) pp. 85-100; his identity was firmly established by Irvine Gray, 'Shakespeare's Son-in-law: the Antecedents of Doctor John Hall', *Genealogists' Magazine*, 7 (1936) 344-354; essential documents of his life are reproduced in Frank Marcham, *William Shakespeare and his Daughter Susanna* (London: Grafton, 1931); the fullest life is by C.M. Mitchell, *The Shakespeare Circle: A Life of Dr. John Hall*

whom little is known. He qualified as a physician at the University of Cambridge, receiving his B.A. in 1593/4 and his M.A. in 1597. Only a minority of physicians had doctorates, essential for teaching at a university or membership of the College of Physicians of London, but not for practice elsewhere.<sup>4</sup> He never received a doctorate, nor claimed to have one nor was referred to as 'Doctor' by his contemporaries. There is no record of the next few years of Hall's life, but he was most likely working to gain experience and possibly travelled in France. He moved to Stratford-upon-Avon not later than 1607 when he married Susanna Shakespeare. His father died the same year. In his will he specified that John was to receive 'all my books of phisicke' while 'all my bookes of Astronomy and Astrologie' were to go to William's servant Mathewe Morris.<sup>5</sup> John Hall was licensed as a physician by the Stratford-upon-Avon Church Court, which shared such responsibilities with the Bishop of Worcester.<sup>6</sup> Hall was a committed puritan member of the Church of England, a position which involved him in conflicts between the Town Corporation and the parish church of Holy Trinity. Hall sided with the vicar Thomas Wilson in numerous disputes with the Corporation. He died in 1635, unexpectedly it would seem, as he left only a very brief nuncupative will dated the day of his death.<sup>7</sup> John Hall was a fairly common name. Several other John Halls

---

(Birmingham: Cornish, 1946); there are brief references to John Hall in most biographies of William Shakespeare.

<sup>4</sup> John Raach, *A Directory of English Country Physicians* (London: Dawsons of Pall Mall, 1962) p. 14.

<sup>5</sup> Marcham, *William Shakespeare*, pp. 21-22.

<sup>6</sup> E.R.C. Brinkworth, *Shakespeare and the Bawdy Court of Stratford* (Chichester: Phillimore, 1972) pp. 98, 148.

<sup>7</sup> Marcham, *William Shakespeare*, p. 25.

have been confused with the physician who lived and worked for most of his life in and around Stratford-upon-Avon.<sup>8</sup>

John Hall's manuscript contains 178 case reports drawn from most of his years in Stratford-upon-Avon and written in 1634-1635. I present here a critical edition of that manuscript in parallel Latin and English texts.

This new edition offers new insights into the use of medical knowledge in the early modern period. As will become apparent, the *Libellus* is an important document in its own right and not just as a source for the translation. It shows that Hall relied extensively on Latin authorities both in his practice and the composition of his manuscript, at a time when historians have generally assumed that reliance on Latin was waning in favour of vernacular English texts. Moreover, it offers insights into the variety of documents grouped together as casebooks. It has allowed me to identify sources and influences in Hall's writing which would be invisible if only the English translation were presented.

Until now Hall's manuscript has only been available in the original Latin, or the more widely used but incomplete and sometimes inaccurate seventeenth-century translations of James Cooke (?-1693). Cooke published two editions, both with titles

---

<sup>8</sup> John Hall, physician of Stratford-upon-Avon, is not John Hall, poet (1627–1656) (Virginia Brackett, *Companion to British Poetry 17th and 18th Centuries* (New York: Facts on File, 2009) p. 202); nor John Hall, B.A. Oxon. (James Sharp, *The Bewitching of Anne Gunter* (New York: Routledge, 2001) p. 100, Judith Bonzol, 'The Medical Diagnosis of Demonic Possession in an Early Modern English Community', *Parergon*, 26 (2009) 115-140 (p. 135)); nor John Hall, surgeon (1529-1568) (T.E.C., 'A Sixteenth-century Cure for an English Infant Afflicted with a Fever and Worms', *Paediatrics*, 54 (1974) 577); nor 'Mr Hall, a chirurgian' (Hilary Spurling, *Elinor Fettiplace's Receipt Book* (Harmondsworth: Penguin Books, 1987) p. 19; Bill Bryson, *Shakespeare: the World as a Stage* (London: Harper Perennial, 2008) p. 53).

starting *Select Observations*.<sup>9</sup> The second edition (1679) has twice been reproduced in facsimile in the twentieth century, by Harriet Joseph and Joan Lane.<sup>10</sup> In this thesis, *Select Observations* without other description always refers to the second edition. The first is always noted as such.

James Cooke was for most of his life a surgeon, later a physician, attached to the household of the Brooke family at Warwick Castle.<sup>11</sup> He served as surgeon to the parliamentary forces under Baron Brooke's command which were based in Warwick during the civil war. Using that experience he published a book on surgery, *Mellificium chirurgiae*, in 1648.<sup>12</sup> It was in his capacity as military surgeon that he came to Stratford-upon-Avon in 1642 and acquired Hall's manuscript.

## 1. CONTENTS OF THESIS

My thesis may be considered in two parts. The first part covers the Background to the critical edition and the critical edition itself. The critical edition is then followed by two chapters which expand on different aspects of Hall's writing.

---

<sup>9</sup> John Hall, *Select Observations on English Bodies: or, cures both empiricall and historicall performed upon very eminent persons on desperate diseases*, trans. and ed. by James Cooke, 1st edn (London: John Sherley, 1657); John Hall, *Select Observations on English Bodies of Eminent Persons in desperate Diseases ... to which is now added, an hundred like Counsels and Advices, for several Honourable Persons: by the same author*, trans. and ed. by James Cooke, 2nd edn (London: Benjamin Shirley, 1679); a third edition (1683) is identical to the second except for the title page.

<sup>10</sup> Harriet Joseph, *Shakespeare's Son-in-law: John Hall, Man and Physician*, 2nd edn (Hamden CT: Archon Books, 1976); Joan Lane, *John Hall and his Patients: the Medical Practice of Shakespeare's Son-in-law*, with a medical commentary by Melvin Earles (Stratford-upon-Avon: Shakespeare Birthplace Trust, 1996).

<sup>11</sup> R.A. Cohen, 'Documents concerning James Cooke, Surgeon, of Warwick', *Medical History*, 1 (1957) 168-173.

<sup>12</sup> James Cooke, *Mellificium Chirurgiae, or the Marrow of many good authors, wherein is briefly and faithfully handled the Art of Chirurgery* (London: Samuel Cartwright, 1648).



### 1.1 The Critical Edition

Hall's manuscript is of middling size as casebooks go, running to about 40,000 words. It is small enough to be contained in a critical edition and large enough to justify the effort involved.

The Background starts by describing the manuscript, then gives its history from its composition to its arrival in the British Library. It outlines the reasons why a new edition is required and describes the editorial principles and practice followed. An outline of some recurring themes in the manuscript introduces Hall's thinking and practice. The appendices are then summarised. They contain details of the process by which borrowings were identified; changes to the identification of some patients compared to Lane's; a guide to the contents of Hall's compound remedies; and a glossary of medical and pharmaceutical terms based on early modern texts. The *Libellus* and *Little Book* are then presented in parallel, each with a critical apparatus. Footnotes to the Latin identify the texts which Hall borrowed and their sources. They make up a considerable proportion of the whole text. The Latin apparatus is concerned with matters of readings in the manuscript. Footnotes to the English compare important points at which the new translation differs from Cooke's *Select Observations*, either because of his omissions or inaccurate translation. The English apparatus identifies some individuals such as other physicians mentioned in the text and provides other background information.

## 1.2 Chapter 1: The Identification of John Hall's Working

### Library

This chapter starts with the process of identifying the books Hall used in his working practice and his manuscript. I have used references in Hall's manuscript (which Cooke deleted from *Select Observations*) as well as systematic searches on the internet to show that between thirty and forty per cent of the text of Hall's manuscript is based on borrowings from Latin medical sources. Hall's working library is shown to contain forty-three identified authors and sixty titles, as against the six authors mentioned in *Select Observations*.<sup>13</sup>

I refer to Hall's working library, because he must have owned other texts which he chose not to use or record, or which have not yet been identified. All were written entirely in Latin, except for one French and three English texts. The working library shows that Hall relied on Latin texts throughout his working life, at a time when the commonly held view is that vernacular texts were replacing Latin ones in medical practice. Hall is likely to be an exception in the extent to which he utilised medical texts in this way, but I offer some evidence that he was not unique.

The analysis of these borrowings and their sources draws on the history of books and reading, with its origins in the French *Annales* school.<sup>14</sup> Important sources are the collections of inventories, libraries and booklists which have been published in

---

<sup>13</sup> Joseph, *Shakespeare's Son-in-law*, p. xiii.

<sup>14</sup>Anthony Grafton, 'Is the History of Reading a Marginal Enterprise?', *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of America*, 91 (1997) 139-157 (p.351); quoted in Jason Scott-Warren, 'News, Sociability and Bookbuying in Early Modern England: the Letters of Sir Thomas Cornwallis', *Library*, 4th ser., 1 (2000) 381-402 (p.381).

recent years.<sup>15</sup> These provide much information for the sixteenth century, but become much more sparse in the early seventeenth century. Few medical libraries are known from that period so Hall's, even if incomplete, is an important addition.

I then consider studies of early modern Latin medical writing, which have come mostly from the school of the history of ideas.<sup>16</sup> These Latin texts have been well studied, but with a focus on their theoretical content rather than their practical medical applications. Hall's borrowings show that they were important as sources of practical information.

Hall's books mostly fall into commonly identified categories of practical books of the period – *consilia*, *practicae*, *curationes* and *observationes*, pharmacopoeias and works on chymical practice. Books on single topics – illnesses or groups of patients – also made up a large proportion. Pomata has suggested that these are more than categories, but represent 'epistemic genres' used with particular meaning by people within a certain culture – in this case,

---

<sup>15</sup> Elizabeth Leedham-Green, *Books in Cambridge Inventories: Book Lists from Vice-Chancellor's Court Probate Inventories in the Tudor and Stuart Periods*, 2 vols (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986); Robert Fehrenbach *et al* (eds), *Private Libraries in Renaissance England: a Collection and Catalogue of Tudor and Stuart Book-lists*, vols I to VIII (multiple cities and publishers: 1982-2014);

<sup>16</sup> Pomata, 'Praxis Historialis'; Nancy Siraisi, *The Clock and the Mirror: Girolamo Cardano and Renaissance Medicine* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1997); Nancy Siraisi, 'Medicine, 1450-1620, and the History of Science', *Isis*, 103 (2012) 491-514; Nancy Siraisi, *Communities of Learned Experience: Epistolary Medicine in the Renaissance* (Baltimore MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 2013); Vivian Nutton, 'Pieter van Foreest and the Plagues of Europe: some Observations on the *Observationes*', in H.L. Houtzager (ed.), *Pieter van Foreest, Een Hollands Medicus in de Zestiende Eeuw*, (Amsterdam and Atlanta GA: Rodopi, 1989) pp. 27-29; Vivian Nutton, 'Books, Printing and Medicine in the Renaissance', *Medicina nei Secoli*, 17 (2005) 421-442; Ian Maclean, *Logic, Signs and Nature in the Renaissance: the Case of Learned Medicine* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2007); Silvia De Renzi, 'A Career in Manuscripts: Genres and Purposes of a Physician's Writing in Rome, 1600-1630' *Italian Studies*, 66, (2011) 234-248.

the European-wide learned medical community.<sup>17</sup> I argue against this because many books contain mixtures of different categories, so that the style of their content does not always match that suggested by the titles. The way books were listed in seventeenth-century bibliographies bears this out, as their compilers used a wide variety of titles for their groupings, with little sign of standardisation.<sup>18</sup> Rather than being fixed genres, medical categories were flexible and often mixed together, showing an eclectic approach by their users.

Evidence for Hall's possible connexions to the book trade also come from studies of libraries and books. London was the centre of the book trade in England, including importation of books from the Continent - the 'Latin Trade'.<sup>19</sup> Identifying and buying a book was not necessarily an easy task for a provincial gentleman like Hall. Pedlars and chapmen travelled widely outside the main towns, but their wares were cheap and popular rather than learned.<sup>20</sup> Oxford on the other hand was both nearer to Stratford-upon-Avon and well-provided with booksellers. It was a distribution centre of books for the surrounding area.<sup>21</sup> In addition the Bodleian Library had opened in 1602 and was regularly receiving Frankfurt Book Fair

---

<sup>17</sup> Gianna Pomata, 'Sharing Cases: The *Observationes* in Early Modern Medicine', *Early Science and Medicine*, 15 (2010) 193-236 (p. 196).

<sup>18</sup> Pascal Lecoq, *Bibliotheca medica sive catalogus illorum, qui ex professo artem medicam in hunc usque annum scriptis illustrant* (C. Waldkirch: Basel, 1590); Georg Draud, *Bibliotheca Classica, sive Catalogus Officinalis* (Pierre Kopf: Frankfurt, 1611); Georg Draud *Bibliotheca classica, sive catalogus officinalis* (B. Ostern: Frankfurt, 1625).

<sup>19</sup> Julian Roberts, 'The Latin Trade', in John Barnard and D.F. McKenzie (eds), *The Cambridge History of the Book in Britain, Vol. 4 1557-1695* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1998), pp. 141-173.

<sup>20</sup> F.J. Levy, 'How Information Spread among the Gentry, 1550-1640', *Journal of British Studies*, 21 (1982) 11-34; Scott-Warren, 'News, Sociability and Bookbuying'.

<sup>21</sup> Levy, 'How Information Spread Among the Gentry', 17.

catalogues and ordering books from there and elsewhere in Europe.<sup>22</sup> Oxford might therefore have provided a quicker and more informative route than London by which Hall could keep in touch with current publications and make decisions on his purchases.

### **1.3 Chapter 2: John Hall's Manuscript Considered as a Casebook**

This chapter starts with an overview of references to John Hall's casebook (almost always here in its *Select Observations* form). It has interested medical writers from the late nineteenth century and throughout the twentieth. These publications chart changes of attitudes from a time when *Select Observations* was still regarded as a textbook (if old-fashioned) through to a period when it was of more interest as a historical document. In the mid-twentieth century Hall was regarded as an important practitioner in advance of his time, but later writers have taken a more balanced view of him as offering examples of typical early modern practice.

In the 1970s and 1980s casebooks became essential sources for social and cultural historians of medicine, as a tool for researching patients as well as practitioners. They have remained an important resource ever since.<sup>23</sup> Comparison of uses of *Select Observations* as a source suggest the change from a medically-

---

<sup>22</sup> Peter Murray Jones, 'Medical Libraries', in Elizabeth Leedham-Green and Teresa Webber (eds), *The Cambridge History of Libraries in Britain and Ireland, Vol. 1 to 1640* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2006), pp. 469-470.

<sup>23</sup> Lauren Kassell et al, *The Casebooks Project: a Digital Edition of Simon Forman and Richard Napier's Medical Records 1596-1634*, <<http://www.magicanmedicine.hps.cam.ac.uk/>>; Kassell, 'Casebooks in Early Modern England'.

centred history of medicine to the more inclusive social history model was not as clear-cut in time as is often assumed.

Since the 1980s there has been a trend away from using small number of casebooks as sources in history studies, towards using much larger numbers. For instance Doreen Nagy used five in 1988 compared to Wendy Churchill's more than forty in 2012.<sup>24</sup>

This has led to a need for more care in identifying casebooks.

Lauren Kassell has proposed a definition ('a serial record of practice') and set of descriptions as a step towards agreeing a set of documents to work from.<sup>25</sup> I argue that Kassell's definition is useful as a good broad starting point, but the characteristics of individual casebooks such as Hall's need to be identified and studied more precisely. The purposes for which individual casebooks were created should be considered carefully. Translations and publications in particular should be treated with care. Most casebooks were written at least partly in Latin and much information may be lost if only English translations are relied on, without checking back to the original Latin. I also query the use of printed editions as casebooks, if they were not seen into print by their authors. This is a point on which Hall's manuscript, published as a book nearly twenty-five years after his death, is well placed to illuminate.

Hall's manuscript shows that a casebook covering a period of years may have an internal structure. Casebooks should not be

---

<sup>24</sup> Doreen Evenden Nagy, *Popular Medicine in Seventeenth Century England* (Bowling Green OH: Bowling Green State Popular Press, 1988); Wendy Churchill, *Female Patients in Early Modern Britain* (Farnham: Ashgate, 2012).

<sup>25</sup> Lauren Kassell, 'Casebooks in Early Modern England: Medicine, Astrology, and Written Records', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 88 (2014) 595-625.

treated as undifferentiated wholes without careful examination of their contents and chronologies. Changes in style and content reflect the chronologies of both the original consultations and the writing of the manuscript. The study within casebooks of change over time may be as important as the study of differences between them. I have benefited in this respect from Joan Lane's careful work in identifying patients and putting dates to consultations.<sup>26</sup> Her social historical approach to the past, though less popular today, can still offer significant benefits to the study of casebooks.

## **2. METHODOLOGY**

At the centre of this study, as stated earlier, is a single physician and a single document. This thesis considers the document from several different aspects which makes it difficult to isolate a central historiographic theme. The provision of a new edition of Hall's manuscript is its main purpose, but in addition each chapter has its own range of subjects and draws on its own methodologies.

My presentation of the manuscript as a critical edition differs from most studies of early modern medical documents. As far as I am aware it is only the third such study since the casebooks of John Symcotts (c.1592-1662) and Thomas Willis (1621-1675) were published. Neither of those could be described as a critical edition.<sup>27</sup> The edition of John Symcotts gives the complete text in English and Latin, with English translations of the Latin in

---

<sup>26</sup> Lane, *John Hall*.

<sup>27</sup> F.N.L. Poynter, F.N.L., and W.J. Bishop, *A Seventeenth-century Doctor and his Patients: John Symcotts, 1592? – 1662*, Publications of the Bedfordshire Historical Record Society Vol. XXXI (Streatley: Bedfordshire Historical Record Society, 1951); Kenneth Dewhurst, *Willis's Oxford Casebook 1650-52*, (Oxford: Sandford Publications, Oxford, 1981)

footnotes. Thomas Willis's consultations have been published in an English translation but without the original Latin. Other studies of single authors have summarised and commented on the contents, but have not reproduced the complete original content.<sup>28</sup> Given the size of some of the records such as those of Simon Forman (1552-1611), Richard Napier (1559-1634) and Theodore Turquet de Mayerne (1573-1655), this is understandable. Such works are more likely to be presented as on-line databases than in printed form in the future.<sup>29</sup> Casebooks remain a staple resource in history but their usefulness relies on their texts being accessible and accurate, both in translation and transcription of the original Latin. I hope this edition of Hall's manuscript will contribute to this.<sup>30</sup>

Given the wide range of topics covered, from libraries and genres of books to meaning and use of casebooks, it is hard to identify any one common approach. Rather, I incline to take advantage of what Paolo Palladino has called the 'anarchic proliferation' of approaches within the history of medicine, and so 'embrace a greater variety of theoretical aspects and methodological

---

<sup>28</sup> Michael MacDonald, *Mystical Bedlam: Madness, Anxiety and Healing in Seventeenth-Century England* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983); Ronald Sawyer, 'Patients, Healers and Disease in the Southeast Midlands, 1597-1634' (unpublished PhD thesis, University of Wisconsin, Madison WI, 1986); Lauren Kassell, *Medicine and Magic in Elizabethan London* (Oxford: Clarendon, 2005); Brian Nance, *Turquet de Mayerne as Baroque Physician: the Art of Medical Portraiture* (Amsterdam and New York: Rodopi, 2001); Brian Nance, 'Wondrous Experience as Text: Valleriola and the *Observationes Medicinales*' in Elizabeth Furdell (ed.), *Textual Healing: Essays on Medieval and Early Modern Medicine* (Leiden: Brill, 2005) pp. 108-118.

<sup>29</sup> For example, Lauren Kassell *et al*, *The Casebooks Project*.

<sup>30</sup> Examples used in this thesis are: Lucinda McCray Beier, *Sufferers and Healers: the Experience of Illness in Seventeenth-century England* (Routledge and Kegan Paul: London and New York, 1987); Nagy, *Popular Medicine*; Churchill, *Female Patients*; Hannah Newton, *The Sick Child in Early Modern England, 1580-1720* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2014)



approaches'.<sup>31</sup> Nonetheless some connecting spine between the different sections is required. Working from the focus on a single practitioner and single document, I find this in microhistory.

In part my choice of this arose out of the contrast with other writers' arguments for not using that methodology. Maclean in *Logic, Signs and Nature* followed a Weberian ideal-typical approach, suitable to his consideration of a large number of writers. He comments that 'it would have been easier to have taken a microhistorical approach, and chosen a 'one or a number of thinkers who could have been subjected to Geertzian thick description'.<sup>32</sup> Churchill, who has used an impressively large array of sources, notes that many of the studies of casebooks have focussed on single practitioners. She comments that 'while this "micro" approach is extremely valuable in many ways, its narrow scope excludes questions regarding representativeness'.<sup>33</sup> In my study, the narrow starting focus of microhistory is a positive choice.

In common with many approaches, methodologies and processes in history, microhistory tends to vary with the historian rather than being a consistent and stable package. For my guide into microhistory, I have chosen Giovanni Levi.<sup>34</sup> Levi calls it a 'historiographical practice' without an established orthodoxy'. Most

---

<sup>31</sup> Paolo Palladino, 'And the Answer is ... 42', *Social History of Medicine*, 13 (2000) 147-152 (p.148); Jonathan Andrews, 'Health, Medicine and Disease in the Eighteenth Century', *Journal for Eighteenth Century Studies*, 34 (2011), 503-515 (p. 510).

<sup>32</sup> Maclean, *Logic, Signs and Nature*, p. 1.

<sup>33</sup> Churchill, *Female Patients*, p. 3.

<sup>34</sup> Giovanni Levi, 'On Microhistory', in Peter Burke (ed.), *New Perspectives on Historical Writing*, 2nd ed. (Cambridge: Polity, 2001) pp. 97-119.

importantly, 'micro' refers to the level of the historian's engagement with the subject matter, not the latter's size.<sup>35</sup>

I find some shared historical background between microhistory and social history. Both developed in the 1960s and 1970s as a reaction against prevailing models. Social history celebrated the break between medical history as practised by medically qualified historians (seen as concentrating on elite male practitioners and medical progress) and a broader history of medicine practised by non-medical academic historians (with an interest in patients, practitioners of all sorts, the place of women in medical care and other subjects, all placed within the values of their own time). It came with a belief that a radical challenge was needed to the older approach: 'the political activism of the period easily justified the task, while the task justified the activism'.<sup>36</sup> Microhistory arose (mainly in Italy) as part of a social movement which challenged prevailing political systems. Microhistory had a political element and was 'not a purely rhetorical and aesthetic activity'.<sup>37</sup>

For Levi, the defining features of microhistory start with 'the reduction of the scale of observation ... and an intensive study of the documentary material'.<sup>38</sup> This is not to say that large-scale social structures cannot be studied using microhistory, but that a focus from a small scale outwards can be as rewarding as one from a large scale inwards. As Levi puts it, it may 'reveal factors

---

<sup>35</sup> Levi, 'On Microhistory', p. 97.

<sup>36</sup> Roger Cooter, 'After Death/After-Life': The Social History of Medicine in Post-Postmodernity', *Social History of Medicine*, 20 (2007) 441-464 (pp. 442-443).

<sup>37</sup> Levi, 'On Microhistory', pp. 97-99.

<sup>38</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 99.

previously unobserved'.<sup>39</sup> There is a parallel here with Roy Porter's seminal and influential concept of doing the history of medicine 'from the bottom up'.<sup>40</sup>

The place of narrative, of telling a story, in microhistory is useful to me here. Narrative can demonstrate as Levi explains 'by an account of true facts, the true functioning of certain aspects of society which would be distorted by generalisations'.<sup>41</sup> It also recognises that the presentation of those facts is influenced by the presenter. Instead of a 'traditional, assertive authoritarian form of discourse ... the researcher's point of view becomes an intrinsic part of the account. The research process is explicitly described and the limitations of documentary evidence ... are no longer hidden away'.<sup>42</sup>

The narrative approach is appealing in this study, because of the wide range of timescales encompassed. The longest time span belongs to Hall's books: the oldest he used had been published in 1550 and the latest, in 1633. The shortest time span is that within which Hall composed his manuscript, in 1634 and 1635. His practice started in Stratford-upon-Avon not later than 1607 and continued to 1635, the year of his death. The earliest datable consultation in the manuscript took place in 1611 and the latest in 1635.<sup>43</sup> Each of these time spans has its own narrative, which weaves in and out of the others.

---

<sup>39</sup> Ibid., p. 101.

<sup>40</sup> Roy Porter, 'The Patient's View: Doing History from Below', *Theory and Society*, 14 (1985) 175-98.

<sup>41</sup> Levi, 'On Microhistory', p. 109.

<sup>42</sup> Ibid., p. 110; Levi goes on to apply this 'by informing the reader that my guiding principles are strongly personal ones; this is a self-portrait rather than a group portrait', pp. 114-115.

<sup>43</sup> Wells, 'John Hall'.

My final emphasis is, as I started, on a single practitioner and a single manuscript. I hope this critical edition will help to make Hall's manuscript an even more useful part of the study of early modern medical practice than it has been in the past.

## **BACKGROUND TO THE CRITICAL EDITION**

John Hall's manuscript is central to this thesis. It is the one record we have of his authentic voice, even if expressed at times in the words of others. Here I describe the manuscript, summarise its history and give my reasons for offering a new translation. I then summarise some of the themes which run through Hall's reports, illustrative of his thinking and practice. Finally I lay out the editorial principles and practice I have followed, before presenting the critical edition itself.

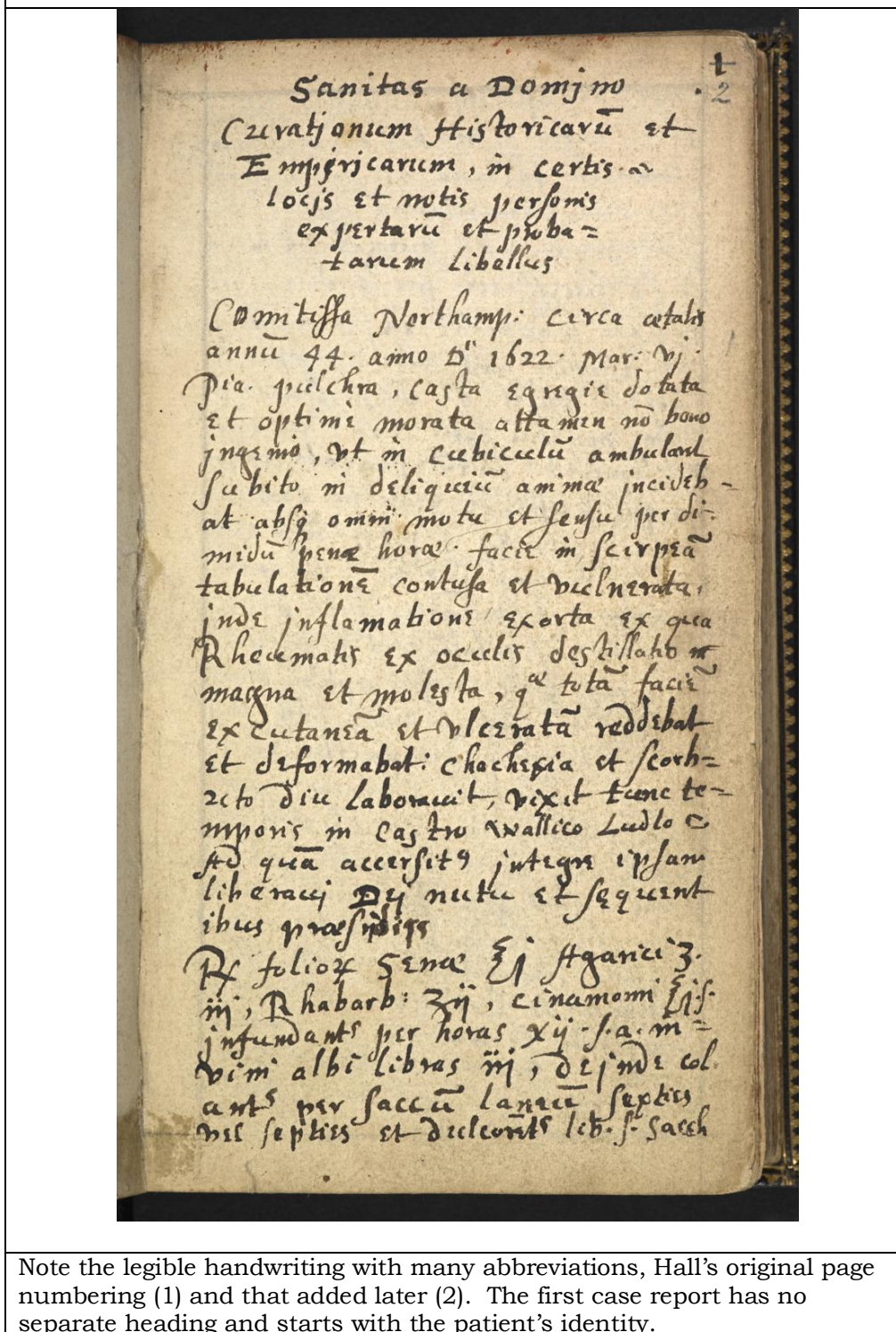
I use the following terminology to distinguish between different versions of the text. Hall's original text as he wrote it is referred to as his manuscript. My Latin transcription is the *Libellus*, using the word in Hall's title, while the English translation is the *Little Book*. Where there are quotations from the *Little Book* in the text below, I have placed the equivalent Latin from the *Libellus* in a footnote. This serves to emphasise once again the importance of the Latin as Hall's own words, distinct from the translation. References to *Select Observations* are to the second edition unless the first is specifically mentioned.

### **1. JOHN HALL'S MANUSCRIPT**

#### **1.1 Description And Contents**

John Hall's manuscript is contained in a small notebook, measuring approximately eighteen by ten centimetres. It is now in a leather binding marked 'British Museum' (from around 1868 before its transfer to the British Library) with the title 'Case Book of Dr John

Figure 1. Page 1 of Hall's manuscript.<sup>1</sup>



Note the legible handwriting with many abbreviations, Hall's original page numbering (1) and that added later (2). The first case report has no separate heading and starts with the patient's identity.

<sup>1</sup> BL, Egerton Ms 2065, p.1.

Hall' on the spine.<sup>2</sup> It is complete, with no missing pages. The paper has faded to a light brown with only a few stains and blemishes. The top, bottom and sides of each page have faint ruled margins and the text, written in ink now faded to a dark brown, mostly stays within them. There are few corrections and no deleted text apart from occasional corrected words. Hall consistently recorded dates in the new style, with the year starting on 1 January. He wrote in an italic hand which becomes more legible with practice at reading it, but containing many abbreviations and errors in grammar.<sup>3</sup> Hall's writing is on the whole tidy and formal with well-spaced lines. Occasionally it becomes more crowded and uneven, before Hall returns to his initial tidiness. The writing is consistent throughout with no evidence of deterioration from beginning to end.

The numbering of the manuscript's pages is complex. At the front there are five unnumbered pages, three blank followed by one stamped 'E.G.2065 (Farnb.)' and written below, 'purchased by Mr Paterson 10 Oct. 1868'. There follows another blank page before Hall's text starts with an unnumbered page of epigraphs and a further blank page. At the end of the manuscript there are five unnumbered pages, the first bearing a pencilled note, '131 folios HK November 1869'. The remaining four are blank.

---

<sup>2</sup> BL, Egerton MS 2065.

<sup>3</sup> Cooke referred to it as 'abbreviated and false': Hall, *Select Observations*, sig. A3v.



Figure 2. Page 67 of Hall's manuscript.<sup>4</sup>

35 67

somnū cepisset, manū iusculum ex  
 pullo cū herbes appropriatis dabā et  
 sic per 4 horas mansit, finito temp  
 ore dabā haustū decoct. c.c. calid.  
 manū Lunarem euacuationi habuit  
 ostium tamen ut decoct. cornu cerui  
 bibere frigid. pustulae misen cruenta  
 bant eam, cū sumo gutturi et ling  
 uae ardon, ita ut potum nisi max  
 ima difficultate deuorare potuit, seq.  
 Gargariz. Rosa. & dia mor. simp. Eij  
 milt. ʒss. ʒij. aq. ʒss. tibi. ol. Julp  
 huius q.s. ad accedendum, tandem  
 post usum decoct. c.c. <sup>vanolus</sup> ~~manibiles~~ app  
 erabant die septima, attamen pro  
 gutture Rosa est garga. p. et 4<sup>a</sup> di  
 die haustū decoct. cor. cer. <sup>vanolus</sup> frigid  
 et sic laus deu. curata, ~~manibiles~~  
 inuasi iubita tempore conuersioni  
 tali ungu. R. aq. card. huius. ol. cor  
 ana agitentis sic sine ʒss. ʒij.  
 curata Huius deplorata dominae huius  
 pauci auxilium deo medebat.

<sup>vanolus</sup> ~~manibiles~~ cura <sup>vanolus</sup> ~~manibiles~~

74 Generosus Farma, vesticeps, conuulso  
 Diaculq, multicosus, facit <sup>vanolus</sup> ~~manibiles~~  
 doli, infecto concussendo D<sup>a</sup> Beaup  
 ita ut ab ipso patria sua migra  
 testurica ad expulsiōis. po diascord.  
 ʒij milt. ʒss. cor. cer. ʒss. aq. Dracuncul.  
 Eij cor. cerui p. ʒij f. haustū sydoni.

Note the less tidy handwriting than on page 1, changes in the text and a separate heading referring to the illness at the start of Case 74.

<sup>4</sup> BL, Egerton MS 2065.



The pages of Hall's text in the centre of the manuscript are numbered in two systems. One, in pencil and a similar hand to the note dated November 1869, run from folio 1r (Hall's epigraph page) to folio 131v. This is presumably an editorial addition from the time of its ownership by the British Museum. Hall's own numbers start with 1 on his title page (f.2r) and run to the end of his text, a total of 191 pages. His numbering went awry towards the end, the last five pages running 187, 187 (duplicated), 188, 199 and 200. Hall did not number his page of epigraphs nor the page after them (ff.1r-1v) preceding his main text. He started an index but left it unfinished, on folios 123r to 129r. I have not included this in the critical edition as it adds little information.

Several of the other pages of writing can be firmly associated with James Cooke. He wrote his name four times, in whole or part, on the epigraph page. The next page contains two short recipes and a note 'Mr John Sherley Golden Pelican in Little Britain' in a different hand. John Sherley was the publisher of the first edition of Cooke's translation. Between the end of Hall's text and his index are a mixture of consultation and other medical notes in English and Latin. Three reports, (folios 105v-106v) are dated 7, 23 and 24 January 1656, when the book was in Cooke's possession. All the patients lived in or near Warwick, where Cooke practised. Further medical notes in Cooke's hand and two pages on the Hebrew alphabet and grammar occupy a few pages after the index and before the final blank pages.

The dates of composition of the manuscript can be quite tightly limited. The consultation with Ann Smith (Case 3) has been

dated by Joan Lane to 1634, meaning that the bulk and probably the whole, of the manuscript was written during 1634 and 1635.<sup>5</sup> The chronology of the consultations and the composition of the manuscript is described in more detail in Chapter 2.

## 1.2 History of the Manuscript

John Hall's nuncupative will of 25 November 1635 contains the earliest mention of his books and papers:

concerning my study of books I leave them (sayd he) to  
yow my sonn Nash [Hall's son-in-law Thomas Nash] to  
dispose of them as yow see good. As for my manuscripts  
I would have given them to Mr Boles [unidentified] if hee  
had been here but forasmuch as he is not heere present,  
yow may son Nash burne them or doe with the them  
what yow please.<sup>6</sup>

No probate inventory survives to provide details. The next reference to the manuscript is found in James Cooke's preface to the first edition of *Select Observations*.<sup>7</sup> Some of the books and manuscripts must have remained with his widow Susanna, rather than with Hall's son-in-law, according to James Cooke's description of how he acquired them:

Being in my art an attendant to parts of some regiments to  
keep the pass at the bridge of Stratford upon Avon [around

---

<sup>5</sup> Lane, *John Hall*, p. 9.

<sup>6</sup> Prerogative Court of Canterbury, 115 Pile, quoted in Marcham, *William Shakespeare and his Daughter*, p. 25.

<sup>7</sup> Cooke was a surgeon with the parliamentary forces based in Warwick during the Civil War, and already the author of a textbook on military surgery; James Cooke, *Mellificium chirurgiae, or the Marrow of Many Good Authors, wherein is briefly and faithfully handled the Art of Chirurgery* (London, Samuel Cartwright, 1648).

1642], there being with me a mate allyed to the gentleman that writ the following observations in Latin, he invited me to the house of Mrs Hall wife to the deceased, to see the books left by Mr Hall. After a view of them, she told me she had some books left, by one that professed physick, with her husband, for some money. I told her, if I liked them, I would give her the money again; she brought them forth, amongst which there was this with another of the authors, both intended for the presses. I being acquainted with Mr Hall's hand, told her that one or two of them were her husbands, and shewed them her. She denied, I affirmed, till I perceived she began to be offended. At last I returned her the money.<sup>8</sup>

This passage has caused much debate among Shakespearian scholars: how could Susanna Hall not have known her own husband's writing? And what speculations might we make from that about her literacy? Lachlan Mackinnon argues convincingly that she was literate and simply 'couldn't be bothered with someone fossicking after her husband's papers'.<sup>9</sup> My own interpretation is that Mrs Hall thought Cooke was only interested in buying printed books and tried to pass her husband's manuscripts off as such. Once it became clear that Cooke was interested in the manuscripts as such, the misunderstanding was cleared up. He purchased them and perhaps other books as well.

---

<sup>8</sup> Cooke, 'To the Friendly Reader' in Hall, *Select Observations*, 1st edn, sig.A3r-A4r.

<sup>9</sup> Lachlan Mackinnon, 'His Daughter Susanna Hall', in Edmondson and Wells (eds), *The Shakespeare Circle*, p. 81.

James Cooke was a surgeon with ambitions to be a physician (he was licensed in 1661). Perhaps he saw translating and publishing a medical text as a step towards this. At any rate he:

resolved to put it to suffer according to perceived intentions, to which end I sent it to London which after viewed by an able doctor, he returned answer, that it might be usefull, but the Latin was so abbreviated or false that it would require the like pains as to write a new one.<sup>10</sup>

Fortunately, Cooke 'put it into this garb, being somewhat acquainted with the author's conciseness, especially in the receipts, having had some intimacy with his apothecary'.<sup>11</sup>

The next reference to the manuscript is in Edmond Malone's edition of Shakespeare's plays (first published in 1790):

The private note-book of [...] Dr Hall, containing a short state of the cases of his patients, was a few years ago put into my hands by my friend, the late Dr Wright; and as Dr Hall [...] undoubtedly attended Shakspeare in his last illness, being then forty years old, I had hopes this book might have enabled me to gratify the publick curiosity on this subject.<sup>12</sup>

Malone's hopes were dashed: there is no mention of the playwright in the manuscript, an omission which has engendered pages of speculation ever since. According to Joan Lane, the manuscript had been owned by the actor David Garrick prior to Malone. It

---

<sup>10</sup> Ibid., sig.A3v-B1r.

<sup>11</sup> Ibid., sig.B1r.

<sup>12</sup> Edmond Malone, *The Plays and Poems of William Shakespeare ... Comprehending a Life of the Poet*, Vol.II (London: n. pub., 1821) pp 505-506.

finally reached the British Museum in 1868, before being transferred to the British Library.<sup>13</sup>

### 1.3 The Need for a New Edition

James Cooke's translation in the second edition of *Select Observations* has been the standard version of Hall's manuscript since 1679. Historians have too easily taken it for granted that the translation was both accurate and complete, without comparing it with the original Latin. Joan Lane made more effort than most to compare *Select Observations* with Hall's manuscript, but her main interest was in the identity of his patients. Her comments in *John Hall* show that she tended to look only at the opening and closing paragraphs of each report in the Latin as they contained the most patient information. She did not read through all the text in the longer cases.

Cooke's translation contains both errors and omissions. One error is Cooke's attribution of the cure of Earl of Northampton (Case 137) to the Oxford physician Dr Clayton rather than to Hall himself. Equally significant are Cooke's omissions which affect the balance of the text. Hall recorded several conversations with patients, either at the time of consultation or at follow up. Cooke radically abridged these, turning consultations into brisk medical summaries, but in the process losing much of Hall's personal views on his relationships with patients. These deletions may be explicable as removing matter of little interest to a late seventeenth-century medical readership, for whom the identities of patients would not

---

<sup>13</sup> Lane, *John Hall*, pp. xxx-xxxi.

have been relevant as evidence of successful therapies (this is discussed more fully in Chapter 1). Two other categories of omission, of references to named authors or books and of texts on theory, are more likely to be Cooke's editorial policy. The inclusion of these would have weakened Cooke's deliberate presentation of Hall as a physician dependant almost entirely on empirical practice and observation. This is expressed in the words of Cooke's colleague John Bird of Cambridge, in a foreword to the first edition:<sup>14</sup>

For this book, I have this to say, that as Practice is the last and chiefest part if Physik, so is Observation the surest, and most demonstrating, part of Practice. Hence it cometh to pass through defect of Observations, that so many Prescriptions we meet with in the works of the most learned Practitioners, fall often short in performing the cures they promise, and we took them up for; so often delivering us as their own what they took from other men upon Trust.<sup>15</sup>

Hall's practice, as Chapter 1 shows, was undoubtedly based on 'the works of the most learned practitioners'.

Casebooks are becoming more closely studied and compared, as discussed in Chapter 2, but this will only pay dividends if the texts used are accurate and complete and their mode of composition

---

<sup>14</sup> For John Bird, see Sir Humphrey Davy Rolleston, *The Cambridge Medical School: a Biographical History* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 1932) p. 217.

<sup>15</sup> John Bird, 'To the Judicious Reader', in Hall, *Select Observations*, 1st edn, sig. A6r.

taken into account. This is not a purely theoretical argument, as the two following examples show.

Doreen Nagy used Hall's treatment of acute urinary retention (John Smith, Case 66) with diuretic herbs and local heat applied to the perineum by a hot fried onion as an illustration of cures available to both learned and other practitioners.<sup>16</sup> Nagy wrote of this, that 'Doctors' records ... illustrate the striking similarity between their treatments and those used by lay practitioners', but gave no evidence for this treatment being used by anyone other than Hall.<sup>17</sup> She seems to have taken it as self-evident that a therapy based on fried onions must be rooted in popular tradition. Hall in fact took this remedy almost verbatim from Ruland the Elder's *Curationum*, so despite appearances it is part of the learned Latin medical armamentarium.

Wendy Churchill supports her argument that melancholy and the mother co-existed with a quotation from *Select Observations* (Mrs Peerse, Case 123).<sup>18, 19</sup> Cooke's words are that 'from her Melancholy she fell into the Mother', but Hall's Latin reads 'ob maerorem in suffocationem matricis incidebat' (on account of grief she fell into a suffocation of the mother). In two other reports Hall used maeror for the emotion of a parent at the loss of a child. Lady Browne's scurvy (Case 162) was brought on by grief at the death of her daughter. Similarly Bishop Thornborough's grief over his son's suicide caused first severe melancholy and then scurvy (Case 164).

---

<sup>16</sup> Nagy, *Popular Medicine*, p. 44.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid., p. 43.

<sup>18</sup> Churchill, *Female Patients*, p. 189.

<sup>19</sup> 'The mother' means illness caused by supposed movement of the womb from its normal place within the abdomen. See Appendix D for more details.

Melancholy and grief are not synonymous. The report on Lady Browne's illness describes melancholy in a way which brings out its physicality:

The source of scurvy in the spleen produces a flatulent melancholy, since the regions of the hypochondria encircle the spleen. The melancholy bubbles up in the meseraic veins around the pancreas and putrefies as if it were fermenting.<sup>20</sup>

In these illnesses, as with Mrs Peerse's, the relationship is between a strong emotion (grief) and physical illness (melancholy and/or scurvy). This is not to deny Churchill's argument for a relationship between melancholy and the mother. Another report is much more supportive of Churchill's argument in Hall's manuscript. Hall made the relationship between the mother and melancholy explicit in another report (Mrs Baker, Case 127) which is headed 'cure of a fit of the mother, that is, melancholy'.<sup>21</sup> Cooke's translation loses this close link ('troubled with the Mother, Melancholy').<sup>22</sup> The issue is a complex one involving powerful emotions interacting with illnesses which had both physical and psychological components.

## **2. EDITORIAL PRINCIPLES**

This edition has taken account of the considerable literature on the preparation of editions of early modern texts. My starting point has been Michael Hunter's *Editing Early Modern Texts*.<sup>23</sup> I have adapted

---

<sup>20</sup> *Libellus*, p. /159/: flatulentam melancholiam parit minera scorbuti siquidem circumscripta sedibus hypochondriorum in liene. Mesareo circa pancreas ebulliat [...] ac putrescens veluti fermentetur.

<sup>21</sup> *Libellus*, p. /114/: hystericæ passionis, id est melancholiae cura.

<sup>22</sup> Hall, *Select Observations*, p. 116.

<sup>23</sup> Michael Hunter, *Editing Early Modern Texts* (Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2009); other useful sources of information have been Michael Hunter, 'How to Edit a Seventeenth-century Manuscript', *The Seventeenth*



both Hunter and the principles described in more recent works to the needs of the present enterprise. A major development in the past two decades has been the increasing availability of digitised copies of original documents. This trend has undercut the need for facsimile or semi-facsimile editions and allowed readability to become a more important goal. Thus an edition of John Locke in 1990 aimed ‘to provide a full and accurate transcriptional record’ and ‘a completely faithful representation of the originals’,<sup>24</sup> For the edition of Joseph Justus Scaliger’s correspondence in 2012, ‘the editors believe that readers are best served by a text as free as possible from distractions’,<sup>25</sup> I have followed recent trends and concentrated in both Latin and English on readability, of which accuracy is of course a part. The present edition makes no attempt to offer a diplomatic transcription of the text or to follow the vagaries of Hall’s spelling. Details of how this has been applied are given in the sections below.

### 3. EDITORIAL PRACTICE

In the critical edition I refer to the Latin transcription as the *Libellus*, using the title Hall gave his text. The translated text has the English equivalent, the *Little Book*. I use ‘manuscript’ to refer to Hall’s own document, to emphasise its importance as the only

---

*Century*, 10 (1995) 277-310, and E. Rabbie, ‘Editing Neo-Latin texts’, *Editio*, 10 (1996) 25-48.

<sup>24</sup> John Locke, *Drafts for the Essay Concerning Human Understanding, and Other Philosophical Writings*, Vol. 1, edited by Peter H. Nidditch and G.A.J. Rogers (Oxford: Clarendon, 1990), pp. xx, xxi.

<sup>25</sup> *The Correspondence of Joseph Justus Scaliger*, edited by Paul Botley and Dirk van Miert, Vol. 1 (Geneva: Librairie Droz, 2012) p. liii.

record of Hall's own words. The *Libellus* is already one step and the *Little Book* two steps removed from that.

A major feature of Hall's manuscript is that a large proportion of it consists of silent borrowings adapted to suit Hall's context from other, predominantly medical texts. I have signalled these borrowings by putting them in italics in both the *Libellus* and *Little Book*. Each borrowing is referenced in the *Libellus* footnotes. Hall gave no reference for most of his borrowings and they could only be identified by repetitive on-line searches. A full description of the method used in the searches is given in Appendix A. My identification of borrowings has been conservative, erring on the side of excluding possible sources rather than including uncertain ones. Only borrowings safely attributable to a single source are included, so several for which two or more identical sources were identified are not shown. The more sources are identifiable, the less certain any of them become and the more likely that the phrase was one in common usage rather than specific to a certain source. A minority of Hall's borrowed remedies are identical to the original text. More frequently he added or subtracted ingredients to suit his patient. These remedies are identifiable by their mixture of fonts.

The manuscript also contains a small number of phrases from classical Latin authors such as Cicero. I have little knowledge in this sphere and may well have missed others, but those I have identified are italicised. I refer to these as echoes to distinguish them from Hall's borrowings. None of them are beyond the scope of someone with a Cambridge M.A. They are more likely to reflect

Hall's university education than to be deliberate borrowings from identifiable sources as the medical borrowings are.

The edition is presented as parallel texts on facing pages, the *Libellus* on the left and the *Little Book* on the right. The editorial issues for the Latin and English differ, so are described separately. The English text has been synchronised, as far as possible, with the Latin parallel text. Perfect synchronisation is not possible because of the differences between Latin and English. My primary aims have been never to have more than two lines' difference from one page to the next, and to ensure that cases start in parallel or very close to each other.

### **3.1 The *Libellus***

Abbreviations are silently expanded and catchwords silently omitted. Hall tended to start words at the end of lines, then cross them out and start again at the beginning of the line below. These false starts are silently ignored. Simple spelling errors are silently corrected where there is no ambiguity about the meaning. In the case of ambiguous readings (mostly related to the expansion of abbreviations) I have presented my preferred reading in the text and the alternative in the apparatus. Where Hall has deleted a word and replaced it I have given only the replacement unless the change was substantive (such as several substitutions of variola (smallpox) for morbilli (measles)).

Lineation is not retained or recorded. Hall's page numbers are given within solidi and bold at the appropriate point in the text (e.g. **/5/**). Internal references follow Hall's own page numbering but

are not in bold (e.g. 'as on page /5/'). I have also used Hall's own page numbering when giving references to the *Libellus* or *Little Book* in footnotes.

Punctuation is editorial, though I have tried to be sensitive to Hall's usage. My major change relates to paragraphs. Hall tended to write his text almost continuously throughout a case, except that in about ninety per cent of occurrences the 'recipe' symbol (℞) stands at the start of a line, before a list of ingredients. I have placed all instances of ℞ at the start of a line, otherwise the text is divided into paragraphs following the sense.

The '℞' (for 'recipe') is the only pharmaceutical symbol retained, as a marker for remedies in the text, an aspect of the manuscript which was clearly important to Hall. It also serves to distinguish between 'take' (recipe) as an instruction to a pharmacist making up a remedy and 'take' (capiat) as an instruction to a patient.

Hall was not consistent in his methods of indicating pharmaceutical quantities. Ounces might for example be written in full (uncias), abbreviated (unc.) or shown as a symbol (℥). The printing in Hall's sources was equally eclectic, with all three variants (the full word, an abbreviation or a symbol) sometimes occurring in the same remedy or even the same line of text. I have standardised them all as abbreviations. The relationships between the measurements are shown at the foot of Appendix C. Hall's use of 'j' has been standardised to 'i', except when it occurs in an

English name, and ‘v’ and ‘u’ have been standardized as consonants and vowels respectively.

Hall used round brackets (...) for his own comments and this has been retained. Square brackets indicate editorial matter. Their commonest use is [...], to indicate where Hall has omitted some words in the middle of a continuous piece of borrowed text. Hall was often highly inventive in his use of borrowed material, sometimes combining matter from several sources to create his own text. He sometimes inserted a short borrowing into the middle of a longer continuous one, to create a single sentence. I have marked the interpolated borrowing by enclosing it in curly brackets {...} to simplify references and aid the identification of sources.

Pharmaceutical Latin has some peculiarities of its own. Most instructions for making remedies are given in the present passive subjunctive, for instance *coquantur*, which is most literally translated as ‘let them be boiled’. I have used a simple imperative for these, ‘boil’, to avoid a usage uncommon in present-day English. Two verbs, *bullio* and *capio*, are treated differently. For these words standard pharmaceutical usage from Hall’s time into the early twentieth century has been to use the active present subjunctive instead: *bullia(n)t* (let it/them boil) and *capiat* (let him/her take, as an instruction to a patient).<sup>26</sup> Hall commonly wrote *capiet* (active future indicative) but I have taken this to be a quirk of his spelling and silently amended it *capiat*. I have not found *capiet* used in this sense in any seventeenth-century medical texts.

---

<sup>26</sup> George Howe and John Grover Beard, *Latin for Pharmacists* (Philadelphia: P.Blakiston’s Son and Co., 1916; repr. Kessinger Legacy Reprints, Whitefish MT, 2009) p. 74.

The small number of English words originally in Hall's manuscript are underlined. Hall's rare borrowings from a French text are shown in *Italic* in the same way as the Latin borrowings.

### **3.2 Footnotes to the *Libellus***

The numbered footnotes identify and document the sources of Hall's borrowings. The original text is reproduced with its original spellings and abbreviations so that they can be checked against my expansions and Hall's changes. The only exception is for pharmaceutical quantities which have been standardised to abbreviations in the same way as in the *Libellus*. Where no text is shown in a footnote, it indicates that Hall's words in the manuscript are identical to those in his source. Hall's borrowings omitted all Greek words in his sources, but these are included in the footnote texts.

Among Hall's sources there is one potential ambiguity, the presence of two Martin Rulands, father and son. They are distinguished as Ruland the Elder and Ruland the Younger.

### **3.3 Apparatus to the *Libellus***

Hall's handwriting was in the main a clear italic and my increasing familiarity with it reduced the number of ambiguous readings. In the few cases in which a word is illegible or uncertain it is shown as [xxx], with the nature of the problem described in the apparatus.

Uncertain and ambiguous readings and editorial emendations to the text which call for explanation are also noted. This includes all substantive changes, where an alternative reading

would produce a different meaning. Words in the margins have been included at the appropriate point in the main body of the text and recorded as marginalia in the apparatus.

Changes by Hall to borrowings which have a significant effect on the meaning are also noted. Interlineations, in Hall's manuscript always superscripts, are recorded as \..../. All instances of Hall's use of alchemical symbols as opposed to words are noted. I have not been able to explore these as much as I wish, but believe they may be the key to identifying further borrowings, by distinguishing between the more overtly chymical texts which tend to use symbols and others which more commonly use words.

Hall was sometimes inaccurate in his references to page numbers and chapters when explicitly referring to the works of other authors. I have as far as possible excluded the possibility of these referring to alternative editions, but for the main sources affected, Severinus Evgalenus's *De Scorbuto Morbo*, and Daniel Sennert's *Tractatus de Scorbuto*, only one source for each is possible and each matches the majority of references. In most cases of confusion this is due to a simple transposition of digits. The correct reference in my judgement is shown in the text, with Hall's version in the apparatus.

### **3.4 The *Little Book***

The styles of writing in Hall's manuscript vary considerably, partly a reflexion of the mixture of his own notes with borrowings from texts. Some details, for instance references to the quality of urine and the number and quality of faeces, are given as short phrases rather

than complete sentences. The borrowings on the other hand are often lengthy and prolix. I have reflected both these styles in my translation. Hall manuscript also varies, sometimes within a single paragraph, in the use of the present or past tense. This may reflect carelessness on Hall's part or alternatively may be the result of combining text from his original patient notes (in the present) with his retrospective rewriting, or of using borrowings which themselves used different tenses. I have mostly put texts into the past, except where the case for the use of the present tense has felt particularly strong.

Borrowings are shown in italic as in the *Libellus* but without indicating Hall's omissions and without reference to sources. Titles of books are shown in a sans serif italic script, to distinguish them from the borrowings.

Some features of the translation need some explanation. Two relate to his patients' socio-economic status. An unusual feature of Hall's manuscript is his use of 'virgo' or 'virgo intacta' in relation to four female patients, not a usage I have come across in any other casebook. He recorded ages for three of them, all between 20 and 28 years. I have interpreted his phrase as a social reference to unmarried women of marriageable age rather than as a clinical and anatomical finding and have therefore translated it as spinster.

Hall was precise in his use of personal titles and for the most part a precise equivalent is available. A problem arises with the words *Generosus/-a* and *Magister/-ra*. Cooke translated both as Mr and Mrs, but that is to blur a distinction which was still important at Hall's time. I translate them both as Mr or Mrs, but for patients



titled *Generosus/-a* , with the addition of ‘gentleman’ or ‘gentlewoman’ after the name, to emphasise the social distinction. This aspect is discussed further in Chapter 2. Hall gave male patients with knighthoods the title ‘Eques’, which I have translated as ‘Squire’.

Two others points are pharmaceutical. The pharmacopoeas of Hall’s time made a distinction between powders and species. The former refers to any ingredient which has been dried and powdered. The latter means a mixture of powders ready prepared to be made up into a remedy such as an electuary. I have signalled the difference by translating species as ‘powder for’ rather than just powder. Hall used an antimony cup on occasion to provoke vomiting in his patients. I have translated this as his ‘chymical cup’ rather than chemical, to make clear that he was not operating within the chemistry systems of later centuries. I have used ‘chymical’ elsewhere in the thesis in the same way.

### **3.5 Footnotes to the *Little Book***

Footnotes here have been used to provide additional factual information, including identifications of some individuals mentioned in the text. These include other physicians mentioned by name, and the few patients for whom I have proposed identifications or details different from Joan Lane’s. For easy reference, the details of all these patients are brought together in Appendix B.

### **3.6 Apparatus to the *Little Book***

The chief function of the apparatus is to key the text to Cooke's translation in the second edition of *Select Observations*. I have keyed each of the cases to its numbering in *Select Observations*, which differs from Hall's as Cooke reordered some cases and added some of his own. Substantive differences of meaning are noted. Inevitably, as we have worked from the same original, Cooke's translation and mine are sometimes similar; where Cooke's wording is appropriate I have not strained to find an alternative purely to avoid repeating him.

Throughout the apparatus, the abbreviation S.O. refers to the second, 1679, edition of *Select Observations*.

## **4. THEMES IN HALL'S MANUSCRIPT**

It is easy, as I know from experience, to read a casebook such as Hall's case by case, considering each as it relates to individual patients and therapies. Certain themes in Hall's writing run across more than one case report and it is these more than the details of individual patients which provide an insight into his thinking and attitudes. Many, such as Hall's conversations with patients, his relationships with other practitioners, and his uses of theory, were removed by Cooke from *Select Observations*. They are only to be seen by going back to his original text. I highlight certain of these themes here as an introduction to the reading of the critical edition.

A number of Hall's patients were treated by someone else before turning to him. The other practitioners included an empiric (Lady Smith, Case 118), surgeons (William Clavell, Case 76 and Mr

Barnes, Case 81) and a midwife (Mrs Fiennes, Case 167). Hall recorded the prior treatment and his own successful therapy for each patient, but made no explicit criticism of the other practitioners involved, nor of their fitness to practice. Nor did he offer overt criticism of patients for consulting them. This contrasts strongly with the views of his Northampton colleague, John Cotta, who strongly disapproved of medical treatment being offered by anyone but a physician.<sup>27</sup>

In contrast to his dispassionate view of other practitioners, Hall regularly emphasised his successes where other experienced physicians had failed. Mr Harvey (Case 139) ‘received differing opinions from many physicians’.<sup>28</sup> Mrs Woodward (Case 150) was treated by a physician, but ‘fell from the continual burning fever into a dangerous bastard tertian’.<sup>29</sup> Mr Kimberley (Case 169) ‘took much from physicians, to no avail’.<sup>30</sup> In each case Hall treated the patient successfully. The emphasis on the experience of other physicians is particularly noticeable in relation to the diagnosis of scurvy. Mrs Swift (Case 166) and Mrs Stoughton (Case 175) had both been ‘purged by an experienced physician’ before Hall made the correct diagnosis.<sup>31</sup> One of his strongest statements relates to Dr Thornborough, Bishop of Worcester (Case 164): ‘The deceptive

---

<sup>27</sup> John Cotta, *A Short Discoverie of Severall Sorts of Ignorant and Unconsiderate Practisers of Physicke in England* (London: John Barnes, 1619)

<sup>28</sup> *Libellus*, p. /128/: Multorum medicorum opiniones discrepantes habuit.

<sup>29</sup> *Libellus*, p. /143/: Tunc a medico purgatione et venae sectione, a febre continua ardente ad tertianam notham incidebat perniciosam.

<sup>30</sup> *Libellus*, p. /169/: A medicis multa incassum accepit.

<sup>31</sup> *Libellus*, pp. /166/, /183/: Rite a medico experto purgata [Hall used the same phrase in both reports.

appearance of the arthritis misled and toyed with his physicians, who were experienced and learned in traditional medicine'.<sup>32</sup>

Hall's uneasy relationship with other physicians also comes through in the treatment of his own illness (Case 155) when his wife called in two other physicians. Though he referred to them as friends and took the remedies they prescribed, his summary of their efforts was less than gracious:

Before the physicians attended me, I took 10oz of blood from the hepatic vein, and the third day after that, leeches were applied to the haemorrhoidal veins [...] but I give thanks first to God, then to the hartshorn decoction, and finally to the venesection.<sup>33</sup>

Hall offered no thanks to the physicians and does not mention their treatments among those he evidently regarded as successful. He comes across as the archetypal practitioner who is a difficult patient when ill himself.

Hall enjoyed making diagnoses which other physicians had missed, but was clearly worried when placed in the opposite position. The second Earl of Northampton (Case 137) suffered from a quinsy – a severe and potentially fatal sore throat. Hall wished to start with immediate venesection, but the Earl refused. Instead Hall applied a plaster, but after a troubled night the Earl requested advice from Dr Clayton of Oxford and 'sent for him at precipitate

---

<sup>32</sup> *Libellus*, p. /169/: Falsa arthritidis imagine medicos eius decipiunt ludificantque, qui in veteri medicina expertes et docti.

<sup>33</sup> *Libellus*, p. /152/: sed antequam medici ad me veniebant, e vena iecoraria unc.vii sanguinis extraxi, et 3<sup>a</sup> ab ista die, sanguisugae venis hemorrhoidalis applicata [...] primo Deo, deinde decoctioni cornu cervi, postremo venae sectioni gratias ago.

speed'.<sup>34</sup> Hall then prescribed an unusual plaster, requiring two entire swallows' nests 'including straw, dirt and swallows' droppings', along with other ingredients.<sup>35</sup> This was successful: 'the Earl was satisfied with these prescriptions alone, before the Doctor arrived [...] he breathed and swallowed easily'.<sup>36</sup> Hall's relief at treating the Earl successfully before the arrival of a colleague (or rival) is apparent in the text. This is not evident in *Select Observations* because Cooke's incorrect translation attributed the recipe and its success to Dr Clayton.<sup>37</sup>

Hall also accepted patients' self-treatment as a normal part of practice. As Elaine Leong and Sara Pennell put it, 'the decision to call on the services of a physician ... or other forms of paid medical practice, usually followed the failure of domestic treatment'.<sup>38</sup> This is evident in his reports on Mrs Kempton (Case 78), Squire Rainsford (Case 80), Mrs Randolph (Case 99) and the schoolmaster John Trapp (Case 177). Patients also sometimes queried or changed Hall's prescriptions, with purgation or bleeding a particular issue. Mr Broad (Case 100) refused venesection and so 'fell into a continual burning fever as I foretold'.<sup>39</sup> On Hall's next visit he was 'in danger of death, unable to say anything. Immediately I cut a

---

<sup>34</sup> *Libellus*, p. /125/: petit consilium Dr Clayton Oxoniae, misit celeri cursu.

<sup>35</sup> *Libellus*, p. /125/: nempe stramine, luto et stercore hirundinum.

<sup>36</sup> *Libellus*, p. /125/: Sed praescriptis contentus his solis ante adventum Doctoris [...] fauces apertae, tumor et inflammatio tonsillarum ac uvulae sublata atque facile traxit spiritum et facile glutivit, et mihi solarium magnum dedit, et postea saepe ingentes reddebat gratias.

<sup>37</sup> Hall, *Select Observations*, p. 127: he sent for Dr Clayton from Oxford ... who prescribed the following Cataplasma [the swallows' nest plaster], which delivered him from pain and danger.

<sup>38</sup> Elaine Leong and Sara Pennell, 'Recipe Collections and the Currency of Medical Knowledge in the Early Modern Medical Marketplace', in Mark Jenner and Patrick Wallis (eds), *Medicine and the Market in England and its Colonies, c.1450-c.1850* (Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2007) p. 134.

<sup>39</sup> *Libellus*, p. /84/: Phlebotomia neglecta, in febrem ut praedixi incidebat, ardentem continuam.

vein and bled to 10oz', which worked well enough for Mr Broad to say that he was greatly relieved.<sup>40</sup> The second Countess of Northampton (Case 144) 'does not want to be purged, nor do I wish it'. She also disliked the barberry conserve which Hall prescribed and instead 'took jelly of hartshorn shavings with marigold and crocus flowers'.<sup>41</sup>

As this shows, treatments were sometimes changed from those prescribed. Hall prescribed a mixture with oil of water-lilies for Grace Court (Case 143), 'but since this oil was not to hand' she used a mixture of oils of scorpions and almonds.<sup>42</sup> For Mr Barnes's toothache, 'since I had no remedy to hand, I prescribed cold water held in the mouth and often spat out', which worked well.<sup>43</sup> The Reverend Holyoak's son was prescribed a pomegranate syrup described as particularly suitable for measles but 'this was not to hand' so a different one was used 'with happy effect'.<sup>44</sup>

Leong and Pennell have also documented the circulation and exchange of recipes both between lay people and from physicians to lay people.<sup>45</sup> Hall referred to this explicitly in four reports. Two of them add an extra link to the chain, in that the transmitted recipe came originally from one of Hall's printed sources. Squire Packington (Case 71) asked for something to restore his appetite and Hall prescribed *pulvis senae Montagnanae* (Montagnana's

---

<sup>40</sup> *Libellus*, p. /84/: Statim venam secabam et phlebotomabam ad unc.10 [...] dixit se magnum levamen venae sectione invenire.

<sup>41</sup> *Libellus*, p. /135/: Purgare nolit nec vellem; p. /136/: degustavit abhorrebat, nam crustas berberorum non placebat.

<sup>42</sup> *Libellus*, p. /133/: Sed quoniam non erant olea ad manus.

<sup>43</sup> *Libellus*, p. /78/: Sed cum nulla remedia ad manus habuerim, iubebam aquam frigidam in ore tenere.

<sup>44</sup> *Libellus*, p. /157/: Sed quoniam non erant ad manus, usus est [...] felici successu.

<sup>45</sup> Leong and Pennell, 'Recipe Collections' pp. 137-143.

senna powder), using the recipe given in the 1613 edition of the *Pharmacopoeia Augustana*. Mrs Murden (Case 107) complained of giddiness and headache and was prescribed a laxative remedy taken from the Crato's first Book of *Consiliorum et epistolarum*.

Hall recorded several consultations with child patients. His treatments of children for either fits or worms are good illustrations of what Hannah Newton calls 'children's physic' in the seventeenth century.<sup>46</sup> They also demonstrate his use of Latin texts to find therapies specifically intended for this age group. The Reverend Walker's six-month-old son (Case 35) and two-year-old Lidia Trapp (Case 114) both suffered from fits. They received similar treatments, with sliced peony roots hung round their necks, peony powder sprinkled in their hair and an ointment of Venice treacle and peony root applied over the heart. The source of the latter two treatments was Felix Platter's *Observationum*. The case these were borrowed from is headed '*Epilepsia in infante*' and for both his patients Hall used the exact ingredients and quantities specified by Platter.<sup>47</sup>

Several of Hall's child patients suffered from worm infestations. Newton states that purgatives were generally not used in children, but Hall used them to expel the worms, favouring much milder ones than he used in adults.<sup>48</sup> Four-year-old Winter (Case 40) and three-year-old Dixwell Brent (Case 94) both had a honey suppository based on a recipe in Platter's *De Vitiis*. The one-year-old George Talbot (Case 56) and Mr Bishop's six-year-old son (Case

---

<sup>46</sup> Newton, *The Sick Child*, pp. 2-3.

<sup>47</sup> *Libellus*, pp. /34/, /102/.

<sup>48</sup> Newton, *The Sick Child*, p. 76.

59) both received a milk and sugar enema. Mr Bishop's son also had an linctus for his chest which contained two mild purgatives, manna and cassia. This recipe was taken, exactly as printed, from Vittori's *De aegritudinibus infantium*.<sup>49</sup>

Hall did not give children modified versions of the much stronger purgatives he used to treat worms in adults. Mrs Bovey (Case 161) and Edith Stoughton (Case 170) received the identical treatment from Amatus Lusitanus, containing wormseed (a vermicide) and strong purgatives.<sup>50</sup> Hester Silvester (Case 125) was treated with a different recipe from the same source. Mary Heath (Case 17) was treated with wax infused into a cooked apple, a remedy from Valleriola which Hall commended.

Hall occasionally recorded detailed conversations with his patients. The longest record relates to Dr Thornborough (Case 164). This covered the reasons for Hall's diagnosis of scorbutic arthritis (missed by other physicians), some background theory on scurvy which evidently interested the Bishop, and the tragic story of his son's suicide. In the consultation with Mrs Mary Talbot (Case 103) Hall's diagnosis of long-standing scurvy led the patient to explain that she had indeed been treated for scurvy previously and 'had been cured in the Archduke's palace in the Low Countries two years

---

<sup>49</sup> Leonello Vittori, *De aegritudinibus infantium tractatus* (Venice: Erasmus, Valgrisius, 1557) <http://books.google.co.uk/books?id=8Ao8AAAACAAJ>, accessed 26 April 2015, p.115.

<sup>50</sup> Amatus Lusitanus, *Curatationum medicinalium centuriae quatuor, quarum duae priores ab auctore sunt recognite, duae posteriores nunc primum edite* (Basel: Froben, 1556) <http://books.google.com/books?id=nm23CNbcS58C>, accessed 23 October 2014, p. 313.



previously'.<sup>51</sup> Hall also noted the patient's pride at carrying out his instructions to take exercise. He saw her at a relative's house and 'she thanked me greatly, and said she had walked three miles'.<sup>52</sup> Hall also showed pleasure in treatments which both cured a patient and resulted in a successful outcome to pregnancy. He referred to a 'beautiful baby' twice, in the reports on Mrs Combe (Case 130) and again on the Countess of Northampton (Case 144):

She bore a beautiful daughter afterwards, and meeting in passing, I saw her carrying her beautiful daughter in her arms. She declared that she gave thanks to God and to me for her, because she had not thought that she could survive.<sup>53</sup>

Here and in similar reports Hall showed a personal and sympathetic interest in his patients' histories and outcomes. This is also evident in his comments on the death of Lady Browne's daughter (Case 106) which 'arose from the death of her beloved, beautiful and devout daughter, whose life (a year previously) changed to death in childbirth, and she sleeps peacefully with the Lord'.<sup>54</sup>

A rather different theme in Hall's manuscript is his applications of theory to his diagnoses and treatment. I use theory here in a fairly wide and general sense, to refer to any writing on causes of disease or differential diagnosis, as opposed to therapy of a specific illness. Readers of *Select Observations* may be forgiven

---

<sup>51</sup> *Libellus*, p. /86/: respondit generosa, duabus ab hinc annis in Hollandea in Aula Archiducis curare.

<sup>52</sup> *Libellus*, p. /87/: ingentis mihi reddebat gratias et dixit se ambulare tres mille passus.

<sup>53</sup> *Libellus*, p. /137/: postea filiam peperit formosam, et me obiter illuc veniente in ulnis filiam formosam gestentem vidi, et dixit Deo et mihi gratias pro ea dabat, nam sentiebat se vivere non potuisse.

<sup>54</sup> *Libellus*, pp. /91-92/: Haec omnia ex morte filiae charae, /92/ formosa et religiosa accidebant, quae vitam (anno ab hinc) cum morte mutavit in puerpera et placide cum Domino dormit; Hall refers to the daughtere again in another consultation with Lady Browne (Case 162), *Libellus*, p. /162/.

for thinking that Hall had little interest in this, an impression which is largely an artefact of Cooke's editing. By my count the manuscript contains twenty references to theory as defined above. These are found in fifteen case reports.<sup>55</sup> Of these, Cooke omitted all but three (Cases 4, 112, 175) from *Select Observations* and in only one (Case 112) translated the passage completely.

Hall made most references to theory in relation to the diagnosis of scurvy, mainly using Sennert and Eugalenus as his sources. These references are placed in texts at points where Hall is discussing his diagnosis and before proceeding to treatment. In two reports Hall gave references to the causes of scurvy.<sup>56</sup> In another three he referred to differential diagnoses, distinguishing between scorbutic symptoms and conditions mimicking them.<sup>57</sup> A sixth explains an unusual event, the occurrence of epilepsy during recovery from scurvy.<sup>58</sup> The final two cases contain borrowings which describe the pathogenesis of scurvy caused by blockage of the meseraic veins and how melancholy vapours produced around the spleen spread the disease to all parts of the body.<sup>59</sup>

In a different way, Hall appended borrowings relating to theory at the end of three reports. Mr Dyson (Case 16) suffered from abdominal pain relieved by eating, rather than brought on by it. Hall borrowed two paragraphs from a lengthy review of this unusual presentation from da Monte's *Consultationum*.<sup>60</sup> Jacob

---

<sup>55</sup> Cases 4, 16, 106, 112, 113, 121, 133, 150, 154, 162, 164, 165, 167, 174, 175.

<sup>56</sup> Cases 154, 165.

<sup>57</sup> Cases 106, 150, 167.

<sup>58</sup> *Libellus*, p. /113/.

<sup>59</sup> *Libellus*, Cases 150, 162, pp. /144/, /159/.

<sup>60</sup> *Libellus*, p. /14-15/.

Ballard's treatment for bloody flux (Case 112) finishes with a borrowing from Croll's *Basilica Chymica* listing the differences between dysentery, lyentery and diarrhoea.<sup>61</sup> The report on Katherine Sturley (Case 133), who complained of blood in the urine without pain, concludes with a list of Hippocratic aphorisms commenting on this presentation. Hall's source for these was Willich's *Urinarum probationes*.<sup>62</sup>

What these examples show is that Hall did not draw on more theoretically orientated authors even when including theory in his reports. He took it from the same practical texts as he used for his therapies. He gave no explanation as to why he wanted to include theory in some reports, so the suggestions below can only be speculative.

In relation to scurvy, Hall's references to Sennert and Eugeleus may have been intended (if his book had been published in his lifetime as he intended) to bolster his standing as a specialist in scurvy compared to other physicians. His borrowings and references emphasise his ownership and use of the best available texts on the subject. However important empirical observation might be, it had to be applied in the context of up-to-date book-learning in the traditional style if it was to play a part in establishing his credibility.

The reports in which Hall appended a text on theory at the end are different in content and style. I suggest that in these Hall is addressing himself in the first place, ensuring that he has not missed any important element in the causation and therefore

---

<sup>61</sup> *Libellus*, p. /100/.

<sup>62</sup> *Libellus*, pp. /119 - 120/.

correct treatment of the patients. This harks back to his epigraph based on one of Hippocrates' aphorisms: 'When a physician proceeds according to correct reasoning, even though he does not succeed every time, he should nevertheless persist in his course of action'. These may be reflective conclusions to reassure himself that in the context of unusual illnesses he has truly proceeded according to correct reason.

If these suggestions are correct, Hall used theoretical borrowings and references for two different reasons: to justify his claim to special knowledge of scurvy and to reassure himself (and his putative readers) that he had reasoned correctly.

What these extracts have in common is that they were all either removed entirely or drastically reduced by Cooke in *Select Observations*. This gives the text a very much less personal tone, more detached and clinical, while also making Hall more empirical and less dependent on texts. They show Hall as documenting his ability to make correct diagnoses in the correct way and also a man of emotions and feelings, concerned for his standing with colleagues and sympathetic to his patients in their sorrow and joy.

## **5. APPENDICES**

Four appendices follow the critical edition.

Appendix A describes the methodology used to identify Hall's borrowings.

Appendix B lists the patients for whom I have suggested a change in identification or personal details from those given by Joan

Lane.<sup>63</sup> It also gives the reasons for my changes. Lane's identifications are for the most part unchanged, and I have used her information on dates of consultation extensively in Chapter 2.

Appendix C contains a list of the compounds Hall used, listed by the name used in the *Little Book* followed by the Latin equivalent and referencing a published source, usually a pharmacopoeia. This is intended to provide access to details of ingredients and manufacture if required, and does not imply that they are Hall's sources. Simples are not listed as they can be found in any of the standard pharmacopoeias of the period.

Appendix D contains a glossary of technical medical and pharmaceutical terms. I have not included an explanation of the Galenic humoral system which was the basis of Hall's pathology, as this is widely available in general texts on early modern medicine.<sup>64</sup> Hall used a wide variety of words to indicate different varieties of fever (recurrent illnesses possibly but not necessarily associated with high temperature) and these may be unfamiliar. Hall also uses a number of words overlapping with present-day concepts but different in meaning (e.g. diabetes). I have taken descriptions of such words mostly from English books of Hall's time, to convey a

---

<sup>63</sup> Lane, *John Hall*; patient identification details are contained in her commentary on each case.

<sup>64</sup> See: Mary Lindemann, *Medicine and Society in Early Modern Europe*, 2nd edn (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 2010) pp, 13-19; Nancy Siraisi, *Medieval and Early Renaissance Medicine: an Introduction to Knowledge and Practice* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press: 1990) pp. 104-106, 97-106; Andrew Wear, *Knowledge and Practice in English Medicine, 1550-1680* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000). For detailed discussion of the contrasts between different schools of thought in Hall's period, see Maclean, *Logic, Signs and Nature*. It should be remembered that the humoral system was extremely complex, and that these are no more than brief summaries. For a good description of other elements of Galenic physiology and pathology than humoral, see Ian Johnston, *Galen: On Diseases and Symptoms* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 2006).

sense of the meaning without introducing later interpretations. The most commonly used sources are *The Method of Physick* by Philip Barrough (active circa 1590) and *Praxis Medicinae, or the Physicians Practice* by Walter Bruele (active around the end of the sixteenth century).<sup>65</sup> Bruele's original Latin text was owned and well used by Hall, so is an appropriate source. A small number of other books have been used where necessary.

---

<sup>65</sup> Philip Barrough, *the Method of Physick, containing the Causes, Signes and Cures of Inward Diseases in Mans Body, from the Head to the Foot [...] sixth edition* (London: Richard Field, 1624); Walter Bruel, *Praxis Medicinae, or, the Physicians Practice, wherein are contained inward Diseases from the head to the foote* (London: William Sheares, 1639).

## **THE CRITICAL EDITION**

## **THE *LIBELLUS***



**THE *LITTLE BOOK***

## /Epigraphs/

Qui sine via et methodo medicinam facit, is *sine clavo et remis*  
*navigat*.<sup>1</sup>

Medico *secundum rectam rationem procedenti*, tametsi singula non  
5 succedat: iis tamen quae acta sunt insistendum.<sup>2</sup>  
*Patienter ferendum, quod non festinanter auferendum*.<sup>3</sup>

## /1/ Sanitas a Domino.

10

*Curationum historicarum et empiricarum, in certis locis et*  
*notis personis expertarum et probatarum, libellus*.<sup>4</sup>

15

[Case 1] Comitissa Northamptoniensis circa  
aetatis annum 44, anno Domini 1622, Martii vi.

Pia, pulchra, casta, egregie dotata et optime morata, attamen non  
bono ingenio. Ut in cubiculum ambularet, subito in deliquium  
animae incidebat, absque omni motu et sensu per dimidium paene  
20 horae. Facie in scirpeam tabulationem contusa et vulnerata, inde  
inflammatione exorta, ex qua rheumatis ex oculis destillatio magna  
et molesta, quae totam faciem excutaneam et ulceratam reddebat et

---

<sup>1</sup>Fernel, *Therapeutices Universalis*, p. 38: Itaque sine clavo et remis navigat, naufragium tandem facturum qui nulla temporum observatione medicinam facit. | <sup>2</sup>A reworking of Hippocrates, aphorism 52, book II: the wording differs from all the standard versions, and may be Hall's own. There is an echo of Marcus Aurelius, *De vita sua*, lib.XII. | <sup>3</sup>Adams, *Mystical Bedlam: or, the World of Mad-Men*, p. 68. | <sup>4</sup>Based on the titles of Ruland the Elder's series of texts: *Curationum empyricarum et historicarum, in certis locis et notis personis optime expertarum, et rite probatarum, centuriae decem*.

---

5 succedat] succedant.

### /Epigraphs/

Whoever practises medicine without direction and method, *sails without rudder or oars.*

When a physician *proceeds according to correct reasoning*, even  
5 though he does not succeed every time, he should nevertheless persist in his course of action.

*One must bear patiently what one cannot immediately lay aside.*

/1/ Health is from the Lord.

10

*A Little Book of Cures Described in Case Histories and  
Empirically Proven, Tried and Tested in Specified Places  
and on Identified People*

15

[Case 1] The [first] Countess of Northampton:  
about 44 years old. 6 March 1622.

She is pious, good-looking, modest, well endowed and of excellent character though not very talented. While walking in her chamber she fainted suddenly, and lay without any movement or sense for  
20 almost half an hour. She bruised and cut her face on the rush flooring, then developed an inflammation leading to a copious and troublesome flow of rheum from the eyes, which rendered her whole

---

**2** Whoever... 7 aside] S.O. omits [NOTE: throughout the apparatus, S.O. refers to *Select Observations*, 2nd edition, 1679. **11** A Little Book] S.O.: Cures Historical and Empirical, experienced on Eminent Persons in desperate diseases. **15** Case 1] S.O.: Observ. I [First Century], pp. 1-3. | The first Countess of Northampton] In the MS this case does not have a separate heading. **20** rush flooring] S.O.: the frame of a Table.

deformabat. Cachexia et scorbuto diu laboravit. Vixit tunc temporis in Castro Wallico Ludlowe.

Ad quam accersitus, integre ipsam liberavi, Dei nutu et sequentibus praesidiis:

- 5 *R: foliorum senae unc.i, agarici dr.iii, rhabarbari dr.ii, cinamomi unc.i.s. Infundantur per horas xii secundum artem in vini albi libras iii. Deinde colantur per saccum laneum [...] sexties vel septies, et dulcorentur lib.s /2/ sacchari optimi in modum nectaris.*<sup>5</sup> Dosis unc.v bis in die, mane stomacho ieiuno, et circa horam quartam
- 10 pomeridianam. Optime et sine torminibus purgata, 5 vel 6, et sic successive per 4 dies. Pro fluxu rheumatis refraenando, faciem illinire unguento albo camphorato iubebam. Facies 4 dierum spacio sanata.

- Nondum satis corpus purgatum, pilulis sequentibus iterum
- 15 purgata optime:
- R: pilularum Ruffi, de succino Cratonis ana partes aequales. Ex dr.i fiant pilulae 7. Hora cubitus iii devorari iubebam (sed quod mirum est, manducabat. Dixit se nunquam pilulam etiamsi parvam devorare potuit) et sic optime devorabat. Singulo die sequenti 6 vel*
- 20 *7 sedes, et sic bis in septimana. Die quietis usa est electuario chalybeato Cratonis cum sale cochleariae et absinthii et coralli, et omni 3<sup>a</sup> nocte pilulas praedictas manducabat sine fastidio aut nausea. In iusculo hae herbae antiscorbuticae impositae fuerunt (nam medicamenta scorbutica cum ceteris admiscenda semper cum*

---

<sup>5</sup>Ranzau, *De conservanda*, pp. 63-64: Rec. foliorum senae Alexandr. recentium abiectis stipitibus unc.i, rhabarbari drachmas iii. Agarici electi drachmas iii. Cinnamomi electi unciam unam semis. Infundantur per horas xii secundum artem in sextariis duobus repentis vini Rhenensis optimi. Deinde colentur per saccum laneum (quem manicam Hippocratis vocant) sexies aut septies, et dulcorentur lib.semis sacchari optimi in modum nectaris.

face torn and ulcerated, and disfigured her. She has suffered from wasting and scurvy for a long time. She was then living at the Welsh Castle in Ludlow.

I was summoned to her and freed her entirely, by God's will  
5 and the following remedies:

*R: senna leaves 1oz, agaric 3dr, rhubarb 2dr, cinnamon 1½oz.*

*Infuse according to practice in 3 pints white wine for twelve hours.*

*Then strain six or seven times through a woollen bag and sweeten*

*with ½lb /2/ of good sugar in the form of nectar. Dose: 5oz twice a*  
10 *day, on an empty stomach in the morning and about four o'clock in*  
*the afternoon.<sup>1</sup> She was purged five or six times, very well and*  
*without colic, and continued the course for the next four days. To*  
*control the flow of rheum, I instructed her to rub camphorated*  
*white ointment on her face. It healed within four days.*

15 As her body was not yet adequately purged, she was very well  
purged again with the following pills:

*R: pills - Ruffus's, Crato's amber, in equal amounts. Make 7 pills*  
*from 1dr. I prescribed 3 to be taken at bedtime (but this was*  
*strange, she chewed them. She said she never could swallow a pill,*

20 *even a small one) and she took them very well in this way. On the*  
*following day: six or seven stools, and continue twice a week. On*  
*quiet days she used Crato's steeled electuary with salts of scurvy-*  
*grass, wormwood and coral. Every third night she chewed the*

---

<sup>1</sup>Clocks were becoming a feature of well-to-households in Hall's lifetime so this way of expressing time is not anachronistic: Neil MacGregor, *Shakespeare's Restless World* (Allen Lane: London, 2012) pp. 215-219.

---

**8** woollen bag] S.O.: an Ippocras bag. **21** On quiet days] S.O.: those days she took not the pills. **23** Every third night] S.O.: omits.

sit aliqua scorbuti suspitio<sup>6</sup>) cochlearia, becabunga, nasturtium aquaticum, buglossa et ceterae eiusdem farinae.

Biream /3/ antiscorbuticam talem praescripsi:

- R:** cochleariae M.4, nasturtii aquatici, becabungae ana M.ii,  
5 absinthii M.i, agrimoniae, betonicae, fumiterrae, germandri  
ana M.i, radicum foeniculi, boraginis, cichorii ana unc.i,  
enulae campanae unc.s, liquiritiae unc.i, florum boraginis,  
buglossae, rosmarini ana p.ii. Bulliant in congiis 5 cervisiae,  
cum sequentibus sacculo inclusis: sarsaparillae, calami  
10 aromatici, cinamomi, macis, seminum anisi, foeniculi ana  
unc.s, baccarum iuniperi unc.8. Post ebullitionem, reservatur  
sacculus et suspendatur in birea flores cervisiarii, prius doliolo  
exonerati. Post 15 dies erit potus ad bibendum salutaris, et  
sic, omni alio potu interdicto per totum Aprilem, de hoc solo  
15 bibere vellem.

Dum birea ad bibendum idonea erat decoctione sequenti  
usa:

- R:** sarsaparillae unc.ii, guaiaci unc.i, radicis sassaphras dr.ii.  
Macerentur per noctem in lib.xv aquae fontanae. Die sequenti adde  
20 cochleariae M.ii, becabungae, nasturtii aquatici ana M.i, betonicae,  
agrimoniae ana M.s. Bulliant ad 10.lib. Fine ebullitionis, adde  
passularum Corintharum unc.ii, seminum coriandri praeparatorum  
dr.i. Finita ebullitione aufer ab igne et adde cinamomi contusi dr.i.  
Colentur per manicam. Capiat /4/ in lecto unc.vi calide.  
25 *Composito corpore ad sudationem levem, tecto capite et collo, linteis*

---

<sup>6</sup>A similar idea, though not in the same words, is found in Matthaeus Martini, 'De Scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus* p. 708: semper etiam admixtis iis, quae scorbuto sunt dicata, illiusque malitiam infringere possunt [see also /102/].

above pills without disgust or nausea. These antiscorbutic herbs  
(because scorbutic medicines should always be added with others  
when there may be some suspicion of scurvy) were put in her broth:  
scurvy-grass, brooklime, watercress, bugloss and other stuff of the  
5 same sort.

**/3/** I prescribed antiscorbutic beer of this sort:

**R:** scurvy-grass 4 handfuls, watercress, brooklime each 2 handfuls,  
wormwood 1 handful, agrimony, betony, fumitory, germander each  
1 handful, fennel, borage, chicory roots each 1oz, elecampane ½oz,  
10 liquorice 1oz, borage, bugloss, rosemary flowers each 2 pinches.  
Boil in 5 gallons beer, with the following in a bag: sarsaparilla,  
sweet flag, cinnamon, mace, aniseed, fennel each ½oz, juniper  
berries 8oz. After boiling remove the bag and suspend in the beer  
brewer's yeast previously discharged from a barrel. After fifteen  
15 days the beer will be wholesome for drinking, so I wished her to  
drink it alone, forbidding all other drink for the whole of April.

Until the beer was ready for drinking she used the following  
decoction:

**R:** sarsaparilla 2oz, guaiacum 1oz, sassaphras root 2dr. Soak  
20 overnight in 15 pints spring water. The next day add scurvy-grass  
2 handfuls, brooklime, watercress each 1 handful, betony,  
agrimony, each ½ handful. Reduce by boiling to 10 pints. After  
boiling, add currants 2oz, prepared coriander seeds 1dr. When  
boiled, remove from the fire, add bruised cinnamon 1dr. Strain  
25 through a sleeve. Take **/4/** 6oz hot, in bed. *Prepare the body for a*

---

**2** because...scurvy] S.O. omits. **8** agrimony betony] S.O. omits. **11** beer] S.O.  
adds: till one be wasted. **19** Soak] S.O. adds: slice and bruise them.  
**25** sleeve] S.O.: a Hippocras bag.

*calidis leviter obvoluto. Corpus a sudatione siccis linteis mundis non admodum mollibus, sed asperiusculis abstergendum.*<sup>7</sup> Potus ordinarius ex secunda decoctione. In diebus in quibus non sudet, capiat succi cochleariae rite praeparati, coch. sex in praedicto potu, et in iusculo sal cochleariae.

His remediis, Laus Deo Optimo Maximo, rite curata, praeter expectationem Comititis et amicorum. Ludlowe.

10

[Case 2] *Pro illustrissimo heroi ac Domino,  
Gulielmo Comite Northamptoniensis, Consilii  
Maiestatis Regiae in Wallia praesidi dignissimo:*  
ardore urina laborante, 1622 Aprilis 4.<sup>8</sup>

- 15 **R:** florum cassiae noviter extractarum unc.i, terebinthinae lotae dr.i, rhabarbari sc.i, liquiritiae sc.s. Misce cum saccharo, fiat bolus.  
**R:** malvae M.i, liquiritiae unc.i. Bulliant in lib.ii lactis vaccini. Colaturae adde /5/ syrupi altheae Fernelii unc.vi. Capiat omni mane unc.4 vel 5, et hora cubitus devoret in pomo sub cineribus  
20 cocto, dr.s terebinthinae Cypri in forma pilulae.

Et sic cito rite curatus. Ludlowe.

---

<sup>7</sup>Solenander, *Consilliorum* [...] *Solenandri*, p. 258: composito corpore ad sudationem levem, ventriculo tecto capiteque et collo, linteis calidis leviter obvoluto. Corpus a sudatione siccis linteis mundis, non admodum mollibus, sed asperiusculum abstergendum. | <sup>8</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, f. 2r: Illustrissimo heroi ac Domino D. Henrico Comiti Huntintoniensi, Hastingueae Domino, etc, Consilii Maiestatis Regia in parte Boreali Praesidi dignis.[see p. /75/].



*light sweat, with the head and neck covered, wrapped in hot smooth sheets. The body should be wiped dry of sweat with dry clean cloths, not too soft but slightly rough.* Her usual drink was the second decoction. On the days on which she does not sweat, take  
5 properly prepared scurvy-grass juice, 6 spoonfuls in the above drink, and salt of scurvy-grass in broth.

By these remedies, praise almighty God most high, she was properly cured beyond the expectation of the Earl and her friends at Ludlow.

10

[Case 2] *Concerning the most illustrious hero and Lord, William [first] Earl of Northampton, most worthy President of His Majesty's Royal Council of Wales,* suffering from burning urine.

15

4 April 1622.

**R:** newly extracted cassia flowers 1oz, washed turpentine 1dr, rhubarb 1sc, liquorice ½sc. Mix with sugar. Make a bolus.

**R:** mallows 1 handful, liquorice 1oz. Boil in 2 pints cow's milk. To the strained liquid **/5/** add Fernel's marsh mallow syrup 6oz. Take  
20 4 or 5oz every morning and at bedtime swallow Cyprus turpentine, in the form of a pill cooked in an apple under ashes.

Thus he was quickly and rightly cured. At Ludlow.

---

**11** Case 2] *S.O. Observ. II* [First Century], pp. 3-4. | Concerning... 14 urine] *S.O.*: William, Earle of Northampton, labouring of the heat of the urine.

**15** 1622] *S.O.* adds: was cured as followeth. **22** At Ludlow] *S.O.* adds: at that time being President of Wales, and Councillor to the King.

[Case 3] Mistress Smith opidana, pia et honesta,  
aetatis 54: rheumate calido in oculis destillante,  
misere divexata ut mane oculos aperire non  
potuit.

- 5     **R:** pilularum de succino Cratonis dr.s. Fiant pilulae N.iii. Capiat  
hora cubitus, et sic per 4 noctes: omni die 4 vel vi sedes sine dolore.

Topicum:

- R:** succi sempervivi coch.i, vini albi coch.ii. Gutta una vel altera in  
oculos instilletur, deinde pannus lineus in eo madefactus per totam  
10     noctem collocandus super oculos. Magnum sentiebat levamen  
calore mitigato.

Instillare iubebam aquam sequentem in oculis:

- R:** *sarcocollae nutritae dr.iii, tutiae praeparatae dr.ii, aloes dr.i,  
sacchari candi dr.i.s, camphorae gr.4, [...] croci gr.iii, aquae rosarum*  
15     *unc.iiii. Misce, macerentur diu, saepe agitando.*<sup>9</sup> Una vel altera  
gutta in oculos ter in die destillata.

Curata.

- [Case 4] **/6/** Magister Wilsune theologus  
20     opidanus, fluxu oculi seu de lachrymatione  
misere divexatus; aetatis 40.

**R:** pilularum de succino dr.i, aurearum dr.s, trochischati agarici  
sc.i. Cum syrupo de betonica, fiant pilulae 10. Capiat 5 hora  
somni: die sequenti vi sedes. Reiterentur iterum hora cubitus.

---

<sup>9</sup>Platter, *Praxeos ... de doloribus*, p. 310: **R:** sarcocollae nutritae dr.iiii, tutiae  
praepar. dr.ii, aloes dr.i, sacchari candi dr.i.s, camphorae gr.iiii, opii gr.iii,  
croci gr.iii, aq. ros. unc.iiii. Misce, macerentur diu, saepe agitando: utere.

[Case 3] Mrs Smith of Stratford upon Avon:

pious and respected. age: 54. She was

wretchedly tormented by a hot rheum trickling

from her eyes, so that she could not open them

5 in the morning.

**R:** Crato's amber pills ½dr. Make 3 pills. Take them at bedtime.

Continue for four nights: four to six stools each day, without pain.

For external use:

**R:** houseleek juice 1 spoonful, white wine 2 spoonfuls. Instill one or

10 two drops in the eyes, then place a cloth soaked in it over the eyes,

all night. She felt great relief when the heat was alleviated.

I instructed her to instil the following water into the eyes:

**R:** *preserved sarcocol 3dr, prepared tutty 2dr, aloes 1dr, sugar*

*candy 1½dr, camphor 4gr, saffron 3gr, rose water 4oz. Mix. Soak a*

15 *long while, stirring frequently.* One or two drops were dripped into

her eyes three times daily.

Cured.

[Case 4] /6/ Mr Wilson, Vicar of Stratford

20 upon Avon:<sup>2</sup> wretchedly troubled by a flux from

the eye, as if weeping. Age: 40.

**R:** pills - amber 1dr, aureae ½dr, trochischated agaric 1sc. Make 10

pills with betony syrup. Take 5 at bedtime: the next day, six stools.

---

<sup>2</sup>Vicar from 1619 to 1638: Lane, *John Hall*, pp. 9-11.

---

**1** Case 3] *S.O.*: Observ. III [First Century], pp. 4-5. **9** spoonfuls] *S.O.* adds: mix them together. **10** cloth] *S.O.*: a double linnen rag. **14** Soak a long while] *S.O.*: letting them stand a day. **15** One...daily] *S.O.* omits. **19** Case 4] *S.O.*: Observ. IV [First Century], p. 5. **21** Age 40] *S.O.* adds: was cured by the following medicines.

Topicum:

*R: boli Armeni unc.s, gypsi dr.iii, sanguinis draconis, acaciae ana  
dr.ii, corticis granatorum, gallarum ana dr.i. Fiat pulvis. Excipitur  
albumine ovi et pauco aceto rubro. Fiat emplastrum pro temporibus  
et fronte.*<sup>10</sup>

*R: boli Armeni, gypsi ana, cum aceto et albumine ovi, fiat  
emplastrum. Post aures applicare vellem.*

Super oculum:

*R: albuminem ovi agitatum, adde tantundem aquae rosarum et lactis  
mulieris parum.*<sup>11</sup> Applicetur oculo. Ter in die gutta una vel altera  
instilletur aquae ophthalmicae nostrae, ut pro Generosa Smith,  
folio /5/. Paulo post, per spacium forte minutorum horae unius  
decem amaritudinem in palato sentiebat egregiam [...] Tandem  
cognovi exploratumque habui sarcocollae saporem ipsissimum esse  
qui per oculum omnesque occurrentes partes in palatum usque  
venisset.<sup>12</sup>

Et his remediis curatus. Benedictus Dominus.

[Case 5] /7/ Mistress Bettles de Ludlowe, tussi  
gravi et asthmate cum dolore lateris gravata,  
aetatis 50.

*R: conservae rosarum rubrarum unc.ii, passularum solis demptis  
gigartis unc.i, sacchari candi unc.i, oleorum vitrioli et sulphuris ana  
quantum satis ut acidum. Fiat electuarium. Dosis mane et vesperi  
quantum nucis moschati.*

<sup>10</sup>Platter, *Praxeos ... De Doloribus*, p. 300. | <sup>11</sup>Platter, *Praxeos ... De Doloribus*, p. 305:  
*R: album. ovi unius mediocris, agitatum: adde tantundem aquae ros. et lactis  
mulieris parum.* | <sup>12</sup>Dunus, *De Curandi Ratione per Venae Sectionem*, p. 44.

<sup>6</sup> ana] no quantities specified.

Repeat again at bedtime.

For external use:

*R: bole Armeniac ½oz, gypsum 3dr, dragon's blood, acacia each 2dr, pomegranate rind, galls each 1dr. Make a plaster for the temples and forehead using egg white and a little red vinegar as excipients.*

*R: bole Armeniac, gypsum each. Make a plaster with vinegar and egg white. I wished it applied behind the ears.*

Over the eye:

*R: beaten egg white, add the same amount of rose water and a little woman's milk. Apply to the eye. Instil 1 or 2 drops of our ophthalmic water as for Mrs Smith, page /5/, three times daily. It happened that after a space of ten minutes of an hour he tasted a strong bitterness on his palate. Then I enquired and investigated. I consider the taste to be the very same sarcocol which came from the eye, through all the intervening parts, all the way to the palate.*

He was cured by these remedies. Blessed be the Lord.

[Case 5] /7/ Mrs Bettes of Ludlow: weighed

down by severe cough and difficulty of

breathing, with pain in the side. Age: 50.

*R: Conserve of red roses 2oz, raisins without seeds 1oz, sugar candy 1oz, oils of vitriol and sulphur enough of each for tartness. Make an electuary. Dose: morning and evening, as much as a nutmeg.*

---

**19** Case 5] *S.O.*: *Observ. V* [First Century], pp. 6-7. **21** Age 50] *S.O.* adds: was thus cured.

*R: thuris, masticis ana dr.i.s, sulphuris dr.ii.s, ligni iuniperi sc.ii, styracis sc.i, terebinthinae quantum satis. Fiat massa pro suffumigio. Tempore usus pilula una vel altera vivis carbonibus immittatur, fumusque per fistulam convenientem ore excipiat, et*  
5 *tegmen capitis eo suffiatur: placide superfluam cerebri exiccat humiditatem.*<sup>13</sup>

In dolorem stomachi:

*R: labdani partem i, cerae partes ii, specierum aromaticum rosatum Gabrielis quantum satis, et parum carannae. Fiat emplastrum.*

10 Pro lateris dolore:

*R: unguenti dialtheae unc.ii, olei amygdalarum dulcium dr.ii. Illinantur calide latus affectum et postea in loco inuncto imponatur linteolum calidum butyro perlitum.*<sup>14</sup>

15 His longe melius se habuit, postea sequentibus per longum tempus usa:

*R: aquae stillititiae ex tussilagine, hedera terrestri, verbasco, veronica, enula, iacea, /8/ id est herba trinitatis, millemorbia, id est scrophularia maiora, scabiosa, hyssopo, floribus cordialibus, marrubio, adiantho utriusque iride Florentina, radice angelicae,*  
20 *saponaria. R huius aquae lib.12, interiores guaiaci unc.12, sarsaparillae lib.s, radice ireos unc.ii, chynae in talleolas sectae unc.iii, radice enulae dr.iii, adianthi, veronicae ana M.i, glycyrrhizae unc.ii, anisi unc.i, passularum enucleatarum unc.vi. Coquantur in duplici vase, colentur, clarificetur decoctum. Dosis*  
25 *bis vel ter in die, haustum bonum in patera. Singulis noctibus ad*

---

<sup>13</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 182. | <sup>14</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 540: Unguentum ad laterum dolorem. *R:* Ung. dialtheae uncias duas, ol. amygdalar. dulcium drachmas tres. Misce. Illinantur calide latata affecta, et post locis inunctis imponatur linteolum calidum butyro perlitum.

*R: frankincense, mastic, each 1½dr, sulphur 2½dr, juniper wood  
2scs, styrax 1sc, sufficient turpentine. Make a lump for fumigation.*

*At the time of use, put one or two pieces on glowing coals, and lead  
the smoke to the mouth by a suitable tube. The skin of the head*

5 *should be fumigated. This gently dries up the superfluous humour of  
the brain.*

For stomach pain:

*R: labdanum 1 part, wax 2 parts, sufficient Gabrieli's aromatic rose  
powder and a little caranna. Make a plaster.*

10 For pain in the side:

*R: marsh mallow ointment 2oz, sweet almond oil 2dr. Spread it  
warm on the affected side, and afterwards put a hot cloth smeared  
with butter on the anointed part.*

She became much better, then afterwards used the following  
15 for a long time:

*R: distilled waters of coltsfoot, ground-ivy, mullein, speedwell,  
elecampane, knapweed /8/ (i.e., herb trinity), figwort (i.e.,  
scrophularia major), scabious, hyssop, the cordial flowers,  
horehound, maiden-hair ferns, either orris root, roots of angelica or  
20 soapwort. R: 12 pints of this water, inner guaiacum 12oz,  
sarsaparilla ½lb, orris root 2oz, china cut in small pieces 3oz,  
elecampane root 3dr, maiden-hair, speedwell each 1 handful,  
liquorice 2oz, anise 1oz, stoned raisins 6oz. Boil in a double vessel,  
strain. Clarify the decoction. Dose: a good draught in a bowl, two*

25 *or three times daily. Each night: conserve of red roses to the*

---

**2** Make a lump] S.O.: make a past, which frame into what figure pleaseth. **4** The  
skin of the head should be fumigated] S.O.: her head being covered. **9** plaster] S.O.  
adds: spred upon leather. **20** soapwort] S.O. adds: and water-betony. | inner] S.O.  
omits.

iuglandis magnitudinem, conservam rosarum rubrarum cum bolo electuarii ad sc.ii ad unc.i conservae.

Idque saepius in die hauriat zulapium ex destillatione sequenti:

- 5     **R:** limacum praeparatorum lib.i, taleolarum ex pane albissimo lib.s, luteorum ovorum N.30, cremoris lactis lib.4, cinamomi unc.ii, sacchari electi lib.ii, vini muscadelli lib.ii. Fiat omnium destillatio in duplici vase et saepius haustum huius aquae assumat, cum manu Christi perlata et aliquando lohoch sequenti:
- 10    **R:** lohoch sani et experti unc.ii, penidiaram unc.ii, syrupi capillorum veneris, hyssopii, liquiritiae, tussilaginis ana unc.i, radicis angelicae, radicis enulae conditae ana unc.s, radicis ireos dr.i. Adde ad unc.4 huius linctus florum sulphuris dr.ii.

- His spacio 5 septimanarum curata. Postea, nescio quo morbo,
- 15    obiit.

[Case 6] /9/ Icteritiae citrinae cum febre 3  
curatio, pro serva Generosi Nash quae in Insigni  
Ursae commorabatur, aetatis 28.

- 20    **R:** vini scillitici unc.s, oxymellis scillitici dr.i, poculi chymici nostri unc.s: vomitos 7.<sup>15</sup>
- R:** rhabbari pulverisati dr.i, electuarii diaphaeniconis dr.iii, pulveris senae laxativae dr.s, syrupi de succo rosarum unc.i, aquae chelidonii unc.iii. Misce: 8 sedes.

---

<sup>15</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria V.', *Curationum: poculum nostrum chymicum* is described on pp. 281 and 303-304.



amount of a walnut with a bolus of the electuary, from 1sc. to 1oz of the conserve.

She should often drink a julep of the following distillation during the day:

- 5     **R:** prepared snails 1lb, good white breadcrumbs ½lb, 30 egg whites, cream of milk 4 pints, cinnamon 2oz, choice sugar 2lb, muscadell wine 2 pints. Make a distillation of everything in a double vessel. She should take a draught of this water often with pearled manus Christi, and finally the following lohoch:
- 10    **R:** lohoch sanum et expertum 2oz, barley sugar 2oz, syrups of maiden-hair fern, hyssop, liquorice, coltsfoot each 1oz, angelica and preserved elecampane roots each ½oz, orris root 1dr. Add flowers of sulphur 2dr, to 4oz of this linctus.

- She was cured by these within 5 weeks. Later she died. I do
- 15    not know what the illness was.

[Case 6]<sup>3</sup> **/9/** Cure of yellow jaundice with tertian fever: for Mr Nash's serving-maid, who was staying at the Sign of the Bear. Age: 28.

- 20    **R:** Wine of squills ½oz, oxymel of squills 1oz, our chymical cup ½oz. Seven vomits.
- R:** powdered rhubarb 1oz, diaphoenicon electuary 3oz, laxative senna powder ½dr, syrup of rose juice 1oz, celandine water 3oz. Mix. Eight stools.

---

<sup>3</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

---

**8** manus Christi] *S.O.* adds: (now called *sacchar. tabuli perlati*). **17** Case 6] *S.O.*: Observ VI [First Century], pp. 7-8. **18** serving-maid] *S.O.*: A servant of Mr Nashes; *S.O.* has masculine pronouns throughout, though Hall definitely used feminine endings. **20** our chymical cup] *S.O.*: our emetick infusion.

Corpore rite purgato per 4 matutinas, stomacho ieiuno  
capiebat dr.i sequentis pulveris in ovo sorbili:

**R:** corticis interioris crespini, terrae meritae, rasurae eboris et cornu  
cervi ana p.i, croci p.s. Fiat pulvis.

5 Optime curata etiamsi icteritia per totum corpus sparsa.

10 [Case 7] Pouell Generosus de Ludlowe,  
ophthalmia laborante cum continuo rheumatis  
fluxu concomitante ut faciem excoriebat, neque  
lucem nec lucernam videre potuit. *Vir hic fuit  
annorum circiter 50.*<sup>16</sup>

**R:** pilulae de succino dr.s. Fiant pilulae iii: die sequenti 5 sedes, et  
15 sic per 4 dies.

**R:** masticis, thuris, myrrhae ana dr.i.s, sanguinis draconis dr.i, boli  
Armeni, farinae fabaceae ana unc.s, croci sc.i. Cum albumine ovi,  
oleo rosato et aceti pauxillum, fiat frontale. Lana telave excipiantur  
aut panno molliori iisdem imbuta, fronti accomodentur.<sup>17</sup>

20 **/10/ R:** tutiae praeparatae tenuissime pulverizatae ita ut per  
sindonem facile traici possit dr.i.s, camphorae, croci ana gr.12. Haec  
simul in syndone conclusa munda in aqua rosarum vinique albi  
unc.iii madescant. Fiat collyrium: guttae duae vel tres in oculos

---

<sup>16</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 169: vir hic fuit  
annorum circiter 60. | <sup>17</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 127: **R** mastichis, thuris,  
myrrhae ana dr.i.s., boli Armenae, farinae fabaceae ana unc.s, croci scr.i, cum  
albumine ovi, oleo rosata et aceti pauxillo, fiat frontale, lana telave  
excipiat aut panno molliori iisdem imbuto, fronti accommodentur.

After her body was properly purged on four mornings, she took 1oz of the following powder on an empty stomach, with a soft-boiled egg:

**R:** inner bark of barberry, turmeric, shavings of ivory and hartshorn  
5 each 1 pinch, saffron ½ pinch. Make a powder.

She was very well cured, even though her whole body was spotted with jaundice.

[Case 7] Mr Powell, a gentleman of Ludlow:  
10 suffering from a disease of the eyes with an  
incessant flow of rheum that excoriated his  
face. He could see neither light nor lamp. *He*  
*was about 50 years old.*

**R:** amber pills ½dr. Make 3 pills: five stools the next day, and  
15 continue the course for four days.

**R:** *mastic, frankincense, myrrh each 1½dr, dragon's blood 1dr, bole-Armeniac, bean flour each 1dr, saffron 1sc. Make a paste for the forehead with egg white, rose oil and a little vinegar. Take them up with wool or woven cloth, or soak them in a softer cloth. Apply to the*  
20 *forehead.*

**/10/ R:** *prepared tutty, very finely powdered so that it can easily pass through muslin, 1½dr, camphor, saffron each 12gr. Soak them together enclosed in clean muslin, in rose water and white wine, 3oz.*

---

5 pinch<sup>1</sup>] S.O.: of each a like quantity. | pinch<sup>2</sup>] S.O.: half the quantity of one of them. 9 Case 7] S.O.: Observ. VII [First Century], pp. 8-9. 14 Make... days] S.O.: the first three gave him six stools the next day. 18 Take...cloth<sup>2</sup>] S.O.: make a frontal.

*instillentur.*<sup>18</sup> *laceat in lecto, aeger supinus, et iniecta intra apertos oculos aquae lachrymae, una vel altera, cum pluma gallinae nigrae indatur; claudat reseretque oculos infirmus ut per oculorum cavitates intrusa aqua per oculum diffundatur, id bis terve in die, et*  
5 *curabitur.*<sup>19</sup> Cum hac aqua usus decoctione ex sarsaparilla et guaiacu ut supra pro Comitissa, ut folio /3/, herbis omissis.

Rite curatus spacio 20 dierum praeter amicorum et liberorum expectationem.

10

[Case 8] Mistress Chanderler opidana, aetatis 34,  
post longam aegritudinem et effraenatum  
rubeorum fluxum in cachexiam incidebat.

15 **R**: decoctionem senae ut pro Comitissa, foliis /1/ et /2/, per 5 dies.  
Venae sectione incantamenti similiter ab effraenato rubeorum fluxu curata.

Postea tres annos in puerpera rubeorum fluxu debilitata, ut mortem prae foribus expectat. Phlebotomia curata.

20

---

<sup>18</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 127: **R** tutiae praeparatae tenuissimeque pulverizatae, ita ut per sindonem facile traici possit dr.i.s camphorae gr.xii haec simul in sindone conclusa munda, in aquae rosarum vinique albi unc.iii madescant, fiat collyrium: guttae duae vel tres in oculum instillentur.

<sup>19</sup>Croll, *Basilica chymica*, p. 197: laceat in lecto aeger supinus, et iniecta intra apertos oculos aquae lachryma, vel gutta cum pluma gallinae nigre indatur, claudat reseretque oculos infirmus, ut per oculorum cavitates intrusa aqua per oculum diffundatur, id bis terve in die, et curabitur.

Make a collyrium, instill two or three drops in the eyes. The patient should lie on his back in bed, and 1 or 2 eye drops should be placed in the eyes, introduced with a feather of a black hen. The patient should close and open their eyes so that the instilled water is

5 diffused throughout the eye cavities, two or three times daily. He was cured. With this water he used the decoction of sarsaparilla and guaiacum as above for the Countess on page /3/, omitting the herbs.

He was rightly cured within twenty days, beyond the

10 expectation of his friends and servants.

[Case 8] Mrs Chandler of Stratford upon Avon,  
age 34: wasting away after a long illness and  
unbridled flux of the reds.

15 **R:** senna decoction as for the Countess, pages /1/ and /2/, for five days. She was cured of the unbridled red flux by venesection, as if by magic.

Three years later she was weakened by the red flux after child birth, so that she expects death at the door. She was cured by

20 venesection.

---

12 Case 8] S.O. Observ. VIII [First Century], p. 9.

[Case 9] /11/ Christiana Basse de Southam, aetatis 29,  
flatu stomachi et pituita misere lancinata, quae potu  
aquae vitae pro tempore ablata, mox reddiit, cum summo  
stomachi dolore ut paene suffocata, et deinde colica  
5 divexata.

R: poculi chymici dr.v, vini scillitici unc.s, *tam ore quam alvo* rite  
purgata.<sup>20</sup>

Die sequenti:

R: pulveris laureolae praeparatae cum aceto pondere vi denariorum,  
10 cum syrupo violarum et satis quantum possetalae: sedes vii.

Corpore optime purgato:

R: *theriacae Londinensis*,<sup>21</sup> Mithridatii ana dr.i, conservae absinthii  
unc.iii, pro tribus matutinis. Potus decoctum melissae, mentheae  
in aqua chalybeata.

15 His rite curata et mihi ingentes reddebat gratias, et dixit se  
nunquam postea torminibus cruciari. Laus Deo.

20 [Case 10] Generosa Wincoll, pedissequa  
Comitissae Northamptoniensis, circa aetatis  
annum 48: ani procidentia et tenasma cruciata.

R: *cammomillae M.i, vini malvatici lib.i.s. Macerentur per horam*

---

<sup>20</sup>A phrase commonly found in Ruland the Elder, *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, but rarely elsewhere, e.g.: 'Centuria I', pp. 21, 37, 43; 'Centuria II', pp. 89, 90, 141; 'Centuria III', p. 181; 'Centuria IV', p. 241, 'Centuria V', p. 346; 'Centuria X', pp. 716, 717 [See also pp. /18/, /21/, /139/. | <sup>21</sup>*Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*, p. 90.

[Case 9] /11/ Christiana Basse of Southam: age  
29, wretchedly attacked by wind and phlegm in the  
stomach. She was relieved for a time by a drink of  
distilled spirits. Her complaint soon returned with  
5 very severe stomach ache, so that she was almost  
suffocated, then tormented by colic.

**R:** the chymical cup 5dr, wine of squills ½oz. She was rightly  
purged, *upwards and downwards*.

Next day:

10 **R:** prepared laurel powder with vinegar, the weight of sixpence,<sup>4</sup>  
with syrup of violets and sufficient posset ale. Seven stools.

When the body was very well purged:

**R:** London treacle, Mithridate each 1dr, wormwood conserve 3oz, for  
three mornings. Her drink was a decoction of lemon balm and mint  
15 in stealed water.

She was rightly cured by these, and returned me great thanks  
and declared herself never afterwards tortured by these torments.  
Praise God.

20 [Case 10] Mrs Wincoll, a gentlewoman,  
companion to the [first] Countess of  
Northampton, about 48 years old: tortured by  
anal prolapse and tenesmus.

**R:** *camomile 1 handful, malmsey wine 1½ pints. Soak for one to two*

---

<sup>4</sup>Approximately 3 grams, or 2 scruples and 6 grains.

**1** Case 9] *S.O.* Observ. IX, [First Century], pp. 9-10. **7** chymical cup] *S.O.*:  
emetic wine. **20** Case 10] *S.O.*: Observ. X [First Century], p. 10.  
**21** companion] *S.O.*: chamber-maid.

unam et alteram super carbones, lento igne, foveatur anus linteis in  
eo madefactis, tam calide ut ferre poterit, et reponatur postea cum  
digito /12/ in locum proprium: tum spongeam madefacito in eodem  
vino calefacto et expresso liquore, super spongeam callidam sedeat  
5 aeger atque ipsam sedendo comprimat.<sup>22</sup>

Nota: flores cammomillae longe meliores et praestantiores, sed  
ipsa a tenasmo et procidentia ani hoc modo liberata.<sup>23</sup> Eodem  
modo curatus paedagogus Generosi Broades.

10 [Case 11] Generosa Hanberey, praeservatio faciei  
a tuberculis, pruritu excoriatione quasi lepra  
defaedata.

R: pilularum de succino dr.i hora cubitus, et sic ter corpus  
purgatum. Usa est *aqua mercuriale Penoti* ex emulsionibus

15 papaveris albi, boracis et sacchari candi.<sup>24</sup>

Huius usus facies nitida.

[Case 12] Ann Gibbs generosa, aetatis 19,  
apostematis stomachi rupti cura.

20 R: syruporum hyssopi, tussilaginis ana unc.i, oxymellis scillitici  
dr.iii, aceti scillitici dr.i. Fiat linctus de quo saepe lambebat.

Postea sic purgata:

R: cassiae noviter extractae cum aqua endiviae unc.i, rhabarbari

---

<sup>22</sup>Penot, *De denario medico*, p. 64: R florum camomillae M.i, vini malvatici lib.i.s  
macerentur per horam unam, et alteram, super carbones, lento igne, foveatur anus  
linteis in ea madefactis, tam calide ut ferre poterit, et reponatur postea cum digito in  
locum suum: tum spongiam madefacito in eodem vino calefacto, et expresso liquore,  
super spongiam calidam sedeat aeger, atque ipsam sedendo comprimat. | <sup>23</sup>As  
recommended by Penot, see fn. above. | <sup>24</sup>Penot, *De denario medico*, p. 61: a lengthy  
recipe *ad faciei tubercula* contains the ingredients mentioned.



hours over glowing coals on a slow fire. Keep the anus warm with cloths soaked in this, as hot as can be borne, then replace it in the proper place with a finger, /12/ and then with a sponge soaked in the same warm wine and the fluid squeezed out. The patient should  
5 sit on the warm sponge and squeeze it tightly when sitting.

NOTE: these did free her from the tenesmus and prolapse, but camomile flowers are much better and of higher quality. Mr Broade's tutor was cured in the same way.

10 [Case 11] Mrs Hanbury, a gentlewoman: to preserve the face from pimples. She was disfigured as if by leprosy with itchy excoriation.

R: amber pills 1dr at bedtime, and her body was purged thus three times. She took *Penot's mercury water* made with emulsions of  
15 white poppies, borax and candy sugar.

Using this cleared her face.

[Case 12] Ann Gibbs, a gentlewoman aged 19:  
cure of a ruptured stomach abscess.

20 R: hyssop and coltsfoot syrups each 1oz, oxymel of squills 3dr, vinegar of squills 1dr. Make a linctus, which she licked often.

Then she was purged thus:

R: newly extracted cassia with endive water 1oz, powdered rhubarb

---

2 cloths] S.O.: linen clothes doubled, 8 tutor] S.O.: servant. 10 Case 11] S.O.: Observ. XI [First Century], p. 11. 18 Case 12] S.O.: Observ. XIII [First Century], pp. 11-12 [S.O. has reversed the order of this and the following case]. 21 licked often] S.O. adds: with a liquoris stick.

pulverizati dr.i, aquae scabiosae unc.4, syrupi cichorii cum  
rhabarbaro unc.i. Fiat haustus: sedes viii.

℞: absinthii, rosarum, buglossi quantum satis. Cum oleo rosato et  
mastichino et viola, fiat emplastrum pro stomacho. Calide  
5 applicetur.

/13/ Postremo:

℞: radicum iridis nostri, lillii ana unc.i. Bulliant in lib.i vini albi ad  
dimidium. Bibat unc.4 mane.

Optime curata et bene colorata.

10

[Case 13] John Emes, aetatis 15, per lectum  
mingente.

Capiat gutturem galli torrefactum cum croco Martis in ovo sorbili.

Liberatus.

15

[Case 14] Francisca Reyland de Quenton,  
tempore fluendorum menstrui frigore accepto, in  
tumorem manum et pedum incidebat, ita ut se  
moveri non potuit.

20 ℞: electuarii cariocostini dr.iii, tartari crystalli sc.i. Fiat cum  
saccharo bolus, ex quo sex sedes magnas et foetidas. Deinde venae  
sectio liberata.

Relapsa post 20 dies, iterum purgata laureola praeparata, et  
postea usa potione sequenti:

25 ℞: ligni sancti lib.s, herbarum agrimoniae, becabungae, nasturtii  
aquatici, salviae, betonicae, rosmarini ana M.i. Bulliant in lib.8

---

13 Martis] ♂. 20 tartari] ♀.

1dr, scabious water 4oz, chicory syrup with rhubarb 1oz. Make a draught: 8 stools.

**R:** sufficient wormwood, roses, bugloss. Make a plaster for the stomach with oils of roses, mastic, violets. Apply hot.

5            **/13/** Finally:

**R:** roots of our iris, lilies, each 10z. Boil in 1 pint white wine, reduce to half. Drink 4oz in the morning.

She was very well cured, with a good colour.

10            [Case 13] John Emes, aged 15: urinating in bed.

Take the gullet of a rooster roasted, with crocus Martis in a soft-boiled egg.

Freed.

15            [Case 14] Francisca Reyland of Quinton:

caught a cold while menstruating and fell into a swelling of the hands and feet, so that she could not move.

**R:** caryocostinum electuary 3dr, tartar crystals 1sc. Make a bolus with sugar, from which six large foul-smelling stools. Then venesection freed her.

She relapsed after twenty days and was again purged with prepared laurel, and afterwards used the following potion:

**R:** guaiacum ½lb, green shoots of agrimony, brooklime, watercress,

---

**6** iris] *S.O.*: flower-deluce. **10** Case 13] *S.O.*: *Observ.* XII [First Century], p. 11.

**15** Case 14] *S.O.*: *Observ.* XIV, [First Century], pp. 12-13. **18** move] *S.O.* adds: She was cured as followeth. **24** green shoots of] *S.O.* omits.

aquae fontanae ad lib.4. Sub finem ebullitionis adde cinamomi dr.ii, seminum anisi dr.ii. *In aurora pondere unc.8 praelibat, quo sudor evocabitur.*<sup>25</sup>

Hora cubitus balneum ingreditur:

- 5     **R:** foliorum querci M.20, chamaemelli, salviae, rutae ana M.ii, salis lib.ii, aluminis lib.i, sulphuris vivi unc.4. Bulliant in satis quantum aquae pro balneo.

Post balneo inungantur membra hoc unguento:

- R:** unguenti Martiati unc.i, oleorum lumbricorum, terebinthinae  
10   unc.s. Misce.

Perfecte curata.

[Case 15] /14/ Generosa Hunt, aetatis 46 de

Stockgreene: scabie et pruritu laborante.

- 15   **R:** *fumiterrae, boraginis, buglossi, scabiosae, absinthii ana quantum vis. Succus extrahatur ad lib.ii quantitatem, cum sero decoquatur usque ad consumptionem seri [...] et semper despumetur, et tunc in fine praemittatur residere, et quolibet die potetur bonus haustus actualiter frigidus cum saccharo.*<sup>26</sup>

- 20         Est syrupus scabiosus Iohannis Anglici et est de secretis qui per se multos scabiosos curavit, et sic ego multos a faeda scabie liberavi.

<sup>25</sup>Amatus Lusitanus, *Curationum medicinalium centuriae quatuor*, p. 67: in aurora pondere octo unciarum praelibat, quo sudor maxime evocabatur.

<sup>26</sup>John of Gaddesden, *Praxis medica*, p. 1122: Aliud ex meis secretis, hoc est: **R:** fumi terrae, boraginis, buglossae, scabiosae, absinthii ana, succi extrahantur, ad quantitatem lib.2, cum sero caprino vel alio liquore, fiat decoctio ad consumptionem seri, quae subinde fiat et despumetur residentia materiae; de qua quolibet die M.Maio, dum durant succi praedictarum herbarum, potetur bonus haustus actualiter frigidus.

sage, betony, rosemary each 1 handful. Boil in 8 pints spring water, reduce to 4 pints. Immediately after boiling, add cinnamon 2dr, aniseed 2dr. *At dawn sip 8oz by weight, which will provoke sweating.*

5           At bedtime she took a bath:

**R:** oak leaves 20 handfuls, camomile, sage, rue each 2 handfuls, salt 2lbs, alum 1lb, rock sulphur 4oz. Boil in sufficient water for a bath.

          After the bath the limbs were anointed with this ointment:

10       **R:** Martiatum ointment 1oz, oil of worms and turpentine 1oz. Mix.

          She was completely cured.

[Case 15] **/14/** Mrs Hunt, a gentlewoman aged 46 of

Stock Green: suffering from scabs and itch.

15       **R:** fumitory, borage, bugloss, scabious, wormwood, each as much as you wish. Extract juice to make 2lbs, heat with whey until the whey is consumed, skim constantly. At the end let the residue settle. During the day drink it as you please, a good draught really cold with sugar.

20           This is John of Gaddesden's scabious syrup, and it is one of the secrets<sup>5</sup> with which he cured many of scabs. I have freed many from disfiguring scabs in the same way.

---

<sup>5</sup>Secrets: in this context, 'more about technical know-how, or "how to", than hidden knowledge'; Leong and Rankin (eds), *Secrets and Knowledge*, p. 8.

---

**3** aniseed 2dr] S.O. adds: after strain them. **13** Case 15] S.O.: Observ. XV [First Century], p. 13. | Mrs] S.O.: Mr.

[Case 16] Magister Dison, mane stomacho ieiuno  
cardialgia et deliquio animae et aegritudine  
stomachi gravatus.

5      **R:** pilularum Ruffi, de succino, stomachicae, hierae simplicis ana  
sc.i. Fiant pilulae 7 vel 9. Rite purgatus.

Postea:

**R:** Mithridatii optimi unc.s, conservae rosarum unc.i, conservae  
absinthii unc.iii, *theriacae Londinensis* dr.vi.<sup>27</sup> Misce. Detur dr.i.s  
mane.

10      Penitus liberatus.

*Mordicatio illa (secundum Iohannem Baptistam Montanum,  
Centuria i, consilio 72, folio 389) apparet circa finem concoctionis  
eamque percipit talem, ut deficere videatur, nisi cibum assumat. Hoc  
est ratione humoris acidi mordicantis, quae mordicatio facit, ut  
15      incidebat /15/ in talem defectum ex quo cibi sumpto quiescit.<sup>28</sup>  
Causa cur debilitatem ante cibum sentit, est quia cum fiant  
digestiones, membra redduntur avara, ideo venae trahunt ab hepate,  
hepar a venis mesairicis, mesaraicae a ventriculo. Facta ultima  
concoctione cum percipit ventriculus mordicationem, debilitatur quia  
20      indiget multo nutrimento tum propter humorem mordicantem, sumpto  
cibo obtunditur acrimonia humoris et hepar invenit quod attrahit, et*

---

<sup>27</sup>*Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*, p. 90. | <sup>28</sup>da Monte, *Consultationum medicinalium centuria prima*, pp. 388-389: Mordicatio apparet circa finem concoctionis eamque percipit talem, ut deficere videatur nisi cibum assumat: et hoc est ratione humoris acidi mordicantis, quae mordicatio facit, ut incidat in talem defectum: ex quo cibo sumpto quiescit.

---

**16 cum]** non [this reverses the sense which from the context was not Hall's intention].

[Case 16] Mr Dyson: weighed down by heartburn on an empty stomach in the morning, with faintness and illness of the stomach.

R: pills - Ruffus's, amber, stomachic, hierae simplex each 1sc.

5     Make 7 to 9 pills. He was rightly purged.

          Afterwards:

R: best Mithridate ½oz, rose conserve 1oz, wormwood conserve 3oz, London treacle 6dr. Mix. Give 1½dr in the morning.

          He was completely freed.

10           *This griping (according to Giovanni Battista de Monte, Centuria Prima, consultation 72, page 389) appears around the end of digestion and it feels like this, that he appears to weaken unless he takes food. This is by reason of the acid biting humour which causes griping so that he falls /15/ into such a weakness, from which he is*  
15           *calmed by the taking of food. The reason he feels the weakness before food, is because when digestion takes place, the organs become greedy. Then the veins draw on the liver, the liver on the meseraic veins, the meseraics on the stomach. When digestion is entirely completed, the stomach feels the griping. It becomes weak,*  
20           *because it requires much nourishment, moreover this is because of the griping humour. The acridity of the humour is blunted by the*

---

**1** Case 16] S.O.: Observ. XVI [First Century], p. 13. | heartburn] S.O. adds: was cured thus. **5** 7 to 9] S.O.: 7. **9** completely freed] S.O. omits the rest of this case entirely.

*venae, et tunc cessant symptomata.*<sup>29</sup>

[Case 17] Maria Heth aetatis 34 de Libington,  
5 dysenteria, catarrho, lumbagine, vermibus misere  
cruciata, et eiecta magnae crassae et foetidae per  
urinam, cum dolore renum divexata. Antea  
corpulenta et tumida, nunc macilenta.

R: rhabbarbari pulverizati dr.i.s, syrupi rosacei solutivi unc.i, aquae  
10 boraginis unc.iii. Fiat haustus.

Deinde usa glistere:

R: aquae decoctionis hordei torrefacti lib.i, olei rosacei omphacini  
unc.iii, vitelli ovi N.ii, sacchari rubri unc.i.s. Misce, fiat.

R: cerae flavae unc.s, croci Martis unc.i. Fiant lege artis globuli  
15 instar nucis moschati. *Iussi pomum integrum excavari, implerique  
cavitatem cera, et indito operculo prunis admoveri pomum, donec  
omnifariam liqueferret cera et pomi substantia intermisceretur, /16/  
tumque pomum sic praeparatum aesitare iubebam ante omnem  
cibum.*<sup>30</sup>

20 Potus chalybeatus. Panatella fiat ex hordeo torrefacto et

---

<sup>29</sup>da Monte, *Consultationum Medicinalium centuria prima*, p. 391: Causa vero cur debilitatem ante cibum sentiat, est quia cum fiant digestiones, membra redduntur avara: ideo venae trahunt ab hepate, hepar a venis mesaricis, mesaraicae a ventriculo: facta ultima concoctione cum percipit ventriculus mordicationem, debilitatur, quia indiget multo nutrimento, tum propter humorem mordicantem: sumpto cibo obtunditur acrimonia humoris, et hepar invenit quod attrahit, et venae, et tunc cessat symptoma. | <sup>30</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 139: Iussit pomum integrum et sanum excavari, implerique cavitatem cera vel alba vel citrina selectissima, et indito operculo prunis admoveri pomum, donec omnifariam liqueferret cera, et pomi substantiae intermisceretur: tumque pomum eiusmodi sic paratum esitare aegrum iubebat ante omnem cibum.

---

14 Martis] ♂.



*consumption of food, and the liver manages to get what it is drawing,  
and the veins, and then the symptoms cease.*

[Case 17] Mary Heath, aged 34 of Libington:

5 wretchedly tortured by dysentery, catarrh,  
backache, worms. She was tormented by the  
excretion of thick foul-smelling stuff in the urine,  
and pain of the kidneys. She was previously  
fleshy and fat, now lean.

10 **R:** powdered rhubarb 1½dr, loosening rose syrup 1oz, borage water  
3oz. Make a draught.

Then she took this enema:

**R:** decoction of roasted barley in water 1pt, omphacine oil of roses  
3oz, 2 egg yolks, brown sugar 1½oz. Mix. Make it.

15 **R:** yellow wax ½oz, crocus Martis 1dr. Make small lumps like  
nutmegs by the usual method. *I prescribed a whole apple cored, the  
cavity filled up with the wax, and the top covered. Move the apple in  
the coals until the wax is to entirely liquefied and has intermingled  
with the flesh of the apple. /16/ I instructed her to eat an apple*  
20 *prepared in this way before every meal.*

A steeled drink: make a pap from roasted barley and

---

**4** Case 17] S.O.: Observ. XVII [First Century], p. 14. **11** Make a draught] S.O.  
adds: this was given in the morning. **13** omphacine] S.O. omits. **21** roasted  
barley] S.O.: French barley dried.

pulverizato pane, aqua chalybeata et saccharo.

Cum dies aliquot his remediis usa, *profecto optime contulit*.<sup>31</sup>

Multo curavi cera sic praeparata.

- 5 [Case 18] Generosa Lane de Auson, gravitate  
pectoris et spirationis difficultate gravata,  
aetatis 49.

*R: agarici trochiscati sc.ii. Cum melle rosato et syrupo conservati  
zingiberis fiat bolus: sedes 4, deinde vomitus i, postea sedes iii.*<sup>32</sup>

- 10 Die sequenti utetur per plures dies oxymellite sequenti:

*R: passularum unc.s, herbarum hyssopi, origani, marrubii, pulegii,  
veronicae chamaedrys, scabiosae, tussilaginis, cardui benedicti,  
urticae ana M.s, radicum ireos incisarum, calami aromatici ana  
unc.i, agarici dr.iii, senae unc.ii, zingiberis dr.ii. Fiat horum decoctio  
15 in lib.ii aceti optimi, affusa tertia parte aquae. Bulliant ad 3<sup>ae</sup> partis  
consumptionem. Colaturae addantur mellis purissimi unc.12, et  
iterum coquatur ad oxymellitis spissitudinem. De hoc saepe  
quotiescumque difficultas spirandi urget, cochlearium unum paulatim  
sorbendo deglutiet.*<sup>33</sup> *Imponi poterit cinamomum, caryophyllum,  
20 calamum aromaticum. Pulverizabat omnia et in petia linea ligata ut  
diutius conservetur, et sapor suavior fiat.*<sup>34</sup>

<sup>31</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum ... libri sex*, p. 139. [following the preceding fn.].

<sup>32</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum [...] Liber quartus*, p. 53. | <sup>33</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum [...] Liber quartus*, p. 53: *R: herb. hiscopi, organ., marubii, pulegii, veronic., scabiosae, card. bened. an. M.i, rad. ireos incis. unc.i agarici albiss. dr.x, zinziberis dr.ii. Et decoquantur in q.s. aceti, affusa tertia parte aquae, et addatur mellis purissimi q.s. et coquatur ad oxymellitis spissitudinem. De hoc saepe, quotiescumque difficultas spirandi urget, cochlear unum paulatim sorbendo deglutiat* [Crato gave this as an alternative to the preceding remedy]. | <sup>34</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum [...] liber quartus*, p. 43: *Imponi poterit cinnamomum, gariophyll. et calamus aromaticus, pulverisata omnia, et in petia linea ligata, ita ut diutius conservetur, et sapor suavior fiat.*

breadcrumbs with steeled water and sugar.

Within a few days of using these remedies, *she was made entirely whole*. I have cured many with wax prepared in this way.

5 [Case 18] Mrs Lane, a gentlewoman of  
Alveston: weighed down by heaviness of the  
chest and difficulty of breathing. Age: 49.

*R: trochischated agaric 2sc. Make a bolus with rose sugar and  
preserved ginger conserve. Four stools, then one vomit, afterwards*

10 three stools.

The following day and for several days, she is to take the  
following oxymel:

*R: raisins ½oz, green shoots of hyssop, oregano, horehound, penny-  
royal, germander speedwell, scabious, coltsfoot, blessed thistle,*

15 *nettles each ½ handful, sliced orris root, sweet flag each 1oz, agaric  
2dr, senna 2oz, ginger 2dr. Make a decoction of these in 2 pints  
good vinegar. Mix in a third part of water. Boil until reduced by a  
third. To the strained liquid add refined honey 12oz, then boil again  
to the thickness of an oxymel. Whenever she is threatened with*  
20 *difficulty in breathing, she should drink one spoonful often, sipping it  
a little at a time. One may add cinnamon, cloves and sweet flag.*

*Everything is powdered and tied in a fine cloth, so that it keeps  
longer and has a more agreeable flavour.*

---

5 Case 18] S.O.: Observ. XVIII [First Century], p. 15. 7 difficulty of breathing] S.O. adds: was cured as followeth. 9 ginger conserve] S.O. adds: this was taken for three days. | then one vomit] S.O.: the second day six [probably reading v.i (for vomitus i) as the number vi]. 11 for several days] S.O.: as often as difficulty of breathing required, swallowing it by degrees. 14 germander speedwell] S.O.: speedwell, germander [as if separate plants; it is a single plant in Hall's source].

Optime se habuit, et dixit oxymel auro dignum.

[Case 19] **/17/** Generosa Hall, uxor mea, colica

5 misere cruciata.

**R:** diaphaeniconis, diacatholiconis ana unc.i, pulveris Holland dr.ii,  
olei rutae unc.i, lactis quantum satis. Fiat glister, ii sedes.

Manante ad hac dolore et parum mitigato, cui statim inieci vellem  
pro glister, vini Hispanici lib.i calide. Statim magnos edidit flatus,  
10 et ab omni dolore liberata. Stomacho applicabam emplastrum de  
labdano Cratonis, cum caranna et specie aromatico rosato et oleo  
macis.

Unico hoc clystere liberavi Comitem Northamptoniensis a  
saeuissimo collicae dolore.

15

[Case 20] Mistress Harbert, dolore lateris misere  
cruciata.

**R:** spiritus vini vel aquae vitae, quae fuit ad manum, unc.vi,  
camphorae dr.i. Ebulliant parum donec camphora dissolvatur. Adde  
20 dum adhuc fervet santali oderati pulverizati dr.i.s. Madefiant hoc  
liquore panni et calidi applicentur.<sup>35</sup>

Liberata.

---

<sup>35</sup>Platter, *De doloribus*, p. 442: **R:** aquae seu spiritus vini unc.vi camphorae dr.i. Ebulliant parum, donec camphora dissolvatur: adde dum adhuc fervet santali odorati pulverisati dr.i.s. Madefiant hoc liquore panni et calidi applicentur.

She returned to full health and said the oxymel was worth gold.

5 [Case 19] /17/ Mrs Hall, a gentlewoman, my  
wife: wretchedly tortured by colic.

R: diaphoenicon, diacatholicon each 1oz, Holland powder 2dr, oil of rue 1oz, sufficient milk. Make an enema: two stools. The pain remained and was little relieved, so I wished at once to inject 1 pint of hot Spanish wine as an enema. She immediately produced a  
10 large amount of wind, and was freed from all pain. I applied Crato's labdanum plaster with caranna, aromatic rose powder and mace oil.

With this enema alone I freed the Earl of Northampton from a most severe colicky pain.

15 [Case 20] Mrs Herbert: wretchedly tortured by  
pain in the side.

R: wine spirit or aqua vitae, whichever is to hand, 6oz, camphor 1dr.  
Boil a little until the camphor dissolves, then add powdered sandalwood while it is still hot. Soak cloths in this liquid and apply  
20 hot.

Freed.

---

4 Case 19] S.O.: Observ. XIX [First Century], p. 16. 15 Case 20] S.O.: Observ. XX [First Century], p. 16.

[Case 21] Maria Wilsune, hectica febre cum tussi  
gravi, obstructione menstruum, circa aetatis  
annum 22, debilitata.

*Sunt cibi elixi, nam magis humectant [...] caro vitulina [...] gallinacea*

- 5 *item pulli gallinacei, si nutriantur hordeo, vel saeginentur pasta  
intrusa forma pilularum. Paratur ex carne ranarum, limacum et  
cancrorum fluviatilum cum farina hordei subacta.<sup>36</sup> Sic soleo  
pinguescere. /18/ Ova probantur, vitella imprimis maxime cum vino  
et saccharo cocti, uti nostrum restoratum (id est, a caudell).*

- 10 Panatella:

*R: medullae panis lotae in lacte et postea cum lacte amygdalarum,  
aqua rosarum et saccharo permixta.*

*Ptisana seu cremor hordei sic praeparata:<sup>37</sup>*

- R: hordei unc.ii, portulacae, boraginis ana M.s. Bulliant in lib.x  
15 aquae fontanae, usque 4<sup>r</sup> consumptae. Colaturae bibe quantum  
satis. Saccharum rosatum tabellatum in frequenti usu habere  
vellem.<sup>38</sup>*

Glisten:

- R: iuris pullae parvae, bene contusae unc.x, in quo bulliant  
20 seminum papaveris, florum nenupharium, violarum, lactucae,  
malvae ana M.s. Deinde colentur, et colaturae adde olei violacei  
unc.i.s, sacchari albi unc.ii, mellis violati unc.i.s, salis communis*

<sup>36</sup>Platter, *De doloribus*, p. 221: Qui elixi magis humectant, sed assi humiditatem substantificam magis augent. Caro vitulina, haedina, et porcellorum laudatur. Cerebrum item porcellorum, et vituli. Gallinacea item caro. Capi vel pulli gallinacei, si nutriantur hordeo, vel saginentur pasta intrusa forma pilularum, quae paratur ex carne cancrorum fluviatilium, et ranarum cum farina tritici, vel hordei subacta. | <sup>37</sup>Platter, *De doloribus*, p. 222: Ova probantur, vitelli imprimis, maxime cum vino et saccharo cocti, uti nostrum *Weinwarm* [...] *R: medullae panis lotae in lacte et postea cum lacte amygd. aqua ros. et saccharo permixtae. Ptisana item seu cremor hordei [...] misceri debet.* | <sup>38</sup>Platter, *De doloribus*, p. 225: Saccharum rosatum tabellatum in frequenti usu habere debent.

[Case 21] Mary Wilson: weakened by a hectic  
fever with severe cough, obstructed  
menstruation. Age: about 22 years.

*Foods should be boiled, because they moisten more: veal, fowls, also*  
5 *young chickens if they are fed on barley or fattened on pellets formed*  
*out of a paste. This is prepared from the flesh of frogs, snails and*  
*river crabs bound together with barley flour. That is how I am*  
*accustomed to encourage weight gain. /18/ Eggs are*  
*recommended, the yolk most of all, boiled with wine and sugar, as*  
10 *our restaurative (that is, a caudle).*

For a pap:

*R: bread crumbs soaked in milk and then almond milk, mixed with*  
*rose water and sugar.*

*A ptisane or barley cream prepared in this way:*

15 *R: barley 2oz, purslane, borage each ½ handful. Boil in 10 pints*  
*spring water until 4 are gone. Drink a sufficient quantity of the*  
*strained liquid. I wished her to have frequent recourse to sugar of*  
*roses tablets.*

An enema:

20 *R: well beaten broth of a small chicken 10oz. Boil in it poppy seeds,*  
*flowers of water-lilies, violets, lettuce, mallows each ½ handful, then*  
*strain. To the strained liquid add oil of violets 1½oz, white sugar*  
*2oz, violet honey 1½oz, household salt 1½dr, egg yolk 1. Make the*

---

**1** Case 21] S.O.: Observ. XXI [First Century], p. 17. **5** if...paste] S.O.: fed either with barley, or crammed with past made of barley meal [In Hall's source it is clear that the fowls are fed this, not the patient]. **6** This...flour] S.O.: frogs, snails, and river-crabs were also exhibited [see previous note].

dr.i.s, vitelli ovi N.i. Fiat glister.

Lac muliebre vellem sugere. *Optimum est cum sugitur e  
mammilla mulieris nutritae ex cibis infrigidantibus et humectantibus  
ut ex lactucis, hordeo, ex lacte seminum mellonum,*<sup>39</sup> et si sit, a  
5 *muliere quae a partu menses 4<sup>r</sup> superaverat, desumatur, optimum  
est.*<sup>40</sup>

His licet dextre usa, parum profuerunt, nam post annum  
placide cum Domino dormit.

10 [Case 22] Magister Drayton poeta laureatus, febre  
3<sup>a</sup> laborat.

R: poculi chymici unc.i, syrupi violarum coch.s. *Tam ore quam alvo  
recte purgatus et curatus.*<sup>41</sup>

15 [Case 23] **/19/** Bettis Mulier aetatis 40, misere  
semel in mense aliquando bis terve, dolore  
dextrae partis capitis cruciata et saepe cum  
vomitu finita. Instante paroxysmo nec ambulare  
nec stare potuit.

20 R: poculi chymici unc.i: vomitos vi.

Die sequenti:

R: pilularum de succino dr.ii, *cephalalgicarum Fernelii* dr.i.<sup>42</sup> Fiant  
pilulae N.15. Capiat iii ante cenam. Finitis pilulis, venae secanda

---

<sup>39</sup>Vettori, *Exhortatio ad medicum recte*, p. 374: Convenit enim et praecipue cum sugitur ex mammilla mulieris nutritae ex cibis infrigidantibus, et humectantibus ut ex lactucis, ex hordeo, ex lacte seminum mellonum [A similar recipe is found in other editions of Vettori, but this wording matches Hall best]. | <sup>40</sup>Platter, *De doloribus*, p. 223. | <sup>41</sup>See fn., p. /11/. | <sup>42</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum [...] liber quintus*, p. 338: Fernelius affirmat se sequentium pillularum tantam vim experiendo cognovisse, ut nullam cephalagiam vel hemicraniam offenderit, quam non curarit [I have not found this recipe in Fernel, nor did any seventeenth century author. If a source is mentioned, it is Crato as above].



enema.

I wished her to drink woman's milk. *It is best when it is drunk from the breast of a woman nourished on cooling and moistening foods such as lettuces, barley, milk of melon seeds; and if possible,*  
5 *best chosen from a woman who has passed four menstrual cycles after giving birth.*

Though used properly they were of little benefit, because after a year she rested in peace with the Lord.

10 [Case 22] Mr Drayton, an excellent Poet, is troubled by a tertian fever:

**R:** the chymical cup 1oz, syrup of violets ½ spoonful. Mix them. He was properly purged *both upwards and downwards*, and cured.

15 [Case 23] **/19/** Goodwife Bettes, aged 40: wretchedly tortured by pain in the right side of the head, once a month, sometimes two or three times, and often ending with vomiting. During an attack she could neither walk nor stand.

20 **R:** the chymical cup 1oz: six vomits.

The next day:

**R:** pills - amber 2dr, *Fernel's for headache* 1dr. Make 15 pills. Take

---

**2** It...6 birth] *S.O.*: nourished with cooling and moistning diet, as lettice.  
**7** Though...Lord] *S.O.*: A year after this she died. **10** Case 22] *S.O.*: Observ. XXII [First Century], p. 18. **15** Case 23] *S.O.*: Observ. XXIII [First Century], p. 18. **19** stand] *S.O.* adds: was cured thus [notable because Hall made no claim for a cure in this case. The case report ends abruptly with the second decoction, suggesting that Hall inadvertently omitted his usual final words.

ad unc.vi. Postremo usa decoctioni sarsaparillae simplicis, maxime  
a Iohanne Cratone commendatur in dolore capitis.<sup>43</sup>

*R: salsae unc.iv, aquae lib.x, comminuo salsam in partes minutas [...] seco in frusta parva, postea macero in aqua calida per spacium 24  
5 horarum. [...] Coquo ad medietatis consumptionem. [...] capiat  
haustum mane et hora cubitus.*

Decoctionem secundam facio:

*R: salsam praeparatam et aquae lib.15 et sine infusione bullio ad  
consumptionem 3<sup>ae</sup> partis, et hoc decoctum valet pro cena et  
10 prandio.<sup>44</sup>*

[Case 24] Generosa Boughton, gravida, vomitu et  
ventris fluxu solo liberata.

15 *R: vini Malvatici unc.vi, olei vitrioli gut.vi, diluantur bene. Ex diluto  
hoc capiebat quotidie mane ieiuno stomacho unc.i.<sup>45</sup>*

*R: oleorum absinthii, macis ana unc.s, speciei aromatici rosati  
Gabrielis dr.s. Misce, fiat unguentum pro stomacho.*

*R: syrupi papaveris unc.iii, aquarum scabiosae, menthae ana unc.ii,  
20 boraginis unc.i, olei vitrioli guttas aliquot.*

Curata, laus Deo.

---

<sup>43</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum [...] liber sextus*, p. 663: Vires has potissimum zarzaparillae [...] prodiderunt [...] quare miramur a quibusdam et contra venena, et in affectionibus capitis. | <sup>44</sup>Falloppio, 'De morbo Gallico', in Luisini, *De Morbo Gallico Omnia*, p. 472: Accipio salsae unc.iiii, et aquae lib.x comminuo salsam in partes minutas [...] et secate in frusta parva, postea macerate in aqua calida per spatium 24 horarum [...] coquitur ad consumptionem medietatis [...] deinde eandem capimus salsam et addimus aquae lib.15 et sine infusione bullit ad consumptionem tertiae partis, et hoc decoctum valet pro coena, et prandio [Hall's wording matches this better than earlier editions]. | <sup>45</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria I', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 10: *R. Vini Malvatici unc.vi. Olei vitrioli Rom. guttas sex. Diluantur bene. Ex diluto hoc capiebat quotidie mane ieiuno stomacho unciam.*

3 before dinner. When the pills were finished, she was bled up to 6oz. Finally she took the simple decoction of sarsaparilla, greatly praised by Johannes Crato for headache:

*R: sarsaparilla 4oz, water 10 pints. I break the sarsaparilla into  
5 small pieces, cut in small bits, then I soak them hot water for twenty  
four hours. I boil it, reduce to half. Take a draught morning and at  
bedtime.*

I make a second decoction:

*R: the prepared sarsaparilla and water 15 pints, and without  
10 soaking, I boil them until reduced by a third. This decoction is  
powerful at dinner and lunch.*

[Case 24] Mrs Boughton, a gentlewoman, pregnant:

freed from vomiting and diarrhoea by this alone:

*R: Malmsey wine 6oz, oil of vitriol 6 drops, dilute well. She took 1oz of  
15 this dilution on an empty stomach in the morning, daily.*

*R: oils of wormwood, mace, each ½oz, Gabrieli's aromatic rose  
powder ½dr. Mix. Make an ointment for the stomach.*

*R: poppy syrup 3oz, scabious, mint waters each 2oz, borage 1oz, a  
20 few drops of oil of vitriol.*

Cured, praise God.

---

**10** This decoction is powerful at dinner and lunch] S.O. omits. **13** Case 24] S.O.: Observ. XXIV [First Century], p. 19. **16** in the morning daily] S.O. adds: as long as it lasted. **20** vitriol] S.O. adds: to sharpen it for taste: mix them, and make a julep.

[Case 25] /20/ Generosus Randolphe, dolore  
capitis, rheumate misere oppressus, et sputuo  
continuo molestus, et frigore capitis cruciatus  
5 ut pileolo triplicato nocte caput circumvoluit,  
aetatis 35.

℞: poculi chymici unc.i: vomitos vi, sedes iii.

Die sequenti mane:

℞: pilularum cochiarum dr.i, aurearum dr.s, trochischorum  
10 alhandal gr.vii. Cum syrupo betonicae fiant pilulae 7. Rite  
purgatus. Venae cephalicae sectio ad unc.vi.

Postea sequens pulvis mane et vesperi sumatur dr.i, et est  
pulvis Martini Rulandi in rheumati:

℞: *pulveris senae simplicis dr.vi, seminum erucae unc.s, piperis longi*  
15 *dr.i.s. Fiat pulvis.*<sup>46</sup>

*Ex his perpaucis intra paucos dies, nempe vii, sanus factus est*  
*omnino.*<sup>47</sup>

[Case 26] Generosa Boughton de Causon  
20 aetatis 28, tribus diebus post abortum mense  
5<sup>o</sup>, incidebat in febrem cum nimio fluxu  
uterino, in mortis periculo. Evomebat,  
sitiebat, fastidio cibi et syncope oppressa, ista  
a me curata at sanata citissime.

25

---

<sup>46</sup>Ruland the Elder, *Balnearium Restauratum*, p. 142. | <sup>47</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuria*, p. 221: Et his perpaucis intra dies paucos nempe quinque sanus factus est omnino.

---

20 mense 5<sup>o</sup>] in margin.

[Case 25] /20/ Mr Randolph, a gentleman:  
wretchedly overwhelmed by headache and  
catarrh and troubled by constant  
5                   expectoration, so that at night he wrapped his  
                    head in a triple skullcap. Age: 35.

*R*: the chymical cup 1oz. Six vomits, three stools.

The next morning:

*R*: pills cochiae 1dr, aureae ½dr, alhandal trochees 7gr. Make 7  
10           pills with betony syrup. He was rightly purged; cephalic vein bled  
            to 6oz.

Afterwards he took the following powder morning and evening. This  
is Martin Ruland's powder for rheum:

*R*: simple senna powder 6dr, rocket seed ½oz, long pepper 1½dr.  
15           Make a powder.

*With these very few, in few days - seven to be exact - he was  
made entirely well.*

[Case 26] Mrs Boughton, a gentlewoman of  
20           Cawston aged 28: fell into a fever with excessive  
            uterine flux three days after a miscarriage at five  
            months, in danger of death. She was vomiting,  
            thirsty, off her food and overwhelmed by fainting.  
            She was cured by me, and very quickly healed.

---

**2** Case 25] *S.O.*: Observ. XXV [First Century], p. 19. **12** This is Martin Rulands powder for rheum] *S.O.* omits. **19** Case 26] *S.O.*: Observ. XXVI [First Century], p. 20.

**R:** cornu cervi praeparati unc.i, aquae fontanae lib.vi. Bulliant ad consumptionem duarum librarum, tunc remove ab igne. Postea adde /21/ syrupi limonum unc.ii, aquae rosarum unc.4, sacchari quantum satis ad gratam acetositatem. De hoc continue loco potus bibat quo optime levata.

Mane et sero usa est decoctione sequenti, *nam abstergit, incidit, educit et sitim depellit. Decoctum pectorale:*

**R:** hordei mundi M.iii, violarum p.ii, glycyrrhizae unc.s, iuiubarum unc.i, sebesten unc.ii, cardui benedicti M.i.s. *Fiat decoctio in satis quantum aquae ad lib.12. Colaturae admisceatur sacchari violati unc.iiii. Fiat potus.*<sup>48</sup>

His solis remediis ab omni expectatione (Laus Deo uno trino) sana facta fuit.

15

[Case 27] Capitanus Basset circa aetatis annum 50, febre 3<sup>a</sup> corripitur.

**R:** poculi chymici dr.v, vini scillitici dr.ii, syrupi violarum coch.i. Misce. Hora ante paroxysmum *tam ore quam alvo* rite purgatus.<sup>49</sup>

20

Finito vomitu:

**R:** electuarium de gemmis frigidis sc.ii, diascordii dr.s, syrupi papaveris rheadis unc.i, aquae scabiosae unc.4. Misce.

<sup>48</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, pp. 170-171. | <sup>49</sup>See fn., p. /11/.

R: prepared hartshorn 1oz, spring water 6 pints. Boil until 2 pints are gone, then remove from the fire. Afterwards add /21/ lemon syrup 2oz, rose water 4oz, sufficient sugar for a pleasing acidity. In place of continuing this, she took a beverage which greatly  
5 comforted her.

She took the following decoction morning and evening, *for it dispels, assails, leads away, and banishes thirst. A decoction for the chest:*

R: wheat barley 3 handfuls, violets 2 pinches, liquorice ½oz, jujubes  
10 1oz, sebestens 2oz, blessed thistle 1½ handfuls. Make the decoction in enough water for 12 pints. To the strained liquid add violet sugar 4oz. Make the beverage.

By these remedies alone she was made well past all expectation, praise God the one and three.

15

[Case 27]<sup>6</sup> Captain Basset, about 50 years old:  
seized by a tertian fever.

R: the chymical cup 5dr, wine of squills 2dr, syrup of violets 1 spoonful. Mix. He was rightly purged *both upwards and*  
20 *downwards*, an hour before the attack.

When the vomiting had ended:

R: electuary of cold gems 2sc, diascordium ½dr, field poppy syrup 1oz, scabious water 4oz. Mix.

---

<sup>6</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

3 for a pleasing acidity] S.O. omits. 9 wheat barley] S.O.: French barley; see footnote. | 3 handfuls] S.O.: M.iv. 16 Case 27] S.O.: Observ. XXVII [First Century], p. 21-23. 17 a tertian fever] S.O. adds: was thus cured. 23 4oz] S.O.: unc.iii.

Die quietis sic purgatus:

℞: diaphaeniconis, diacatholiconis ana dr.ii, rhabarbari pulverizati,  
pulveris senae laxativae Rulandi ana dr.s, pulveris Holland dr.i,  
syrupi cochleariae unc.i, aquae betonicae, cardui benedicti ana  
5 unc.ii. Misce. Purgatus et curatus.

Tribus ab hinc mensibus, incidebat in hydropem cum pedum  
tumore.

℞: poculi chymici unc.s, vini scillitici /22/ dr.ii, aquae hordei,  
syrupi violarum ana unc.s: vomitus vii, sedes ii.

10 Die sequenti:

℞: foliorum cichorii, boraginis, buglossi, violarum, fragarum ana  
M.i, seminum anisi, carvi ana dr.i, radicis apii hortensis, lapatii  
acuti ana unc.i, florum boraginis, buglossi, violarum, rosarum, ana  
p.i. Bulliant in satis quantum aquae ad unc.12. Colaturae ℞

15 unc.4. Infunde trochischati agarici, rhabarbari ana dr.s,  
mecoachani dr.s, zingiberis sc.i.s, spernardi gr.4, cinamomi sc.s.  
Mane iterum coletur. Colaturae expressae ad unc.iii, adde syrupi  
rosacei solutivi unc.i.s, mannae colaturae unc.s. Misce, fiat potio,  
et sic pro 4 matutinas.

20 His finitis sic purgatus:

℞: pilularum aggregatarum sc.i, gummi gambogiae gr.5, olei anisi  
gut.5, syrupi cichorii cum rhabarbaro quantum satis. Fiant pilulae  
ii pro dosi: septem sedes. Secunda die unam pilulam capiebat: 5  
sedes cum felici et exoptato eventu, nam melius respirare et

25 ambulare potuit.



He was purged in this way on the quiet days:

**R:** diaphoenicon, diacatholicon each 2dr, powdered rhubarb, Ruland's laxative senna powder each ½dr, Holland powder 1dr, scurvy-grass syrup 1oz, betony and blessed thistle waters each 2oz.

5 Mix. He was purged and cured.

Three months later, he fell into a dropsy with swollen feet.

**R:** the chymical cup ½oz, wine of squills **/22/** 2dr, barley water, syrup of violets each ½oz. Seven vomits, two stools.

The next day:

10 **R:** leaves of chicory, borage, bugloss, violet, strawberry each 1 handful, anise, caraway seeds each 1dr, roots of garden celery, bitter dock each 1oz, flowers of borage, bugloss, violet, roses each 1pinch. Boil in enough water for 12oz. Take 4oz of the strained liquid. Infuse trochischated agaric, rhubarb each ½dr, mechoachan  
15 ½dr, ginger 1½sc, spikenard 4gr, cinnamon ½sc. Strain again in the morning. To 3oz of the pressed strained liquid add loosening rose syrup 1½oz, strained manna ½oz. Mix. Make a drink. Repeat on four mornings.

When this was finished, he was purged thus:

20 **R:** aggregative pills 1sc, gamboge gum 5gr, anise oil 5 drops, sufficient chicory syrup with rhubarb. Make 2 pills per dose: seven stools. The second day he took 1 pill: five stools, with the desired happy result because he could breathe and walk better.

---

**1** He was purged in this way on the quiet days] *S.O.*: The next day he was free from his fit, he took the following. | quiet days] that is, day between attacks of a tertian fever. **6** swollen feet] *S.O.* adds: which was removed by the following. **13** enough water] *S.O.*: a quart of water. **16** 3oz] *S.O.* omits. **18** four mornings] *S.O.*: three mornings.

Potus sudoriferus:

5 **R:** sarsaparillae unc.ii, radicis sassaphras unc.s. Bulliant in lib.8  
ad 4 aquae fontanae, post macerationem 24 horarum. In fine adde  
cinamomi conquassati dr.ii, seminum anisi, carvi, coriandri ana  
unc.s. Dosis unc.vi calide et secundum artem provocetur sudor.

Postea usus birea laxativa sic praeparata:

10 **R:** sarsaparillae unc.ii, chynae in orbicularis incisio unc.i,  
sassaphras dr.vi, ligni vitae /23/ unc.ii, senae unc.i.s, rhabarbari  
unc.s, agarici dr.iii, mechoachani unc.i, rasurae eboris, cornu cervi  
ana unc.s, seminum foeniculi, nucis moschati, caryophylli ana dr.ii,  
foliorum violarum, rorismarini, fumariae ana pugill.iii. Indantur in  
sacculo pro iii congiis cervisiae.

His a hydrope liberatus. Mense Augusto melancholia  
hypochondriaca cum capitis dolore laborabat.

15 **R:** pilulae de succino dr.ii, speciei hierae simplicis Galeni sc.ii. Cum  
syrupo cichorii cum rhabarbaro fiant pilulae N.12. Capiat hora  
somni iii. A capitis dolore liberatus.

**R:** pilularum aggregatarum sc.i, gummi gambogiae gr.5. Cum  
gut.5 olei anisi et syrupi de pomis fiant pilulae ii: 8 sedes cum  
20 levamine magno.

Deinde:

***R:** origani, absinthii, menthae ana M.s, seminum milii, anisi tostorum  
ana unc.s, florum chamaemelli, lavendulae, anthos, furfuris ana p.i,  
baccarum lauri dr.i, nucis moschati dr.s. Pulverizentur grosso modo,  
25 et insuantur panno serico et rubro, fiatque sacculus interbassatus in  
scuti stomachalis figuram, qui vino aliquo generoso respersus et*

A sweating potion:

**R:** sarsaparilla 2oz, sassaphras root ½oz. Boil in 8 pints of spring water, reduce to 4 after soaking for twenty four hours. At the end add bruised cinnamon, 2dr, anise, caraway, coriander seeds each 5 ½oz. Dose: 6oz hot, and sweating is provoked according to practice.

Afterwards he took laxative beer, prepared like this:

**R:** sarsaparilla 2oz, china cut in rounds 1oz, sassaphras 6dr, guaiacum /**23**/ 2oz, senna 1½oz, rhubarb ½oz, agaric 3dr, mechoachan 1oz, shavings of ivory, hartshorn each ½oz, fennel 10 seeds, nutmeg, cloves each 2dr, violet, rosemary, fumitory leaves each 3 handfuls. Put them in a bag for 3 gallons of beer.

These freed him from dropsy. In August he suffered from hypochondriac melancholy with headache.

**R:** pills of amber 2dr, powder for Galen's simple hiera picra 15 electuary 2sc. Make 12 pills with chicory syrup with rhubarb. Take 3 at bedtime. He was freed from the headache.

**R:** aggregative pills 1sc, gamboge gum 5gr. Make 2 pills with 5 drops of anise oil and apple syrup. Eight stools with great relief.

Next:

20 **R:** *origanum, wormwood, mint each ½ handful, toasted seeds of millet, anise each ½oz, camomile, lavender, rosemary leaves each 1 pinch, bayberries 1dr, nutmeg ½dr. Powder coarsely, sew into a thin red silk cloth, and make a bag sewn in the form of a stomach shield.*

---

2 ½oz] S.O.: 1oz. 8 1½oz] S.O.: unc.iis. | ½oz] S.O.: unc.i. 11 handfuls] *pugillum* can mean either a pinch or a handful; In most cases Hall wrote M. (*Manus*) for handful, and p. (*pugillum*) for pinch. In this instance he wrote *pugill*. I have followed S.O. in translating it as handfuls].

*optime calfactus ventriculo applicetur, et ut opus esset reiteretur.*<sup>50</sup>

His remediis ab omnibus praedictis symptomatibus liberatus  
et curatus et per longum tempus convaluit.

5

[Case 28] /24/ Mistress Chandelers, opidana  
aetatis 36 vel circiter, quinta a partu die  
incidebat in febrem erraticam cum horrore, calore  
et rigore saepe in die et nocte.

10 **R:** decoctionis cornu cervi cum succo limonum et aqua rosarum et  
saccharo ad gratam acetositatem lib.iii. Continue sumebat semper  
agitando ut pulverem cum decoctione biberet.

Hoc finito:

**R:** cornu cervi praeparati dr.iii, aquae pluvialis lib.s. Bulliant ad  
15 unc.4, ebullitione facta adde syrupi papaveris rheadis unc.ii, aquae  
rosarum unc.i, olei vitrioli quantum satis: pro ii vicibus.

*His ita factis sana facta.*<sup>51</sup>

[Case 29] Magister Fortescue aetatis 20,  
20 epilepsia per consensum ventriculi et melancholia  
hypochondriaca cruciatus, cum motus privationi  
digiti annularis et medii dextrae manus, et  
sensus amissione.

Vocatus ad ipsum, sic purgatus. Urina pondorosa, clara sicut aqua  
25 fontana, in quantitate multa.

---

<sup>50</sup>Feyens, *De flatibus*, pp. 144-145. | <sup>51</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III',  
*Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 219: His ita factis sanus.

*Apply to the stomach sprinkled with some good wine and well heated.* Repeat as is beneficial.

He was freed and cured of all the above symptoms by these remedies, and remained well for a long time.

5

[Case 28] **/24/** Mrs Chandler of Stratford upon Avon, aged 36 or thereabouts: fell into an erratic fever on the fifth day after giving birth, with frequent shivering, hot spells and rigors day and night.

10 **R:** hartshorn decoction with lemon juice, rose water and sugar for a pleasant sharpness, 3 pints. She took it all time, always shaking it so that she drank the powder with the decoction.

When this was finished:

**R:** prepared hartshorn 3dr, rain water ½ pint. Reduce by boiling to 4oz. After boiling add syrup of field poppies 2oz, rose water 1oz, 15 sufficient oil of vitriol. This is for two doses.

*When these were finished, she recovered.*

[Case 29] Mr Fortescue, aged 20: tortured by 20 epilepsy with consent of the stomach, hypochondriac melancholy with loss of movement and feeling of the ring and middle fingers on the right hand.

When I was summoned to him, I purged him in this way. Urine: 25 heavy, clear like spring water, in large quantity.

---

**6** Case 28] *S.O.*: Observ. XXVIII [First Century], p. 23. **10** hartshorn decoction] *S.O.* adds: as Obs.26; and omits the other ingredients [the recipes are not identical though]. **19** Case 29] *S.O.* Observ. XXIX [First Century], p. 23-24. **25** in large quantity] *S.O.* omits.

**R:** pilularum sine quibus dr.i, foetidae sc.ii, castorei sc.i, aquae boraginis quantum satis. Fiant pilulae 7: sedes v magnas.

Purgatione finita, motus et sensus digitorum reddebant. 5 die Iunii anno 1623.

5 Die vi:

Venae cephalicae ad unc.vi sectio /25/ et eodem die hora cubitus pilulis de succino N.iii, ex quibus die sequenti iii sedes.

8<sup>a</sup> die:

**R:** castorei optimi, assae foetidae ana dr.s, radicis paeoniae

10 subtiliter pulverizatae dr.i, aromatici rosati dr.ii. Misce cum syrupo de mentha, fiant pilulae 7 ex massa. Capiat unam in ingressu lecti.

Mane capiat ad nucis avellanae magnitudinem opiatae huius:

**R:** conservarum buglossi, boraginis, anthos ana unc.i.s, confectionis alkermes dr.ii, electuarii laetificantis Galeni et de gemmis ana dr.s,

15 pulverum radicis paeoniae, aristolochiae ana sc.i, rasurae eboris, cornu cervi, coralli ana sc.ii. Cum syrupo de hyssopo, lege artis fiat opiata.

In instanti paroxysmo:

**R:** benzoini, mumiae, picis nigrae ana sc.i. Uniantur cum succo rutae, fiat suffumigium pro naribus, aut eadem simul liquefacta naso interiori inungantur.<sup>52</sup>

Nota: sternutatorium ante usum opiatae mane:

**R:** pyrethri, pulveris radicis paeoniae ana sc.ii, nucis moschati sc.i, ellebori nigri pulverizati sc.s. Fiat pulvis qui insuffletur in nares.<sup>53</sup>

25 Ex his per Dei misericordiam brevi tempore liberatus et nunc

---

<sup>52</sup>Houllier, *De morbis internis*, p. 122. | <sup>53</sup>Houllier, *De morbis internis*, p. 125.

R: pills - sine quibus 1dr, foetidae 2sc, castor 1sc, sufficient borage water. Make 7 pills: seven large stools. After purgation, movement and feeling returned to the fingers. 5 June 1623.

6th:

- 5 Section of the cephalic vein to 6oz /25/ and the same day 3 amber pills at bedtime. The following day three stools from these.

8th:

- R: best castor, assafoetida each ½dr, peony root finely powdered 1dr, aromatic rose [powder] 2dr. Mix with mint syrup. Make 7 pills  
10 from the mass. Take one when going to bed.

In the morning take this opiate, the amount of a walnut:

- R: conserves of bugloss, borage, rosemary each 1½oz, alkermer confection 2dr, electuaries - Galen's laetificans, of gems each ½dr, peony root powder, aristolochia each 1sc, shavings of ivory,  
15 hartshorn, coral each 2sc. Make the opiate with hyssop syrup by the usual method.

At the time of an attack:

- R: benzoin gum, mummy, naval pitch each 1sc. Combine them with rue juice. Make a fumigant for the nostrils or after dissolving it,  
20 anoint the inside of the nose.

NOTE: he used this sneezing powder in the morning, before the opiate:

- R: Spanish pellitory, peony root powder each 2sc, nutmeg 1sc, powdered black hellebore ½sc. Make a powder to be blown into the  
25 nose.

These, through God's mercy, freed him in a short time and he

---

5 6oz] S.O.: unc.viii.

10 ab hoc annis recte vivit.

[Case 30] Generosa Nash aetatis 62, phthisi  
longo tempore laboravit, nunc flatu stomachi  
5 cum summo calore **/26/** et sudore ab orificio  
stomachi usque ad summitatem capitis, cum  
magno dolore maxime post cibum.

*R: sacchari albi unc.4 cubeborum, grana paradisi, galangae,  
zingiberis ana dr.i, piperis longi dr.s, cinamomi dr.iii, vini albi lib.ii.*

10 Stent 24 horas in infusione, *postea colentur per manicam. Fiat potus  
quem ippocras vulgus appellat.*<sup>54</sup> Capiat unc.iii mane. Usa est  
glistier ex olei seminum lini magno fructu.

Postremo capiat unc.iii sequentis syrupi:

*R: cinamomi crasso modo contusi unc.iiii, calami aromatici unc.i.*

15 *Macerentur in vini Malvatici lib.ii per triduum idque in vase vitreo ad  
lentum ignis calorem. Coletur, colaturae adde sacchari lib.i.s. Lente  
omnia coquantur et fiat syrupus secundum artem.*<sup>55</sup>

His liberata a flatu et cibum iterum capere potuit, et dixit se  
longe melius esse et a flatu liberam esse. Probatum.

20

<sup>54</sup>Feyens, *De flatibus*, p. 142: *R: sacchari albissimi unc.iiii cubeb. gran. parad. galang. zingib. an. dr.i, piperis longi dr.s, cinamomi dr.iiii. Vini Cretici, Romani, aut alterius cuiuspiam generosi lib.ii. colentur per manicam fiatqu; potus quem Hypocras vulgus appellat.* | <sup>55</sup>Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, p. 101.

**3** Generosa Nash] ~~M~~ Ga Nash [M, for Magistra or Mistress, was added later, then blotted out].



is now alive and well ten years later.

[Case 30] Mrs Nash, a gentlewoman aged 62:  
suffered from phthisis for a long time, now  
5 with wind in the stomach and very marked hot  
spells /26/ and sweating from the mouth of  
the stomach to the top of the head, with great  
pain especially after food.

*R: white sugar 4oz, cubebs, grains of paradise, galangal, ginger each*  
10 *1dr, long pepper ½dr, cinnamon 3dr, white wine 2 pints. Stand to*  
*infuse for twenty four hours, then strain through a sleeve. Make the*  
*potion commonly called hippocras. Take 3oz in the morning. She*  
*used an enema of linseed oil with great effect.*

Finally take 3oz of the following syrup:

15 *R: cinnamon roughly crushed 4oz, sweet flag 1oz. Soak in Malmsey*  
*wine 2 pints for three days, in a glass vessel near the heat of a low*  
*fire. Strain. To the strained liquid add 1½lbs sugar. Boil it all slowly*  
*and make syrup according to practice.*

These freed her from the wind and she could again take food.  
20 She said she was very much better and freed from wind. This has  
been proved.

---

3 Case 30] S.O.: Observ. XXX [First Century], p. 25. 9 white sugar] S.O.: loaf-sugar.

[Case 31] Generosus Kempson aetatis 60,  
melancholia oppressus et febre divexatus cum  
summo calore, nihilominus continui *somno*  
*arctiori quam /27/ solebat*<sup>56</sup> oppressus sine ullo  
5 aegritudinis sensu, quasi stupidus.

Hic a me curatus sequentibus:

*R: foliorum malvae, betae, violarum, mercurialis, lupuli ana M.i.s.,  
boraginis M.ii, epithymi unc.s, pulegii, rutae, absinthii, chamaemelli  
ana M.s, seminum anisi, [...] carvi, cumini, rutae, foeniculi, urticis,  
10 baccae lauri ana unc.s, polypodii quercini unc.i.s, senae unc.i,  
corticum ellebori nigri dr.i. Coquantur in sero lactis ad lib.i.s.*<sup>57</sup>  
Colaturae *R* unc.x, confectionis hamech, diaphaeniconis ana dr.v,  
salis dr.i. Fiat glister, ii sedes cum flatuum magna copia. Detur  
mane, et nocte reiteretur.

15 *Raphanum incisum minutim plantis pedum alligari, aceto et sale  
conspersum, 3<sup>a</sup> quaque hora renovandum, quo accursus vaporum  
pravorum impediatur [...] deorsum retractis fuliginibus.*<sup>58</sup> Nox aliis  
longe quietior sine horribilibus somniis ut antea.

Potus ordinarius:

20 *R: aquae fontanae lib.4, syrupi limonum unc.i, zulapii rosarum  
unc.i.s, cornu cervi praeparati sc.4, spiritus vitrioli tot guttas quot*

---

<sup>56</sup>Echoing Cicero, 'Scipionis somnium, Book VI', De Re Publica: arctior, quam solebat, somnus complexus est | <sup>57</sup> Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 27: *R: foliorum betae, malvae, violarum, mercurialis, lupuli, ana M.i.s, boraginis M.ii epithymi unc.s florum sambuci M.i.s seminum anisi, lini ana unc.i seminum carthami contusi, polypodii quercini ana unc.i.s senae Alexandrinae unc.i corticum ellebori nigri dr.i, coquantur in sero lactis q.s. ad lib.i.s.* | <sup>58</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 178: lussi plantis pedum alligari raphanum incisum minutim, aceto et sale conspersum, tertia quaque hora renovandum, quo accursus vaporum pravorum, delirium tantum causantium, impediatur, deorsum retractis fuliginibus.

---

6 Hic a me curatus sequentibus] Originally in heading. 17 *retractis*] attractis.

[Case 31] Mr Kempson, a gentleman aged 60:  
overwhelmed by melancholy and tormented by  
fever with the very highest heat. He was  
likewise continuously overcome *by deeper*  
5 *sleep than /27/ he was accustomed to,*  
without any sense of illness, as if unconscious.

I cured him with the following:

*R: leaves of mallow, beet, violet, mercury, hops each 1½ handfuls,*  
*borage 2 handfuls, dodder ½oz, penny-royal, rue, wormwood,*  
10 *camomile each ½ handful, seeds of anise, caraway, cumin, rue,*  
*fennel, nettle, bayberry each ½oz, polypody of the oak each 1½oz,*  
*senna 1oz, black hellebore bark 1dr. Boil in milk whey, reduce to 1½*  
*pints. Take 10oz of the strained liquid, Hamech confection,*  
*diaphoenicon each 5dr, salt 1dr. Make an enema: two stools with a*  
15 *large amount of wind. Give in the morning and repeat at night.*

*Bind finely sliced radishes to the soles of the feet, sprinkled*  
*with vinegar and salt, renewed every third hour. The attack of the*  
*corrupt vapours should be hindered by this, the soot being attracted*  
*downwards. The next night was more restful, without the terrible*  
20 *dreams as before.*

The usual drink:

*R: spring water 4 pints, lemon syrup 1oz, rose julep 1½oz, prepared*

---

**1** Case 31] S.O.: Observ. XXXI [First Century], p. 26-27. **9** penny-royal] S.O. adds: p.ii [possibly confused by the similarity between pugillum (pinch) and pulegium (penny-royal)]. **19** terrible dreams] S.O.: starting or fear. **22** prepared] S.O.: burnt and powdered finely.

sufficiunt ad gratam acetositatem. Deinde sanguisugae  
hemorrhoidis /28/ applicatae, extrahabitur sanguis ad unc.8.

℞: lapidis bezoar gr.5, tincturae coralli gut.4 in possetalam. Urina  
spumosa cum magno sedimento, et longe melius se habuit. Glistere

5 renovato et potu praedicto in quo maxime delectabat, et pulvis ex  
lapide bezoardico et tinctura coralli, his reiteratis exoptato eventu.

Usus fut sternutatorio ex solo tabacco ad discutiendum somnum.

Habuit restauratium Quercetani, folio 187 *libris Diaeteticonis*

*Polyhistoriconis*, sectio 3 caput 9.<sup>59</sup>

10 Adhuc tamen de stomacho sollicitus, tunc detur vomitorium:

℞: vomitorii nostri dr.vi, syrupi violarum unc.ii, oxymellitis scillitici  
dr.i: vomitus iiii, sedes 9.

Bene se habuit per dies 5, deinde relapsus in algorem et  
horrorem febris. Adhibito glistere, recte se habuit et medicos vale

15 dixit.

Sic curatus praeter omnium expectationem et per multos  
annos laute vixit, *atque haec omnia (divina annuente clementia)*

*quibus desperatus aeger ad bonam pervenit sanitatem.*<sup>60</sup>

20

[Case 32] Generosa Garner de Shipson, aetatis

22, alborum fluxu misere debilitata.

℞: cassiae noviter extractae dr.vi in aquae petroselini, terebinthinae

---

<sup>59</sup>Du Chesne, *Diaeteticon polyshistoricon*, p. 187; [there are instructions for two restoratives]. | <sup>60</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 209: atque haec omnia sunt, quibus desperatus aeger ad bonam, laus Deo, pervenit sanitatem. [Divina annuente clementia occurs separately on the same page].

---

9 sectio 3 caput 9] sect. 4 Cap. 9 [*Diaeteticon Polyhistoricon* has only three sections. The page and chapter references are correct for Sectio 3 Caput 9].

hartshorn 4sc, spirit of vitriol as many drops as needed for a pleasing acidity. Then leeches were applied to the haemorrhoidal veins: **/28/** 8oz of blood were taken.

**R:** bezoar stone 5gr, tincture of coral tincture 4 drops, in posset ale.

- 5 Urine: frothy with much sediment. He became much better. The enema was renewed along with the above drink which he very much enjoyed, and the bezoar stone powder and coral tincture were repeated with the desired result. He used a sneezing powder of tobacco only, to dispel sleep. He had Du Chesne's restorative,  
10 page 187 of *Diaeteticon Polyhistoricon*, section 3, chapter 9.

He was still worried about his stomach, so an emetic was given:

**R:** our emetic 6dr, syrup of violets 2oz, oxymel of squills 1dr. Four vomits, nine stools.

- 15 He was well for five days, then relapsed in a cold and shivering fever. He recovered after an enema was given, and said farewell to his physicians.

- He was cured thus beyond all expectation, and lived very well for many years. *It was these (by divinely declared mercy) which*  
20 *restored a desperate patient to good health.*

[Case 32] Mrs Garner, a gentlewoman of Shipston

aged 22: wretchedly weakened by a flux of the whites.

**R:** newly extracted cassia 6dr in parsley water, turpentine washed in

---

**10** Polyhistoricon] *S.O.*: *Polychrest*. **19** It...health] *S.O.* omits. **22** Case 32] *S.O.*: *Observ. XXXII [First Century]*, pp. 27-28.

lotae in praedictae aquae dr.ii, gummi guaiaci dr.ii. Cum saccharo  
fiat bolus.

/29/ Die sequenti, emplastrum sequentem applicare iubebam:

R: unguenti Comitissae unc.i, gypsi, boli Armeni ana unc.s. Cum  
5 albumine ovi, fiat emplastrum.

Postremo usus est trochischis astringentibus, Iohannis  
Liébaut, liber 2 de *Maladies des Femmes*, folio 391: *Prenez*  
*coriandre preparee, graines d'ozeille, de plantain et d'agnus castus*  
*de chacun dr.i, terre sigillee et bol armene, de chacun dr.s, poudre*  
10 *del' electuarie diatragacanth froid dr.i. Pulverisez le tout subtilement*  
*et avec sucre dissout en eau de plantain, facties une confection en*  
*forme de roüelles ou tablettes, (adde gluten piscium) du poix de deux*  
*dracmes. Maschez en une avant disné et supé et avallez*  
*incontinent apres, deux aut trois cueilleres de vin vermeil astringent.*  
15 *Je suis assureé<sup>61</sup> par experience que ceste confection profite*  
*infiniment pour quelque occation que la matrice soit offence.<sup>62</sup>*

---

<sup>61</sup>Liébaut, *Thresor des Remedes Secrets*, pp. 391-392: Prenez coriandre preparee, graines d'ozeille, de plantain et d'agnus castus, de chacun une dracme: terre sigillee, et bol armene, de chacun demie dracme: poudre de l'electuaire diatragacanth froid une dracme: Pulverisez le tout subtilement et avec sucre dissout en eau de plantain, faites une confection en forme de roüelles ou tablettes du poix de deux dracmes: maschez en une avant disné et souppé et avallez incontinent apres deux ou trois cueilleres de vin vermeil astringent. Je suis assureé que ferez content. | <sup>62</sup>Liébaut, *Thresor des Remedes Secrets*, p. 391.

---

7 *Maladies des Femmes*] Hall interlined his French transcription with a translation in mixed Latin and English. I have broken the text up into phrases in the notes below. | *Prenez coriandre preparee*] \R: coriandri praeparati/. 8 *graines dozeille*] \seminum acetosa/. 9 *chacun<sup>2</sup>*] \ana/. | *poudre del electuarie*] \species/. 10 *Pulverisez le tout subtilement et avec sucre*] \pulverizentur subtilissime cum saccharo/. 11 *eau*] \aqua/. 12 *roüelles*] \rotulis/ | *du poix de deux dracmes*] \pondere dr.ii/. 13 *Maschez en une avant disné et supé*] \eat one before dinner and supper/. | *avallez incontinent apres*] \and presently after drinke/. 14 *deux aut trois cueilleres de vin vermeil*] \two [or] three spoonfuls of red wine/. 15 *Je suis assureé*] \am certain/. | *par experience que ceste confection profite infiniment*] \from experience this confection expels/. 16 *infiniment*] \[illegible]/.

the same 2dr, guaiacum gum 2dr. Make a bolus with sugar.

**/29/** The next day, I instructed her to apply the following plaster:

**R:** comitissa ointment 1oz, gypsum, bole Armeniac each ½oz. Make  
5 a plaster with egg white.

Finally she used Jean Liébaut's astringent trochees, Book 2 of *Maladies des Femmes*, page 391: *take prepared coriander, sorrel seeds, plantain and chaste tree, each 1dr, sealed earth and bole Armeniac each ½dr, powder for cold diatragacanth electuary 1dr.*  
10 *Powder everything finely and, with sugar dissolved in plantain water, make a confection in the form of rolls or tablets (add fish glue), two drachms in weight. Chew one before dinner and supper and immediately afterwards swallow two or three spoonfuls of sour red wine. I am certain from experience that this confection is infinitely*  
15 *profitable on every occasion that the womb is affected.*

---

**6** Finally... 391] S.O.: After I prescribed the following. **11** add fish glue] S.O.: add gum. tragac.

His fluxus refraenatus et optime cito convaluit.

[Case 33] Brown sacerdos Romanus, febre

Ungarica laborabat, in mortis periculo.

- 5     **R:** poculi chymici dr.vi, syrupi violarum dr.ii, **/30/** oxymellitis  
scillitici dr.i: vomitus vii, sedes iii. Die sequenti vene sectio ad  
unc.vi.

Sequenti die a phlebotomia, potus:

- R: aquae fontanae lib.iii, syrupi granatorum, iulapii rosaceum ana*  
10   *unc.i.s, cornu cervi praeparati dr.iii, olei vitrioli quantum satis ad*  
*gratam acetositatem. Transvasando hinc inde fiat iulapium.*<sup>63</sup> In  
iussculo accipiebat tincturae coralli sc.i, et hora cubitus glister ex  
herbis apperientibus, pulvere senae laxativae et saccharo sordido:  
iii sedes.

- 15         *Interdiu et noctu saepissime magnitudinem iuglandis*  
*sumendo.*<sup>64</sup>

- R: rob ribum, conservae rosarum, conservae carnis citri ana unc.ii,*  
*corticum citri conditi unc.s, arantiorum conditorum, speciei liberantis*  
*ana dr.ii, cornu cervi praeparati sc.4, lapidis smaragdi, rubini,*  
20   *hyacinthi praeparati ana gr.vi, florum sulphuris dr.i, coralli rubri*  
*praeparati sc.i, succi granatorum unc.s, syrupi de acetositate citri*  
*quantum satis. Fiat electuarium liquidum.*<sup>65</sup> Felici cum successu  
etiam usus absque lapidibus praedictis.

<sup>63</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 265: **R:** aq. fontanae purae lib.iii, syrup. granator. iulapii rosac. ana unc.i.s, . spir. vitriol. rectific. guttas tot, quot suff. ad gratam acetositatem. Transvasando hinc inde f. iulapium iucundum. [See also /133/. | <sup>64</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 168.

<sup>65</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 267: **R:** conservae rosar. conserv. carnis citri rob ribum, ana unc.i, cortic. citri conditi unc.s. arantior. condit. specier liberantis ana dr.ii, lapidis smaragdi, rubini, hyacinth legit. praepar. ana gr.vi, florum sulphuris dr.i, corall rub. prep. sc.i, succi granatorum unc.s., syrup. de acetositate citri q.s. Fiat elect. liquidum.



These controlled the discharge, and she very quickly recovered.

[Case 33] Browne, a Roman priest: suffered  
5 from Ungaric fever; in danger of death.

*R:* the chymical cup 6dr, syrup of violets 2dr, **/30/** oxymel of squills  
1dr. Seven vomits, four stools. He was bled the next day to 6oz.

The day after venesection, a drink:

*R: spring water 3 pints, pomegranate syrup, julep of roses each*  
10 *1½oz, prepared hartshorn 3oz, enough oil of vitriol for a pleasing*  
*tartness. Then from the straining, make a julep.* He received  
tincture of coral 1sc in broth, and at bedtime an enema of the  
aperient herbs with laxative senna powder and unrefined sugar:  
three stools.

15 *Take the amount of a walnut, day and night, often:*

*R: blackcurrant juice, rose conserve, citron flesh conserve each 1oz,*  
*preserved citron skin ½oz, preserved oranges, liberans powder each*  
*2dr, prepared hartshorn 4sc, prepared emerald, ruby, sapphire*  
*stones, each 6gr, flowers of sulphur 1dr, prepared red coral 1sc,*  
20 *pomegranate juice ½oz, enough syrup of sour citrons. Make a liquid*  
*electuary.* He also used it successfully without the gems.

---

**4** Case 33] S.O.: Observ. XXXIII [First Century], pp. 28-29. **11** Then...julep] S.O. omits. **21** He...strengthened] S.O.: This I have used with happy success, without the precious stones, to corroborate the heart.

*Cordi quoque robur conferebatur:*<sup>66</sup>

**R:** conservae rosarum unc.i, tincturae coralli sc.ii, cornu cervi praeparati dr.i, diascordii dr.s, florum sulphuris praeparatarum sc.ii. Misce, diebus tribus usibus.

5           Ad sitem extinguendam:

**R:** hordei unc.ii, liquiritiae unc.s, boraginis, cichorii ana M.s. **/31/**

Bulliant in lib.iii aquae ad lib.ii, adde salis prunellae dr.s, cornu cervi praeparati dr.iii. Bulliant parum. Capiat iii haustos in die.

10           *Cibos insuper conspergat pulveris huius cardiaci et alexiterii  
portiuncula:*

**R:** margaritarum praeparatarum, coralli rubri praeparati, cornu cervini praeparati, granatorum praeparatarum ana gr.8, fragmentorum hyacinthi, smaragdi, rubini ana gr.iii, folii auri N.i. Misce, fiat pulvis.<sup>67</sup>

15           Alio iulapeo finito sequenti usus:

**R:** aquae fontanae lib.ii, cornu cervi praeparati, cornu cervi crudi ana dr.iii, specierum liberantis sc.4. Coque ad lib.s consumptionem.

Adde succi limonum quantum satis ad iucundam aciditatem.

Coquatur iterum et despumetur, purificetur cum albumine ovi. Fiat

20           *iulapium de quo tres capiat singulis diebus haustus, mane binos,  
meridie tertium.*<sup>68</sup>

Praeter omnium spem redivivus et sanitate integrae sacerdos restitutus. His remediis, maxime decoctione cornu cervi, infinitos

---

<sup>66</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 168: cordi simul robur conferebatur. | <sup>67</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 267. | <sup>68</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 271: **R:** Aquae fontanae purae lib.ii, cornu cervi. usti. cornu crudi, ana dr.iii, specier. liberant. sc.iiii. Coq. ad lib.s consumpt. add. succi limonum q.s. ad iucundam aciditatem: coq. iterum et despumetur, purificenturque cum albumine ovi. F. I.a. iulapium. De quo tres capiat singulis diebus haustus, mane binos, meridie tertium.

---

7 salis] ☉.

*The heart was also strengthened:*

**R:** rose conserve 1oz, coral tincture 2sc, prepared hartshorn 1dr, diascordium ½dr, prepared flowers of sulphur 2sc. Mix. Use for three days.

5           To quench thirst:

**R:** barley 2oz, liquorice ½oz, borage, chicory each ½ handful. **/31/**  
Boil in 3 pints water, reduce to 2 pints, add saltpetre ½dr, prepared hartshorn 3dr. Boil briefly. Take 3 draughts daily.

*He also sprinkled his food with this heart-fortifying and poison-*  
10 *resisting powder:*

**R:** prepared pearls, prepared red coral, prepared hartshorn, prepared garnet each 8gr, gold foil 1 leaf. Mix. Make the powder.

When the julep was finished he used the following:

**R:** spring water 2 pints, prepared hartshorn, raw hartshorn each 3dr,  
15 *liberans powder 4sc. Boil, reduce by ½ pint. Add enough lemon juice for a pleasant acidity. Boil again, skim, purify with egg white. Make a julep, of which he is to take three draughts each day, two in the morning, the third in the afternoon.*

The priest recovered beyond all hope, and returned to full  
20 health. With these remedies, especially the hartshorn decoction, I

---

**17** two...afternoon] S.O. omits.

hac lue et aliis febribus cruciatus brevi tempore curavi. *Dei optimi maximi ope cui soli esto gratiarum actio, benedictio et laus perennis in secula infinita Amen.*<sup>69</sup>

5

[Case 34] **/32/** Capitanus Basset aetatis 50,  
melancholia hypocondriaca cum tremore, et  
punctione cordis cum tumore circa talos, et  
capitis dolore.

- 10 **R:** foliorum cichorii, boraginis, buglossi, violarum, fragorum ana  
M.i, *radicum ellebori nigri dr.ii, liquiritiae, polypodii quercini ana*  
*unc.ii, seminum citri unc.i.s, anisi, carvi ana unc.s, myrobalanorum*  
*omnium ana dr.ii. Contundantur grosso modo et fricentur manibus*  
*cum oleo amygdalarum dulcium. Postea infundantur per diem et*  
15 *noctem in lib.x aquae fumariae, radices petroselini, buglossi ana*  
*unc.i, florum boraginis, buglossi, violarum, rosarum ana M.i.*  
*Bulliant in lib.5 aquae fontanae, donec remaneant lib.iii. [...] Colentur,*  
*postea adde senae, epithymi, tamariscis ana unc.ii. Bulliant donec*  
*remaneant lib.ii ac coletur, et exprimatur decoctum.*<sup>70</sup> Cui infunde  
20 per noctem trochischorum agarici, rhabbarbari ana dr.ii,

<sup>69</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 213. | <sup>70</sup>da Monte, *Consultationum medicinalium*, p. 336 [Hall has reordered the text considerably]: **R:** myrobalanorum indorum citrinorum chebulorum emblicorum belliricorum ana dr.iii. Contundantur grosso modo, et fricentur manibus cum oleo amygdalarum dulcium. Postea infundantur per diem et noctem in lib.x aquae fumiterrae et decoquantur ad consumptionem tertiae partis. Deinde adde radicem ellebori nigri dr.iiii, liquiritiae polypodii ana unc.ii, seminum citri unc.i.s et bulliant donec remaneant lib.v. Postea adde folliculorum senae, epithymi Cretensis ana unc.i.s, et bulliant donec remaneant lib.ii ac coletur, et exprimatur decoctum[This is a closer match than the similar text in *Consultationes medicae*].

<sup>15</sup> libx] lib.s [I follow Hall's source].

398 [I have not found an edition with cure 87 on page 394].

have in a short time cured an infinite number tortured by this disease and other fevers, *by the power of almighty God most high, to whom alone be expressions of thanks, blessing and praise unfailingly, in endless ages. Amen.*

5

[Case 34]<sup>7</sup> /32/ Captain Basset, aged 50: with hypochondriac melancholy and tremor, pricking of the heart with swelling around the ankles, and headache.

- 10 *R: leaves of chicory, borage, bugloss, violets, wild strawberries each 1 handful, black hellebore root 2dr, liquorice, polypody of the oak each 2oz, citron seeds 1½oz, anise and caraway seeds each ½oz, all the myrobalans each 2dr. Pound them coarsely and rub with the hands with sweet almond oil. Afterwards infuse for a day and a*
- 15 *night in 10 pints fumitory water, roots of parsley, bugloss each 1oz, borage, bugloss, violet and rose flowers each 1 handful. Boil in 5 pints spring water until 3 pints remain. Strain, then add senna, dodder, tamarisk each 2oz. Boil again, reduce to 2 pints, and strain and squeeze out the decoction. Infuse in this agaric trochees,*

---

<sup>7</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

---

2 by...4 Amen] S.O. omits. 6 Case 34] S.O.: Observ. XXXIV [First Century], pp. 29-30.

mechoachani unc.ii, zingiberis sc.4, spicenardi dr.s, cinamomi dr.i.

Iterum coletur et bulliant cum saccharo et fiat syrupus perfecte  
concoctus, cui adde syrupi rosacei solutivi /33/ unc.4, mannae  
unc.ii, et servetur pro 4 vicibus. Optime purgatus cum exoptato  
5 eventu.

Finita purgatione *sumat per integram septimanam morsellum  
unum pro vice, mane et vesperi horis duabus ante cibum:*

*R: speciei laetificantis Galeni, diamoschu dulcis, aromatici rosacei  
ana dr.i, cinamomi dr.s, pistaciorum mundatorum unc.s, confectionis  
10 alkermes, croci, ossis de corde cervi, corallorum rubrorum,  
margaritarum ana sc.i, chalybis praeparati dr.ii, sacchari quantum  
satis. Dissolvatur saccharum in aqua cinamomi [...] fiat confectio in  
morsellis et ponderet quilibet dr.ii.s.<sup>71</sup>*

Gestet ceratum stomachale:

15 *R: labdani dr.ii, cerae unc.s, olei macis dr.ii, speciei aromaticum  
rosatum Gabrielis sc.ii. Fiat emplastrum stomachale. Usus est  
glistere ex emollientibus et carminativis cum saccharo.*

*Post pastum:*

20 *R: seminum coriandri praeparatorum dr.ii, foeniculi, anisi ana dr.i,  
carvi dr.s, liquiritiae unc.s, zingiberis dr.ii, radices galangae, nucis  
moschati, cinamomi, caryophylli ana dr.i. Incidantur minutim, addito  
saccharo. Fiat pulvis sumendus a pastu, vel fiant tabulae saccharo*

---

<sup>71</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum* [...] *liber secundus*, p. 151. Sumat per integram septimanam morsellum unum pro vice infrascripte confectionis bis in die, mane videlicet et vesperi horis duabus ante cibum: **R** Spec. laetificant. Almansor. Diamosc. dulc. aromatic. rosac. a. unc. i, cinamom. el. dr. s, pistacior. mundat. unc. s. Sacch. dissolvatur in aq. cinamom. Si fuerit ad manus, sin minus in aq. rosar. q. s. F. confectio in morsellis, et pondere quilibet dr. ii. s.

rhubarb each 2dr, mechoachan 2oz, ginger 4sc, spikenard ½dr, cinnamon 1dr overnight. Strain again, boil with sugar and make a perfectly concocted syrup. Add to this loosening rose syrup /33/ 4oz, manna 2oz, and keep for 4 doses. He was very well purged  
5 with the desired result.

*After purging, take one sweetmeat at a time, morning and evening, two hours before meals for a whole week:*

*R: powders - Galen's laetificans, sweet diamoschu, aromatic rose each 1dr, cinnamon ½dr, clean pistachios ½oz, alkermes confection, 10 saffron, stag's heart bone, red coral, pearls each 1sc, prepared steel 2dr, sufficient sugar. Dissolve the sugar in cinnamon water, make a sweetmeat in bite-sized pieces weighing about 2dr.*

He should wear a stomach salve:

*R: labdanum 2dr, wax ½oz, mace oil 2dr, Gabrieli's aromatic rose 15 powder 2sc. Make a stomach plaster. He used an enema with emollients and carminatives with sugar.*

*After meals:*

*R: prepared coriander seed 2dr, fennel, anise each 1dr, caraway ½dr, liquorice ½oz, ginger 2dr, galangal root, nutmeg, cinnamon, 20 cloves each 1dr. Cut small, add sugar. Make a powder to be taken*

---

15 He used] S.O.: I used. 20 a powder] S.O.: a gross powder.

*dissoluto in aqua rosacea.*<sup>72</sup>

His rite recteque convaluit et mihi gratias dedit.

[Case 35] /34/ Epilepsiae per consensum  
5 curatio, pro puero 6 mensium nato theologi  
Walkers de Ilmington.

Orbiculi ex radicibus paeoniae suspendantur circa collum. *Iussi*  
*rutae succum cum aceto fortissimo permixtum, in spongia naribus*  
*adhibere, quando paroxysmo infestabatur, cuius usu, statim ad se*  
10 *reddebat, sed mox iterum recidivam patiebatur, brevioribus tamen*  
*quando haec naribus admovebat paroxysmis.*

*Emplastrum hoc cordis regioni applicare iubebam:*

*R: theriacae verae dr.i, radice paeoniae pulverizatae dr.s. Misce.*

*Item pulvere radice paeoniae capilli conspergentur.*<sup>73</sup>

15 His ab omni paroxysmo liberatus.

[Case 36] Elizabeth Hall filia mea unica, tortura

oris defoedata. Vide signa capiti de tortura oris,

Libro i Valesci de Taranta, folio 88.<sup>74</sup>

20 Sic felici successu curata:

---

<sup>72</sup>Platter, *Observationum* [...] *libri tres*, pp. 60-61: Pulvere post pastum sequenti utatur. **R** sem. coriandr dr.ii foeniculi anisi, ana dr.i, carvi dr.s rad. liquiritiae unc.s zingib. dr.ii rad. galangae, nucis moschat. cinamomi gariophyl. ana dr.i. Incidantur minutim, addito saccharo q.s. fiat pulvis sumendus a pastu, vel fiant tabulae saccharo dissol in aqua rosacea. | <sup>73</sup>Platter, *Observationum* [...] *libri tres*, pp. 26-27: Iussi succum rutae cum aceto fortiss. permixtum; in spongia naribus adhibere, quando paroxysmo infestabatur, cuius usu, statim ad se redibat, sed mox iterum recidivam patiebatur, brevibus tamen quando haec naribus admovebat paroxysmis. Emplastrum hoc cordis regioni applicavimus: **R** theriacae verae dr.i rad. paeoniae pul. dr.s. Misce. Item pulvere radice paeoniae capilli conspergantur. | <sup>74</sup>Valesco de Taranta, *Epitome Operis*, pp. 88-90.

---

20 Sic felici successu curata] Originally in heading.



*after meals, or make tablets with sugar dissolved in rose water.*

With these he recovered rightly and properly, and thanked me.

[Case 35] **/34/** Cure of epilepsy by consent,  
5 for the 6-month-old son of the Reverend  
Walker of Ilmington.

Slices of peony root were hung round his neck. *I prescribed rue  
juice mixed with strong vinegar applied to his nostrils when the fit  
molested him. Using this brought him immediately to himself, but he  
10 quickly suffered a recurrence. The fits were shortened though, when  
it was applied to the nostrils.*

*I instructed them to apply this plaster to the area of the heart:*  
*R: Venice treacle 1dr, powdered peony root ½dr. Mix. Peony root  
powder was also sprinkled on his hair.*

15 These freed him from all the attacks.

[Case 36] Elizabeth Hall, my only daughter:  
disfigured by spasm of the mouth. See the  
signs in the Chapter 'De Tortura', Book 1 of  
20 Valesco de Taranta, page 88.

She was successfully cured in this way:

---

**4** Case 35] S.O.: Observ. XXXV [First Century], p. 31. **8** strong] S.O.: white-wine. **17** Case 36] S.O.: Observ. XXXVI [First Century], pp. 31-34.

R: pilularum cochiarum, aurearum ana dr.i. Fiant pilulae 10,  
capiat 5: primo die 7 sedes, 2<sup>a</sup> 5 sedes. Fomentur loci aqua vitae et  
theriaca Andromachi.

Nucha usa est unguento sequenti:

- 5 R: unguenti Martiati magni unc.i, oleorum laurini, petrolei, castorei,  
olei terebinthinae ana dr.s, de lateribus dr.s. /35/ Huius usu  
magnum habuit fructum.

Menstruis obstructis, sic purgata:

- R: pilularum foetidarum dr.i, castorei dr.i, de succino, rhabarbari,  
10 agarici ana sc.i.s. Hora matutina, 5 pilulas capiebat instar pisi:  
sedes 8, vomitum i. Die sequenti menstrua fluebant.

Pro oculo ophthalmia laborante:

R: tutiae praeparatae dr.i, compositionem quaere folio 5 huius libri.  
Gutta una vel altera in oculo destillata.

- 15 Menstruis sistentibus, ordinabam decoctionem sequentem  
sudoriferum:  
R: ligni vitae unc.ii, sassaphras unc.s, sarsaparillae unc.i, chynae  
dr.vi. Macerentur 24 horis, postea bulliant in aqua fontanam lib.8  
ad 4. Sic indies ex usu huius forma oris et faciei ad pristinam  
20 formam restituta fecit. Non omisso olei sassaphras usu, quod fuit  
instar omnium nam resolutionem nervorum sua ariditate curabat.  
Collum inunctum et sic salva fuit, Januarii 5, 1624.

- In principio Aprilis Londinum decessit. Die 22 domum  
reversa, frigore per viam accepto. Iterum in torturam oris contrario  
25 latere, antea sinistra, nunc dextra misere afflicta incidebat. Iterum,  
laus Deo, sequentibus curata:

R: pills - cochiae, aureae each 1dr. Make 10 pills. Take 5: Seven stools the first day, five on the second. The parts were fomented with aqua vitae and Venice treacle.

She used the following ointment on her neck:

- 5 R: Martiatum magnum ointment 1oz, oils of laurel, petroleum, castor, oil of turpentine each ½dr, of bricks ½dr. /35/ Using this gave much profit.

Her periods were obstructed, so she was purged thus:

R: pills - foetidae 1dr, castor 1dr, of amber, rhubarb, agaric 1½sc.

- 10 She took 5 pills the size of a pea early in the morning. Eight stools, one vomit. The next day her period flowed.

For suffering from inflammation of the eye:

R: prepared tutty 1dr, for its composition see page /5/ of this book.

One or two drops were instilled in the eye.

- 15 When her periods stopped, I prescribed the following sweating decoction:

R: guaiacum 2oz, sassaphras ½oz, sarsaparilla 1oz, china 6dr.

Soak for 24 hours, then boil in 8 pints spring water, reduce to 4.

Using this day by day restored the former appearance of her mouth

- 20 and face. The use of sassaphras oil was not omitted, because it is the equal of anything for relieving dryness of the nerves. Her neck was anointed and so she was healed. 5 January 1624.

At the beginning of April she went to London. Returning home on the 22nd, she caught cold on the way. Once more she fell into

- 25 spasm of the mouth on the other side, previously on the left, now

---

6 Using...8 thus] S.O.: By this she had great advantage, her courses being obstructed. Thus I purged her. 11 one vomit] S.O. omits. 14 One or two] S.O.: two or three.

Vide: Iacobi Holleri *De Morbis Internis, Librum i*, capiti 11, foliis  
96 97 98;<sup>75</sup>

Felixi Plateri libro i, In motus impotentia, folio 375;<sup>76</sup>

5 Vide: folio 102, Gulielmi Rondelet, capiti 38, *Methodus  
Curandorum Morbos*;<sup>77</sup>

Vide: folio 394 curationem 87, Amati Lucitani *Centuria 4*.<sup>78</sup>

Iterum a me spacio xvi dierum rite curata.

R: pilularum de succino dr.s, aurearum sc.i. Fiant pilulae 5, capiat  
10 hora cubitus. Eadem nocte collum et verticem oleo sassaphras  
inungi iubebam. /36/ Mane dabam dr.i.s pilularum Ruffi et iterum  
usa est oleo cum aqua vitae, et oculo instillare iubebam aquam  
ocularem praedictam.

Sed cum oleo sassaphras carebam, loco eius:

15 R: pulveris castoreii, myrrhae, nucis moschatae, croci, ana sc.i, olei  
rutaee, laurini, petrolei, terebinthini ana dr.ii, unguenti Martiati  
unc.s, olei costini, de piperibus ana dr.i. Sed fomentetur cervix  
aqua vitae in qua nux moschata, cinamomum, caryophyllus, piper  
macerentur. *Nux quoque moschata frequenter manducanda a*  
20 *Platero summe commendatur.*<sup>79</sup> Usa oleo succini naribus et  
sumitati capitis. *Masticet radicem pyretri in partem sanam.*<sup>80</sup>

Pilulis sequentibus saepe purgata:

R: pilularum foetidarum sc.i, castoreii pulverizati sc.s, pilularum  
Ruffi, de succino ana sc.i. Fiant pilulae N.5. His rite adhibitis recte

<sup>75</sup>Houllier, *De morbis internis*, pp. 96-99. | <sup>76</sup>Platter, *De functionem laesionibus*,  
p. 375. | <sup>77</sup>Rondelet, *Methodus curandorum*, ff 101v-102v. | <sup>78</sup>Amatus  
Lusitanus, *Curationum medicinalium centuriae quatuor*, pp. 394-396.

<sup>79</sup>Platter: *De functionum laesionibus*, p. 375: Nux moschata frequenter  
manducata, excellens ab omnibus statuitur remedium. | <sup>80</sup>Rondelet, *Methodus  
curandorum*, f.102r. Masticet tantum radicem pyretri in parte sana.

wretchedly affected on the right. Again, praise God, she was cured with the following.

See Jacques Houllier, *De Morbis Internis Book 1*, Chapter 11, pages 96, 97, 98;

5 Felix Platter, *Book 1*, 'in Motus Impotentia', page 375;

See page 102, Guillaume Rondelet, chapter 38, *Methodus Curandorum Morbos*;

See page 394, cure 87, Amatus Lusitanus, *Centuria 4*.

I did indeed cure her again within sixteen days:

10 **R:** pills - amber ½dr, aureae 1sc. Make 5 pills, take at bedtime. I instructed her to anoint her neck and the top of her head with oil of sassaphras the same night. **/36/** I gave 1½dr Ruffus's pills in the morning, and she also used oil with aqua vitae. I instructed her to drip the above eyedrops into the eye.

15 As I was out of sassaphras oil, in its place:

**R:** powders of castor, myrrh, nutmeg, saffron each 1sc, oils of rue, laurel, petroleum, turpentine each 2dr, Martiatum ointment ½oz, oils of costus, peppers each 1dr. The top of the head was washed with aqua vitae in which nutmeg, cinnamon, cloves and pepper  
20 were soaked. *Nutmegs also should be chewed frequently*, as Platter strongly recommends. She used amber oil to the nostrils and the top of the head. *Chew pellitory of Spain on the healthy side*.

She was purged often, with the following pills:

**R:** pills foetidae 1sc, powdered castor ½sc, pills Ruffus's, amber  
25 each 1sc. Make 5 pills. These, correctly used, cured her rightly and

---

**3** See...8 4] S.O. omits all the citations. **18** top of the head] S.O.: the neck.  
**20** Nutmegs...recommends] S.O.: she eat [sic] nutmegs often. **25** These...  
high] S.O.: and thus she was restored.

riteque curata, laus Deo Optimo Maximo.

Eodem anno 24 die Maii, febre erratica afflicta, modo ardore  
mox sudore, iterum frigore, spacio dimidii horae saepe in die  
divexata. Sic purgata:

- 5     **R:** radices foeniculi, petroselini ana M.s, corticum radices sambuci  
M.ii, radices ireos vulgaris, rubiae tinctorum ana M.i, radices  
asparagi M.ii. Bulliant in satis quantum aquae ad lib.vi. Colaturae  
adde rhabbari, agarici ana unc.s, senae unc.vi, mecoachani  
unc.ii, calami aromatici unc.i, seminum anisi unc.i, cinamomi  
10    unc.s. Vase clauso, lege artis, fiat maceratio, iterum coletur.  
Colaturae adde sacchari quantum satis. Fiat syrupus bene coctus.  
Huius recipe unc.4, rhabbari dr.ii, macerate **/37/** in unc.v aquae  
cichorii. Misce. Dentur cochlearii 7 stomacho ieiuno, unaque die 7  
vel 8 sedes sine torminibus.
- 15    **R:** sarsaparillae unc.i, sassaphras dr.ii, guaiaci unc.i, liquiritiae  
unc.s, herbarum cichorii, salviae, rosmarini ana M.s. Bulliant in  
lib.x ad 5. De quo calide mane capiat haustum.
- Balsamoleo sequenti pro inunctione spinae quoque utebatur, sic  
parato:*
- 20    **R:** gummi galbani, bdelii dissoluti in aqua vitae ana unc.s, benzoini  
unc.i, styracis liquidum dr.i, foliorum rutae, chamaepytios, florum  
staechados, lavendulae ana dr.ii, radices costi unc.s, castorei sc.i.  
Infundantur incisa et pulverizata, in aqua vitae, stent in maceratione  
in calore per aliquot dies ante usum, eoque fricet spinam.<sup>81</sup>
- 25           Post horum usum, omnia symptomata remisere et quotidie ad  
integram sanitatem, Deo soli laus esto, intra paucos dies pervenit

---

<sup>81</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 220.

properly, praise almighty God most high.

In the same year, 24 May, she was vexed with an erratic fever, now hot, soon sweating, then cold, often troubled within half an hour. She was purged in this way:

- 5     **R:** fennel, parsley roots each ½ handful, bark of elder root 2 handfuls, common iris root, tincture of madder 1 handful, asparagus roots 2 handfuls. Boil in sufficient water to 6 pints. To the strained liquid add rhubarb, agaric each ½oz, senna 6oz, mechoachan 2oz, sweet flag 1oz, anise seeds 1oz, cinnamon ½oz.
- 10    Soak in a closed vessel by the usual method, then strain. Add sufficient sugar to the strained liquid, make a well boiled syrup. Take 4oz of this, rhubarb 2dr, soak **/37/** in 5oz chicory water. Mix. Give 7 spoonfuls on an empty stomach: seven or eight stools without discomfort in one day.
- 15    **R:** sarsaparilla 1oz, sassaphras 2dr, guaiacum 1oz, liquorice ½oz, leaves of chicory, sage, rosemary each ½ handful. Boil in 10 pints water, reduce to 5 pints. Take a draught hot, in the morning.

*The following balsam was used to anoint the spine, prepared in this way:*

- 20    **R:** galbanum and bdellium gums. Dissolve ½oz each in spirits, benzoin 1oz, liquid styrax 1dr, rue and ground pine leaves, French lavender and ordinary lavender flowers each 2dr, costus root ½oz, castor 1sc. Infuse, sliced and pounded, in aqua vitae, stand to soak in the heat for a few days before use. Rub the spine with it.
- 25        An hour after using it, *all symptoms diminished, and daily over*

---

5 root] S.O. omits.   12 2dr] S.O. omits.

*liberata a morte et mortiferis morbis, et per multos annos sana facta fuit.*<sup>82</sup>

5 [Case 37] Domina Sandes, post  
purificationem, haemorrhoidarum tumore et  
dolore misere lacinata.

Ordinabam inungi unguento populeono ad verrucales  
haemorrhoidarum:

10 *R: [...] vitellum ovi unius, conquassetur bene in oleo rosato in aestate,  
in hyeme cum oleo amygdalarum dulce, et adde parum croci  
pulverizati et lineatur locus.*<sup>83</sup> Hoc expertum est. Remollit  
haemorrhoidas duras et remittit dolores.

Curata.

15 [Case 38] /38/ Magister Quiney, tussi gravi cum  
magna phlegmatis copia et cibi vomitu, febre  
lenta debilitatus, urina rubra absque sedimento.

*R: agarici trochischati dr.i.s, thuris, masticis ana dr.s, terebinthinae  
quantum satis. Fiant pilulae ex dr.i, 5 in introitu lecti sumendi.*<sup>84</sup> In  
20 *condimentis crocus quia pectori prodest: et bellarium sinapis cum  
melle, egregie expectorat.*<sup>85</sup>

*R: hydromellis simplicis recenter parati cum melle electo lib.i.s.*

*Addendo passularum pinguium exacinarum unc.i, caricarum*

---

<sup>82</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 217. | <sup>83</sup>Rodrigo de Castro, *De universa mulierum medicina*, p. 198: Vel si dolor sit ingentissimus, *R* unguenti populeonis unc.i, croci dr.s, opii gr.v cum vitello unius ovi misce, prodest etiam vitellus ovi cum oleo rosarum in aestate, cum oleo amygdalarum dulcium in hyeme. | <sup>84</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 151: Interdum ex agarico trochischato cum terebinthina, thure et mastiche catapotia conficiebam, in introitu lecti sumenda. | <sup>85</sup>Platter, *De functionum laesionibus*, p. 454.



*a few days she reached complete health, freed from death and  
deadly illness and has remained well for many years.*

[Case 37] Lady Sandys, after her purification:<sup>8</sup>  
5                   wretchedly attacked by swelling and pain of  
                      the haemorrhoids.

I prescribed populeon ointment to be anointed on the swollen  
haemorrhoids.

*R: one egg yolk, beat well with rose oil in summer, sweet almond oil  
10           in winter, and add a little powdered saffron and rub on the spot.*  
This is well tested. It softens hard haemorrhoids and removes pain.  
Cured.

[Case 38] **/38/** Mr Quiney: weakened by a bad  
15                   cough with a large amount of phlegm, vomiting  
                      food, a slow fever. Urine: red, without sediment.

*R: trochisched agaric 1½dr, frankincense, mastic each ½dr,  
sufficient turpentine. Make 5 pills from 1dr. Take 5 on going to bed.*  
*Saffron in seasonings because it benefits the chest, and mustard  
20           with honey stimulates expectoration very well.*

*R: simple hydromel freshly prepared, with choice honey 1½lb. Add  
fat stoned raisins 1oz, 10 fat figs, orris root, sweet flag each 1dr. Boil*

---

<sup>8</sup>Purification: see 'The Thanksgiving of Women after Childbirth' in Church of England, *The Book of Common Prayer*, pp. 390-393.

---

**4** Case 37] S.O.: Observ. XXXVII [First Century], pp. 34. | Lady Sandys] S.O.: Mrs Sands. **11** This is well tested] S.O. omits. **14** Case 38] S.O.: Observ. XXXVIII [First Century], pp. 34-36. **16** sediment] S.O. adds: was thus cured [not stated by Hall]. **18** turpentine] S.O. adds: to make a mass.

*pinguium N.x, radices iridis Florentiae, calami aromatici ana dr.i.*

*Bulliant omnia simul aliquot ebullitionibus et colentur. Colaturae*

*adde sacchari candi, penidiorum ana unc.iii, cinamomi electi*

*conquassati dr.s (roborat omnia membra aromaticitate sua). Fiat*

- 5 *hydromel, de quo mane et sero sumere iubebam unc.8 vel 9. Magna enim medicamenti copia dari debet, ut ad pulmones vis perveniat.*<sup>86</sup>

*Emplastrum raso capiti applicandum [...] dies noctesque gestandum [...]:*

*R: radicum ireos, galangae, cyperi, angelicae ana dr.ii, radicum*

- 10 *pirethri, agarici, rhabbari, radices scillae ana dr.i, senae dr.ii, maioranae dr.i, seminum coriandri, baccarum lauri, caryophylli, nucis moschatae, maceris ana dr.i, seminum nigellae, /39/ sinapis ana dr.s, benzoini, storacis ana dr.iii, calcanthi albi dr.s, lapidis calamini dr.ii, aluminis dr.i. Oleo nucum antiquis addendo guttas aliquot, olei*  
15 *de maiorana et salvia perdestillata, laricae resinae et cerae quantum satis. Fiat emplastrum.*<sup>87</sup>

Et die quietis mane:

*R: croci sc.i, moschi gr.i. Detur in vino albo. Crocus est anima pulmonis.*<sup>88</sup>

<sup>86</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 151: Ad expectorandam saniem e pulmonibus potiones sequentes dedi: **R** hydromellis simplicis recenter parati cum melle electo lib.i.s addendo passularum pinguium exacinarum unc.i caricarum pinguium numero x, radices iridis Florentiae dr.i. Bulliant omnia simul aliquot ebullitionibus, et colentur: colaturae adde sacchari candi, penidiorum ana unc.iii, cinnamomi electi conquassati dr.s (roborat enim omnia membra aromaticitate sua) fiat hydromel, de quo mane et sero sumere iubebam uncias octo vel novem. magna enim medicamenti copia dari debet, ut ad pulmones vis perveniat. | <sup>87</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 164: Emplastrum tanquam efficacissimum raso capiti [...] quod dies noctesque gestaret [...]: **R** rad. ireos, galangae, cyperi, angelicae an dr.ii rad. pyrethri, agarici, rhab. rad. scillae ana dr.i sennae dr.ii maioranae dr.i seminum coriandri, baccarum lauri, gariophyl. nucis mosc. Maceris ana dr.i.s. nigellae, sinapis ana dr.s. benzoini, storacis ana dr.iiii, calchanti albi dr.s. lap. calami dr.ii, aluminis dr.i oleo nucum antiquis. addendo guttas aliquot olei de maiorana et salvia, per distillat: laricae resinae et cerae q.s. fiat emplastrum.

<sup>88</sup>Cardano, *Ars curandi parvi*, p. 385..

everything together several times, and strain. To the strained liquid  
add sugar candy, barley sugar each 3oz, choice broken cinnamon  
½dr (it strengthens all the organs with its fragrance). Make  
hydromel, of which I instructed him to drink 8 or 9oz morning and  
5 evening. Large quantities of this medicine must be given, so that the  
power reaches the lungs.

A plaster should be applied to the shaved head, worn day and  
night:

*R:* roots of iris, galangal, cypress, angelica each 2dr, roots of pellitory  
10 of Spain, agaric, rhubarb, squills each 1dr, senna 2dr, marjoram 1dr,  
coriander seeds, bayberries, cloves, nutmeg, mace each 1dr, nigella  
/39/ and mustard seeds each ½dr, benzoin, styrax each 3dr, white  
calcanso, calamine, alum 1dr. Make a plaster by adding old nut oil,  
some drops of distilled marjoram and sage oil, and sufficient larch  
15 gum and wax. Make a plaster.

On the quiet days, in the morning:

*R:* saffron 1sc, musk 1gr. Give it in white wine. Saffron is the soul  
of the lungs.

20

---

3 it...fragrance] S.O. omits. 5 Large...lungs] S.O. omits. 16 On the quiet  
days in the morning] S.O.: The days he rested. 17 Saffron is the soul of the  
lungs] S.O. omits.

Pro raucedine:

*R: succi liquiritiae dr.i, myrrhae dr.s, gummi tragachanthi sc.i, sacchari candi et penidiorum ana dr.s. Fiant morselli. Teneat unam in buccis cubitum iturus sinatque sponte dissolui et cubet in dorso.*<sup>89</sup>

5 *In condimentis crocus pectori prodest, et bellarium sinapis cum melle, egregie expectorat.*<sup>90</sup> *Emulsionem seu lac ex amygdalis dulcibus, additis pineis et seminibus aliquot cucurbitae recentibus contusis, expressum ad unc.4. Dissoluti in eo sacchari rosati tabularum dr.ii. Alternis matutinis tepidum ieiunus bibebat in eoque ad septimanas*  
10 *usque duas perserverabat.*<sup>91</sup>

Non a tota liberatus et anno sequenti in hoc malum incidebat, multa frustra tentata, placide cum Domino dormit. Fuit boni indolis et linguarum expertus et per iuvenem omnifarum doctus.

15

[Case 39] /40/ Joan Chidkin de Southam aetatis  
50, tremore et lassitudine brachiorum et  
tibiarum, postea sentit vaporem cordi  
ascendentem, deinde ad guttur postremo putat se  
20 suffocari; aetatis 40.

<sup>89</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, pp. 201-202: *R succi liquiritiae dr.ii, myrrhae dr.i, gummi tragach sc.i, sacchari candi et penid. an. dr.i cum affusa aqua ros. fiat morselli. Teneat unam in buccis cubitum itura, sinatque sponte dissolui et cubet in dorso.* | <sup>90</sup>Platter, *De functionum laesionibus*, p. 454; [see also fn. /38/]. | <sup>91</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 318: *Emulsionem seu lac ex amygdalis dulcibus, additis pineis et seminibus aliquibus cucurbitae recentibus contusis, expressum ad unc.iiii dissoluti in eo sacchari ros.tab. dr.ii. Alternis matutinis tepidum ieiuna bibebat, in eoque ad septimanas usque quatuor perserverabat.*

**16** aetatis...20 aetatis] Note two different ages. The second has been added a different ink.

For hoarseness:

*R: liquorice juice 1dr, myrrh ½dr, tragacanth gum 1sc, sugar candy and barley sugar each ½dr. Make bite-sized pieces. He should hold one inside the cheek when going to bed and allow it to dissolve on its own, while he lies on his back. Saffron in seasonings benefits the chest, and mustard with honey stimulates expectoration very well. Emulsion or milk of sweet almonds, with some added pine nuts, and freshly bruised gourd seeds, squeeze out 4oz. Dissolve in it rose sugar tablets 2dr. He drank this lukewarm, fasting on alternate mornings, and continued it for two weeks.*

He was not completely freed, and the following year fell into the same illness. After trying many treatments in vain, he sleeps peacefully with the Lord. He was of good character, expert at languages, and for his young age learned in everything.

[Case 39]<sup>9</sup> /40/ Joan Judkin of Southam, aged 50: with trembling and weakness of the arms and legs. She then feels a vapour rising to the heart, then the throat, until she thinks she going to be suffocated. Age: 40.

---

<sup>9</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

**5** Saffron...well] S.O. omits. **16** Case 39] S.O.: Observ. XXXIX [First Century], p. 36. **17** aged 50] As S.O.; I read this as an inadequately deleted correction. **20** Age 40] S.O. omits; I read this as the corrected, and correct, age.

**R:** Mercurii vitae gr.5, diaphaeniconis dr.i. Misce, ii sedes. Eiciebat vermes ii, deinde theriacae Andromachi dr.i in possetalam.

Iterum purgata:

**R:** Mercurii vitae gr.vi, diaphaeniconis dr.i. Misce, 4 sedes; postremo  
5 theriacam Andromachi cum rasurae cornu cervi.

His paucis spacio 4 dierum *veluti miraculose annuente et adiuvante sic, Deo Optimo Maximo omniaque symptomata evanuer.*<sup>92</sup> Campana pro ea bis sonabat.

10

[Case 40] Magister Winter aetatis 4, vermibus,  
febre lancinatus.

**R:** *suppositorium ex melle*;<sup>93</sup> potus decoctio cornu cervi praeparati et  
crudi; emplastrum contra lumbricos pro umbilico. Corpus unc.s  
15 mannae in iusculo purgatum, ex quo vermes mortuos multos cum  
excrementis foetidis expellebat.

In iusculo et cibo usus pulveri sequenti:

**R:** coralli praeparati, margaritarum praeparatarum, cornu cervi  
praeparati, granatorum praeparatarum ana gr.8, fragmentorum  
20 hyacinthi, smaragdi, rubini ana gr.iii, folii auri N.i. Usus syrupo  
papaveris sensim deglutiendo, cum syrupo capillarum veneris pro  
tussi.

Hunc quadribus diebus iuvante Deo sanum feci.

---

<sup>92</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 199. | <sup>93</sup>Platter, *De vitiis*, p. 985: Ad interimendas ascarides, suppositorium ex melle coctum, permiscendo Aloen et Fella, valde est effiicax [honey suppositories are mentioned elsewhere, but only here in connexion with worms].

---

**1** Mercurii] ☿. **4** Mercurii] ☿.

R: mercurius vitae 5gr, diaphoenicon 1dr. Mix. Two stools; she passed two worms. Then Venice treacle 1dr, in posset ale.

She was purged again:

R: mercurius vitae 6gr, diaphoenicon 1dr. Mix: four stools. Finally,  
5 Venice treacle with hartshorn shavings.

By these few, within four days, *with the favour and help of almighty God most high, all her symptoms vanished as if miraculously.* The bell sounded for her twice.

10 [Case 40]<sup>10</sup> Mr Winter, aged 4: attacked by worms and fever.

R: a *honey suppository*. To drink: a decoction of prepared and raw hartshorn; ointment for worms on the umbilicus. His body was purged with ½oz manna in broth which expelled many dead worms  
15 with foul-smelling excreta.

He took the following powder in broth and food:

R: prepared coral, prepared pearls, prepared hartshorn, prepared garnets each 8gr, pieces of zircon, emerald, ruby each 3gr, gold leaf 1 piece. He used poppy syrup, to be drunk slowly, with maidenhair  
20 syrup for the cough.

I cured him with God's help, in three days.

---

<sup>10</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

---

**1** Two stools she passed two worms] two vomits and two stools. **6** with the favour and help of almighty God most high] S.O. omits. **8** The bell sounded for her twice] S.O. omits. [I cannot explain this sentence]. **10** Case 40] S.O.: Observ. XL [First Century], pp. 36-37. | aged 4] S.O.: aged 44. **19** to be drunk slowly] S.O. omits.

[Case 41] /41/ Fortescue generosa, tussi

vehementissima et vermibus lancinata, aetatis 12.

Suppositorium ex melle;<sup>94</sup> umbilico emplastrum contra lumbricos.

Pro tussi:

5 *R: sulphuris ignem experti unc.s, belzoini seu assae odoratae sc.s.*

*Miscantor in tenuissimum pulverem rediguntur.*<sup>95</sup> Dividetur in partes

12, detur pars una omni die mane, et vesperi cornu cervi.

His liberata et sanata.

10

[Case 42] Domina Throckmorton aetatis 35,

cardialgia, melancholia cum hysterica affectione.

*R: rhabbari dr.i, agarici sc.ii, senae unc.s, cinamomi parum. Fiat*

*maceratio in lib.s vini absinthii ad unc.vi. Colaturae R coch.vi,*

15 *syrupi cichorii cum rhabbaro coch.ii, et sic per iii dies. Sexties in*

*die deiecit, tertia nocte copiosius narrabat fluxisse mensis quam*

*iam multis annis antea, et sic pro eo tempore missas fecit*

*medicinas. 2 Martii.*

Me rediunte mensi Aprili primo die, purgabam:

20 *R: pilularum sine quibus, Ruffi ana dr.i. Fiant pilulae 9. Dentur iii*

*hora somni.*

Corpore purgato, vino sequenti chalybeato usa ad coch.ii,

deinde ad 4 et sex, sensim augendo in ea ore feret:

25

---

<sup>94</sup>Platter, *De vitiis*, p. 985: see fn. above. | <sup>95</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 226.



[Case 41] /41/ Mrs Fortescue, a  
gentlewoman: attacked by a most violent  
cough and worms. Age: 12.

A honey suppository; a plaster against worms on the umbilicus.

5 For cough:

*R: flowers of sulphur ½oz, benzoin (i.e. assa odorata) ½sc. Mix.*

*Render into a very fine powder. Divide into 12 parts, give 1 part  
each day in the morning and with hartshorn in the evening.*

She was freed by these, and cured.

10

[Case 42] Lady Throckmorton, aged 35: heartburn,  
and melancholy with an affection of the womb.

*R: rhubarb 1dr, agaric 2sc, senna ½oz, a little cinnamon. Soak in  
½ pint wormwood wine, to 6oz. Take 6 spoonfuls of the strained*

15 *liquid, chicory syrup with rhubarb 2 spoonfuls, and continue the  
course for 3 days. She evacuated six times a day. She told me that  
on the third night her period flowed more abundantly than for many  
years, and so for a time she discontinued the medicines. 2 March.*

When I returned on 1 April, I purged her:

20 *R: pills - sine quibus, Ruffus's each 1dr. Make 9 pills, give 3 at  
bedtime.*

After her body was purged, she used the following steeled  
wine, about 2 spoonfuls, then 4 then 6, gradually increasing what

---

**1** Case 41] S.O.: Observ. XLI [First Century], p. 37. **11** Case 42] S.O.: Observ. XLII [First Century], pp. 37-38. | Lady] S.O.: Mrs. **18** she discontinued the medicines] S.O.: I was dismissed.

**R:** chalybis praeparati unc.i, corticis medii fraxini, tamariscis,  
 radicum capparum ana unc.s, ligni sassaphras, iuniperi ana  
 dr.vi, radices enulae campanae, angelicae, galangae, calami  
 aromatici ana dr.ii, **/42/** rasurae eboris, cornu cervi, santali  
 5 citrini ana dr.iii, herborum absinthii, chamaepytyos, ceterachi,  
 epithymi, melissae, chamaedryos ana p.ii, florum boraginis,  
 buglossi, scabiosae, genestae ana p.i, cinamomi unc.s,  
 caryophyllorum, zingiberis, macis, nucis moschatae ana dr.ii.  
*Omnibus crasso modo contusis et invicem mixtis, infundantur*  
 10 *cum vino optimo generoso lib.4. Ad macerandum ponantur in*  
*balneo Mariae tepido, vase bene clauso, per tres quatuorve dies.*  
*Postea colentur per manicam Hippocraticam aliquot vicibus.<sup>96</sup>*  
 Detur ut supra, et utetur exercitatione.

Pulvere post pastum sequenti utatur:

15 **R:** seminum coriandri praeparatorum dr.i, foeniculi, anisi ana dr.s,  
 carvi sc.i, florum cordialium ana dr.i, maioranae dr.s, radices  
 liquiritiae, enulae campanae ana dr.i, zingiberis dr.i, radices  
 galangae, nucis moschatae, caryophyllorum ana dr.s. Grosso modo  
 contundantur, addito saccharo, fiat pulvis.  
 20 Ventriculus et hypochondria sequenti oleo ter in septimana  
 ungantur:

**R:** [...] olei anethini, nardini, de capparibus ana unc.s, aceti scillitici  
 unc.i. Coquantur ad consumptionem aceti, adde gummi ammoniaci  
 dissoluti in aceto dr.ii, radices azari dr.i, seminum nigellae dr.s, croci

<sup>96</sup>Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, p. 73: Omnibus crasso modo  
 contusis et invicem mixtis, infundantur cum vino et ad macerandum ponantur  
 in B.M. tepido, vase bene clauso, per duos aut tres dies. Postea colentur per  
 manicam aliquot vicibus [the recipe Du Chesne refers to is not the same as  
 Hall's].

she took:

- R:** prepared steel 1oz, middle bark of ash and tamarisk, caper roots each ½oz, sassaphras, juniper wood each 6dr, roots of elecampane, angelica, galangal, sweet flag each 2dr, **/42/** shavings of ivory,
- 5 hartshorn, yellow sandalwood each 3dr, leaves of wormwood, ground pine, spleenwort, dodder, lemon balm, germander each 2 pinches, flowers of borage, bugloss, scabious, broom each 1 pinch, cinnamon ½oz, cloves, ginger, mace, nutmeg each 2dr. *Crush everything coarsely and blend in turn, infuse in best wine 4 pints.*
- 10 *After steeping place in a warm bain Marie, in a well-closed vessel, for three or four days. Afterwards strain several times through a Hippocratic sleeve. Give as above, and she is to take exercise.*

Take the following powder after meals:

- R:** prepared coriander seeds 1dr, fennel, anise each ½dr, caraway
- 15 1sc, the cordial flowers each 1dr, marjoram ½dr, liquorice and elecampane root each 1dr, ginger 1dr, galangal root, nutmeg, cloves each ½dr. Pound coarsely, add sugar. Make a powder.

Anoint the stomach and hypochondrium with the following oil, three times weekly:

- 20 **R:** *Oils of dill, nard, capers each ½oz, vinegar of squills 1oz. Boil until*

*sc.i, cerae quantum satis. Fiat linimentum.*<sup>97</sup>

*Atque haec sunt, quibus spacio 20 dierum sanitatem adeptam fuit Domina.*<sup>98</sup>

5

[Case 43] **/43/** Austin, virgo intacta, *facies rubris maculis conspersa, inflata et circa mentum pustulis rubris daefaedata [...]* alias satis formosa virgo magna dote.

10 **R:** *diacatholiconis dr.v, confectionis Hamech dr.ii, aquae fumariae unc.iii*, syrupi cichorii cum rhabarbaro dr.vi.<sup>99</sup> Fiat. Optime purgata.

Die sequenti:

**R:** pilularum foetidarum, de hermodactylis ana dr.s, aurearum sc.ii.

15 Misce. Copiosi evacuata.

Purgatione rite facta, *illinat faciem hoc liquore:*

**R:** *lythargyri auri pulverizati unc.i, aluminis dr.i, boracis dr.iii, cerusae unc.s, aceti unc.ii, aquarum rosarum et plantaginis ana unc.iii. Bulliant lento igne ad consumptionem tertiae partis, postea coletur. Adde succi limonum unc.s.*<sup>100</sup> Fiat, sed nota, ante huius aquae usum venam aperire iubebam.

*Mane et vesperi meo monitu apertas, ruptasque ac expressas*

<sup>97</sup>Platter, *De functionum laesionibus*, p. 140: **R** oleorum amygd. dulc. chamomill. anethini ana unc.i amygd. am. sambucini, de capparibus unc.vi. irini, nardini ana unc.s. succi absynthii unc.i aceti albi scyll unc.i. Decoquantur ad succorum consumptionem: adde gummi ammoniaci dissoluti in aceto unc.i, rad. azari dr.i, seminum nigellae, brassicae ana dr.s. croci sc.i cerae q.s. fiat linimentum. | <sup>98</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...]* *centuriae*, p. 181: Atque hec sunt, quibus mox sanitatem adeptam fuit iuvenula haec. | <sup>99</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 588: Facies rubris maculis conspersa, inflata, et crustis serpentibus defaedata [...] Post purgatione factam, cum cathol unc.s, conf. Hamech dr.iii cum aqua fumariae. | <sup>100</sup>Platter, *Observationum*, p. 588 [following immediately from the previous borrowing].

*the vinegar is gone, add gum ammoniac dissolved in vinegar 2dr, asarabacca root 1dr, nigella seeds ½dr, saffron 1sc, sufficient wax. Make a liniment.*

*The Lady regained her health with these, within 20 days.*

5

[Case 43] /43/ Austin, a spinster: *her face was sprinkled with red spots, swollen and disfigured by red pustules around her chin, otherwise a good-looking young woman of much talent.*

10 *R: diacatholicon 5dr, Hamech confection 2dr, fumitory water 3oz, chicory syrup with rhubarb 6dr. Make it. She was very well purged.*

*The next day:*

*R: pills - foetidae, of colchicum each ½dr, aureae 2sc. Make it. She*  
15 *was abundantly evacuated.*

*After being rightly purged, she should anoint her face with this liquid:*

*R: powdered litharge of gold 1oz, alum 1dr, borax 3dr, ceruse ½oz, vinegar 2oz, rose and plantain waters each 3oz. Boil on a low fire,*  
20 *reduce by a third, then strain. Add lemon syrup ½oz. Make it.*

NOTE: I prescribed venesection before the use of this water.

*On my advice, she opened, broke and expressed the pustules*

---

6 Case 43] S.O.: Observ. XLIII [First Century], p. 39.

*pustulas. Lavit quotidie aqua praedicta quae postea per se siccabantur. Hanc lotionem cum continuasset intra paucos dies facies ex toto optime sanata et bene colorata.*<sup>101</sup>

5

[Case 44] Elizabeth Kenton de Hanington aetatis  
50, fluxu sanguinis ex ore.

℞: syrupi papaveris rheadis unc.ii, aquae scabiosae unc.iii, rosarum  
parum. Detur una pars mane, altera sero.

10 ℞: conservae rosarum rubrarum unc.i, boli Armeni, lapidis  
haematitis, coralli rubri, terrae sigillatae ana sc.i. Cum syrupo  
papaveris, fiat mixtura. Capiat quantitatem fabae post zulapio.  
Curata.

15 [Case 45] **/44/** Simons de Knole, venae ruptae  
pulmonis, vomitus sanguinis curatio; aetatis 40.

℞: rhabbari pulverizati dr.ii, syrupi capillarum veneris unc.i,  
aquae cichorii unc.4. Misce.

℞: philonii Persici dr.i (in sistendo de sanguine summe laudatur a

20 Valleriola<sup>102</sup>) syrupi de myrtillo unc.i, aquae plantaginis unc.4.

Misce. Capiat lac caprinum cum saccharo et hora cubitus  
conservae rosarum rubrarum dr.i.

<sup>101</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 158: mane et vesperi meo monitu apertas, ruptasque ac expressas pustulas lavit quotidie aqua nostra Mercuriali, quae postea per se siccabantur. Hanc lotionem cum continuasset, intra paucos dies sanatae sunt manus ex toto. | <sup>102</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum* [...] *libri sex*, p. 220: Philonium dico Persicum, quod mirificis laudibus Mesueus commendavit, cap. de fluxu sanguinis ab ore: dicens vehementis esse virtutis ad sreatum sanguinis ex ore, quod et ipse profecto millies sum expertus.

**16** pulmonis] in margin; added in a different ink. **17** veneris] ♀.

*morning and evening. She washed daily with the above water, which afterwards dried by itself. After she had continued with this lotion for a few days, her face was entirely healed in every part, and she was well coloured.*

5

[Case 44] Elizabeth Kington of Hunington,  
aged 50: with a flux of blood from the mouth.

**R:** wild poppy syrup 2oz, scabious water 3oz, a few roses. Take 1 part in the morning, another in the evening.

10 **R:** conserve of red roses 1oz, bole Armeniac, haematite, red coral, sealed earth each 1sc. Make a mixture with poppy syrup. Take as much as a bean after the julep.

Cured.

15

[Case 45] **/44/** Symons of Knowle: cure of a ruptured vein in the lung, vomiting blood. Age: 40.

**R:** powdered rhubarb 2dr, maidenhair syrup 1oz, chicory water 4oz. Mix.

**R:** philonium Persicum 1dr (highly praised by Valleriola for stopping blood) syrup of bilberries 1oz, plantain water 4oz. Mix. Take goat's milk with sugar, and at bedtime, conserve of red roses.

20

---

**6** Case 44] S.O.: Observ. XLIV [First Century], p. 40. **8** wild] S.O. red.  
**10** haematite] S.O. bloodstone. **15** Case 45] S.O.: Observ. XLV [First Century], p. 40.

His paucis cito, tuto, iucunde curatus.

[Case 46] Cooper marita de Pebwort aetatis 48,  
sentit auram seu flatum a pedibus ascendentem  
5 in stomachum, extemplo male se habet, et fere ad  
deliquium animae.

℞: pilularum foetidae, Ruffi ana sc.4. Fiant pilulae 9. Dentur iii  
hora somni.

Postea usa pulvere sequenti post pastum:

10 ℞: rasurae eboris, cornu cervi ana dr.i, speciei aromaticum rosatum  
Gabrielis dr.s, seminum coriandri, foeniculi, anisi ana dr.i, carvi  
dr.s, florum cordialium dr.i, maioranae dr.s, radices liquiritiae,  
enulae campanae ana dr.i, zingiberis, galangae, nucis moschatae,  
caryophylli ana dr.s, croci sc.i. Contundantur grosso modo et adde  
15 saccharum rosarum tabulatum ad pondus omnium. Post pastum  
coch.s. Pulvis inquit auro dignus. Stomacho emplastrum ex  
labdano, cera, caranna et specie aromatico et oleo macis.

His solis ab omnia symptomata liberata et curata.

20 [Case 47] /45/ Scorbuti, melancholiae  
hypochondriacae, cordis palpitacionis, capitis et  
iuncturarum doloris, ophthalmiae, vertiginis,  
morphiae cura experta.

Generosa Wagstaffe de Warwick, annorum 46, *aegritudinibus istis*  
25 *chronicis, paene consumpta*.<sup>103</sup> Urina reddebatur, hodie clara sicut

---

<sup>103</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 217.

---

9 pulvere sequenti] Similar to the recipe in Case 42, page /42/.  
in margin. 14 croci sci] in margin. 20 Case 47] Note change of heading style, from  
patient to illness.



He was cured quickly, safely, pleasantly by these few.

[Case 46] Cooper, a married woman of  
Pebworth, aged 48: feels a breath or wind  
5 rising from her feet to the stomach. She feels  
ill at once and almost faints.

R: pills - foetidae, Ruffus's each 4sc. Make 9 pills. Take 3 at  
bedtime.

Next she took the following powder after meals:

10 R: shavings of ivory, hartshorn each 1dr, Gabrieli's aromatic rose  
powder ½dr, seeds of coriander, fennel, anise each 1dr, caraway  
½dr, cordial flowers 1dr, marjoram ½dr, liquorice and elecampane  
root each 1dr, ginger, galangal, nutmeg, cloves each ½dr, saffron  
1sc. Pound coarsely, and add an equal weight of rose sugar tablets:  
15 after meals, ½ spoonful. She said this powder was worth gold. For  
the stomach: plaster of laudanum, wax, caranna, the aromatic  
powder and mace oil.

She was freed and cured of all symptoms by these alone.

20 [Case 47] /45/ Proven cure of scurvy,  
hypochondriac melancholy, heart palpitations,  
pain in the head and joints, inflammation of  
the eye, giddiness, skin rash.

Mrs Wagstaffe, a gentlewoman of Warwick, 46 years: *almost wasted*  
25 *away by these long-standing illnesses*. She passed changeable

---

3 Case 46] S.O.: Observ. XLVI [First Century], p. 41. | a married woman] S.O.:  
Marit [as if a surname]. 20 Case 47] S.O.: Observ. XLVII [First Century], pp.  
41-43.

aqua fontana, crassa turbida. Ex urina frequenti mutatione,  
iudicabam illam scorbuto laborare, nec me fefellit opinio, nam  
maculis lividis et purpuris brachia conspurcata, cum aliis multis  
symptomatibus quae nunc describere longum erit.

5 Ego in consilium adhibitus hanc sequenti sanam reddidi:

**R:** radicum cichorii, buglossi ana unc.i, foeniculi, ireos, corticis  
tamariscis ana unc.s, enulae campanae, foliorum absinthii ana  
dr.iii, maioranae, chamaepityos, chamaedryos, fumariae ana dr.ii,  
florum cordialium ana dr.i, seminum anisi, foeniculi, petroselini  
10 ana dr.i.s, foliorum senae unc.i.s, carthami contusi unc.i.

Contundantur et indantur in lib.ii vini albi. Bulliant ad libram,  
coletur. Colaturae adde syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti unc.iii. Usa est  
per 5 dies, dosis unc.4, ex quo omni die sedes vi vel 7, aliquando 8.  
Ex hac purgatione a cordis palpitatione paene liberata.

15 Corpus rite purgatum, suasi ut vino hoc successive uteretur:

**R:** radicum apperitivarum ana unc.s, absinthii unc.ii, maioranae  
dr.i.s, /46/ florum cordialium ana p.i, corticis tamariscis,  
capparum ana dr.i, seminum foeniculi, anisi ana dr.ii, carvi dr.i,  
spicae sc.i, summitatis centaurii dr.i.s, chalybis praeparati dr.iii.

20 Fiant, indantur in vini albi lib.ii. Capiat ante cibum horis tribus, et  
hora ante pastum capiat succum cochleariae praeparatum in vino,  
coch.4 vel 5, semel vel bis si opus esset.

Capiat doseem pilularum sequentium, nam alvus semper  
lubrica tenenda:

urine, one day clear like spring water, then thick and turbid. From the frequent change of the urine I judged that she suffered from scurvy. Nor did my judgement deceive me, for her arms were polluted with livid, purple spots, with many other symptoms which  
5 it would take too long to describe now.

I was summoned for consultation, and restored her health with the following:

**R:** chicory, bugloss roots each 1oz, fennel, iris, tamarisk bark each ½oz, elecampane, wormwood leaves each 3dr, marjoram, ground-  
10 pine, germander, fumitory each 2dr, cordial flowers each 1dr, seeds of anise, fennel, parsley each 1½dr, senna leaves 1½oz, bruised safflower 1oz. Pound and soak in 2 pints white wine. Boil, reduce to 1 pint, strain. Add Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup 3oz. She used it for five days. Dose: 4dr, from which six or seven stools, sometimes  
15 eight, every day. She was almost freed from the heart palpitations by this purge.

Once her body was rightly purged, I advised her to use this wine next:

**R:** the opening roots each ½oz, wormwood 2oz, marjoram 1½dr,  
20 ~~/46/~~ cordial flowers each 1 pinch, tamarisk bark and capers each 1dr, fennel, anise seeds each 2dr, caraway 1dr, spikenard 1sc, centaury tops 1½dr, prepared steel 3dr. Make it, put in 2 pints white wine. Take three hours before food, and take prepared scurvy-grass juice in wine, 4 or 5 spoonfuls an hour before dinner,  
25 once or twice as needed.

Take a dose of the following pills, for the bowels movements

---

3 Nor did my judgement deceive me] S.O.omits. 4 with<sup>2</sup>...now] S.O.omits.  
6 I...following] S.O.omits. 24 before] S.O.: after.

*R: aloes dr.ii, myrrhae dr.s [...] gummi ammoniaci in aceto dissoluti sc.i [...] agarici, rhabarbari ana dr.i.s, radicum asari, gentianae ana dr.s, masticis sc.i, spicae, seminum petroselini ana sc.s. Cum succo absinthii instar extracti inspissati, fiat massa. Capiat dr.s semel in septimana vel paulo plus, horis duabus ante prandium.*<sup>104</sup> Si maiorem deiectionem requirat, permisceat aggregativas pilulas dosi uni pilularum.

*Pulvis post pastum [...]:*

*R: caryophylli, radicis galangae, nucis moschatae, cinamomi ana dr.s, seminum coriandri praeparatorum, radicis enulae campanae ana dr.i, seminum foeniculi, anisi ana dr.s, carvi sc.i, radicis liquiritiae dr.ii, zingiberis dr.i.*<sup>105</sup> Pulverizentur grosso modo, adde sacchari rosati tabulati unc.ii. Misce.

*Deinde ut cordis regionem ungeret:*

*R: succi cardiacae, olei nardini ana unc.s. Coquantur parum, adde olei caryophylli sc.s, camphorae sc.i, croci sc.s, cerae albae parum. Fiat linimentum.*<sup>106</sup>

*/47/ Cum dein vertigo illae molesta esset, reliquis sensim desinentibus, tabulis ut hisce uteretur consului:*

*R: pulveris diacydonii sine speciebus, nucis moschatae ana dr.i, foliorum euphrasiae, maioranae, florum lavendulae ana sc.i, coralli*

<sup>104</sup>Platter, *De functionum laesionibus*, p. 139. Pilulae in hoc casu, uti in omnibus eiusmodi obstructionibus utilissimae quae et haemorrhoides et menses provocant. *R* aloes dr.ii, myrrhae dr.s. (ad putridos humores) epithymi dr.i, rad. gentianae, azari ana dr.s. gummi ammoniaci dissoluti in aceto sc.i (si durities adsit circa glandulas omenti et mesenterii, uti saepe fit) seminis petrosel. sc.s. rhabarb. el. dr.i.s. spicae sc.i cum succo absynthii fiat massa: capiat sc.ii alternis vel tertio die. | <sup>105</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 60, Si maiorem deiectionem requirat, permisceat aggregativas pilulas dosi uni pilularum. Pulvere post pastum sequenti utatur *R* sem. coriandr dr.ii foeniculi anisi, ana dr.i carvi dr.s rad liquiritiae unc.s zingib. dr.ii rad galangae, nucis moschat. cinamomi gariophyl ana dr.i. [Compare with recipe on /33/].

<sup>106</sup>Platter: *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 69.

should always be kept slippery:

*R: aloes 2dr, myrrh ½dr, gum ammoniac dissolved in vinegar 1sc, agaric, rhubarb each 1½dr, wild ginger, gentian roots each ½dr, mastic 1sc, spikenard, parsley seeds each ½sc. Make a mass with*  
5 *wormwood juice in the form of thickened extract. Take ½dr once a week, or a little more, two hours before dinner. If greater defaecation is required, one may add aggregative pills. Dose: 1 pill.*

*A powder after meals:*

*R: cloves, galangal root, nutmeg, cinnamon each ½dr, prepared*  
10 *coriander seed, elecampane root each 1dr, fennel and anise seeds each ½dr, caraway 1 sc, liquorice root 2dr, ginger 1dr. Pound coarsely, add rose sugar tablets 2oz. Mix.*

*Then to anoint the region of the heart:*

*R: motherwort juice, nard oil each ½oz. Boil a little, add clove oil ½sc,*  
15 *camphor 1sc, saffron ½sc, a little white wax. Make a liniment*

*/47/ Then, as she was troubled with giddiness, having stopped the other tablets gradually, I decided she should use these:*

*R: simple diacidonium powder, nutmeg each 1dr, eyebright leaves, marjoram, lavender flowers each 1sc, red coral 2sc, ivory shavings*

*rubri sc.ii, rasurae eboris sc.i, sacchari dissoluti in aqua rosarum.*

*Fiat tabulae. Capiat mane postea iusculum ut sumeret, suasi, cum maiorana et macere conditum vel ovum sorbile, addito carvi semine, cum sale (vel potius cum sale cochleariae) sumeret.*<sup>107</sup>

- 5           Sanguisugis haemorrhoidis applicatis, morphea facies foedata, pro qua exterpanda sequenti usa:

**R:** saponis albi unc.ii, sulphuris vivi unc.i, viridis aeris dr.i, camphore sc.i. Cum oleo tartari fiant globuli. Madefiat parum in aceto et inungat faciem et per se siccare sinet. Postea matutina  
10       lacte abluat et sic brevi liberabitur. Centies probatum. Pro oculo lachrymante utetur aqua nostra ophthalmica ut pro generosa Smith, folio /5/.

*Emplastrum pro temporibus restrictivum ordinavi, pro sistendo rheumate:*

- 15       **R:** boli Armeni dr.ii, masticis dr.s, sanguinis draconis dr.i, pulveris gallarum dr.s. Excipiantur ovi albumine et aceto. Applicetur utrinque temporibus.<sup>108</sup>

His pristinae sanitati restituta.

- 20           [Case 48] /48/ Dilachrymationis oculi dextri, per annum destillantis cura.

---

<sup>107</sup>Platter: *Observationum [...] libri tres*: pp. 69-70: Cum dein potissimum vertigo illi molesta esset, reliquis sensim desinentibus, tabulis ut hisce uteretur consului: **R** pulver. diacyton. sine speciebus nucis mosc. ana dr.i, fol. euphrasiae, maioranae, fl. lavendulae ana sc.i, coralli rubri sc.ii, ras. eboris sc.i, sacchari dis. in aqua ros. fiant tabulae. Iusculum mane ut sumeret, suasi, cum maiorana et macere conditum velut ut ovum sorbile, addito carvi semine, cum sale, sumeret. | <sup>108</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 351: Emplastrum pro temporibus ordinavi. **R:** boli Arm. dr.ii, mastiches dr.s, sanguinis draconis dr.i, pul. gallarum dr.s. excipiantur ovi album. et aceto. Applicetur utrinque temporibus.

---

**8** tartari] ♀.

*1sc, sugar dissolved in rose water. Make tablets. I advised her that it should be taken in the morning after broth, seasoned with marjoram and mace, or she should take it with a soft-boiled egg with added caraway seeds and salt (or better, scurvy-grass salt).*

5           After leeches were applied to the haemorrhoidal veins she used the following to eradicate the morpew disfiguring her face:

**R:** white soap 2oz, live sulphur 1oz, verdigris 1dr, camphor 1sc.

Make pellets with oil of tartar. Moisten a little with vinegar, anoint the face, allow to dry. Wash off with milk the next morning: and so

10          she will quickly be freed. This has been proved a hundred times.

For watering eyes, take the ophthalmic water as for Mrs Smith, page /5/.

*I prescribed the plaster against rupture for the temples, to control the rheum:*

15          **R:** bole Armeniac 2dr, mastic ½dr, dragon's blood 1dr, gall powder ½dr, with egg white and vinegar as an excipient. Apply to the temples on both sides.

These restored her to her former health.

20                   [Case 48] **/48/** Cure of excessive lachrymation of the right eye, dripping for a year.

---

20 Case 48] S.O. Observ. XLVIII [First Century], pp. 44-45.

Generosa Simons de Whightlady Asten, patiebatur in dextro oculo  
aquam destillantem absque dolore et rubore, propter quam malam  
invisus intercipi caepit, et diminutissime videt. Generosa haec fuit  
annorum 15, *a me huiusmodi ad propulsandam dictam aquam*

5 *curandi methodus instituebatur felici omine.*<sup>109</sup>

*R: fumariae recentis, sennae purgatae ana dr.iii. Decoquendo in sero  
lactis pro uno haustu, saepe repetendo; que duo visioni appropriata  
sunt. Deinde purgata pilulis sine quibus.*<sup>110</sup>

*Collo emplastrum vesicatorium Horstei applicabam:*

10 *R cantharidum unc s, terebinthinae unc.ii, olibani, myrrhae, masticis,  
camphorae ana dr.s, olei rosarum, cerae ana quantum satis. Fiat  
emplastrum. Huius usum felicissimum [...] diu observavi.*<sup>111</sup>

*Supra oculum affectum, iussi in temporum uno emplastro contra  
rupturam ad inhibendum influxum continuo gestare, vel loco eius,*

15 *emplastrum ut folio 47 pro Generosa Wagstafe.*<sup>112</sup>

*In collyrio hoc, duas spongiolas intingat easque noctu expressas  
oculo applicet, ligando cum fascia aut retinendo cum cucupha donec  
exiccentur, tunc enim etsi decidant nil obest, modo per duas horas in  
oculo clauso prius haeserint. Paratur hoc modo efficacissimum et  
20 probatum.*

*/49/ R: corticis granatorum unc.i, coquatur in aqua rosarum,  
plantaginis, solani ana unc.iii. Coletur. Dissolvatur lapidis*

<sup>109</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 443: *a me huiusmodi ad propulsanda dicta vitia curandi methodus instituebatur felici omine.* | <sup>110</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 355: *Sumendo fumariae recentem, et sennae purgatae an. unc.s, decoquendo in sero lactis, pro uno haustu saepe repetendo; que duo visioni appropriata sunt. Pilulae quoque sine quibus dictae, idem possunt efficere.* | <sup>111</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 295: *Emplast. Vesicator. de Cantharidibus: R cantharidum unc.i, terebinth. unc.s, olibani, myrrha, mastich. camphorae ana dr.i, ol. rosar. cerae ana q.s. F. empl. Huius usum felicissimum [...] observavi.* | <sup>112</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 352.



Mrs Simonds, a gentlewoman of Whitelady-Aston: suffered from water running from the right eye without pain or redness. Because of the troublesome weeping, her vision is cut off and she sees very little. She was 15 years old. *By a happy omen I established this*  
5 *method of cure in order to drive off the said water:*

*R: fresh fumitory, cleaned senna each 3dr. Boil in milk whey for one draught, repeating often, two are appropriate for vision. Then she purged with pills sine quibus.*

*I applied Horst's vesicatory plaster to the neck:*

10 *R: cantharides ½oz, turpentine 2oz, olibanum, myrrh, mastic, camphor each ½dr, rose oil, wax each sufficient. Make a plaster. I have observed the most happy use of this for a long time.*

*Above the affected eye, I prescribed the plaster against ruptures worn continuously on the temples to restrain the flux or, in its place,*  
15 *the plaster for Mrs Wagstaffe on page /47/.*

*Dip two sponges in this eye-salve, and at night apply squeezed out to the eye, fastened with a bandage or retained by a head-dress until they are dry, for then it is not a problem if they fall off. Attach them over the closed eye in the preceding way for two hours.*

20 *Prepared in this way, this is very effective and proven:*

*/49/ R: pomegranate rind 1oz, boil in rose, plantain and nightshade*

---

4 She was 15 years old] S.O.: was cured by me for fifteen years. 9 I applied Horst's vesicatory plaster to the neck] S.O. adds: which I have long used with most happy success (the prescript of which you have in the *Marrow of Chirurgery*); [A neat bit of self-advertisement by Cooke]. 18 Attach...hours] S.O. omits.

*haematitis dr.ii, agitetur donec rubeat totum collyrium, abiecta deinde foece. Adde myrrhae dr.s, sarcocollae nutritae in lacte dr.i, cerusae, tutiae ana dr.i, vitrioli albi, amyli ana sc.i. Pulverizentur omnia ut alchool. Misceantur cum collyrio. Item parentur mucilagines*

5 *seminum lini et foenugraeci et quando uti velit collyrio, parum harum mucilaginum collyrio permisceat, vel in harum penuria albumen ovi.*<sup>113</sup>

His curata.

[Case 49] Fluxu menstruum rubeorum cura.

- 10 Julian West, 53 annos complente atque multis incassum pharmacis usa, vero documento comprobata.
- Purgatio:*
- R: foliorum senae unc.i, trochischorum de agarico dr.iii, sacchari dr.vi, zingiberis dr.i, passularum dr.ii. Decoquantur lento igne in lactis seri*
- 15 *lib.4, usque ad consumptionem lib.s. Huius decocti unc.i.s capiebat mane et vesperi per iii continuos dies, quo corpus probe ab humoribus [...] fuit expurgatum.*<sup>114</sup>

<sup>113</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 354: In collyrio sequenti, duas spongiolas intingat easq. noctu expressas utriq. oculo applicet, ligando cum fascia, aut retinendo cum cucupha, donec exsiccentur, tunc enim etsi decidant, nihil obest, modo per duas horas, in oculo clauso prius haeserint. Paratur autem hoc modo efficacissimum: **R:** cort. granat. unc.i, coq. in aq. ros. plantag. et solani ana unc.iii. Coletur, diss. lap. hemat. dr.ii, agitetur donec rubeat totum collyrium, abiecta deinde residentia. Adde myrrhae dr.s, sarcocollae nutritae in lacte unc.i, cerusae, tuthiae ana dr.i, vitreoli albi, amyli ana sc.i. Pulverisentur omnia ut alchool. Misceantur cum collyrio. Item parentur mucilagines s. lini et foenugraeci, et quando uti vult collyrio, parum harum mucilaginum collyrio permisceat, vel in harum penuria, ovi albumen.

<sup>114</sup>Ruland the Elder: 'Centuria IV', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 426: 40 annos complente, atque multis incassum pharmacis. Purgatio: **R.** fol. senae mundat. unc.i, zingiber. drach.i, troch. de agaric. drach.iii. Sacchari drach.vi, passular. drach.ii. Decoquantur lento igne in lactis seri lib.iiii, usque ad consumptionem lib.s. Huius decocti unc.i capiebat mane et vesperi per 3 continuos dies: quo corpus probe ab humorib. ista symptomata causantibus fuit expurgatum.

<sup>10</sup> West 53] West 40 53 [40 probably copied accidentally from Hall's source - see footnote].

waters each 3oz. Strain. Dissolve haematite 3dr, shake until the whole eye-salve becomes red, then discard the dregs. Add myrrh ½dr, sarcocol washed in milk 1dr, ceruse, tutty each 1dr, white vitriol, starch each 1sc. Powder everything for a very fine powder.

- 5 Mix with eye-salve. Also prepare linseed and fenugreek mucilage, and when the eye-salve is wanted, mix in a little of this mucilage or if not available, egg white.

These cured her.

- 10 [Case 49] Cure of red menstrual flux.

Julian West: *lasting 53 years, and the use many medicines without effect. She confirms this with certain proof.*

*A purgative:*

- 15 *R: senna leaves 1oz, agaric trochees 3dr, sugar 6dr, ginger 1dr, raisins 2dr. Reduce at a low fire in milk whey 4 pints, until ½ pint is gone. She took 1½oz of the decoction morning and evening for three successive days, by which her body was properly purged of the humours.*

---

<sup>10</sup> Case 49] S.O.: Observ. XLIX, [First Century], p. 45-46. <sup>11</sup> use...proof] S.O. omits.

4<sup>a</sup> die:

**R:** croci Martis in vino rubro dr.i.s. Hora ab assumptione capiat  
frictulam sic compositam:

*R: vitellum ovi, cum modico olei communis, et misce cum istis herbis,  
5 videlicet matricaria, florum omnium mensium, herbae Sancti  
Iohannis, millefolii et chelidoniae et fac frictulam unam quotidie et  
capiat unam et sic usque ad 9 dies.*<sup>115</sup> Hora cubitus ex creta et  
albumine ovi emplastrum pro dorso.

His liberata.

10

[Case 50] /50/ Tussis inveteratae, auditus  
gravitatis cura.

Generosa Sheldon de Bell-ende, aetatis 55, tussi gravi  
misere deturbata. Purgata sic:

15 **R:** pilularum de succino dr.s, aurearum sc.i, sine quibus sc.i. Fiant  
pilulae 5, iii hora cubitus, mane ii. *Postridie exhibendus pulvis  
sequens, a sc.s ad dr.i, per singulos dies, mane ac vesperi, [...] cum  
vino albo, iusculo aut grato aliquo liquore.*

*Pulvis purgatorius talis:*

20 **R:** cardui benedicti , synapis sylvestris ana sc.ii, piperis longi sc.i,  
foliorum senae selectorum dr.ii, anisi dr.s, diagridii praeparati sc.s.

---

<sup>115</sup>Solenander, *Consiliorum* [...] *Solenandri*, p. 330: Ad constringendum  
menstruum rubeum: **R** vitellum ovi, cum modico olei communis, et misce cum  
istis herbis, videlicet, matricariae, florum omnium mensium, herbae S.  
Iohannis, millefolii et chelidoniae et fac frictulam unam quotidie, et da patienti  
ad comedandum, et fac usque ad novem dies.

---

2 Martis] ♂.

On the fourth day:

**R:** crocus Martis in red wine 1½dr. An hour after taking it, take a fritter made like this:

**R:** *egg yolk with little ordinary oil, and mix with these herbs, viz:*

5 *motherwort, flowers of all seasons, St John's wort, yarrow and celandine, and make one fritter daily. Take one, repeat for 9 days.*

At bedtime, a plaster of chalk and egg white for the back.

These freed her.

10 [Case 50] **/50/** Cure of long-standing cough,  
impaired hearing.

Mrs Sheldon, a gentlewoman of Bell-End aged 55: wretchedly struck down by severe cough. She was purged thus:

**R:** Pills - amber ½dr, aureae 1sc, sine quibus 1sc. Make 5 pills: 3 at  
15 bedtime, 2 in the morning. *Next day give the following powder, 1sc to 1dr morning and evening for one day, with white wine, broth or other acceptable fluid.*

*A purgative powder of this sort:*

**R:** *blessed thistle, charlock each 2sc, long pepper 1sc, selected senna*  
20 *leaves 2dr, anise ½dr, prepared diagrydium 1sc. Make a very fine*

---

5 flowers of all seasons] Calendula, or pot marigold. 8 These freed her] S.O. has several of Cooke's own treatments here. 10 Case 50] S.O.: Observ LI [First Century], pp. 47-48. [S.O. inserts a later case here, hence the jump in numbering].

*Fiat pulvis subtilissimus, et sic per iii dies.<sup>116</sup> Tussi admodum urgente, trochiscis ut uteretur sequentibus uno in ore inter dentes et buccas retento, donec sponte diffuerit, quod noctu commodius inter dormiendum fieri posse docui.*

5           Finita pulvere:

*R: diatragacanthi frigidi dr.i.s, seminum hyoscyami albi sc.i, sacchari penidii unc.i, opii dissoluti in vino generoso gr.vi. Cum infusione gummi tragachanthi facta in aqua rosarum, fiant trochischi.<sup>117</sup> His penitus a tussi liberata.*

10           Pro gravitate auditus, suffitum mane auribus, suscepit per infundibulum, ex decocto origani, rutae, maioranae, spicae celticae, baccarum lauri, iuniperi, seminum foeniculi, carvi, cymini in vino decoctis.<sup>118</sup> Postea indatur lana cum moscho in aure nocte. Vero allium /51/ perforatum et per totum diem in melle maceratum

15           auribus indidit.

*Die in nares succum anagallidis et betae trahere iubebam, nam valde convenit nihil enim aequi ab auribus derivat atque fluxus narium:*

*R: succi anagallidis, (id est pimpernell), radicis betae ana unc.s.*

20           Misce. Trahat naribus vel penna intincta in eo naribus indatur.<sup>119</sup>

*Atque hisce paucis perplures pristinae integraeque sanitati, Deo*

---

<sup>116</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 415: Postridie exhibendus sequens pulvis, isque a scr.semss ad drach.i, per singulos dies, mane ac vesperi, usque ad morbi declinationem cum vino albo, iusculo aut grato aliquo liquore. Pulvis Purgatorius: **R** card. benedict. synap. sylvest. ana scrup. ii. piperis longi scrup. i. fol senae mundat: a stipitib. drach.ii. anisi drach.s. diagridii scrup. semis. Fiat pulvis subtiliss. commiscendo bene omnia.  
<sup>117</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 205. | <sup>118</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 107. | <sup>119</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 109: In nares si aliquando succum hunc traheret, valde conveniret, nihil enim aequae ab auribus derivat, atque fluxus narium: **R** succi anagallidis, rad. betae an. unc.s misce trahat naribus vel penna intincta in eo, naribus indatur.

*powder. Continue for 3 days. When the cough threatens severely, the following trochees may be used. Hold one in the mouth, between the teeth and cheek while it dissolves by itself. I showed her how to do this at night, while sleeping comfortably.*

5           When the powder is finished:

*R: cold diatragacanth 1½dr, white henbane seeds 1sc, barley sugar 1oz, opium dissolved in good wine 6gr. Make trochees with an infusion of gum tragacanth in rose water. This freed her completely from the cough.*

10           For impaired hearing, *a fumigation for the ears was received through a funnel in the morning, with a decoction of origanum, rue, marjoram, valerian, bayberries, juniper, seeds of fennel, caraway, cumin boiled in wine. Afterwards, place wool with musk in the ear at night. In fact, insert garlic* /51/ *perforated and soaked in honey*  
15 *all day into the ears.*

*I prescribed scarlet pimpernel and beet juice sniffed into the nostrils durig the day, for it is altogether appropriate, nothing indeed is its equal. It draws off the flux from the ears, and the nose:*

*R: juice of pimpernel, beetroot each 1oz. Mix. Sniff this into the*  
20 *nostrils, or introduce with a feather dipped in it.*

*I restored her with these very few and with God's help, to her*

---

3 between the teeth and cheek] S.O. omits. | I...comfortably] S.O. omits.

8 This...cough] S.O: They are very profitable between sleep in the night.

*iuvante restitui.*<sup>120</sup>

[Case 51] Abortus frequentis cura,

2 mense.

5 Generosa uxor filii Sheldons, corpulenta, bene colorata. *Quoties se  
concepisse suspicatur, mensibus aliquot postea elapsis, abortivit, in  
quo abortu, foetus nonnunquam manifesta apparent indicia. Ipsa  
interim bene habita et obesa, nulla graviora patitur accidentia.*<sup>121</sup>

Meum petit consilium. Dixit menses *decenter fluere, tunc dixi eam*  
10 *non concepisse certum est, idcirco eo tempore matrici expurgandae et  
corroborandae, et ut habilis ad conceptum fiat, studendum.*<sup>122</sup> Utetur  
salvia in potu et cibis.

*Capiat pauxillum de sequenti pulvere in ovo sorbili:*

*R: granatorum tinctorum, margaritae, tormentillae ana dr.i, masticis*  
15 *dr.s. Misce, fiat pulvis. Detur in ovo quantum grosso excipi potest.*<sup>123</sup>

*Emplastrum optimum pro retentione infantis:*

*R: laudani purissimi unc.i.s, gallarum, moschi quercini, boli Armeni,  
nucis cupressi, /52/ terrae sigillatae, myrtillis, rosarum rubrarum,  
sanguinis draconis, balausti ana unc.s, picis navalis unc.ii,*  
20 *terebinthinae unc.vi. Malexentur omnia simul. Fiat emplastrum,  
cuius portio extendatur super alutam et admoveatur lumbis usque ad  
os sacrum. Altera extensa item super alutam et admoveatur imo*

<sup>120</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 415: atque  
hisce paucis perplures pristinae integraeque sanitati restituimus. | <sup>121</sup>Platter,  
*Observationum[...] libri tres*, p. 698. | <sup>122</sup>Platter, *Observationum[...] libri tres*, p.  
698: Cum enim, quando fluunt decenter, eam nondum concepisse certum sit,  
idcirco eo tempore matrici corroborandae et expurgandae, et ut habilis ad  
conceptum fiat, studendum. | <sup>123</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum [...] liber quintus*, pp. 266-  
267: Utilius autem si mulier pauxillum de sequenti pulvere in ovo assumat: **R**  
gran. tinctorum. margarit. tormentillae an. dr.i, mastich. dr.s. Misc. f. pulvis.  
Detur in ovo quantum grosso excipi potest.



*former complete health.*

[Case 51] Cure of frequent miscarriage at  
two months.

- 5 Mrs Sheldon, a gentlewoman, the son's wife, stout, well coloured:  
*Every time she suspects she has conceived, she has miscarried after  
about a month had passed. In the aborted matter there sometimes  
appeared clear evidence of a foetus. She suffers nothing more  
serious in association, remaining well and fat. She asks my advice.*
- 10 She said her periods *flowed appropriately. Then I told her that  
conception was not certain. It was therefore desirable that she be  
cleansed and strengthened at the time of conception, so that she  
would be fit to conceive. She is to take sage in her drink and food.*

*Take a little of the following powder in a soft-boiled egg:*

- 15 *R: pomegranate tincture, daisies, tormentils each 1dr, mastic ½dr.  
Mix. Make a powder. Give in an egg as much as can be taken up on  
a groat.*<sup>11</sup>

*An excellent plaster for retaining a foetus:*

- R: pure labdanum 1½oz, galls, moss from an oak, bole Armeniac,  
20 cypress nuts /52/ sealed earth, myrtle, red roses, dragon's blood,  
wild pomegranate flower each ½oz, naval pitch 2oz, turpentine 6oz.  
Mix everything together. Make a plaster, spread one part of it on  
leather and apply to the lower back and sacral bone. Apply the*

---

<sup>11</sup>Experiments with cardboard coin replicas, flour and sugar show that this is approximately 1.5gm, equal to 1.16 scruples or 1 scruple and 3 grains.

---

**3** Case 51] S.O.: Observ. LII [First Century], p. 49.

*ventri usque ad umbilicum.*<sup>124</sup>

*His usa ad absolutum tempus usque, postea filium vegetum et vividum enixa est, et postea plures.*<sup>125</sup>

5 [Case 52] Tussis cura.

Parker generosus, aetatis 24, diu tussi gravi divexatus *sed divina affulgente gratia* a me curatus in hunc modum:<sup>126</sup>

**R:** terebinthinae Venetiae aquae hyssopii lotae unc.i, cum vitello ovi ut artis est dissoluto cum unc.iii aquae hyssopii et unc.i syrupi

10 liquiritiae. Misce.

Absoluta evacuatione, capiat omni mane de sequenti mistura:

**R:** florum sulphuris unc.ii, enulae campanae, ireos, glycyrrhizae ana dr.i, mellis quantum satis ad omnium incorporationem, cui adde olei sulphuris gut.x. Fiat linctus.

15 Hora cubitus:

**R:** *styracis, masticis, terebinthinae, arsenici rubri ana sc.4, incorporatentur cum vitello ovi. Deinde cum hoc medicamento frustula ligni iuniperi illiniantur et siccantur. Ex siccatis fiat suffumigium quod per tubulum ore excipiat.*<sup>127</sup>

20 Probatum. Curatus.

[Case 53] **/53/** Testiculi sinistri tumoris cura.

<sup>124</sup>Liébaut, *Thresor des Remedies Secrets*, pp. 806-807: J'ay trouvé celuy cy fort excellent pour la retention du petit. **R** ladanii puriffi unc.i.s, gallarum mosc. boli arm. nuc. cupressi, terrae sigill. myrtil. ros. rub. sang. drac. balaust. an unc.s, picis nav. unc.ii, therebinth. dr.vi. Malexentur omnia simul, fiat magdaleo, cuius portio extendatur super alutam et admoveatur lumbis usque ad os sacrum: altera extensa item super alutam admoveatur imo ventri usque ad umbilicum. | <sup>125</sup>Platter, *Observationum[...] libri tres*, p. 700: usa, ad absolutum tempus usque, postea filium vegetum et vividum enixa est. <sup>126</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 416 [the same page as the previous borrowing from Ruland]. | <sup>127</sup>Houllier, *De morbis internis*, p. 237.

*other, spread on leather, from the womb to the umbilicus.*

*She used these at the correct time, and afterwards gave birth to a lively, vigorous son, and to others later.*

5 [Case 52] Cure of cough.

Mr Parker, a gentleman aged 24: tormented by a severe cough, *but by an outpouring of divine grace* cured by me thus:

**R:** Venice turpentine washed in hyssop water 1oz, with egg yolk as is the practice in 3oz hyssop water and 1oz liquorice syrup. Mix.

10 After complete evacuation, take the following mixture every morning:

**R:** flowers of sulphur 2dr, elecampane, iris, liquorice each 1dr, sufficient honey to bind everything. Add to this oil of sulphur 10 drops. Make a linctus.

15 At bed time:

**R:** *styrax, mastic, turpentine, realgar each 4crs. Bind them with egg yolk, then smear small pieces of juniper wood with the medication, and dry. Make a fumitory with the dried pieces, received in the mouth through a funnel.*

20 This has been proved. He was cured.

[Case 53] **/53/** Cure of swelling of the left testicle.

---

**5** Case 52] S.O.: Observ. LIII, [First Century], pp. 49-50. **12** elecampane] S.O. adds: roots of. **20** He was cured] Cooke inserted three cases of his own, Observ. LIV, LV, LVI, pp. 50-2 in S.O. at this point; S.O. and Libellus case numbers differ consistently from now on. **22** Case 53] S.O.: Observ. LVII [First Century], p. 52.

Edwardus Raulins, circa aetatis annum i.s, tumore duro testiculi ad magnitudinem ovi gallanacei gravatus.

**R:** seminis lini pulverizati et cum oleo seminum lini fiat cataplasma calide. *Applicetur postea pittance ex panno duplicato formato*

5 *impressoque firmiter.*<sup>128</sup>

Hoc unico remedio liberatus et curatus.

[Case 54] Mensium obstructionis, capitis doloris  
et cordis cura.

10 Paulmer de Auster, his symptomatibus gravata, et sequenti liberata:

**R:** syrupi de 5 radicibus unc.i, rhabarbari pulverizati sc.i,  
diacatholiconis dr.vi, mannae unc.s, aquae artemisiae unc.4: sedes  
8. Vene pedis sectio.

Postea capiat:

15 **R:** trochischorum de myrrha sc.ii, cinamomi, castorei ana sc.i,  
syrupi artemisiae, vini albi ana unc.ii. Fiat haustus.

Praestantissimus ad sollicitandum mensium fluorem, saepe  
expertum.

20 [Case 55] Mensium fluoris superflui curatio.

Generosa Barnes de Tolton, nimio menstruum rubrum fluxu post  
partum transacta mense. Hoc unico medicamento curata:

**R:** rasurae cornu cervi dr.s in potu mane, et sic per 4 dies.

---

<sup>128</sup>Platter, *Observationum[...] libri tres*, p. 138.

Edward Rawlins, about 1½ years of age: weighed down by a hard swelling of the testicle, the size of a hen's egg.

**R:** powdered linseed and make a poultice with linseed oil. Apply hot, *then a piece of linen cloth folded double and pressed firmly.*

5 This one remedy freed and cured him.

[Case 54] Cure of menstrual obstruction, pain  
in the head and heart.

Palmer of Alcester: weighed down by these symptoms, and freed as  
10 follows:

**R:** syrup of the five roots 1oz, powdered rhubarb 1sc, diacatholicon 6dr, manna ½oz, mugwort water 4oz. Eight stools. Venesection of the foot.

Then take:

15 **R:** trochees of myrrh 2sc, cinnamon, castor each 1sc, mugwort syrup, white wine each 2oz. Make a draught.

This is outstanding for promoting menstrual flux. It has often been well tested.

20 [Case 55] Cure of excessive menstrual flow.

Mrs Barnes, a gentlewoman of Tolton: with excessive red menstrual flow a month after giving birth. She was cured by this medicine alone:

**R:** hartshorn shavings ½dr with a drink in the morning. Continue

---

**1** about 1½] S.O.: about 2. **4** then...firmly] S.O.: After there was a little bag made of cloth to keep it up in. **7** Case 54] S.O.: Observ. LVIII [First Century], p. 52. **20** Case 55] S.O.: Observ. LIX [First Century], p. 53.

Statim levamen sentiebat et penitus restaurata et curata.

[Case 56] /54/ Vermium et febris cura.

- 5 Talbot, filius primogenitus Comitissae de Salsburrey, febre et  
vermibus misere lancinatus, ita ut mortem prae foribus expectant,  
circa aetatis annum primum.
- Glistex ex lacte et saccharo: sedes ii, vermes 4 eiiciebat. Per os  
dabam cornum cervi praeparatum, zulapii forma. *Pulsibus*  
10 *applicabam unguenti populeonis dr.ii, telas araneorum multas,*  
*corticis nucis arboris parum. Misce.*<sup>129</sup> Applicui pulsibus in uno  
brachio, die sequenti in altero. Stomacho applicabam  
mithridatium, umbilico emplastrum contra lumbricos.

- Laus Deo spacio trium dierum convaluit. Comitissa ingentes  
15 mihi reddebat gratias cum magno salario.

[Case 57] Vomitus cibi, febris cura.

- Generosa Sheldon de Grafton aetatis 24, symptomatibus his misere  
gravata: diebus 14 post partum, suffocatione saepe matricis et  
20 sudore frigido oppressa.
- R:** hypossetalam ex rasuris cornu cervi et floribus calendulae.  
Detur pro matricis motu album illud e gallinae, stercore scilicet,  
sc.ii, tincturae coralli sc.ii.s, aquae buglossi unc.4, et saepe in die  
huius coch.i, istius coch.ii. Applicetur emplastrum ex caranna  
25 /55/ umbilico, in cuius medio imponantur 3 grana moschi.

---

<sup>129</sup>Platter, *Observationum*[...] *libri tres*, p. 291: Applicuit pulsibus in uno  
brachio sequens: **R** unguenti populeonis unc.i telas araneorum multas nucis  
arboris parum. Misce.

---

5 Talbot] Originally in heading.

the course for four days.

She immediately felt relieved, completely restored and cured.

[Case 56] /54/ Cure of worms and fever.

5 Talbot, first-born son of the Countess of Salisbury: wretchedly  
attacked by fever and worms, so that everyone expects death at the  
door. About the first year of age.

An enema of milk and sugar: He passed two stools, four  
worms. I gave prepared hartshorn orally in the form of a julep. /  
10 *applied populeon ointment 2dr to the pulses, many spiders' webs, a  
little hazelnut shells. Mix.* I applied it to the pulses in one arm, the  
following day the other. I applied Mithridate to the stomach, a  
plaster against worms to the umbilicus.

He recovered, praise God, within three days. The Countess  
15 thanked me greatly, with a large payment.

[Case 57] Cure of vomiting food, fever.

Mrs Sheldon, a gentlewoman of Grafton aged 24: wretchedly  
weighed down with these symptoms fourteen days after birth. She  
20 was overcome by frequent suffocation of the womb and cold sweats.  
**R:** posset ale of hartshorn shavings and marigold flowers. For the  
mother she was given the white movement of a chicken (that is, the  
dung) 2sc, coral tincture 2½sc, bugloss water 4oz: 1 spoonful of the  
first, 2 spoonfuls of the latter often during the day. Apply a caranna  
25 plaster /55/ to the umbilicus, in the middle of which is placed 3

---

4 Case 56] *S.O.*: *Observ.* XL [a misprint for LX] [First Century], p. 53. 17 Case 57] *S.O.*: *Observ.* LXI [First Century], p. 54.

Scutum stomachale:

**R:** labdani dr.i, cerae dr.ii, caryophylli, santali citrini ana sc.i, masticis dr.i, myrrhae dr.s. Cum oleo absinthii et macis fiat emplastrum.

5 His curata.

[Case 58] Flatus stomachi cura.

Generosa Davis de Quenton, diu flatu stomachi lancinata, circa  
10 aetatis annum 63.

**R:** speciei aromatici rosarum Gabrielis dr.ii, radices enulae campanae dr.iii, calami aromatici dr.ii, liquiritiae unc.s, turbith praeparati unc.s, senae unc.ii, seminum anisi unc.s, cinamomi dr.ii, radices gentianae dr.i.s, sacchari quantum satis. Fiat pulvis.

15 Dosis quantum super 12 denariis tenere potest, in vino.

Hoc unico medicamento liberata.

[Case 59] Tussis gravis cura, post variolas.

Filius generosi Bishopes aetatis vi, variolis tuto liberatis per  
20 mensem, incidebat in tussem gravem, febrem cum vermibus.

**R:** mannae sc.ii, diacatholiconis dr.s, floris cassiae dr.i. Misce cum syrupo de liquiritia. Detur lambendum saepe.<sup>130</sup> Cornu cervi praeparatum detur in lacte, inungat pectus unguento pectorale, zuparium nostrum ex papavere, glister ex lacte et saccharo.<sup>131</sup>

25

---

<sup>130</sup>Vittori, *De aegritudinibus infantum*, p. 115: **R** mannae electae sc.ii, diacatholiconis dr.s, floris cassiae dr.i. Misce cum syrupo de liquiritia, fiat mistura. Detur lambendum saepius. | <sup>131</sup>Vittori, *De aegritudinibus infantum*, p. 114: Ungatur pectus unguento pectorali commun.



grains of musk.

A stomach shield:

**R:** labdanum 1dr, wax 2dr, cloves, yellow sandalwood each 1sc,  
mastic 1dr, myrrh ½dr. Make a plaster with wormwood and mace  
5 oils.

These cured her.

[Case 58] Cure of wind in the stomach.

Mrs Davies, a gentlewoman of Quinton: attacked by wind in the  
10 stomach for a long time. Age: about 63 years.

**R:** Gabrieli's aromatic rose powder 2dr, elecampane root 3dr, sweet  
flag 2dr, liquorice ½oz, prepared turbith ½oz, senna 2oz, anise  
seeds ½oz, cinnamon 2dr, gentian root 1½oz, sufficient sugar.

Make a powder. Dose: as much as can be held on twelve pennies,  
15 in wine.<sup>12</sup>

She was freed by this medicine alone.

[Case 59] Cure of severe cough after smallpox.

The son of Mr Bishop, a gentleman, aged 6: a month after being  
20 entirely freed from smallpox, fell into a severe cough and fever with  
worms.

**R:** *manna 2sc, diacatholicon ½dr, cassia flowers 1dr. Mix with  
liquorice syrup. Give it to be licked often. Give prepared hartshorn  
in milk. Anoint the chest with chest ointment; our julep of poppies;  
25 an enema of milk and sugar.*

---

<sup>12</sup>By experiment, approximately 6 grams, equal to 4 scruples and 12 grains.

**8** Case 58] *S.O.*: *Observ. LXII* [First Century], p. 54. **13** cinnamon] *S.O.*:  
*santon* [sandalwood]. **18** Case 59] *S.O.*: *Observ. LXIII* [First Century], p. 55.

Cito curatus.

[Case 60] /56/ Lumbaginis, menstruorum  
alborum cura.

- 5 Generosa Harvey, nunc Domina, casta, pia, religiosa, quinque  
septimanis a partu, dorsi dolore et menstruorum alborum fluxu  
nimio divexata et debilitata.

*R: dactylorum bonorum et minutim incisorum quod vis, et cum melle  
despumato fiat electuarium et utere mane.*

- 10 *Hoc unico remedio curata, et a dolore liberata quod saepe inveni  
menstrua alba sistere, et impinguare facit et aufert dolorem dorsi.*<sup>132</sup>

[Case 61] Flatus stomachi, menstruorum  
rubeorum fluxus nimii cura.

- 15 Generosa Randolphe, circa aetatis annum 27, menstruorum  
rubeorum fluxu nimia discololata, cum tormine stomachi post  
pastum.

Dorso applicetur emplastrum:

*R: boli Armeni, Cretae ana, cum albuminibus ovorum fiat*

- 20 *emplastrum. Pro fluxu refraenando capiat ad pondus denarii unius  
aluminis de pluma cum vino stiptico. Utetur pulvere ut pro Cooper,  
folio 44.*

His spacio 4 dierum curata.

---

<sup>132</sup>Solenander, *Consiliorum* [...] *Solenandri*, p. 331: Electuarium bonum ad menstruis  
alba, et impinguare facit, et aufert dolorem dorsi. *R* quantum vis dactylorum  
bonorum, et minutim incisorum, et cum melle despumato fiat electuarium, et utere  
mane [Hall reversed the order of the sentences].

---

**19** ana] No quantities specified.

He was quickly cured.

[Case 60] /56/ Cure of lower backache and  
white vaginal flux.

- 5 Mrs Harvey, a gentlewoman, now Lady, modest, devoutly pious:  
troubled and weakened by backache and excessive white menstrual  
flux, five weeks after giving birth.

*R: good dates sliced small as you wish. Make an electuary with  
skimmed honey, use in the morning.*

- 10 *This one remedy cured her and freed her from the pain. I have  
often found it to stop the white discharge, add on weight, and remove  
backache.*

[Case 61] Cure of wind in the stomach,  
15 excessive red menstrual flux.

Mrs Randolph, a gentlewoman about 27 years old: discoloured by  
excessive red menstrual flux with torment in the stomach after food.

Apply a plaster to the back:

- R: bole Armeniac, chalk, each. Make a plaster with egg whites. To*  
20 *curb the flux, take one penny-weight of rock alum with a sharp  
wine.<sup>13</sup> Use the powder as for Cooper, page /44/.*

These cured her, within four days.

---

<sup>13</sup>A penny weighed approximately 0.5 grams, or just under 8 grains.

**3** Case 60] S.O.: Observ. LXIV [First Century], p. 55. **14** Case 61] S.O.: Observ. LXV  
[First Century], p. 56. **20** sharp] S.O.: red.

[Case 62] 1617. Febris 3<sup>ae</sup>, sitis, vigiliae,  
torminum lateris cum petechiis, capitis doloris  
cura.

Generosa Barnes, *gravida et partui iam vicina, incidit*<sup>133</sup> in febris 3<sup>a</sup>  
5 quam **/57/** comitantur sitis, vigilia, capitis dolor, lateris sinistri  
punctio misera, circa aetatis annum 28. *Deploratae medior divina*  
*auxiliante gratia his subsidiis*:<sup>134</sup>

**R**: ellebori albi pulverizati quantum satis, cum ficubus incisis.  
*Applicentur illic ubi pulsus arteriarum sentitur [...]* nimirum *in*  
10 *utriusque carpi regione*, bis 24 horarum spacio renoventur.<sup>135</sup>

Potus ordinarius:

**R**: hordei integri unc.iii, cichorii M.i, radices cichorii unc.iii, syruporum  
*rosarum, violarum ana unc.i, liquiritiae rasae dr.iii, ficuum N.iii,*  
*passularum unc.ii, sacchari candi unc.ii. Commiscentor et coquantor*  
15 *in xvi lib. aquae fontanae ad consumptionem lib.ii. Pro decocto*  
*colendo et bibendo frigide quantum sitis appetit*.<sup>136</sup>

Unguentum ad lateris dolorem:

**R**: unguenti dialtheae unc.ii, olei amygdalorum dulcium dr.iii. *Misce.*  
*Illiniatur calide latus affectum et post loco inuncto, imponatur*

<sup>133</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 529.

<sup>134</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 531:  
Deploratio medeor divina auxiliante gratia, hisce subsidiis. | <sup>135</sup>Platter, *De*  
*doloribus*, p. 167: Applicationes, illic ubi pulsus arteriarum sentitur, factae,  
multum in hac re vel solae, vel una cum caeteris administratae, praestare  
possunt, ut in utriusque carpi regione. | <sup>136</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VIII',  
*Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 563: Rec. hordei mundi uncias tres. Cichoreae  
manipulum unum. Radicum cichoreae unc. tres. Rosarum, violarum ana  
pugilum unum. Liquiritiae rasae drachmas iii ficuum, numero iii. Passularum  
unc.ii. Sacchari candi unc.ii. Commiscentor et coquantor in lib. sexdecim  
aquae ad consumptionem lib. duarum pro decocto colando et bibendo frigide  
quantum sitis appetit.

<sup>1</sup> 1617] in margin

[Case 62] 1617. Cure of tertian fever, thirst,  
sleeplessness, torment in the sides with small  
spots, headache.

Mrs Barnes, a gentlewoman: *pregnant and near to giving birth,*  
5 *falling into* a tertian fever **/57/** accompanied by thirst,  
sleeplessness, headache, wretched pricking pain in the left side.  
Age: about 28 years. *In the midst of despair, these were relieved*  
*with the help of divine grace.*

**R:** sufficient powdered white hellebore, with sliced figs. *Apply them*  
10 *where the arterial pulses are felt, that is to say in the region of each*  
*wrist. Renew them twice within twenty four hours.*

Her usual drink:

**R:** *whole barley 3oz, chicory 1 handful, chicory root 3oz, rose and*  
*violet syrups each 1oz, liquorice shavings 3dr, figs 3, raisins 2oz,*  
15 *sugar candy 2oz. Mix together and boil in 16 pints spring water,*  
*reduce by 2 pints. Strain to make the decoction, and drink cold, as*  
*much as desired.*

An ointment for pain in the side:

**R:** *marsh mallow ointment 2oz, sweet almond oil 3dr. Mix. Spread*  
20 *hot on the affected side and after anointing the area, cover with a hot*

---

**1** Case 62] S.O.: Observ. LXVI [First Century], pp. 56-57. **7** In...grace] S.O.:  
was cured as followeth. **11** Renew them twice within twenty four hours] S.O.:  
It was removed every four and twenty hours.

*lindeolum calidum butyro perlitum.*<sup>137</sup>

*Capitis dolores graviter molestantes, placavi unguento hoc:*

*R: unguenti de alabastro unc.s, opii gr.vii. Misce. His tempore  
inunctis et applicatis, pristinam recuperavit sanitatem et ab*

5 *imminente abortionis periculo liberata.*

*Deo sit laus, honos et gloria in omne aeternum curata vii  
dierum spacio.*<sup>138</sup> Probatum.

[Case 63] Sanguinis profluvi e naribus cura.

10 *Robertes sartor opidanus, circa aetatis annum 34, in sanguinis per  
nares fluxum ingentem incidit et 4 horis ex ipsis copiosius, et  
remittens sanguis effluxit.*<sup>139</sup>

*Ad quem accersitus, sanguinem cohibui /58/ sequenti:*<sup>140</sup>

*R: pannum lineum novum in Martio spermati ranarum saepe  
15 madefactum et in sole siccatum, ex quo feci turandas et in naribus  
imponebam (constringebam fortiter in aliis non in illo digitos  
auricularem et annularem*<sup>141</sup>*).*

Postea:

*R: argillae ustae et pulverizatae M.ii, aceti acris lib.i.s. Permisceantur  
20 ad formam emplastri vel pultis quam duplici lineo inductam fronti et*

---

<sup>137</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 540: *R* ung. dialtheae uncias duas. Olei amygdalar. dulcium drachmas tres. Misce. Illinantur calide latata affecta, et post locis inunctis imponatur lindeolum calidum butyro perlitum. | <sup>138</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 479: Capitis tandem dolores graviter molestantes placavi unguento. hoc. *R* ung. de alabastro unc.s. opii grana septem. His ita administratis pristinam recuperavit sanitatem. Deo omnipotenti sit laus, honos et gloria in omne aeternum, Amen. | <sup>139</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, pp. 183-184: in sanguinis per nares fluxum ingentem incidit, et toto die ex ipsis copiosus et renitens sanguis effluxit. <sup>140</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria I', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 35: ad quem accersitus, sanguinem cohibui hoc epithemate. | <sup>141</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 184: Primo adveniens ad eam constringebam fortiter digitos auricularem et annularem.

*cloth smeared with butter.*

*I alleviated the severe, troublesome headache with this ointment:*

*R: alabaster ointment ½oz, opium 7gr. After this was applied and*  
5 *rubbed to the temple, she recovered her former health and was freed*  
*from danger of imminent miscarriage.*

*To God be praise, honour and glory, for ever and ever. She was*  
*cured within seven days. This has been proved.*

10 [Case 63] Cure of nosebleed.

Roberts, a tailor of Stratford upon Avon aged about 34 years: *falls*  
*into an immoderate nosebleed, more copiously for four hours, then*  
*diminishing.*

*Being called to him, I restrained the blood /58/ as follows:*

15 *R: a new piece of cloth often soaked in frog spawn in March, and*  
*dried in the sun. I made plugs with this and inserted them in the*  
*nostrils (I squeezed tightly with the other fingers, not the little and*  
*ring finger).*

*Afterwards:*

20 *R: clay, burnt and powdered 2 handfuls, sharp vinegar 1½ pints.*  
*Mix together in the form of a plaster or poultice placed in a folded*

---

8 proved] S.O. omits. 10 Case 63] S.O.: Observ. LXVII [First Century], p. 57.  
11 tailor] S.O.: Sartor [as if a surname]. 12 more copiously for four hours  
then diminishing] S.O.: which intermitted for four hours, and returned again.  
14 Being...him] S.O. omits. 16 in the sun] S.O. omits 17 I...finger] S.O.  
omits, and adds: made strong ligatures below the shoulders. 20 sharp] S.O.  
wine.

*cervici et temporibus crebro frigidissime applicabam, unde fluxus desiit et infra dimidiam horam fluxus refraenatus.*<sup>142</sup>

[Case 64] 1617. Dentium doloris et gingivarum  
5 tumoris cura.

Baron Compton, nunc Comes Northamptonensis, circa aetatis  
annum 55, conquaerebatur de maestissimo dolore dentium, et  
gingivarum tumore molestissimo, *quos avertebam ab eo his paucis*  
*pharmacis:*<sup>143</sup>

10 *R: succini, masticis ana dr.ii, aloes dr.v, agarici dr.ii, aristolochiae*  
*rotundae verae dr.s. Cum syrupo betonicae fiant pilulae, ex dr.i fiant*  
*pilulae N.4.*<sup>144</sup> Capiat dr.i mane et hora cubitus alteram. Belle  
purgatus et sic per iii dies.

Gargarismus:

15 *R: diamoroni simplicis, mellis rosatum ana unc.ii, aquae rosarum*  
*unc.4, decoctionum corticis guaiaci et hordei ana unc.4. Olei*  
*vitrioli quantum satis diluantur ut acida reddantur, saepe in die in*  
*ista spongia madefacta, gingivis dolentibus applicetur et ibi manet*  
**/59/** toto die.

20 His remediis ab his symptomatibus penitus liberatus et 2<sup>a</sup> die  
cibum manducare potuit et 3<sup>a</sup> die perfecte, laus Deo curatus.

---

<sup>142</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria I', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 35: *R* argillae ustae M.ii, aceti acris lib.i.s. Permisceantur ad formam pultis: quam duplici linteo inductam fronti atque cervici crebro admovebam actui frigidam, unde fluxus desiit, et intra duas horas convaluit. | <sup>143</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria I', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 33. | <sup>144</sup>Aurifaber, 'Succini historia', in Crato, *Consiliorum* [...] *liber quartus*, p. 462: *R* gentari, hoc est, succini subtiliter pulverisati, mastich ana. unc.s, aloes optim. dr.x, agarici boni dr.iii, aristoloch. rotund. verae dr.i. Misceantur omnia, et cum syrupo de absinthio, vel de succo betonic. conficianturque pillulae vii ex dr.i.

---

4 ] in margin.



*cloth. I applied it frequently, very cold, to the forehead, neck and temples. The flow ceased, and ended in less than half an hour.*

[Case 64] 1617. Cure of toothache and

5 swelling of the gums.

Baron Compton, now [first] Earl of Northampton, about 55 years of age: the victim of a most unhappy toothache with very troublesome swelling of the gums, *which I took away with these few medicines:*

*R: amber, mastic each 2dr, aloes 5dr, agaric 2dr, true round-leaved*

10 *birthwort ½dr. Make pills with betony syrup, 4 pills from 1dr. Take 1dr in the morning and another at bedtime. He was agreeably purged. Continue so for three days.*

A gargle:

*R: mulberry syrup, rose honey each 2oz, rose water 4oz, guaiacum*  
15 *root and barley decoctions each 4oz. Dilute with sufficient oil of vitriol to give acidity. Apply a sponge dipped in it to the painful gums often during the day, and hold it there /59/ the whole day.*

These remedies freed him completely from the symptoms. On the second day he could chew food, and by the third he was  
20 perfectly cured, praise God.

---

4 Case 64] S.O.: Observ. LXVIII [First Century], pp. 58-59. 9 amber...1dr] S.O.: *pil. de succ. Crat.* dr.iii, f. pil. N.18. 20 praise God] S.O. omits; Cooke added two cases from Thoner here.

[Case 65] Capitis doloris, pruritus universalis

cum exanthematibus cura.

Anna Greene generosa, filiola primogenita causidici Greene, *cum annum aetatis complerit duodecimum primum. Dolore capitis*

5 *corripitur, vivido colore totius corporis pereunte et huic albo succedente, affligitur simul pruritu corporis universali cum exanthematibus dolorificis ut nisi summo dolore ambulare potuit.*<sup>145</sup>

Cura:

℞: sarsaparillae unc.ii, hermodactylis unc.i.s, guaiaci, liquiritiae ana  
10 unc.i, polipodii quercini, senae ana unc.ii, agarici dr.ii, radicum foeniculi, petroselini ana unc.i, herbarum betonicae, salviae ana M.s, rosmarini p.i, seminum anisi, carvi, coriandri ana unc.s, cinamomi dr.i. Bulliant in 8 libras aquae, ad consumptionem medietatis. Accipiebat unc.ii.s, syrupi rosacei solutivi unc.i, oleo  
15 vitrioli quantum satis ut acida reddatur: 5 sedes, et sic successive 5 dierum spacio.

Corpore bene purgato, decoctionem chynae in hunc modum dabam: radicem chynae tenuissime incidere oportet, huius recipe dr.iii. Fiat maceratio in lib.iii aquae fontanae per 24 horas.

20 Transactis horis fiat decoctio igne lento, donec remaniet lib.i.s, et tunc coletur et reponatur. Capiat haustum mane horis 5 ante prandium et tribus horis ante cenam. Calide potantur. Omni 3<sup>a</sup> die **/60/** purganda.

Post usum decoctionis sudorifici praescripti, sequenti balneo  
25 usa:

<sup>145</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 499: cum annum aetatis compleret vigesimum primum icteritio nigro corripitur, vivido colore totius corporis pereunte, et huic sublivido succedente. Affligitur simul capitis doloris, anorexia, et caet.

[Case 65] Cure of headache, itching all over,  
with a pustular rash.

Anne Greene, a gentlewoman, first daughter of Lawyer Greene, *has completed the first twelve years of her life. She is seized by a*  
5 *headache, with vivid colours all over the body, dying away and succeeded by pallor. She is vexed at the same time by itching of the whole body with a painful rash, so that at the height of the pain she could not walk.*

The cure:

10 **R:** sarsaparilla 2oz, colchicum 1½oz, guaiacum, liquorice each 1oz, polypody of the oak, senna each 2oz, agaric, 2dr, fennel, parsley roots 1oz, betony, sage leaves each ½ handful, rosemary 1 pinch, anise, caraway, coriander seeds each ½oz, cinnamon 1dr. Boil in 8  
15 1oz, sufficient oil of vitriol to give acidity. Five stools. Continue the course for five successive days.

When the body was well purged, I gave a china decoction of this sort: china root sliced finely, take 3dr of it, soak in 3 pints  
20 spring water for twenty four hours. After that time, make a decoction on a slow fire until 1½ pints remain, then strain and store. Take a draught in the morning, five hours before lunch and three hours before dinner. It should be drunk hot. She should be purged every third day. /60/

After using the prescribed sweating decoction, she used the  
25 following bath:

---

**1** Case 65] S.O.: Observ. LXX [First Century], pp. 61-62. **3** first daughter] S.O.: the daughter. **4** twelve...by] S.O.: aged 22. **22** dinner] S.O. adds: till all was drunk.

R: foliorum querci M.xx, foeniculi M.xv, radicum bryoniae, enulae  
campanae incisae ana M.4, sulphuris, aluminis, salis marini ana  
lib.i. Bulliant in satis quantum aquae pro balneo. E balneo egressa  
in lecto sudare iubebam, et post inungi corpus unguento ex radice  
5 enulae, bryoniae, aluminis, confecto cum butyri Maiali.  
His pulchra et glabra facta fuit.

[Case 66] Urinae retentionis cura.

John Smith aetatis 60 de Nunam, urinae retentioni misere afflictus  
10 per iii dies, *ab calculo in urinae suppressionem omnimodam incidit,*  
*cum vitae periculo. Pro isto levando multa absque nullo fructu*  
*tentanda, tandem meum petens consilium.*

*Medicas salutiferas eiusmodi adhibeo.*<sup>146</sup>

R: bacchi alkakengi N.6, seminum petroselini dr.iii. Bulliant in  
15 satis quantum lactis et fiat hypossetala. Cuius R unc.vi, syrupi  
dialtheae Fernellii unc.i, pulveris Holland dr.ii. Fiat haustus. *Potus*  
*vinum album in quo grana alkakengi contusa macerata fuerunt [...]*  
*Fotus caepas et alea incisa butyro atque aceto frixa calida*  
*superponere ad pectinem et inter anum et scrotum iubebam.*

20 *His ita administratis, urina profluere caepit intra /61/ horae*  
*spacium cum nonnullis calculis et arenis atque sic a flebili, diuturno*  
*ac perniciali et imminente periculo liber evasit per Dei gratiam.*<sup>147</sup>

<sup>146</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VIII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 564: ob renum calculos in urinae suppressionem omnimodam incidit cum vitae periculo aetatis anno sexagesimo. Pro isto levando malo chirurgi multa instrumenta admoverunt, sed absque omni profectu. Tandem ego hunc Dominum vocatus mox ipsi sine instrumentis manus medicas salutiferas eiusmodi adhibeo. | <sup>147</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VIII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 564: vino, quod bibebat, imponebam grana alkakengi contusa [...] caepas et allia incisa, butyroque ac aceto frixa calida superimposui ad pectinem et inter anum et scrotum. His itaque simul adhibitis post Dei devotam invocationem urina intra horae spatium copiose, nimirum ad multas libras profluere coepit cum nonnullis calculis et arenis. Atque sic generosus et ab aliis medicis desperatus baro a flebili, diuturno ac perniciali isto morbo liber evasit

R: oak leaves 20 handfuls, fennel 15 handfuls, sliced bryony,

elecampane roots each 4 handfuls, sulphur, alum, salt each 1lb.

Boil in sufficient water for a bath. On leaving the bath I ordered her to sweat in bed, and afterwards to anoint the body with an ointment

5 of elecampane root, bryony, alum, mixed with May butter.

These restored her looks, and made her [skin] smooth.

[Case 66] Cure of urinary retention.

John Smith aged 60, of Newnham: wretchedly afflicted by urinary  
10 retention for three days. *He fell into complete suppression of urine on account of a stone, in danger of his life. Though much was tried, nothing worked to relieve it. I was finally asked for advice.*

*I use healing medications in this way:*

R: winter cherries 6, parsley seeds 3dr. Boil in sufficient milk and  
15 make posset ale. R: 6oz of this, Fernel's marsh mallow syrup 1oz, Holland powder 2dr. Make a draught. *He drank white wine in which bruised winter cherry pips had been soaked. I prescribed an onion and sliced garlic fried in butter and vinegar to be placed hot on the pubic region and between the anus and scrotum.*

20 *By these ministrations, urine began to flow /61/ within an hour, with some stones and gravel. And so he escaped free from lamentable, long-lasting, calamitous and imminent danger, through God's grace.*

---

8 Case 66] S.O.: Observ. L [First Century], p. 47 [inserted in S.O. out of order].

[Case 67] Ventriculi doloris, lumbaginis,  
icteritiae citrinae curatio.

John Nason, Barbitonsor, opidanus 40 annos natus, semper a  
sumpto cibo acerbissimos ventriculi dolores patiebatur. Lumbagine  
5 misere cruciatus, ita ut noctes fere omnes insomnes transigebat,  
icteritiaque flava tinctus, urina rubra tenuis, corona flava et  
spumosa.

**R:** poculi chymici unc.i: vomitus vi, sedes iiii.

Die sequenti:

10 **R:** *marrubii unc.ii, lupulorum unc.i, radices buglossae, radices enulae,  
radices eupatorii ana dr.s, rhabarbari grosso modo incisi dr.i, ligni  
aloes dr.i.s. Bulliant omnia in lib.iii vini albi potentis usque ad  
consumptionem tertiae partis, deinde coletur sine expressione.*  
Colaturae adde succi stercoris anserini lib.s. Fiat. **R huius**  
15 *decoctionis unc.iii, sacchari albi dr.ii. Misce. Fiat potus, qui  
exhibeatur quotidie mane in diluculo.*<sup>148</sup>

Et sic paucis dierum spacio curatus et bene coloratus.

[Case 68] Urinae ardoris cura.

20 Baron Compton, circa aetatis annum 55, infeste cruciebatur urinae  
**/62/** ardore. Liberatus et sanus evasit per sequentem aquam, in  
hac aegritudine saepe a me probatam:

**R:** albuminum ovorum bene conquassatorum N.8, lactis vaccini

---

perniciat isti morbo liber evasit per Dei gratiam.

<sup>148</sup>Vettori, *Exhortatio*, p. 134: Recip. marrubii unc.ii lupulorum unc.i, radicum enulae, radicum eupatorii ana drach.s reubarbari grosso modo incisi drach.i ligni aloes drach.i.s. bulliant omnia in lib.iii vini albi potentis, et odoriferi, usque ad consumptionem tertiae partis, deinde coletur sine expressione, et de praedicto vino recipe unc.ii.s sacchari albissimi drach.ii. Misce et fiat potus, qui exhibeatur patienti quolibet mane in diluculo.

---

**6** flava<sup>2]</sup> flua.

[Case 67] Cure of stomach and lower back  
pain, yellow jaundice.

John Nason, a barber of Stratford upon Avon, 40 years old:<sup>14</sup>  
suffering constantly from most grievous pains in the belly after food.

- 5 He was wretchedly tortured by lower back-ache, so that he  
remained awake almost all night. Also yellow-tinted jaundice,  
urine: thin, red, the surface yellow and frothy.

**R:** the chymical cup 1oz: six vomits, four stools.

Next day:

- 10 **R:** horehound 2oz, hops 1oz, bugloss root, elecampane root, gravel-  
root each ½dr, rhubarb sliced coarsely 1dr, aloes wood 1½dr. Boil  
everything in 3 pints strong white wine until reduced by a third, then  
strain without squeezing. Add juice of goose droppings ½ pint to the  
strained liquid. Make it. **R:** 3oz of this decoction, white sugar 2dr.  
15 Mix. Make a drink. Give it every day, in the morning at dawn.

And so within a few days, he was cured and well-coloured.

[Case 68] Cure of burning urine.

- Baron Compton, about 55 years of age: savagely tortured /62/ by  
20 heat of the urine. He was freed and achieved health through the  
following water, frequently proved by me in this illness:

**R:** well-beaten egg whites 8, cow's milk 1 pint, red rose water ½

---

<sup>14</sup>John Nason, barber and licensed surgeon: Brinkworth, *Shakespeare and the Bawdy Court*, pp. 98, 148.

**1** Case 67] S.O.: Observ. LXXI [First Century], pp. 62-63. **15** Give it every day in the morning at dawn] Hall wrote *quotidie* (daily) for *quolibet* (as pleases) in the source.

**18** Case 68] S.O.: Observ. LXXII [First Century], p. 63. **21** frequently...illness] Possibly Hall's own remedy, given this comment and that it is not a borrowing.

lib.i, aquae rosarum rubrarum lib.s. Destillentur lege artis in  
distillitorio communi. Huius aquae destillatae ℞ unc.4, syrupi  
altheae Fernelii unc.i. Misce. Detur frigide ieiuno stomacho.

Rite curatus et cum Rege Iacobo in Scotiam equitabat. Probe  
5 probatum.

[Case 69] Deglutionis impedimenti cum  
amygdalarum tumore cura.

Generosa Boughton, socrus generosi Combes de Lauforde, pulchra,  
10 annum nunc agens circiter 36, optima corporis et partium figurae  
symmetria; *gravissimis morbis atque saevissimis his symptomatibus  
bienno, et ultra misere conflictabatur, [...] quanquam a peritissimis  
medicis ex arte adhibitis nihilum proficientibus imo in dies magis  
exacerbantibus atque gravioribus compertis.*<sup>149</sup>

15 Imprimis *vix deglutire et respirare potuit*,<sup>150</sup> sentiebat aliquod  
durum ad magnitudinem ovi columbini in gutture, quod nullum  
cibum vix potum deglutire patiebatur. Hoc a flatu causatum, nam  
moveri sentiebat et pro motu nunc maior nunc minor dolor  
redditur. Amygdalarum tumore non magno a rheumate e capite  
20 destillante, nocti maxime divexata, *mala et dolor somnum adimerent  
et praefocationis metum intenderent.*<sup>151</sup>

*Caput tamen insigni torpedine tentabatur, atque sopore  
incredibili assidui afficiebatur, corpore aequali gravedine oppresso a*

<sup>149</sup>Potier, *Insignium Curationum*, pp. 34-35: *gravissimis morbis atque saevissimis symptomatibus biennio, et ultra misere conflictabatur, ordinariis insuper remediis, quanquam a peritissimis medicis ex arte adhibitis, nihilum proficientibus imo in dies magis exacerbantibus atq. gravioribus compertis.*

<sup>150</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 151: *vix deglutire et respirare posset.* | <sup>151</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 151: *mala ac dolor somnum adimerent, et praefocationis metum intenderent* [directly following the previous].



pint. Distill by the usual method in a common still. Take 4oz of the distilled water, Fernel's marsh mallow syrup 1oz. Mix. Give cold on an empty stomach.

He was properly cured and rode with King James into  
5 Scotland. Tried and proved.

[Case 69] Cure of an impediment to  
swallowing with swelling of the tonsils.

Mrs Boughton, a gentlewoman, mother-in-law of Mr Combe, a  
10 gentleman of Lawford, good-looking, now aged about 36, of excellent  
and shapely figure: *harassed by the most severe illnesses and  
savage symptoms for two years, feeling exceedingly wretched.*  
*Although the most skilled physicians in the art were consulted*  
*nothing helped, indeed [the symptoms] grew worse and proved even*  
15 *more severe within days.*

At first *she could hardly swallow or breathe.* She felt  
something hard, the size of a dove's egg in her throat, which allowed  
her to swallow no food and hardly any drink. This was caused by a  
wind, because she felt it moving, and as it moved it caused more or  
20 less pain. Though the swelling of the tonsils was not large, she was  
most troubled at night by catarrh dripping from the head. *The*  
*illness and pain deprived her of sleep, and led to fear of choking.*

*Her head was assailed by a notable lethargy, and she was*

---

7 Case 69] S.O.: Observ. LXXIII [First Century], pp. 64-65. 9 mother-in-law] S.O.:  
sister.

*quibus maxima ambulandi difficultas et actionum naturalium /63/*

*pravitas, unde longa symptomatum series per intervalla manibus*

*livore correptis, non sine frigore, tibiis tumefactis ut hydrope*

*scorbutica corripitur.*<sup>152</sup> Haec omnia a liene et iecoris et suppressis

5 mensibus causata.

**R:** senae dr.ii.s, tartari cremoris dr.ii, turbith optimi, hermodactylis

ana dr.i, rhabarbari, agarici trochischati ana sc.ii, scammoniae

praeparatae dr.s, macis, cinamomi, galangae ana dr.iii, sacchari

violati ad pondus omnium. Fiat pulvis. Dosis a dr.i ad dr.ii in

10 iusculo in quo bulliant herbae, pulegium, artemisia, marrubium,

salvia, betonica.

Hoc finito, capiat decoctum chynae in hunc modum  
praeparatum:

**R:** rasurae radice chynae unc.i, radice sassaphras dr.iii, aquae

15 fontanae lib.vi, succi limonum unc.ii. Macerentur per 24 horas,

deinde coquantur ad tertiae partis consumptionem, ac tandem

transcolentur per manicam Hippocratis [...] De eo potandum mane et

vesperi unc.v, cum unc.ii succi cochleariae praeparati.<sup>153</sup> Tertiaque

die etiamsi alvi astricta non sit, glisterem iniicere vellem, ex

20 decoctionis huius unc.12, sacchari rubri unc.ii, mellis anthosati

unc.iii. Fiat clyster.

Pro ore:

---

<sup>152</sup>Potier, *Insignium curationum*, p. 35: Caput imprimis insigni torpedine tentabatur, atque sopore incredibili assidue afficiebatur, corpore aequali gravedine oppresso, a quibus maxima incedendi difficultas, actionum naturalium pravitas, unde longa symptomatum series, per intervalla manibus livore veluto sphacelo correptis, non sine frigore. | <sup>153</sup>Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, p. 63: Decoctum chinae: **R** rasurae rad. chynae unc.i, aquae fontanae lib.vi, succi limonum unc.iii. Macerentur per 24 horas, deinde coquantur ad tertiae partis consumptionem, ac tandem transcolentur per manicam Hippocratis. Dosis unc.vi.

---

6 tartari] ♀.

affected by an extraordinary constant sleepiness. Her body was equally oppressed by the catarrh, which caused great difficulty in walking and deprivation of the natural actions. /63/ From these she was seized by a long series of symptoms: a creeping discolouration in the hands at intervals, not without cold, and swollen legs like a scorbutic dropsy. All this was caused by the spleen and liver and suppression of her periods.

**R:** senna 2½dr, cream of tartar 2dr, best turbith, colchicum each 1dr, rhubarb, trochischated agaric each 2sc, prepared scammony ½dr, mace, cinnamon, galangals each 3dr, violet sugar equal in weight to everything. Make the powder. Dose: 1 to 2dr in broth boiled with herbs - penny-royal, mugwort, horehound, sage, betony.

Once that is finished, take a china decoction prepared in this way:

**R:** china root shavings 1oz, sassaphras root 3dr, spring water 6 pints, lemon juice 2oz. Soak for twenty four hours then boil, reduce by a third, then strain through a Hippocras bag. She should drink 5oz of this morning and evening, with 2oz prepared scurvy-grass juice. On the third day, although the bowel movements were not bound, I wished an enema injected: 12oz of this decoction, red sugar 2oz, rosemary honey 3oz. Make an enema.

---

**18** On the third day] S.O.: every third day. **19** although the bowel movements were not bound] S.O.: if the body was not open.

*R: aquae fontanae unc.ii, olei vitrioli Romani tot guttas quot acidum multum reddant. In hac aqua intinctam pennam ad fauces tumentes immittebat aliquoties in horas singulas, cuius usu ore permulta phlegmata continuo emittebat et exspuebat. Post aquae immisionem*  
5 *ex praecepto meo succinum album carbonibus imposuit, et per infundibilum ore fumum excipit.*<sup>154</sup> Omni tempore vellem ut gestare ceratum nostrum stomachicum, folio /17/.

*R: diamoronis simplicis unc.v, mellis rosati unc.4, succi matrisylvae unc.viii, aquae hordei unc.12, olei sulphuris quantum satis ut acida*  
10 *redantur. Saepe in die gargarisare vellem.*

His recte se habuit et vixit 8 annos postea.

[Case 70] /64/ Febris ex crapula cura.

Eques Beaufou (quem semper honoris causa nomino) cena finita,  
15 magnam lactis coagulati quantitatem edebat, circa aetatis annum 70. Post primum somnum male se habuit et indies deterior. Me veniente 2<sup>a</sup> die, pulsum celerem perspiciebam, urinam emisit rubram, paucam; saepe mingeat. Stomacho phlegmate et cholera pleno, nam quicquid caepit, mox sponte evomebat choleram in  
20 magna quantitate sicut vitellum ovi putrefacti.

Hec mihi consideranti, dabam poculi chymici unc.i: vomitus  
10 et ter venter ex officio respondebat. Potus decoctio cornu cervi cum saccharo et succo limonum ad gratam acetositatem.

Laus Deo rite curatus 4 dierum spacio.

<sup>154</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, pp. 151-152: *R* aquae fontanae unc. ii, olei vitrioli Rom. tot guttas quot acidum multum reddant. In hac aqua intinctam pennam ad fauces tumentes immittebat aliquoties in horas singulas: cuius usu ore permulta phlegmata continuo emittebat et exspuebat. Post aquae immisionem ex praecepto meo succinum album carbonibus imposuit, et per infundibilum ore fumum exceptit.

For the mouth:

*R: spring water 2oz, sufficient Roman oil of vitriol to give intense acidity. Insert a feather dipped in this water in the swollen throat, several times an hour, from which she repeatedly brought up and spat out much phlegm. After the water, by my advice white amber was put on coals, and the smoke led to the mouth through a funnel. I wanted her to wear our stomach salve, page /17/, all the time.*

*R: simple mulberry juice 5oz, rose honey 4oz, cleavers juice 8oz, barley water 12oz, sufficient oil of sulphur to give acidity. I wished her to gargle often during the day.*

These made her well, and she lived for 8 years afterwards.

[Case 70] **/64/** Cure of fever from over-indulgence.

Squire Beaufou (whom I always name as a sign of honour): ate a large quantity of milk curds after dinner. Age: about 70 years. Soon after going to bed he felt ill, and worse each day. Coming on the second day, I found his pulse rapid. He passed a little red urine, urinating frequently. His stomach was full of phlegm and choler, for whatever he took, he freely brought up choler in large quantity, like the yolk of a bad egg.

Considering this, I gave him the chymical cup 1oz. Vomits ten, and the belly returned to its duty three times. To drink: hartshorn decoction with sugar and lemon juice for a pleasing tartness.

He was properly cured, praise God, within four days.

---

**13** Case 70] S.O.: Observ. LXXIV [First Century], p. 66. **21** chymical cup] S.O.: emetick infusion.

[Case 71] Appetitus prostrati cura.

Eques Pauckington, anorexiam patitur ad appetitum amissum.

Recuperandum medicamentum facile rogabat, cui sequentem

pulverem senae per plures dies propinare iubebam:

5 *R foliorum senae optimae dr.iii, zingiberis, macis ana sc.i, cinamomi  
dr.s, tartari cremoris dr.ii.*<sup>155</sup> Misce. Fiat pulvis. Dosis dr.i in  
iusculo.

Hoc unico pulvere appetitus restitutus et mihi gratias dedit, et  
conficiendi modum rogabat; et anno sequenti dixit se saepe

10 pulverem praeparatam capere exoptato eventu. Probatum.

[Case 72] /65/ Anginae, tonsillarum et  
columellae inflammationis cura.

Magister Rogers, clericus opidanus; circiter aetatis suae annum 40,

15 conquaerebatur de gutturis dolore, inflammataeque tonsillatae  
atque uvula. Aegerrime deglutivit, difficulter respiravit et fere  
strangulatus. Huic subito subveni sequentibus:

*R:* ficuum, liquiritiae, passularum, seminum anisi ana unc.i, aquae  
fontanae lib.iiii. Bulliant lege artis. Fiat potus ordinarius. Saepe in  
20 die capiebat suffitum succini.

*Collo et tumori apparenti admovere feci tale cataplasma:*<sup>156</sup>

*R:* absinthii viridis M.ii, axungiae porcinae quantum satis.

Contundantur et fiat cataplasma.

25

<sup>155</sup>This is the recipe for pulvis senae Montagnanae; it matches that in the 1613  
*Pharmacopoeia Augustana* better than that in *Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*.

<sup>156</sup>Ruland the Elder, *Centuria IV*, *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 268.

6 tartari] 𐀓. 21 admovere] admoveri.

[Case 71] Cure of exhausted appetite.

Squire Packington: suffering from distaste for food and poor appetite. He requested a medicine to restore it quickly, for which I prescribed the following senna powder, to be taken for several days:

5 *R: best senna leaves 3dr, ginger, mace each 1sc, cinnamon ½dr, cream of tartar 2dr. Mix Make a powder. Dose: 1dr in broth.*

This one powder restored his appetite. He thanked me greatly and asked how it was made. The following year he said he used the prepared powder often, with the desired result. This has been  
10 proved.

[Case 72] /65/ Cure of sore throat,  
inflammation of tonsils and palate.

Mr Rogers, Vicar of Stratford upon Avon,<sup>15</sup> about 40 years old: the  
15 victim of pain in the throat with inflamed tonsils and uvula. He swallowed painfully, breathed with difficulty and felt almost as if choked. I rescued him quickly with the following:

*R: figs, liquorice, raisins, anise seed each 1oz, spring water 4 pints.*

Boil by the usual method. Make an ordinary drink. He took amber  
20 fumes often during the day.

*I made this plaster to be applied to the neck and visible swelling:*

*R: green wormwood 2 handfuls, sufficient pork fat. Beat together and make a plaster.*

---

<sup>15</sup>From 1606 to 1619: Lane, John Hall, p. 139.

---

**1** Case 71] *S.O.* Observ. LXXV [First Century], pp. 66-67. **9** This has been proved] *S.O.* omits; Cooke added a recipe of his own here. **12** Case 72] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXVI [First Century], p. 67.

Unius noctis spacio curatus, *et deglutiendi facultas iterum  
facta mox fuit.*<sup>157</sup> Centies probatum.

[Case 73] Luis Ungaricae cura, cum variolis.

- 5 Domina Beaufou, pia, honesta, ab omnibus summo gradu honoris  
collocata, pro sanitate amissa recuperanda omnes ad Deum  
comprecantur, anno aetatis 28.

- Anno Domini 1617 Iulii primo, correpta fuit febre ardenti  
maligna continua cum summo capitis dolore, *aestuat*  
10 *vehementissime, dolet ventriculo et universis membris [...]* corpus  
maxime brachia petechiis designata. Urina parum rubra, signa  
febris (ut vulgo vocant) novae *quae tum temporis vicatim*  
*grassabatur, obvios quosque invadens, demonstrabant. Vocatus*  
*/66/ 3<sup>a</sup> invasionis die* et stomachum malis humoribus infarctum et  
15 onustum percipiens.<sup>158</sup>

Meo consilio sequentem vomitorium exhauriebat:

- R:** poculi chymici unc.i.dr.i, quo duodecies evomebat, sine magna  
molestia. Die praeterito lac multum ad sitem extinguendam  
hauriebat. Hoc ex suo cerebro depromptum, quod per vomitum  
20 praedictum coagulatum in magna quantitate mirum dictu eiciebat.  
Singulo paene vomitu imprimis paene suffocata, tanta erat moles et  
tam magna frustra lactis coagulati. Postea multam choleram  
phlegmate permistam, deinde melancholiam adustam summo  
labore evomebat: quo mota est alvus sexties, phlegmatibus

<sup>157</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria IV', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 271.

<sup>158</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 242: *aestuat vehementissime*  
universo corpore, *dolet ventriculo, capite et universis membris τῶν ὀσσοκότῳ*  
sitis, delirat, petechiis paucis notatus eique nigricantibus, urina crocea, crassa  
et rubens erat. Omnia Iuem Ung. *quae temporis vicatim grassabatur obvios*  
quosque invadens, demonstrabant. Vocatus primo invasionis die.



He was cured within one night, *and the ability to swallow was soon restored*. This has been proved a hundred times.

[Case 73] Cure of the Hungarian disease, with  
5 smallpox.<sup>16</sup>

Lady Beaufou, pious, respected, held in the highest regard by everyone: Everyone was calling on God for the recovery of her lost health. Age: 28 years.

1 July 1617. She was seized by a continual malignant  
10 burning fever, with most severe headache. *She is exceedingly hot, feels pain in the belly and all organs*. She was marked on the body, the arms particularly, with little spots. Urine: little and red. These revealed signs of the new fever (as it was commonly called) *which at that time prowled the streets and attacked everyone exposed to it*. I  
15 *was called on the /66/ third day of the attack*, and observed the stomach stuffed full and laden with bad humours.

On my advice she downed the following emetic:

**R:** the chymical cup 1oz 1dr, which gave twelve vomits without much trouble. The previous day she drank a lot of milk, to quench  
20 her thirst. This was her own idea, from which she threw up an amazing amount of coagulate in the vomit. She was almost choked by the first vomit, it was such a large amount and such complete ejection of the curdled milk. Afterwards she vomited much choler

---

<sup>16</sup>An example of the changeable nature of illnesses in this period: Lady Beaufou's illness started with a malignant fever, which after seven days changed into smallpox; see Stein, 'The Meaning of Signs', 617-648.

---

**4** Case 73] S.O.: Observ. LXXVII [First Century], pp. 68-69. **5** smallpox] replacing measles [morbilli], which Hall had deleted. **6** held...everyone] S.O.: being of a noble extract. **20** This...idea] S.O.: unknown to me.

referentibus et viridibus biliosis serosisque multis mixtum  
profluentibus.

Vomitorio per iii horas finito, dabam pilulas laudani Paracelsi  
gr.vii. Hac devorata pilula, perbelle per 4 horas edormiebet, dolore  
5 capitis cessante.

Tandem me insciente, pedissequa dedit haustum seri lactis  
quo decepto statim iii habuit vomitus nigros sine aliqua molestia et  
ii sedes eiusdem coloris; et singultum misere cruciata, qui vini  
clareti adusti cum aromatibus haustus refraenatus. Nox ceteris  
10 longe quietior, sed non bene /67/ somnum cepissit.

Mane iusculum ex pullo cum herbis appropriatis dabam et sic  
per 4 horas mansit. Finito tempore dabam haustum decoctionis  
cornu cervi calide. Mane lunarem evacuationem habuit, vellem  
tamen ut decoctionem cornu cervi biberit frigide. Pustulae misere  
15 cruciabant eam, cum summo gutturis et linguae ardore, ita ut  
potum nisi maxima difficultate devorare potuit.

Sequenti gargarismo usa:

℞: diamoronis simplicis unc.iii, mellis rosati unc.ii, aquae rosarum  
lib.s, olei sulphuris quantum satis ad acedinem, tandem post usum  
20 decoctionis cornu cervi.

mixed with phlegm, then burnt black bile, with the greatest effort.  
With this there were 6 bowel movements, returning phlegm and  
green bile mingled with a large quantity of watery outpourings.

Three hours after the emetic was finished, I gave Paracelsus's  
5 laudanum pills 7gr. After taking the pills she slept soundly, the  
headache ceasing.

Then her companion gave her a drink of milk whey without my  
knowing. This deception gave her three black vomits immediately,  
without any trouble, and two stools of the same colour. She was  
10 wretchedly tormented with hiccups, which were curbed by a drink  
of claret wine mulled with spices. The rest of the night was more  
peaceful, but she could not **/67/** fall fast asleep.

In the morning I gave chicken broth with appropriate herbs,  
and she rested for four hours. At the end of that time I gave a  
15 draught of hot hartshorn decoction. She had her monthly period,  
nevertheless I would have preferred her to drink the hartshorn  
decoction cold. The pocks tormented her wretchedly, with the  
greatest heat in the throat and tongue, so that she could swallow  
the drink only with the greatest difficulty.

20 She used the following gargle:

**R:** simple mulberry juice 3oz, rose honey 2oz, rose water ½ pint,  
sufficient oil of sulphur for tartness. Then she used the cold

---

**1** with the greatest effort] *S.O.* omits. **5** 7gr] *S.O.* adds: sure he mistook her,  
for four is a good dose. **15** She had her monthly period] *S.O.*: on Monday  
morning having some evacuation.

Variolae apperabant die septima, attamen pro gutture usa est gargarismo praedictae et 4 in die haustum decoctionis cornu cervi frigide, et sic laus Deo curata.

Variolas inungi iubebam tempore convenienti tali unguento:

5 **R:** aquae cardui benedicti, olei communis ana. Agitentur diu.

Sine vestigiis curata. *Huic deploratae dominae hisce paucis auxiliante Deo medebar.*<sup>159</sup>

10

[Case 74] Variolarum cura, smalepoxe.

Generosus Farman, vesticeps, congero dicaculus, vultuosus, facetus, variolas dolet, infectus conviscendo Domina Beaufou ita ut  
15 abire patriam suam nequit Lestriencis.

Ad expulsionem:

**R:** diascordii dr.i, mithridatii dr.s, croci sc.s, aquae dracunculae unc.iii, cornu cervi praeparati sc.i. Fiat haustus sudoriferus. **/68/**

Hoc potato haustu eadem die pullulare incipiebant. Antea

20 delirebat, his visis *tacitum continere gaudium non potuit*, sed sorori dixit se ab omni mortis periculo liberum esse.<sup>160</sup> Maesta et modesta eius soror hilaritate profusa et effusa *tendens ad caelum palmas*,<sup>161</sup> Deo gratias immortales dabat quod praeter spem ab orci faucibus

<sup>159</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 450: Huic deploratae, auxiliante Deo, brevi hisce paucis et **εὐπορίστοις** medebar.

<sup>160</sup>Echoing Livy, *Historiam ab urbe condita*, Lib XXX, Cap XVII, tacitum continere gaudium non poterant. | <sup>161</sup>Echoing Virgil, 1 *Aeneid*. 93: duplices tendens ad sidera palmas.

1 die] ~~morbilli~~ \variolae/. 4 Variolas] ~~morbillis~~ \variolas/. 12 Variolarum] ~~morbillorum~~ \variolarum/. 14 variolas] ~~morbillis~~ \variolas/.

hartshorn decoction.

The smallpox appeared on the seventh day, notwithstanding which she used the above gargle for her throat and a draught of the cold hartshorn decoction four times a day, and so, praise God, was  
5 cured.

I prescribed this ointment for anointing the smallpox:

**R:** blessed thistle water, common salt, each. Stir them for some time.

She was cured without scars. *I healed this desperately ill lady  
10 with these few [remedies] and the help of God .*

[Case 74] Cure of smallpox.

Mr Farnham, a young gentleman of the same family, talkative, affected, witty: infected with smallpox while staying with Lady  
15 Beaufou, so that he could not return to his paternal home at Leicester.

To bring out the pocks:

**R:** diascordium 1dr, Mithridate ½dr, saffron ½sc, tarragon water 3oz, prepared hartshorn 1sc. Make a sweating draught. **/68/** Once  
20 he had drunk this, they began to spread the same day. Previously he was senseless, but seeing this *joy could not be confined* and his sister reported he was freed from all danger of death. His grieving and reserved sister poured out her wide flowing joy, *holding her hands to heaven* she gave everlasting thanks to God, because her

---

**12** Case 74] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXVIII [First Century], pp. 69-70. | smallpox] written in English in Libellus. **13** talkative...witty] *S.O.* omits. **21** and...24 heaven] *S.O.* omits.

fratrem liberatum esse.

Ad sitem eius effraenandum bibat ad placitum decoctionem  
cornu cervi. Usus est pro gutture, gargarismo ut pro Domina  
Beaufou. Ne desidarent faciem sequenti oleo usus saepe in die cum  
5 siccare incipiebant.

℞: aquae cardui benedicti unc.ii, olei olivarum unc.i.s.

Conquassantur et agitentur ad formam olei.

Sine vestigiis, laus Deo curatus.

10 [Case 75] Febris a partu cura.

Domina Rous, religiosa, aetatis 27 de Rouse Lench; 2<sup>a</sup> die a partu in  
febrem quotidianam incidebat, instante paroxysmo misere  
vehementissimo capitis dolore lancinata, extremoque cervicis dolore  
cruciata.

15 ℞: diascordii dr.s, magisterii perlarum, tincturi coralli ana gr.12,  
aquae cardui benedicti unc.ii. Detur horas ii ante paroxysmum,  
reiteretur potio veniente paroxysmo, et sic per ii dies.

A dolore cervicis emplastrum hoc:

℞: carannae unc.i. Dissolvatur in vini hyssopici albi unc.i. Fiat  
20 emplastrum. Extendatur super alutam et cervici applicetur.

A dolore capitis liberata et a febre. Laus Deo.

[Case 76] /69/ Gonorrhoeae virulentae cura.

25 William Clavell de Fecknam, gonorrhoea virulenta cum summo

brother had been freed beyond all hope from the jaws of death.

To control thirst he drank hartshorn decoction as he pleased.  
For his throat he used the gargle as for Lady Beaufou. To prevent  
disfigurement of his face, he used the following oil when the pocks  
5 started to dry:

**R:** blessed thistle water 2oz, olive oil 1½oz. Mix. Shake together in  
the form of oil.

He was cured, praise God, without scars.

10 [Case 75] Cure of fever after giving birth.

Lady Rous of Rouse Lench, devout, aged 27: fell into a quotidian  
fever two days after giving birth. She was wretchedly attacked by a  
most violent headache at the moment of the attack, and tortured by  
extreme pain in her neck.

15 **R:** diascordium ½dr, magisterium of pearls, coral tincture each  
12gr, blessed thistle water 2oz. Give two hours before the attack,  
repeat the potion when the attack comes. Continue the course for  
two days.

This plaster for the sore neck:

20 **R:** caranna 1oz. Dissolve in white hyssop wine 1oz. Make a plaster.  
Spread it on thin leather and apply to the neck.

She was freed from the headache and fever. Praise God.

[Case 76] /69/ Cure of virulent gonorrhoea.

25 William Clavell of Feckenham: most wretchedly seized by virulent

---

**10** Case 75] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXIX [First Century], p. 70. **22** Praise God] *S.O.*  
omits. **24** Case 76] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXX [First Century], p. 71.

urinae ardore, a 40 diebus gravissime retinebatur. Chirurgum ad mensem incassum consulit, in nostris vero manibus sequentibus remediis 15 dierum spacio convaluit.

Mense Octobris:

- 5     ℞: gummi guaiaci unc.i, pulverizati in cervisia: quinque sedes.

Postea:

℞: decoctionis sarsaparillae lib.4. Libram mane et sero hauriebat, sed quoniam saepe mentio de decoctione sarsaparillae facta est, his assignare vellem:

- 10   ℞: sarsaparillae unc.ii, hermodactylis unc.i.s, guaiaci, liquiritiae ana unc.i, senae unc.ii, seminum anisi, carvi, coriandri ana unc.s.  
Bulliant in lib.8 ad 4. Coletur et usui reservetur. Huius accipiebat lib.4.

Deinde electuarii sequenti:

- 15   ℞: gummi tragacanthi unc.s. Dissolvatur in satis quantum aquae plantaginis. Coletur, colaturae adde pulveris gummi guaiaci dr.ii, terebinthinae ustae dr.i. Dosis dr.i.s.

Sed usu decoctione sarsaparillae rite recteque purgatus et omnino a lumbagine et ardore urinae liberatus 4 diebus, et usu

- 20   huius electuarii a gonorrhoea penitus curatus.

[Case 77] Vermium admirandorum cura.

Richard Wilmore de Norton aetatis 14, evomebat vermes nigros ad

- 25   pollicis unius et semis longitudinem, cum sexdecem pedibus,



gonorrhoea with extremely hot urine for forty days. He consulted a surgeon uselessly for a month, but did indeed recover in our hands with the following remedies, in fifteen days.

In the month of October:

- 5     **R:** guaiacum gum 1oz powdered, in beer. Five stools.

Afterwards:

**R:** sarsaparilla decoction 4 pints. He drank a pint morning and evening, but because he often mentioned sarsaparilla decoction, I wanted to give him these:

- 10    **R:** sarsaparilla 2oz, colchicum 1½oz, guaiacum, liquorice each 1oz, senna 2oz, anise, caraway, coriander seeds each ½oz. Boil in 8 pints, reduce to four. Strain and store for use. He took 4 pints of this.

Next, the following electuary:

- 15    **R:** tragacanth gum ½oz. Dissolve in sufficient plantain water. Strain. To the strained liquid add guaiacum gum powder, burnt turpentine 1dr. Dose: 1½dr.

- He was suitably and correctly purged by the use of the sarsaparilla decoction, and entirely freed from lower backache and  
20    burning urine in four days. The use of the electuary completely cured his gonorrhoea.

[Case 77] Cure of astonishing worms.

- Richard Wilmore of Norton, aged 14: vomited black worms about  
25    one and a half inches long, with sixteen legs and small red heads.

---

**1** He consulted a surgeon] *S.O.*: having been under another's hands.

**4** October] *S.O.*: November. **8** but...decoction] *S.O.* omits. **12** pints of this] *S.O.*: four oz. **23** Case 77] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXXI [First Century], p. 72.

capitellis rubris. Quando evomebat paene mortui fuerant, paucos  
interposito tempore revivixebant. Haec ex mercurio vitae reiecta.  
Die sequenti ab assumptione pater /70/ eius, charta involutos, ad  
me adducebat. Hic et illic erucati gressu serpebant, et eruis nisi  
5 colore similes. Eis visis, remanebat meum ultra petens consilium,  
quod filio faustum iudicabat.

Cum animadverterem statum morbi et virium robor et quod  
maxime semel in mense nimirum novo lunae conflictabatur graviter,  
et misere torquebatur horum lancinatione (nisi cibario se  
10 ingurgitaret et avido ore captaret cibos, nam *fames rabida*<sup>162</sup> et  
*improba ventris rabies*<sup>163</sup>). Ita summo cruciatu oppressus ut  
astantes animis sauciati. *Urina excepta erat* resplendens cum  
scintillis ad colorem ambrae pulverizatae, *alias satis bona*.<sup>164</sup> Erat  
robustus, bene coloratus.

15 Duabus ab hinc annis a lue Gallica a me rite curatus, et bene  
se habet et a doloribus immunis. Donec incidebat in hoc pertristi  
dolore, *quoniam hoc vitii genus acutissimum est omnium quae*  
*insidiantur stomacho et penitus exitiale, nisi cito et recte subventum*  
*fuerit.*

20 *Ego vero misertus, huius curam institui sequentibus remediis:*<sup>165</sup>

℞: mercurii vitae gr.iii, conservae rosarum parum: vomitus ii.

Evomebat vi vermes vivos, tales quales nunquam antea vidi nec legi.

Die sequenti:

---

<sup>162</sup>Echoing Virgil, 6 Aeneid. 85. | <sup>163</sup>Virgil, 2 Aeneid 357: *improba ventris*  
*Exegit caecos rabies.* | <sup>164</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria X', *Curationum [...]*  
*centuriae*, p. 718: *Urina excepta erat spumosa, alias satis bona.* | <sup>165</sup>Ruland  
the Elder, 'Centuria X', *Curationum [...]* *centuriae*, p. 728: *Quoniam istud vitii*  
*genus acutissimum est omnium, quae insidiantur intestinis et penitus exitiale,*  
*nisi cito aut recte subventum fuerit. Ego vero misertus, huius curam institui et*  
*perfecti.*

---

2 mercurio] ὄ. 21 mercurii] ὄ.

When he vomited they were almost dead, but revived after a short time had passed. They were expelled with mercurius vitae. The day after they were brought up /70/ his father brought them to me wrapped in paper. They crawled slowly as if with earwig feet, but  
5 not the same colour as earwigs. Once we had seen these he continued to ask me for further advice because he judged it would benefit his son.

Next I observed the state of the illness and robustness of his strength, that he was most vexed once a month, that is, at the new  
10 moon, and was wretchedly wracked by their attack (unless he gorged himself with plain food, and greedily took food by mouth, because of *frenzied hunger and immoderate greed of the stomach*). He was so overwhelmed by the greatness of his suffering that those around him were wounded in spirit. *He passed urine* with shining  
15 sparks the colour of amber powder, *otherwise satisfactory and good*. He was strong, well coloured.

Two years previously I had cured him properly of the French disease, and he became well and freed from pain. Then he fell into this very painful condition, *indeed the most severe kind of affliction,*  
20 *which lurks in the stomach and is deeply destructive unless quickly and correctly treated.*

*I did indeed feel pity, and started its cure with the following remedies:*

**R:** mercurius vitae 3gr, a little rose conserve: vomits two. He  
25 brought up six live worms, of a sort that I have never seen or read of

---

2 They were expelled with mercurius vitae] S.O.: I gave him *Merc. Vitae*; I read as a home remedy before Hall was consulted; 4 earwig] following S.O.

R: poculi chymici dr.v: vomitus 5, vermes iii.

3<sup>a</sup> die purgatus sic:

/71/ R: speciei diaturbith cum rhabarbaro dr.i, pulveris senae

laxativae dr.s, aquae portulacae unc.iii, syrupi rosacei solutivi

5 unc.i, olei vitrioli gut.8. Misce. Rite purgatus sed nullos eiiciebat vermes, et his liber evasit, et mihi multas reddebat gratias.

Transactis duobus annis, obiter vidi, et rogabam an unquam sentiebat erosionem stomachi, vel eiiciebat vermes, et dixit ab omni dolore et torminibus ab eo tempore liberum esse. Deo laus.

10

[Case 78] Dentium doloris cura.

Generosa Kempson *perferebat dies noctesque in dente genuino*

15 *carioso, cruciatum maestum et querulum, pro quo abigendo permulta machinata est, sed absque omni profectu. Tandem ad me accurrenti, do aquam sequentem qua admota derepente dolor sedatus, sputaque multa et tenua promota.*<sup>166</sup>

R: aquae papaveris rheadis unc.ii, olei vitrioli quantum satis ut acida

20 *reddatur. Commiscentor bene, immersum linteolum supra dolentem dentem admovit saepe, et cum quater saltem hoc fecisset, subito omnis dolor remisit.*<sup>167</sup>

Capite tamen dolente, pilulis sequentibus usa:

<sup>166</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria IV', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 251: *perferebat dies noctesque in dente genuino carioso cruciatum moestum, odiosum et querulum: pro quo abigendo permulta machinatus est sed absque omni profectu. Tandem ad me accurrenti, do aquam antipodagricam, qua admota derepente dolor elevatus et sedatus est, sputaque multa et tenua promota sunt.* | <sup>167</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria IV', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 273: R aquae plantaginis unc.i, olei vitrioli Rom. guttas ix. Commiscentor bene. Immersum linteolum supra dolentes dentes admovit saepe. Et cum quater saltem hoc fecisset puer, subito omnis dolor remisit.

before.

On the following day:

**R:** the chymical cup 5dr: vomits five, worms three.

On the third day he was purged in this way:

- 5    **/71/ R:** diaturbith powder with rhubarb 1dr, laxative senna powder ½dr, purslane water 3oz, solutive syrup of roses 1oz, oil of vitriol 8 drops. Mix. He was properly purged but passed no worms. He was set free by these and gave me many thanks.

- 10    I saw him in passing two years later, and asked whether he ever felt any corrosion of the stomach or passed worms. He replied that he had been free of all pain and torment since that time. Praise God.

[Case 78] Cure of toothache.

- 15    Mrs Kempson, a gentlewoman: *endured grim and pitiful torture from a decayed molar tooth day and night. She contrived many things as cures but with no success. When she comes running to me, I give her the following water whose rapid application calmed the pain. She brought up much thin sputum:*
- 20    **R:** *field poppy water 2oz, sufficient oil of vitriol to render it sharp. Mix well. Place a cloth soaked in it over the sore tooth often. At last, when the fourth application had been made, all the pain suddenly left.*

Her head was still hurting, so she used the following pills:

---

**14** Case 78] S.O.: Observ. LXXXII [First Century], p. 73. **16** things as cures but with] S.O.: used many medicines, as also charms.

R: pilularum cochiarum dr.s, aurearum dr.i, trochischati agarici  
sc.s. Cum aqua betonicae fiant pilulae 7: sedes 10 et vomitus iii, et  
4 vermes magnos et longos per se sessum deiciebat.

His solis a praedictis symptomatibus liberata.

5

[Case 79] /72/ Tumoris faciei cura.

Baron Compton Praesidens Walliae, tumore faciei a rheumate orto  
gravissime cruciatus et defoedatus. Ad quem veniens sequentia  
ordinabam praesidea:

10 R: unguenti dialtheae unc.s, oleorum chamaemelli, violacei,  
amygdalarum dulcium ana dr.ii, axungiae gallinae dr.i. Fiat unctio,  
et linteam duplicatum supraponatur. Pilularum de succino dr.i.s  
hora cubitus, mane totus tumor paene sublatus.

Saepe usus pro gargarismo:

15 R: syrupi papaveris unc.s, aquae papaveris unc.iii, olei vitrioli  
quantum satis ut acida reddatur.

Duobus diebus curatus ex toto.

[Case 80] Febris malignae, doloris splenis,

20 tumoris testiculorum cura. 1618.

Equus Raynforde aetatis 35, febris maligna, siti, flatu, dolore  
splenis, tumore testiculorum, melancholia hypochondriaca misere  
cruciatus. Sic se purgabat: mannae unc.s, rhabarbari expressi dr.i,  
possetalae quantum satis: sedes quinque sine levamine ullo. Tunc  
25 meum petit consilium.

Spleni applicabam emplastrum hoc:

---

21 aetatis 35] \et 35/.

R: pills - cochiae ½dr, aureae 1dr, trochischated agaric ½sc. Make 7 pills with betony water. Ten stools and three vomits. She passed four large long worms at one evacuation.

These alone freed her from the above symptoms.

5

[Case 79] /72/ Cure of a swollen face.

Baron Compton, President of Wales: severely tortured and disfigured by swelling of the face, springing from catarrh. I visited him and prescribed the following treatment:

10 R: marsh mallow ointment ½oz, oils of chamomile, violet, sweet almond each 2dr, chicken fat 1dr. Make an ointment, spread it on a folded cloth. Amber pills: 1½dr at bedtime. In the morning the swelling was entirely gone.

He used the following gargle often:

15 R: poppy syrup 1oz, poppy water 3oz, sufficient oil of vitriol to render it sharp.

He was cured of everything after two days.

[Case 80] Cure of malignant fever, pain in the

20 spleen, testicular swelling. 1618.

Squire Rainsford, aged 35: wretchedly tortured by malignant fever, thirst, wind, splenic pain, swelling of the testicles, hypochondriac melancholy. He purged himself with manna ½oz, expressed rhubarb 1dr, sufficient posset ale: five stools without any relief.

25 Then he asked my advice.

I applied this plaster to the spleen:

---

6 Case 79] S.O.: Observ. LXXXIII [First Century], pp. 73-74. 19 Case 80] S.O.: Observ. LXXXIV [First Century], pp. 74-75.

R: labdani dr.ii, cerae flavae unc.i, emplastri meliloti unc.ii,  
*emplastri ex Saturno rubro* unc.s.<sup>168</sup> A flatu rite liberatus.

Pro tumore flatuoso testiculorum:

R: emplastri nostri Saturnali et meliloti ana partes aequales, sed  
5 prius cataplasmate ex ruta, chamaemelli, parthenio in **/73/** vino  
clareto, ebullito et adhibeto tumori. Hoc sublato, applicetur  
emplastrum praedictum exoptato eventu, nam tumor ex toto  
sublatus fuit.

Usus glistere emollienda:

10 R: olei seminum lini unc.8 or rutae, chamaemelli ana unc.i,  
diaphaeniconis et diacatholiconis ana unc.s. In vino Hyspanico  
dissolvantur. Fiat glistes: ii sedes cum flatibus. A tumore et splenis  
dolore liberatus, nondum stomachus nec appetitus recte fuerunt.  
Idcirco 3<sup>a</sup> die dabam poculi chymici unc.i, aquae caelistis gut.iii:  
15 vomitus vi. Die sequenti cibum comedebat.

Eadem die a vomitu, hora somni:

R: diascordii dr.i, syrupi limonum unc.i, possetalae quantum satis.  
Et sequenti die a vomitorio, clysterem ex diacatholico, saccharo  
rubro et lacte: ii sedes.

20 Et sic, laus Deo, ad pristinam sanitatem restitutus.

[Case 81] Cancro tibiae cura.

Generosus Barnes aetatis 36, diu cancro tibiae claudus. Corpus  
rite purgatum pilulis, deinde usus decoctione guaiaci, postea topicis  
25 adhibitis. Rite curatus.

---

<sup>168</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 746-747, refers to *Emplastrum ex Saturno Langii*, but I have not found a recipe.

---

**2** Saturno] an unusual alternative to the commoner *minio*, for lead. **4** emplastri nostri Saturnali] probably referring to *emplastrum ex Saturno rubro* above.



R: labdanum 2dr, yellow wax 1oz, melilot plaster 2oz, plaster of red lead ½oz. He was rightly freed from wind.

For the fluctuant swelling of the testicles:

R: our lead and melilot plasters in equal amounts, but first a  
5 poultice of rue, chamomile, feverfew in **/73/** in claret wine. Boil and spread this on the swelling. When this was removed, the above plaster was applied with the desired result, for the swelling was entirely removed.

He used this softening enema:

10 R: linseed oil 8oz or rue, chamomile oil each 1oz, diaphoenicon and diacatholicon each ½oz. Dissolve in Spanish wine. Make an enema: two stools with wind. He was freed from the swelling and pain of the spleen. Neither the stomach nor the appetite were yet as they should be, so on the third day I gave the chymical cup 1oz,  
15 *caelestis* water 3 drops. Six vomits. The next day he started eating.

The same day after the vomit, before sleeping:

R: diascordium 1dr, lemon juice 1oz, sufficient posset ale. The day after the vomitory, an enema of diacatholicon, red sugar and milk. Two stools.

20 And so, praise God, he was restored to his former health.

[Case 81] Cure of a canker on the leg.

Mr Barnes, a gentleman aged 36: limping for a long time because of a canker of the leg. His body was suitably purged with pills, then  
25 he used guaiacum decoction, then external applications. He was

---

5 feverfew] *S.O.* parsly. 22 Case 81] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXXV [First Century], p. 75.

*R: vitrioli albi unc.ii, boli Armeni unc.i.dr.ii, camphorae dr.iii. Fiat pulvis. De quo R unc.i, quem proiice in aqua fere ebullientem /74/ et relinque parum fervere et amove ab igne. Subsident faeces. Ista aqua tepida fove cancrum sine alio additamento.*<sup>169</sup>

5 Cum paene curatus, cicatricem inducebam sequenti emplastro:

*R: plumbi albi lib.s, cretae unc.4. Pulverizentur, et cum axungia porcina fiat lege artis emplastrum stipticum. Applicetur ad crassitudinem unius digiti. Maniet 9 dies.*

10 Praecedat haec lotio sequens:

*R: cupressae albae quantum satis. Bulliat in satis quantum aquae fontanae, cum qua lava ulcus. Hoc primo emplastro remoto, aliud applicandum quod remaniet sex dies et isto sublato tertium, quod remanebit iii dies. Et nota: semper cum praedicta aqua lavandus*

15 cancer.

Sic curatus perfecte, qui multa frustra a chirurgis tentavit sine fructu.

[Case 82] Dysenteriae, menstruorum fluxus cura.

20 Sheffelde uxor agricolae de veteri Stratforde, aetatis anno 48: dysenteria misere lancinata et fluxu menstruorum rubrorum debilitata, menstrua antea retenta spacio 5 annorum.

---

<sup>169</sup>Penot, *De denario medico*, p. 70. *R vitrioli albi lib.s, boli Armeni unc.v, camphorae dr.i.s. Fiat pulvis, de quo accipe unc.i.s, quem proiice in aquam fere bullientem, et relinque parum fervere, et amove ab igne; subsident faeces. Ista aqua tepida fove quaevis ulcera, sine alio additamento.*

---

7 plumbij ℥.

properly cured:

*R: white vitriol 2oz, bole Armeniac 1oz 2dr, camphor 3dr. Make a powder. Take 1oz of this, put it in water almost boiling. /74/ Leave a little while to get hot and remove from the fire. The dregs will settle.*

- 5 *Clean the canker with this warm water, without any other addition.*

When he was nearly cured, I encouraged scabbing with the following plaster:

*R: white lead ½lb, chalk 4dr. Make a powder. Make a styptic plaster with pork fat by the usual method.*

- 10 *Apply to a thickness of one finger. Leave for 9 days.*

This lotion came first:

- R: sufficient white copperas. Boil in sufficient spring water, wash the ulcer with it. When the first plaster is removed, another should be applied which will stay for six days, and when that is removed a*  
15 *third, for three days. NOTE: the canker should always be washed with the above water.*

He was perfectly cured in this way, after vainly trying many [remedies] from surgeons, to no purpose.

- 20 [Case 82] Cure of dysentery, menstrual flux.

Sheffield, a farmer's wife of Stratford Old Town, 48 years old:

wretchedly attacked by dysentery and weakened by red menstrual flux. Her periods had previously been suppressed for the past five years.

---

**3** water almost boiling] *S.O.*: hot smith's forge-water [reading *ferre* for *fere*, which is in the source]. **5** without any other addition] *S.O.* adds: and a cloth laid upon it wet in the said water. **12** copperas] following *S.O.* **17** after... purpose] *S.O.* omits. **20** Case 82] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXXVI [First Century], p. 76. **21** Stratford Old Town] The area around Holy Trinity Church in Stratford upon Avon still has this name.

Haec convalescebat, hisce paucissimis quantitate, ac virtute  
praestantissime.<sup>170</sup>

R: pilularum laudani gr.vi, Mithridatii sc.s, conservae rosarum  
dr.i.s, croci Martis sc.i. Misce. A menstruorum fluxu et ventris  
5 profluvio liberata, site tamen vexata.

R: aquae papaveris rheadis unc.4, syrupi violarum unc.i.

His a site et fluxu liberata et curata.

[Case 83] Anorexiae, rheumatis cura.

10 *Pro illustrissimo Heroi ac Domino Gulielmo Compton Praesidi  
Cambriae, /75/ rheumatis e capite in gingivas distillantis, et  
anorexiae.<sup>171</sup> Curavi et sanavi, capiendo sequenti:*  
*R: foliorum senae abiectis stipitibus unc.s, rhabarbari optimi dr.ii,  
agarici electi dr.i, cinamomi praestantissimi dr.vi. Infundantur omnia*  
15 *per horas xii lege artis, in aqua boraginis et cichorii tepentis ana  
unc.10. Mane, bulliant ad consumptionem unc.4, deinde colentur  
sexties vel septies, et dulcorentur unc.4 sacchari optimi in modum  
nectaris.<sup>172</sup> Huius accipiebat hora cubitus unc.ii. Mane unam  
tanta modo habuit sedem magnam et foetidam, Aprilis 21.*

20 Die 22:  
Mane praedictae decoctionis cepit unc.5, ex quibus octo sedes.  
23:

<sup>170</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 417.

<sup>171</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, f. 2r [see page /4/]. | <sup>172</sup>Ranzau, *De Conservanda*, pp. 63-64: Rec. foliorum senae Alexandr. recentium abiectis stipitibus unc.i. rhabarbari optimi drachmas ii. Agarici electi drachmas iii. Cinnamomi electi unciam unam semis. Infundantur per horas xii secundum artem in sextariis duobus repentis vini Rhenensis optimi. Deinde colentur per saccum laneum [...] sexies aut septies, et dulcorentur lib.semis sacchari optimi in modum nectaris [See also /1/].

4 Martis] ♂.

*She recovered with these, very little in quantity but of outstanding power:*

**R:** laudanum pills 6gr, Mithridate ½sc, conserve of roses 1 ½dr, crocus Martis 1sc. Mix. She was freed from the menstrual flux and diarrhoea of the bowels, but was still troubled by thirst.

**R:** corn poppy water 4oz, syrup of violets 1oz.

These freed her from thirst and flux, and she was cured.

[Case 83] Cure of loss of appetite, catarrh.

10 *For the most illustrious hero and Lord, William Compton, Lord President of Wales: /75/ with rheum from the head dripping into the gums, and loss of appetite. I cured and healed him by having him take the following:*

**R:** *senna leaves detached from the stalks ½oz, best rhubarb 2dr, choice agaric 1dr, excellent cinnamon 6dr. Infuse everything by the usual method for twelve hours, in lukewarm borage and chicory waters each 10oz. In the morning boil, reduce by 4oz, then strain six or seven times, and sweeten with 4oz best sugar in the form of nectar.* He took 2oz of this at bedtime. In the morning he had a single large foul-smelling stool. 21 April.

22nd:

He took 5oz of the above decoction in the morning: eight stools from this.

23rd:

---

**9** Case 83] *S.O.*: *Observ.* LXXXVII [First Century], pp. 76-77. **10** For... Lord] See Case 2, page /4/.

℞: pilularum aurearum, de rhabarbaro ana dr.i, ex quibus 13 sedes.

Post tertiam sedem parum aegrotabat. Iusculo ex herbis et crusta panis accepto (nam fuit dies passionis Christi) statim convaluit.

Corpore optime purgato, decoctionem sequentem

5 administrabam:

℞: chynae in talleolas sectae dr.ii, radice sassaphras in tenues orbiculos sectae unc.s. Bulliant lege artis in lib.8 ad 4, de quo quater in die ad minus bibet et sic per 8 dies. Omni alio die devorabat pilulas Ruffi sc.ii conformatas.

10 His finitis, Deo gratias, optime et athleticae valet.

[Case 84] Cibi indigestionis et hepatis  
obstructionis cura.

Domina Beaufou, de indigestione cibi et flatu post pastum  
15 conquesta, cui sequentem biream praescripsi, felici et optato  
eventu:

℞: radice lapatii expurgatae unc.4, foliorum agrimoniae M.v,  
foliorum cichorii cum toto M.ii. Coque in congiis tribus cervisiae  
novissimae ad consumptionem congi.s. Cola et adde florem  
20 cervisarium. Liquor in vas reconditur, cui immerge sequentia in  
sacculo raro linteo inclusa:

℞: sarsaparillae, sassaphras, /76/ rasurae eboris ana unc.i, senae,  
polypodii ana unc.v, hermodactylis unc.ii, liquiritiae unc.s,  
galangae, rhabarbari ana unc.s, mecoachan unc.i, cinamomi,  
25 caryophylli ana dr.i. Communiantur omnia grosso modo et misce  
(et cum lapide nam fandum attemperaret in sacculo incluso) et filo

---

26 attemperaret] attempeteret.

R: pills aureae, rhubarb each 1dr. Thirteen stools from these. After the third stool he was a little better. After taking broth with herbs and a crust of bread (for it was Good Friday), he at once recovered.

After a very good purge of the body, I gave the following  
5 decoction:

R: china sliced in pieces 2dr, sassaphras root sliced in thin rounds ½oz. Boil by the usual method in 8 pints, reduce to 4 pints. Drink this at least four times a day, for eight days. On alternate days he swallowed well made Ruffus's pills 2sc.

10 When these were finished, praise God, he was very well and fit.

[Case 84] Cure of indigestion of food, and liver  
obstruction.

Lady Beaufou: complained of indigestion of food and wind after  
15 eating. I prescribed the following beer for this, with the desired happy result:

R: washed dock root 4oz, agrimony leaves 5 handfuls, leaves of chicory with everything 2 handfuls. Boil in 3 gallons very new beer, reduce by ½ gallon. Strain. Add flowers of yeast. Put it away in a  
20 vessel, in which immerse the following inside a thin linen bag:

R: sarsaparilla, sassaphras, /76/ ivory shavings each 1oz, senna, polypody each 5oz, colchicum 2oz, liquorice ½oz, galangals, rhubarb each ½oz, mechoachan 1oz, cinnamon, cloves each 1dr. Break them all up coarsely and mix (with a stone if that may be  
25 properly accommodated) and fasten it with a string at the top of the

---

1 After... 3 recovered] S.O.: After the third stool he began to be better, there being taken broth. The body was well purged. 12 Case 84] S.O.: Observ. LXXXVIII [First Century], pp. 77-78.

summitati dolioli alligetur. Post 10 vel 12 dies capiat haustum  
mane et sero.

Rite purgata, et cibum optime digerit. Gratias dedit.

5 [Case 85] chiragrae et podagrae cura.

Eques Packington, ut Londinum curru eveheretur, subito in  
hospitio chiragra et podagra misere afflicto, ut nec stare nec  
tractare aliquis potuit. Meum petens consilium, sequenti levatus:

*R: malvam cum radicibus minutim concisam. Incoque vini et aceti*

10 *aequis partibus ad tertias, tunc adde furfures secalis crassiores, et*  
post levem coctionem, contusa, applica calide articulis

dolentibus.<sup>173</sup> Bene unius diei spacio levatus, et ab inflammatione  
liberatus. Usu fomentatione *aquae spermatis ranarum destillatae*,  
postremo emplastrum diacalcitheos admovebam.<sup>174</sup> Eadem die

15 haurie iubebam dr.ii pulveris senae Montagnanae cum  
hermodactylo gr.xv.

His ita restitutus, et 3<sup>a</sup> die Londinum equitabat et multas mihi  
gratias dedit.

20 [Case 86] Doloris stomachi a flatu cura.

Wilsune opidana, circa aetatis annum 48, dolore stomachi cibique  
indigestione misere per longum tempus cruciata, ut cibum capere  
non ausit. Meum petens consilium, hoc unico pulvere curata:

---

<sup>173</sup>Solenander, *Consiliorum* [...] *Solenandri*, p. 429: Recipio malvam integram cum radicibus concisam minutim, eam in aequis vini et aceti partibus coquo in fictili novo, ad tertiae partis consumptionem, deinde admisceo secalis crassiores furfures q. satis | <sup>174</sup>Croll, *Basilica chymica*, p. 277: In aqua sperniolae perse destillata, si tantillum aluminis solvatur, Doloribus podagricis linteis madefactis commode et cum successu applicatur.



cask). After ten or twelve days, take a draught morning and evening.

She was rightly purged, and digested food very well. She thanked me.

5

[Case 85] Cure of gout in the fingers and feet.

Squire Packington: suddenly and wretchedly afflicted with gout in the fingers and feet, at an inn while travelling to London by carriage. He could neither stand nor handle anything. After asking  
10 my advice, he was restored with the following:

*R: mallows with the roots cut small. Boil in equal amounts of wine and vinegar, reduce to a third part, then add coarse rye husks. After light boiling, bruise, apply hot to the painful joints. He was well restored within the space of one day, and was freed from  
15 inflammation. He used a fomentation of distilled frog spawn water, then I applied diachalcitis plaster. The same day I advised him to drink 2dr of Montagnana's senna powder with colchicum 15gr.*

These restored him, and on the third day he rode to London, and gave me many thanks.

20

[Case 86]<sup>17</sup> Cure of stomach ache with wind.

Wilson of Stratford upon Avon, about 48 years old: wretchedly tortured for a long time by stomach ache and indigestion of food, so that she dares not take food. After asking my advice, she was cured

---

<sup>17</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

---

**6** Case 85] S.O.: Observ. LXXXIX [First Century], p. 78. **21** Case 86] S.O.: Observ. XC [First Century], pp. 78-79. **22** Wilson of Stratford upon Avon] In S.O. this patient is male.

R: senae dr.vi, zingiberis albi, seminum foeniculi, zedoari, seminum  
cumini ana dr.ii, caryophylli, galangae, nucis moschatae ana dr.i,  
rhabarbari dr.ii, sacchari candi dr.vi. Fiat pulvis. Dosis mane  
quantum fabae super panem tostum in vino madefactum, hora  
5 cubitus quantum avellanae cum pauxillo vini.  
Curata.

[Case 87] /77/ colicae lumbaginisque cura.

10 Generosa Hanberey Wigorniensis, aetatis 30, lumbagine incurvata  
ita ut erigere se non potuit, colicaque lancinata.  
R: emplastrum nostrum carannae.  
R: herbarum parthenii, rutae, chamaemelli ana M.i, seminum carvi,  
cumini, levistici, anisi, dauci ana M.s. Bulliant lege artis in satis  
15 quantum vini clareti, deinde coletur non fortiter, et reservetur  
vinum expressum. Applicetur cataplasma inferiori ventris parti  
calide, eo frigefacto iterum in sartagine cum vino praedicto expresso  
calefieret, bis vel 3<sup>a</sup> ut opus est. Semina urticae rubrae cum  
summitatibus bulliant in vino albo, de quo capiat mane haustum  
20 calide.  
Rite recteque curata, et ab omni symptomati liberata. Laus  
Deo.

25 [Case 88] Menstruorum rubrorum cura.

with this one powder:

**R:** senna 6dr, white ginger, fennel seed, zedoary, cumin seed each 2dr, cloves, galangal, nutmeg each 1dr, rhubarb 2dr, sugar candy 6dr. Make the powder. Dose: the amount of a bean on toasted bread moistened with wine in the morning; at bedtime the amount of a hazelnut, with a little wine.

Cured.

[Case 87] **/77/** Cure of colic and backache.

10 Mrs Hanbury, a gentlewoman of Worcester aged 30: so bent over by lower backache that she could not stand erect, and attacked by colic.

**R:** our caranna plaster.

**R:** green shoots of feverfew, rue, chamomile each 1 handful, seeds of caraway, cumin, lovage, anise, carrot each ½ handful. Boil by the usual method in sufficient claret wine, then strain without force, and keep the expressed wine. Apply the hot plaster to the lower part of the belly. When it becomes cold, heat it again in an oven with the above expressed wine, two or three times as needed. Boil red nettle seeds with their tops in white wine. Take this hot in the morning.

20 She was rightly and properly cured, and freed from all symptoms, praise God.

25 [Case 88] Cure of red menstrual flux.

---

**7** Cured] *S.O.* adds a short note on other treatments. **9** Case 87] *S.O.*: Observ. XCI [First Century], p. 79. **13** plaster] *S.O.* adds: which was applied to the loins. **20** white wine] *S.O.* adds: I mean the decoction. **25** Case 88] *S.O.*: Observ. XCII [First Century], p. 80

Soror vicini Sheffelda, nimio menstruorum fluxu debilitata, a me sic cito curata:

℞: aluminis de pluma pondus ii denariorum, in aqua rosarum, et sic per iii dies. Ieiunet horis ii, tunc capiat iusculum ex carne ovina et  
5 his herbis: millefolium, corticem interioris roboris, et bibat potum chalybeatum.

Curata cito et tuto.

[Case 89] Torturae oris curatio, Sepembris 29.

10 Domina Rouse gravida 8 mense, tortura oris defoedata, aetatis anno 28 plus minus, procera statura.

℞: cinerum rosmarini quantum satis. Fiat lixivium cum vino albo.

Linteis triplicatis tepidissime foveatur locus affectus.

℞: unguentum cum oleis ut pro filia.

15 ℞ aquae rosarum unc.6, olei vitrioli ut acida reddatur. Teneat in ore.

His curata. Quaere folio /34/.

[Case 90] Fluxus sanguinis e dente evulso cura.

20 Generosus Barnes de Clifforde, senio confectus *ex dente putrido* sito, *sine* aliqua difficultate vel dolore *evulso*. Post biduum **/78/** ab evulsione, [...] *ingens secuta haemorrhagia ex arteria gingivae subdita, cuius dens inmitebatur sanguine ubertim fluente [...] qui a*

The sister of neighbour Sheffield: weakened by excessive menstrual flow. I cured her quickly, in this way:

**R:** plume alum, the weight of 2 pennies in rose water.<sup>18</sup> Continue the course for three days. Fast for 2 hours, then take mutton broth and these herbs: yarrow, inner bark of oak, and drink steeled fluids.

She was cured, quickly and safely.

[Case 89] Cure of spasm of the mouth. 29 September.

Lady Rous: 8 months pregnant, disfigured by spasm of the mouth.

Age: 28 years more or less, tall in stature.

**R:** sufficient rosemary ashes. Make a lye with white wine. Warm the affected area with a warm cloth folded in three.

**R:** the ointment of oils, as for my daughter.

**R:** rose water 6oz, oil of vitriol to make it sharp. Hold in the mouth.

These cured her; see page /34/.

[Case 90] Cure of bleeding from an extracted tooth.

Mr Barnes, a gentleman of Clifford: reduced to the feebleness of old age *by a rotten tooth, extracted* without difficulty or pain. Two days after **/78/** the extraction *a huge haemorrhage followed, from an artery which supplied the tooth in the gum bleeding copiously.* I

---

<sup>18</sup>Approximately 5 gm, or about 15 grains.

**1** neighbour] S.O.: my neighbour. **3** plume alum] A naturally occurring alum.

**8** Case 89] S.O.: Observ. XCIII [First Century], p. 80. **12** with a warm cloth folded in three] S.O.: with four double linnen. **13** as for my daughter] Case 36, page /34/.

**18** Case 90] S.O.: Observ. XCIV [First Century], p. 81.

*me brevi curatus fuit cum 24 horis perpetua in cruentatione non vocato medico constitisset.*<sup>175</sup>

Sed cum nulla remedia ad manus habuerim, iubebam aquam frigidam in ore tenere et saepe elicere et sic fecit donec alia  
5 medicamenta parata fuerant. Sed usu aquae fluxus refraenatus.

Postea:

*R: vitrioli albi p.ii, boli Armeni p.i, camphorae p.s, aquae rosarum calidae quantum satis. Fiat lotio, cui linteolum immersum gingivae frigide aliquoties iussu meo applicabat,*<sup>176</sup> exinde per 5 horas  
10 cessavit, *qui ad multam noctem vigilasset, arctior quam solebat somnus complexus est.*<sup>177</sup> Horis quinque elapsis somno solutus, et refluebat sanguis non magno impetu, quem cum levioribus auxiliis sistere non potui (*ubi cetera remedia incassum admoverentur*<sup>178</sup>) maioribus pugnandum. Croco Martis spongea madefacta praedicta  
15 aqua vitriolata et involuta locum erosum implere iubebam, quo facto fluxus refraenatus *et suppressus ex toto nec amplius redit, laus Deo Medicinarum Creatori.*<sup>179</sup>

Expertum. Curatus. 1619 Ianuarii i.

---

<sup>175</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum[...] libri sex*, p. 212: ex dente putrido sine ulla vi ac sine ferre evulso, sed solo digito apprehenso, et lenissimo concussu emoto atque educto, ingens secuta hemorrhagia ex arteria gingiva subdita, cui dens innitebatur, sanguine ubertim fluente [...] a me brevi curata fuit quum triduum totum perpetua in cruentatione non vocato medico constisset.

<sup>176</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria V', *Curationum[...] centuriae*, p. 314: *R* vini unc.i olei vitrioli Rom. guttas xv. Fiat mixtura: cui linteolum immersum affecto denti aliquoties iussu meo applicabat. | <sup>177</sup>Echoing Cicero, 'Somnium Scipionis, Book VI', *De Re Publica*: qui ad multam noctem vigilassem, arctior, quam solebat, somnus complexus est. | <sup>178</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum[...] centuriae*, p. 71: ubi alia remedia incassum admoverentur.

<sup>179</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum[...] centuriae*, p. 72: et suppressus ex toto fuit, nec amplius rediit. Laus et gloria Medicinarum Creatori.

---

14 Martis] ♂.

*cured this in a short time, after he remained continuously  
bloodstained for twenty four hours, not calling a physician.*

Since I had no remedy to hand, I prescribed cold water held in  
the mouth and often spat out. He did that until other medicines  
5 were prepared, but the use of the water restrained the flow.

Afterwards:

*R: white vitriol 2 pinches, bole Armeniac 1 pinch, camphor ½ pinch,  
sufficient hot rose water. Make a lotion. On my instructions he  
applied a cold soaked cloth to the gum several times. After five hours  
10 it stopped, having kept him awake for much of the night. Sleep took  
a stronger hold than usual. Sleep released him after five hours had  
passed, and the bleeding restarted, not with much force. I could  
not stop it with the aid of lesser aids, so (when other remedies have  
been used in vain) I had to fight with stronger ones. I prescribed a  
15 sponge wetted with crocus Martis and the above vitriolated water,  
wrapped round and filling up the eroded place, by which the flow  
was controlled, and suppressed entirely, nor did it return in greater  
amount. Praise God the creator of medical practice.*

This is well-proven. He was cured. 1 January 1619.

---

**1** he...3 hand] **2** not calling a physician] S.O.: having no remedy for present at hand. **19** This is well-proven He was cured 1 January 1619] S.O. omits; Cooke adds a note on a similar case.

[Case 91] vertiginis cura experta.

Pro paupere Hudsoni, vertigine laborante. Venae cephalicae sectae  
ad unc.10. Purgatus pilularum aurearum, cochiarum ana sc.ii,  
5 trochischi alhandal gr.8. Fiat pilulae 7: 9 sedes.

Postremo accipiatur *stercoris pavonis masculi pro masculo*  
*siccat ut pulveris dr.i, maceretur per noctem in vino albo. Omnia per*  
*linteum traiecta exhibeatur, idque continuatur a novilunio ad*  
*plenilunium.*<sup>180</sup>

10 Curatus.

[Case 92] **/79/** Doloris capitis, matricis  
suffocationis cura.

Domina Rouse, gravida, matricis suffocatione cum animae deliquio  
15 misere divexata, cum extremo capitis dolore.

**R:** fumum ex ungula equi combusta. Cito ad se reddebat, fumo  
naribus attracto. Tunc habuit suppositorium ex melle et pulvere  
sancto, ex quo 7 sedes cum magna flatuum copia. Habuit fumum  
ex odoriferis per inferiora et foetida naribus applicata. Nucam  
20 inungi iubebam oleo spicae, deinde unguento Martiato, propterea  
spasmo cynico laborabat anno praeterito, et nunc valde timebat.

Mane stomacho ieiuno capiebat quantitatem nucis moschati  
sequentis electuarii:

---

<sup>180</sup>Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, p. 148: Paratur autem ex stercore pavonis masculi, pro maribus, quod siccandum et pulverizandum, dein maceretur de eo drachma una per noctem integram in vino albo: omnia per linteum traiecta exhibeantur vertiginoso, idque continenter a novilunium usque ad plenilunium.

---

**3** Hudsoni] in margin.



[Case 91] Well-tested cure of giddiness.

For Hudson, a poor man suffering from giddiness: venesection of the cephalic vein to 10oz. He was purged with pills - aureae,

5 cochiae 2sc each, alhandal trochees 8gr. Make 7 pills. Nine stools.

Afterwards he took *peacock droppings, of a male for a male.*

*Dry for a powder 1dr, soak overnight in white wine. Give when everything has been passed through a cloth, and continue from the new to the full moon.*

10 Cured.

[Case 92] **/79/** Cure of headache, suffocation of the womb.

Lady Rous: pregnant, wretchedly troubled by suffocation of the mother with fainting and extreme headache.

15 **R:** fumes of burnt horse hoof. She quickly came to herself when the smoke was drawn into her nose. Then she had a suppository of honey and holy powder, resulting in seven stools with a large amount of wind. She had the fumes of fragrant things applied  
20 below, and stinking ones to the nostrils. I prescribed an ointment for her neck with spikenard, then Martiatum ointment, because she had suffered from facial paralysis the previous year and now feared it greatly.

She took the following electuary in the morning, the quantity  
25 of a nutmeg on an empty stomach:

---

**2** Case 91] S.O.: Observ. XCV [First Century], p. 82. **3** from giddiness] S.O.: a swimming in his head, called vertigo. **6** for a male] S.O. omits. **12** Case 92] S.O.: Observ. XCVI [First Century], pp. 82-83.

**R:** dianthi, conservae boraginis ana unc.i, Mithridatii, diacymini ana dr.ii, cornu cervi praeparati dr.iii. In iusculo capiebat cornum cervi praeparatum. Umbilico, emplastrum ex caranna simplice, in cuius medio iii grana moschi imposita.

- 5            His liberata et postea debito tempore peperit filiam. 1620  
Martii 16.

[Case 93] Menstrui diminutionis, capitis  
doloris cura.

- 10       Generosa Maria Murden, dolore capitis, rubore faciei post pastum,  
menstruum diminutione et discoloratione laborat, aetatis 17.  
**R:** radicum foeniculi, petroselini, ana unc.ii, asparagi, brusci ana  
unc.iii, calami aromatici unc.s, herbarum betonicae, artemisiae,  
caryophyllatae, nasturtii aquatici, hyssopi, rosmarini, pulegii,  
15       urticae ana M.s, radice enulae campanae unc.s, liquiritiae unc.ii,  
seminum anisi, foeniculi, ana unc.iii, passularum enucleatarum  
M.i, senae, polypodii quercini ana unc.4, hermodactylis unc.ii,  
rhabbarbari, agarici ana dr.ii. Bulliant in lib.8 aquae fontanae, ad  
dimidias. Exprimantur. In expressione dissolve syruporum  
20       arthanitae, augustani, cichorii cum rhabbarbaro ana unc.ii. Dosis  
ab unc.iii ad v.

Huius usu, cito curata.

[Case 94] **/80/** Vermium e umbilico

- 25            exeuntium cura.

Dixwell Brunt de Pilerton, aetatis anno 3º, tumore duro umbilici

**R:** clove-gillyflower, borage conserve each 1oz, Mithridate, diacyminum each 2dr, prepared hartshorn 3dr. She took the prepared hartshorn in broth. To the umbilicus: a simple caranna plaster, in the middle of which 3gr musk were placed.

5            These freed her, and afterwards she bore a daughter at the due time. 16 March 1620.

[Case 93] Cure of scanty menstruation, headache.

Mary Murden, a gentlewoman: suffers from headache, red face after  
10        eating, scanty and discoloured menstruation. Age: 17.

**R:** fennel, parsley roots each 2oz, asparagus, broom each 3oz, sweet flag ½oz, leaves of betony, mugwort, cure-all, watercress, hyssop, rosemary, pennyroyal, nettles each ½ handful, elecampane root ½oz, liquorice 2oz, anise and fennel seeds each 3oz, stoned raisins  
15        1 handful, senna, polypody of the oak each 4oz, colchicum 2oz, rhubarb, agaric each 2dr. Boil in 8 pints spring water, reduce to half. Squeeze out. Dissolve syrups of cyclamen, wallflower, chicory with rhubarb each 2oz. Dose: from 3 to 5oz.

The use of these quickly cured her.

20

[Case 94] **/80/** Cure of the emergence of worms from the umbilicus.

Dixwell Brent of Pillerton, aged 3 years: when a hard umbilical

---

**8** Case 93] *S.O.*: *Observ. XCVII* [First Century], p. 83. **17** cyclamen] *S.O.* mugwort. **21** Case 94] *S.O.*: *Observ. XCVIII* [First Century], p. 84.

rupto, quinque vermes longi (ad similitudinem vermium e ano  
exeuntium) per parvum foramen in modum fistulae. Evellebat 4  
mortuos nutrix, quintus vero vermis semimortuus, anterior pars  
immota, posterior se movebat. Testes: nutrix, mater, pater, et  
5 ancillae. Foramine aperto et tumore adhuc duro (nam oculatis feci  
testis) emplastrum solummodo ex melle crudo applicare iubebam.  
Eodem die, *suppositorium ex melle* administrare iubebam.<sup>181</sup>  
Nullum vermem progredientem vidimus, idcirco sequenti die  
cataplasmatem ex absinthio recenti contuso et felle bovino cocto  
10 umbilico applicare vellem, et suppositorium ex melle.  
Puer laetus hinc coloratus, umbilicus curatus, vivit nunc  
sumpta virili toga. Anno 1620 Aprilis 27.

15

[Case 95] Anasarcae cura.

Comitissa Northamptoniensis, anno 1620 Maii.vi, in anasarcam  
incidebat cum tumore faciei et pedum.

**R:** decoctionem ut pro generosa Murden, folio /79/, additis  
20 rhabarbari dr.ii, senae unc.s. Dosis unc.4, et sic per iii dies: primi  
die 8 sedes; 2<sup>a</sup> 18; 3<sup>a</sup> 15 sedes, sine virium amissione. Postea  
capiat quantitatem avellanae electuarii diacubearum, per 5  
matutinas.

Deinde utetur decocto guaiaci in hunc modum praeparato:

25 **R:** *ligni sancti lib.i, [...] soldanellae siccae M.i, cinamomi unc.ii,*

---

<sup>181</sup>Platter. *De vitiis*, p. 985: Ad interimendas ascarides, suppositorium ex melle coctum, permiscendo Aloen et Fella, valde est efficax [honey suppositories are mentioned elsewhere, but only here in connexion with worms].

swelling broke, five long worms (similar to worms appearing from the anus) [emerged] through a small hole like a fistula. His nurse removed four dead ones. The fifth worm was actually half dead, the front half motionless, the rear moved. Witnesses: the nurse, his mother and father, and servants. The hole being open and the swelling still hard (for I was an eye-witness) I prescribed only the application of an unrefined honey plaster. The same day I prescribed the administration of *a honey suppository*. We did not see any worms appear, so the next day I wished a poultice of freshly bruised wormwood and boiled cattle bile applied to the umbilicus, and the honey suppository.

The happy boy's colour was thus restored and the umbilicus healed. He is still alive, and now wears adult clothes. 27 April 1620.

[Case 95] Cure of generalised dropsy.

The [first] Countess of Northampton, 6 May 1620: fell into a generalised dropsy with swelling of the face and feet.

**R:** the decoction as for Mrs Murden, page /79/, with the addition of rhubarb 2dr, senna ½oz. Dose: 4oz. Continue the course for four days: eight stools on the first day, eighteen on the second, fifteen stools on the third without loss of strength. Then take electuary of cubebs, as much as a hazelnut, on five mornings.

Next she is to use guaiacum decoction prepared in this way:

**R:** *guaiacum wood 1lb, dried snowbells 1 handful, cinnamon 2oz,*

---

**5** The...open] *S.O.* omits. **6** I was an eye-witness] *S.O.* omits. **13** wears adult clothes] *S.O.* omits. **16** Case 95] *S.O.*: *Observ. XCIX [First Century]*, pp. 84-85.

*passularum unc.ii. Bulliant in aquae lib.9 ad dimidias, ubi perfecta esset ebullitio illam calentem in alterum vitreum vas infundi iubebam, in quo vini generosi libras tres inieceram. Ex hoc syrupo /81/ calido unc.vi mane, vesperi unc.4, sumere consulebam. Eamque probe*  
5 *stragulis opertam elicere sudorem coegi.*<sup>182</sup> Omni mane quando sudabat, accipiebat una hora elapsa electuarium diacubebae, et omni 3<sup>a</sup> die purgata.

**R:** mecoachani dr.i.s, syrupi rosacei solutivi unc.i, aquae absinthii, vini Hispanici ana unc.ii: sedes ii, deinde vomitus ii, postea sedes  
10 iii, deinde vomitum i, postremo sedes 12, exoptato eventu, nam tumor omnis sublatus. Usa est electuario chalybeato Cratonis.

His rite recteque curata et colorata, spacio 20 dierum, laus Deo.

15

[Case 96] Stomachi et capitis doloris cura.

Generosa Goodman, circa aetatis annum 54, capitis doloris et stomachi gravata.

**R:** massae pilularum mastichinarum sc.ii, aloes rosati sc.i. Cum  
20 syrupi rosati solutivi reformatur pilulae mediocris. Capiat ante cenam, sic per iii dies. Postea, stomacho ieiuno, Capiat electuarium quod:

---

<sup>182</sup>Vallerioli: *Observationum[...] libri sex*, p. 89: Parabam autem decoctum ex ligni sancti in ramenta pulverati lib.i, in aquae libris novem decocti (erat autem aqua pluvia) ad dimidias et sub finem decoctionis adiciebam soldanellae siccae manipulum, interioris cinamomi uncias duas, passularum cum acinis unc.ii. Ubi perfecta decoctio esset, illam calentem in alterum vitreum vas infundi iubebam, in quo vini generosi libras tres inieceram et ex hoc syrupo calido uncias novem mane sumere, vesperi vero uncias sex consulebam: eumque probe stragulis opertum elicere sudorem, qui fat multus fluebat, coegi [see /172/].

raisins 2oz. Boil in 9 pints water, reduce to half. After the boiling was completely finished I ordered it put, hot, into another glass vessel, into which I had poured three pints good wine. /81/ I advised her to take 6oz of the hot syrup in the morning, 4oz in the evening. I  
5 advised her to cover herself completely with bed-coverings, to elicit sweat. Every morning when she sweated, she took the diacubeb electuary one hour later, and was purged every third day:  
R: mechoachan 1½dr, loosening syrup of roses 1oz, wormwood water, Spanish wine each 2oz. Two stools, then two vomits, then  
10 three stools, then one vomit; finally twelve stools with the desired result, because the swelling disappeared. She used Crato's steeled electuary.

These cured her rightly and properly and restored her colour within twenty days. Praise God.

15

[Case 96] Cure of stomach ache and headache.

Mrs Goodman, a gentlewoman aged about 54 years: oppressed by headache and stomach ache.

R: a mass of mastich pills 2sc, aloes rosata 1sc. Re-shape the pills  
20 into medium size with loosening rose syrup. Take before meals, continue the course for three days. Finally, take this electuary on

---

16 Case 96] S.O.: Observ. C [First Century], p. 85.

**R:** conservae rosarum rubrarum unc.4, speciei aromatici Gabrielis dr.i.s, caryophyllae incisae dr.i, ambrae griseae gr.vi. Misce cum syrupi de corticibus citri, fiat electuarium. Dosis magnitudo castaniae.

- 5            *Sic pauca ista optimum adiumentum statim attulerunt,<sup>183</sup> et ad integram sanitatem pervenit.<sup>184</sup>*

[Case 97] Manum pruritus cura.

- Generosus Penill, gener Equitis Grevill de Milcot, lenticulis et  
10    pustulis manum gravatus. His ruptis, aqua clara venenosa  
exstillabat, quae totas manus maxima inflammatione et excoaratione  
cruciebat. Multis remediis externis incassum adhibitis, caput  
quoque inflammatione et ardore et squamis scatit. Circa aetatis  
annum 38.

- 15            Sic liberatus:

- R:** agrimoniae, cochleariae, nasturtii aquatici ana M.i, salviae,  
cichorii, fumariae ana M.s, radicis enulae campanae unc.s,  
polypodii quercini unc.iii, radicis sassaphras unc.s. Bulliant in  
lib.12 **/82/** aquae fontanae ad consumptionem medietatis. Coletur,  
20    colaturae adde rhabbarbari, agarici ana unc.s, senae laxativae unc.i,  
liquiritiae unc.i, seminum anisi, carvi, coriandri ana dr.ii, cinamomi  
dr.i. Bulliant iterum ad duarum librarum consumptionem.  
Colaturae adde syrupi rosarum solutivi unc.ii, olei vitrioli gut.12.  
Fiat. Dosis unc.4 per 4 dies continuas, omni die 6 vel 7 sedes.

- 25            Topicum:

---

<sup>183</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 184. | <sup>184</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 185.



an empty stomach:

**R:** red rose conserve 4oz, Gabrieli's aromatic powder 1½dr, sliced cloves 1dr, ambergris 6gr. Mix with citron rind syrup. Make the electuary. Dose: as much as a chestnut.

5            *So a little of that brought her immediate help, and she came to complete health.*

[Case 97] Cure of itching hands.

Mr Penell, a gentleman, son-in-law of Squire Greville of Milcot:  
10    oppressed by eruptions and pustules on his hands. When these ruptured, a clear poisonous water dripped out, which greatly tortured the whole of his hands with inflammation and excoriation. Many external remedies were applied in vain. His head is also overflowing with inflammation, heat and scales. Age: about 38  
15    years.

He was freed like this:

**R:** agrimony, scurvy grass, watercress each 1 handful, sage, chicory, fumitory each ½ handful, elecampane root ½oz, polypody of the oak 3oz, sassaphras root ½oz. Boil in 12 pints **/82/** spring water, until  
20    half is gone. Strain. To the strained liquid add rhubarb, agaric each ½oz, laxative senna 1oz, liquorice 1oz, seeds of anise, caraway, coriander each 2dr, cinnamon 1dr. Boil again until two pints are gone. To the strained liquid add loosening rose syrup 2oz, oil of vitriol 12 drops. Dose: 4oz on four consecutive days. Six or seven  
25    stools each day.

For external use:

---

**5** So a little of that brought her immediate help] *S.O.* omits. **8** Case 97] *S.O.*:  
Observ. I [Second Century], pp. 86-87. **9** son-in-law] *S.O.*: gentleman to.

℞: unguenti albi camphorati cum succo sempervivi maioris, mixti quantum vis, cum quo inunxit manus. Venae iecorariae sectio ad unc.vii.

His cito curatus, et a scabie liberatus.

5

[Case 98] Icteritiae citrinae, menstrui obstructionis, vomitus, haemorrhagiae cura. 1621 Aprilis 4.

10 Rogers opidana, circa aetatis annum 17, vomitu, menstruorum obstructione, icteritia, haemorrhagia laborabat.

℞: poculi chymici dr.vii, syrupi violarum coch.s: vomitus vii, sedes 5.

℞: decoctionis sarsaparillae unc.iii, pulveris senae laxativae dr.i.s. Optime purgata.

15 3<sup>a</sup> die:

℞: dr.s excrementi albi gallinarum in vino albo cum saccharo.

Ab icteritia 3<sup>a</sup> die curata.

20 [Case 99] Febris ardentis, icteritiae citrinae, ventriculi tumoris cura.

Generosa Randolpe aetatis 55, febre ardenti diu cruciata, e qua in icteritiam citrinam incidebat: urina rubra et crocea. Dolore ventriculi cum tumore et duritie, lumbagine, tumore splenis, hydrope laboravit. Elapsis tribus septimanis ab morbi initio, meum 25 petit consilium.

**R:** white camphor ointment mixed with juice of common houseleek as much as you like, with which anoint the hands. Venesection of the right basilic vein to 7oz.

These cured him quickly and freed him from the itch.

5

[Case 98] Cure of yellow jaundice, obstructed menstruation, vomiting blood. 4 April 1621.

Rogers of Stratford upon Avon, about 17 years old: suffered from vomiting, obstructed menstruation, jaundice, bleeding.

10 **R:** the chymical cup 7dr, syrup of violets ½ spoonful: seven vomits, five stools.

**R:** sarsaparilla decoction 3oz, laxative senna powder 1½dr; very well purged.

On the third day:

15 **R:** ½dr of the white droppings of fowls, in white wine with sugar.

She was cured of the jaundice on the third day.

[Case 99] Cure of burning fever, yellow jaundice, abdominal swelling.

20 Mrs Randolph, a gentlewoman aged 55: tortured for a long time by burning fever, from which she fell into yellow jaundice. Urine: red like saffron. She suffered from abdominal pain with swelling and hardness, lower backache, splenic swelling, dropsy. She asked my advice after three weeks had passed since the beginning of the

---

**6** Case 98] *S.O.*: *Observ. II* [Second Century], p. 87. **7** vomiting blood] *S.O.*: bleeding at the nose. **18** Case 99] *S.O.*: *Observ. III* [Second Century], pp. 87-88. **24** after ...illness] *S.O.* omits.

℞: poculi chymici dr.vi, oxymellitis scillitici dr.ii, syrupi violarum  
coch.s: vomitus iii, sedes iiii.

Die sequenti:

℞: electuarii de succo rosarum dr.ii /83/ diacatholiconis dr.i.s,  
5 diaphaeniconis dr.ii.s, rhabarbari electi sc.s, spicae gr.v, syrupi  
cichorii cum rhabarbaro unc.s, aquae cichorii unc.iii. Fiat haustus:  
sedes 18. Potus ordinarius die quietis, decoctio cornu cervi.

A febre liberata, icteritia adhuc manente, pro qua extirpanda:

℞: vini albi lib.i, aquae chelidoniae unc.vi, croci dr.i, theriacae  
10 Andromachi dr.iii, lapidis bezoar sc.i, succi stercoris anserini  
coch.vi. Fiat potus sudorificus: dosis unc.4 stomacho ieiuno.  
Capiat ad 4 dies.

Sero utere sequenti electuario:

℞: santali rubri at albi ana dr.iii, passularum Corinthiacarum in  
15 vino albo infusarum, post in cribro transmissarum unc.4,  
rhabarbari dr.i, croci sc.i. Misce, fiat electuarium, quantitas nucis  
moschati.

In ventris tumorem:

℞: unguenti Agrippae unc.i, arthanitae unc.s, Martiati dr.iii, oleorum  
20 nardini, rutae, scorpionum ana dr.ii, aquae vitae parum, aceti guttas  
aliquot. Fiat unguentum lege artis.<sup>185</sup>

His curata, laus Deo, praeter amicorum expectationem.

25

---

<sup>185</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 335: ℞: unguenti Agrippae unc.i.s, arthanitae unc.i, martiati, olei nardini, scorpionum ana unc.s, succi rutae dr.iii, aquae vitae unc.s, aceti guttas aliquot, fiat unguentum arte.

illness.

**R:** the chymical cup 6dr, oxymel of squills 2dr, syrup of violets ½sp:  
three vomits, four stools.

The next day:

5 **R:** electuary of rose juice 2dr, **/83/** diacatholicon 1½dr,  
diaphoenicon 2½dr, choice rhubarb ½oz, spikenard 5gr, chicory  
syrup with rhubarb ½oz, chicory water 3oz. Make a draught:  
eighteen stools. Her usual drink on the quiet day was hartshorn  
decoction.

10 She was freed from the fever, yet the jaundice remained. To  
remove it:

**R:** white wine 1 pint, celandine water 6oz, saffron 1dr, Venice  
treacle 3dr, bezoar stone 1sc, juice of goose droppings 6 spoonfuls.  
Make a sweating potion. Dose: 4oz on an empty stomach. Take for  
15 four days.

She used the following electuary in the evening:

**R:** red and white sandalwood each 3dr, currants soaked in white  
wine then put through a sieve 4oz, rhubarb 1dr, saffron 1sc. Mix.  
Make the electuary. [Take] as much as a nutmeg.

20 For the stomach swelling:

**R:** ointments, Agrippa's 1oz, cyclamen ½oz, Martiatum 3dr, oils, of  
nard, rue, scorpions each 2dr, a little aqua vitae, some drops of  
vinegar. Make the ointment by the usual method.

She was cured, praise God, beyond her friends' expectations.

25

---

24 praise God] S.O. omits.

[Case 100] Anginae, febris ardentis, linguae  
inflammationis cura.

Generosus Broade del Grange, *angina praefocativa corripitur [...]*  
*deploratus, moribundus iacebat*,<sup>186</sup> a theologiis relictus, ab omnibus  
5 desertus; cum febre ardenti, linguae ardore et excoriatione, annos  
natus 42.

His *incolumis evadit me sic opitulante*:<sup>187</sup>

℞: decoctionis communis pro glisteribus lib.s, diacatholiconis,  
diaphaeniconis ana unc.i. Fiat glister: 4 sedes. Phlebotomia  
10 sublingua.

Gargarismus:

℞: mellis rosatum, aquae plantaginis et rosarum ana partes  
aequales, cum pauco olei vitrioli.

Linctus:

15 ℞: syruporum liquiritiae, hyssopii ana unc.ii, oxymellitis scillitici  
unc.s, mellis rosatum unc.i. Misce. Fiat linctus. utetur post  
gargarismum. Guttare iubebam /84/ applicare cataplasma ex  
absinthio virido et axungia porcina. Praeterea iubebam eum  
phlebotomare, sed noluit. Imminentem periculum timebam.  
20 Phlebotomia neglecta, in febrem ut praedixi incidebat, ardentem  
continuam.

Potus ordinarius:

℞: liquiritiae, seminum anisi, ficuum, passularum solis ana unc.i.  
Bulliant in lib.4 aquae ad consumptionem lib.i. Sit potus  
25 ordinarius. Indies crevit febrem, vires deiectae fuerunt, et dixit se

---

<sup>186</sup>Valleriola: *Observationum[...] libri sex*, pp. 259-260: *angina praefocativa corripitur [...]* *deploratus moribundus iactabat*. | <sup>187</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 439: sed mox *σύν Θεῷ* *incolumis evadit me sic opitulante*.

[Case 100] Cure of sore throat, burning fever,  
inflammation of the tongue.

Mr Broad, a gentleman of the Grange: *seized by a choking sore throat. He lay incurable, despaired of*, abandoned by ministers,  
5 deserted by all, with a burning fever, hot and excoriated tongue.  
Aged 42.

*He escapes unharmed, with the aid I bring:*

R: the common decoction for enemas ½ pint, diacatholicon,  
diaphoenicon each 1oz. Make an enema: four stools. Venesection  
10 beneath the tongue.

A gargle:

R: rose honey, plantain and rose waters each equal amounts, with a  
little oil of vitriol.

A linctus:

15 R: liquorice, hyssop syrups each 3oz, oxymel of squills ½oz, rose  
honey 1oz. Mix. Make the linctus. Use it after the gargle. I  
prescribed /84/ a plaster of wormwood wine and pork fat, to apply  
to the throat. Moreover, I prescribed venesection but he refused. I  
feared his imminent death. As venesection had been rejected, he  
20 fell into a continual burning fever as I foretold.

His ordinary drink:

R: liquorice, anise seeds, figs, raisins each 1oz. Boil in 4 pints water  
until 1 pint is gone. This should be his ordinary drink. Day by day  
the fever increased, his strength was destroyed, and he declared  
25 that he could not survive.

---

**1** Case 100] S.O.: Observ. IV [Second Century], pp. 88-89. **15** rose] S.O.: best.  
**23** until 1 pint is gone] S.O. adds: and so I left him.

vivere non posse.

Nuntium pro me sudante equo misit nam *celeritas in desiderio mora*.<sup>188</sup> Me nuntio veniente, inveni eum in mortis periculum,

vocem emittere nequit. Statim venam secabam et phlebotomabam

5 ad unc.10. Vox reddita, et dixit se magnum levamen venae sectione invenire. Eadem die hora somni iulapium nostrum antifebricum dabam. Nox aliis longe quietior.

Potus ordinarius decoctio cornus cervi, et a metu suffocationis et febris liberatus, et recte convaluit nutu Dei, qui sit benedictus et

10 *qui solus mirabilia magna facit*.<sup>189</sup>

[Case 101] Tussis gravissimae cura. 1621.

Generosa Sadler, tussi gravi et spirandi difficultate laborat, cum fastidio cibi, aetatis 60.

15 **R:** oxymellitis scillitici dr.ii, syrupi violarum unc.s, poculi chymici dr.ii. Misce: vomitus vii, sedes 12. Ipsa plurimum levatur.

**R:** pilularum de succino, cochiarum ana sc.i, rhabarbari pulverizati sc.s. Fiant pilulae cum satis quantum oxymellitis squillitici: 17 sedes.

20 Linctus:

**R:** lohoch sani et experti, de pulmone vulpis ana unc.i, syrupi liquiritiae, tussilaginis ana unc.i, oxymellitis scillitici dr.ii. Fiat linctus. *Liquiritiae radice modice tusa utatur*.<sup>190</sup>

Hora somni teneat in ore pilulam unam in hac forma

25 compositam:

---

<sup>188</sup>Echoing Publilius Syrys, *Sentences*: *celeritas in desiderio mora*. | <sup>189</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum*[...] *libri sex*, p. 109; paraphrasing Vulgate, Ps 135,4: qui facit mirabilia magna solus. | <sup>190</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 162: glycyrrhizae radice modice tusa, utatur.



He sent me a messenger on a hard-ridden horse, for *in desire, swiftness is delay*. After the message reached me, I found him in danger of death, unable to say anything. Immediately I cut a vein and bled to 10oz. His voice returned, and he said that he found  
5 great relief in the venesection. The same day I gave our antipyretic julep before sleeping. That night was more peaceful than others.

His ordinary drink was hartshorn decoction, and he was freed from fear of choking and fever. He recovered well, by God's will who should be blessed, and *who alone doeth great wonders*.

10

[Case 101] Cure of very severe cough, 1621.

Mrs Sadler, a gentlewoman, suffers from severe cough, difficulty in breathing and aversion to food; aged 60.

**R:** oxymel of squills 2dr, syrup of violets ½oz, chymical cup 2dr.

15 **Mix:** seven vomits, twelve stools. She is very much relieved.

**R:** pills - amber, cochiae, each 1sc, powdered rhubarb ½sc. Make pills with sufficient oxymel of squills. Seventeen stools.

A linctus:

**R:** lohochs - sanum et expertum, of fox lungs each 1oz, liquorice  
20 and coltsfoot syrups each 1oz, oxymel of squills 2dr. Make the linctus. *Take it with a moderately bruised liquorice root.*

Before sleeping hold a pill in the mouth, made in this way:

---

<sup>1</sup> He...delay] *S.O.*: I was sent for speedily. <sup>11</sup> Case 101] *S.O.*: Observ. V [Second Century], pp. 89-90.

/85/ *R: succi liquiritiae dr.ii.s, farinae amyli dr.i.s, croci, myrrhae ana sc.i.s, opii gr.iii, styracis calamitae dr.iii, syrupi violarum quantum satis. Fiant pilulae, detur sc.i sub ingressum lecti.*<sup>191</sup>

Atque sic Deo auxiliante per unicam septimanam convaluit.

5

[Case 102] Fluxus ventris per tres annos  
durantis cura.

Generosa Broune, ivencula, optimo corporis habitu praedita, tres  
totos annos fluxu ventris aquoso maxime nocturno (nam ad minus  
10 6 vel 7 sedes noctibus singulis habuit) correpta et ad extremum  
periculum ducta, cum ingenti virium defectione torminibus et  
insomnis, cum pertaesa mali.

Meis praeceptis obtemperare dicit, sic:

*R: pilularum de succino dr.s, rhabarbari optimi pulverizati dr.i.*  
15 *Cum syrupo de stoechode fiant pilulae 7, ex quibus 8 sedes.*  
*R: sarsaparillae, corticis ligni sancti ana unc.ii, sassaphras unc.i,*  
*guaiaci lib.s, seminum coriandri praeparatorum unc.iii.*  
*Contundantur et decoquantur in aquae fontanae lib.14, ad*  
*medietatis consumptionem. In fine decoctionis adde cinamomi*  
20 *contusi unc.4. De hac decoctione sumatur haustus iii quoque die,*  
*videlicet in aurora calide et hora 4 pomeridiana, et tunc bibat*  
*frigide, et hora cubitus frigide. Ex faecibus, fiat secunda decoctio.*

*Caput muniatur tegmentis quae vaporentur hoc suffitu.*

*R: nigellae Romanae, styracis calamitae, benzoini ana unc.iii, macis,*  
25 *caryophilli ana dr.i. Fiat pulvis grossus pro suffitum.*  
*R: foliorum salviae, maioranae, stoechados ana M.s, seminum anisi,*

---

<sup>191</sup>Bruele, Praxis medicinae, p. 173.

*/85/ R: liquorice juice 2½dr, wheat flour 1½dr, saffron, myrrh each 1½sc, opium 3gr, dry styrax 3dr, sufficient syrup of violets. Make pills. Give 1sc before going to bed.*

And so she recovered in a week, with God's help.

5

[Case 102] Cure of loose bowels lasting for  
three years.

Mrs Browne, a young gentlewoman, endowed with very fine  
condition of her body: has for three years been in the grip of a  
10 watery flow of the bowels mostly at night (for she had at least six or  
seven stools every single night). She has been led into extreme peril  
with great loss of strength, and with torments and sleeplessness,  
though wearied by her troubles.

She promises to comply with my instructions, as follows:

15 *R: pills - amber ½dr, best powdered rhubarb 1dr. Make 7 pills with  
French lavender syrup, resulting in eight stools.*

*R: sarsaparilla, guaiacum bark each 2oz, sassaphras 1oz, guaiacum  
½ pint, prepared coriander seed 3oz. Crush and boil in spring  
water 14 pints, reduce to half. At the end of the boiling add  
20 crushed cinnamon 4oz. Drink 3 draughts of this decoction each  
day, that is to say at dawn hot, then at 4 o'clock drink cold, and at  
bedtime drink cold. Make a second decoction from the dregs.*

*Cover the head with cloths, which are suffused with this  
fumigant:*

25 *R: Roman coriander, dry styrax, benzoin each 3oz, mace, cloves, each  
1dr. Make a coarse powder for fumigation.*

---

3 pills] S.O.: 24 pills. 6 Case 102] S.O.: Observ. VI [Second Century], pp. 90-91.

*foeniculi, cumini ana unc.ii, /86/ baccarum lauri contusarum unc.s, milii lib.i, salis communis lib.s. Torrefiant omnia in sartagine, reponantur in sacculis, qui calidissime adhibeantur capiti et cervici, dum sponte refrigescant.*<sup>192</sup> Deinde utetur suffumigio praedicto.

5           His a saevissimo ac exitiali morbo liberata. Deo optimo misericordissimo laus soli esto.<sup>193</sup>

[Case 103] 1628. Scorbuti cum anexis

10           symptomatibus cura.

Generosa Maria Talbot, soror Comititis, Catholica Romana, casta et pudica, tumore splenis, ginigivarum erosione, tiliarum maculis lividis, lumbagine, dolore capitis, convulsionibus mandibuli, coarctatione et paralyti linguae, his et multis aliis gravata. De morbi generi ignorant, etiamsi a Doctore Salis in aliis morbis docto et experto. Ego tunc temporis medicinas dabam Comitissae. Illa me iubet sororem visitare, in cubiculo ductus tenebroso. Pulsum inaequalem, parvum, urinam turbidam et crassam inveni.

20           Consideranti mihi de praedictis symptomatibus, rogabat Comitissa opinionem de vita. Dicebam non desperam. Dixi illa scorbuto confirmato diu laborare. Respondit generosa, duabus ab hinc annis in Hollandia in Aula Archiducis curare, sed nunc longe

<sup>192</sup>Fernel, *Consiliorum liber*, p. 37: **R** foliorum salviae, maioranae, stoechados ana M.s, seminum anisi, faeniculi et cumini ana unc.ii, baccarum lauri contusarum unc.s, milii lib.ii, salis communis lib.s. Torrefiant omnia in sartagine, reponantur in sacculis, qui calidissimi adhibeantur capiti et cervici, dum sponte refrigescant. Caput deinde muniatur tegumentis quae vaporentur hoc suffitu. **R** nigellae Romanae, styracis calamitae, beniiioni (quod est pro succo Cyrenaico), carabes, masticis ana unc.s, caryophyllorum ana dr.ii. Fiat pulvis grossus pro suffimento capitis [Hall has combined two recipes into one].  
<sup>193</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 226.

9 1628] in margin

*R: flowers of sage, marjoram, French lavender each ½ handful, seeds of anise, fennel, cumin each 2oz, /86/ bruised bayberries ½oz, millet 1lb, common salt ½lb. Parch everything in a frying pan, store in bags. Apply them very hot to the head and neck until they cool by themselves. After that she is to use the above fume.*

*These freed her from a most savage and deadly illness. To God the highest and most merciful alone be praise.*

[Case 103] 1628. Cure of scurvy with associated symptoms.

Mrs Mary Talbot, a gentlewoman, sister to the Earl, Roman Catholic, modest and well-conducted: weighed down by these and many other symptoms: splenic swelling, erosion of the gums, livid spots on the legs, lower backache, convulsions of the jaw, tightening and paralysis of the tongue. People are ignorant of the nature of the disease, even the doctor in Salisbury, learned and experienced in other illnesses.<sup>19</sup> I was treating the Countess at that time. She asked me to visit her sister, taking me into a darkened room. I found the pulse uneven and small, the urine turbid and thick.

While I was considering the above symptoms, the Countess asked my opinion on her life. I replied that I should not despair. I said that she suffered from long-standing, established scurvy. The Gentlewoman replied that she had been cured in the Archduke's

<sup>19</sup>Dr Nathaniel Wright M.D. practiced in Shrewsbury about this time; Raach, *A Directory of English Country Physicians*, pp. 95, 113.

**6** These...praise] S.O.: With these she was cured. **9** Case 103] S.O.: Observ. VII [Second Century], pp. 91-92. **11** Earl] S.O.: Countess. **12** modest and well-conducted] S.O. fair. **15** of<sup>2</sup>...17 illnesses] S.O. omits. **21** I<sup>3</sup>...100,2 ] S.O. omits. **22** long-standing established]

peius. Dixi et numeravi plura signa, et natura *morbi, cum radices  
altas aegerit* anno sequenti pullulare, neque cura difficilis sed  
longa, missis aliis medicinis.<sup>194</sup> Libenter meum, sequenter  
consilium.

5            *Imprimis hoc statuere oportet /87/ requiri perseverantiam et  
tolerantiam. Exiguo enim tempore nihil fit.*<sup>195</sup> *Idcirco si curari vult,  
opus est pertinaci perseverantia, fideli obedientia et patientia  
singulari, si tardet aut desperet nullum habebit effectum.*<sup>196</sup> His  
concessis, in nomine Dei curam suscepi felicem.

10            Imprimis corpus purgatum pilulis Ruffi et tartari vitriolati.  
Usa in cibo sale cochleariae, in iusculo sale absinthii. Potus omni  
alio interdicto, sequens fuit:

**R:** cochleariae hortensis M.4, nasturtii aquatici, becabungae ana  
M.ii, baccarum iuniperi contusarum M.i, absinthii M.s. Bulliant in  
15            satis quantum cervisiae novae, ad congios iiii, et lege artis fiat  
cervisia. Post 14 dies ad bibendum apta. Mane haustum cepit.  
Utetur exercitio per horam, deinde devoret instar nucis moschati,  
electuarium de floribus cochlearis. Sic spacio vi dierum usa.

                 Mille passus meare potuit, nam domum consanguiniae Winter  
20            ibat. Me ibi praesente, et ingentis mihi reddebat gratias et dixit se  
ambulare tres mille passus. Cibus bene digerit et ex imbecilla  
fortis facta. Laus Uno et Trino.

---

<sup>194</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum* [...] *liber quartus*, p. 100: morbus enim cum altas egerit radices. | <sup>195</sup>Burton, *Anatomy of Melancholy*, 'Part.2, sec.1, Mem.4, Subs.2, fn. 9', p. 264: Imprimis hoc statuere oportet requiri perseverantiam et tolerantiam. Exiguo enim tempore nihil ex etc. [This relates to a reference in the text to da Monte, *Consultationes medicae*]. | <sup>196</sup>Burton, *Anatomy of Melancholy*, 'Part.2, sec.1, Mem.4, Subs.2, fn. 10', p. 264: Si curari vult, opus est pertinaci perseverantia, fideli obedientia, et patientis singulari si tardet aut desperet, nullum habebit effectum. [Relating to a second reference to Monte].

---

10 tartari] ♀.

palace in the Low Countries two years previously, but now it was much worse. I described and enumerated the many signs and the nature of the disease, which sends out shoots from deep roots in the following year. Nor is the treatment difficult but it is prolonged,  
5 requiring other medicines. I willingly gave the following advice.

*First it is essential to establish /87/ that perseverance and fortitude is required, for nothing comes in a short time. Therefore, if she wishes to be cured, steadfast perseverance, faithful obedience, and unusual patience is required. If she delays or despairs, nothing*  
10 *will have an effect.* Once she agreed to this, I undertook the happy cure in the name of God.

Her body was first purged with Ruffus's pills and vitriolated tartar. She used scurvy grass salt in food, wormwood salt in broth. Her drink was the following, all others being forbidden:  
15 **R:** garden scurvy grass 4 handfuls, watercress, brooklime each 2 handfuls, bruised juniper berries 1 handful, wormwood ½ handful. Boil in sufficient new beer, reduce to 4 gallons. Make beer by the usual method. After fourteen days it was ready for drinking. She took a draught in the morning. She is to take exercise for an hour,  
20 then swallow electuary of scurvy grass flowers, as much as a nutmeg. She did this for six days.

She could walk a mile, for she went to the house of her relative, Winter. I was there, and she thanked me greatly, and said she had walked three miles. She digests food well, and from being

---

2 [...] S.O. omits. 6 First... 11 God] S.O. omits. 17 by the usual method] S.O. omits. 22 She... 101,1 Three] S.O.: Afterward she began to walk, and at last was very well.

[Case 104] Scorbuti confirmati

in sene cura.

- 5 Generosus Hanslope, circa aetatis annum 61, de angustia pectoris, difficultate anhelitus, siti, ictertia citrina, tumoribus duris femoris lividis et nigris, retractione poplitis (ut sine baculo ire non potuit) appetitu prostrato et vomitu conquestus. /88/ Inveni pulsum parum, ut vix moveri sentiebam, urinae variae fuerunt, modo
- 10 tenues, die sequenti citrinae absque sedimento.

Ventrem habuit lubricam:

*R: electuarii diacatholiconis, electuarii ventrifului Solenandri ana dr.ii, confectionis Hamech dr.s, pulveris senae, cremoris tartari ana sc.s. Cum saccharo fiat bolus,*

- 15 ex quo sedes vi, sed ita imbecillis ut deliquium animae passus.<sup>197</sup>

Die sequenti:

*R: cornu cervi praeparati, rasurae eboris ana dr.i, pulveris lumbricorum dr.iii, (optimi habentur in scorbuto), conservam berberiarum quantum satis. Fiat electuarius molle. Capiat*

20 *quantitatem avellanae.*

Postea capiat coch.sex sequentis vini:

*R: vini absinthii unc.4, syrupi sceletyrbici Forresti unc.ii.*

Femori tumido et livido, iubebam bis in die pannis calidis duplicatis fomentare:

---

<sup>197</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 159: *R* electuar. diacatholic. unc.s, confect Hamech dr.s, pulv. fol. senae, crem. tartari an. sc.s vel sc.i. Cum saccharo f. bolus.

---

14 tartari] 𐀓.



weak has become strong. Praise [God], the One and Three.

[Case 104] Cure of established scurvy in an elderly man.

- 5 Mr Hanslap, a gentleman about 61 years old: complained of  
constriction of the chest, troublesome shortness of breath, thirst,  
yellow jaundice, hard, livid and black swellings on the thighs,  
contraction of the knees (so that he could not walk without a stick),  
loss of appetite, and vomiting. /88/ I found the pulse small, so  
10 that I hardly felt it move. Urine: variable, first thin, the next day  
yellow without sediment.

He had unsettled bowels:

- R: diacatholicon electuary, Solenander's opening electuary each*  
*2dr,<sup>20</sup> Hamech confection ½dr, senna powder, cream of tartar each*  
15 *½sc. Make a bolus with sugar.* This resulted in six stools, but also  
with weakness so that he suffered from faintness.

The next day:

- R: prepared hartshorn, ivory shavings each 1dr, powder of worms*  
*3dr, (held to be very good in scurvy), sufficient conserve of*  
20 *barberries. Make a soft electuary. Take as much as a hazelnut.*

Afterwards take six spoonfuls of the following wine:

*R: wormwood wine 4oz, Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup 2oz.*

The thighs were swollen and livid, so I ordered them to be  
fomented twice a day with hot folded cloths.

---

<sup>20</sup> Opening: Hall's word, *ventrifuus*, is an adjective here rather than part of the name. The electuary is possibly that in Solenander, *Consiliorum* [... *Solendri*, p. 222. See p. /199/ for a related recipe.

---

**1** Praise God the One and Three] S.O. omits. **3** Case 104] S.O.: Observ. VIII [Second Century], pp. 92-94. **18** ivory] S.O.: hartshorn. **19** held...scurvy] S.O. omits.

**R:** becabungae M.ii in cervisia coctae (vide Eugaleno folio 27<sup>198</sup>).

lis finitis:

**R:** *novem lumbricos praeparatos, in mortario contusos cum ii cochleariis vini, per pannum expressos. His addatur dimidia vini*

5 *mensura. Sumatur cochlearia iii mane et miridie et vesperi.*<sup>199</sup>

*Traiciantur lumbrici terrestres, circulis in collo rubris (vel ut aliis vult, cum singulis rubeis in collo) insigniti, vino prius abluti ter simul et semel una vice.*<sup>200</sup> Medicina composita, cui addebam vini lib.ii usque ut supra.

10 **R:** vini lumbricosi coch.iii. Hora post:

**R:** syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti unc.vi, vini absinthii lib.s. Misce. Dentur unc.ii.

Pro tumore femoris /89/ usus cataplasmate sequenti:

**R:** *pulveris florum chamaemelli, comarum, absinthii ana dr.iii, radices*  
15 *bryoniae, consolidae minoris ana unc.s, farinae triticiae, orobi, fabarum ana dr.s, quae omnia libris duabus medullae panis siliginei commixta, lacte vaccino vel potius caprino, ad cataplasmatism formam lenta coctione deducuntur.*<sup>201</sup>

Potus ordinarius sequens:

20 **R:** cochleariae M.4, becabungae, nasturtii aquatici ana M.ii, absinthii M.s, baccae iuniperi lib.s, calami aromatici dr.iii, radices

---

<sup>198</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 27. | <sup>199</sup>Horst, *Observationum[...] libri quatuor*, p. 350: **R** novem lumbricos in mortario contusos cum 2 cochl. vini, per pannum expressos: his addatur, dimidia vini mensura: summantur cochlearia 3 mane et miridie, et vesperi. | <sup>200</sup>Horst, *Observationum*, p. 354: traiciantur lumbrici terrestres circulis in collo insigniti, vino prius abluti, et triti. | <sup>201</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 737: **R** pul. flor. chamaemeli, comarum absinthii ana dr.iii, rad. bryoniae, consolidae minoris ana unc.s, farinae triticeae, orobi, fabarum an. dr.ii cum dimid. quae omnia libris duabus medullae panis, siliginei commixta, lacte caprino ad cataplasmatism formam lenta coctione deducuntur.

---

**1** folio 27] fol. 136 [this reference is certainly wrong, but the other pages quoted all match the 1604 edition].

**R:** brooklime, 2 handfuls boiled in beer (see Eualenus, page 136).

When these were finished:

**R:** *nine prepared worms, bruised in a mortar with 2 spoonfuls wine, strained through a cloth. Add to this a measure of wine. Take 3*  
5 *spoonfuls in the morning and at midday and in the evening. Mince earthworms marked with red bands near the collar (or if you wish, with a single red band at the collar), first washed together three times with wine, then each one once on its own. When the medicine was made, I added 2 pints wine as above.*

10 **R:** worm wine 3 spoonfuls. An hour later:

**R:** Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup 6oz, wormwood wine ½ pint. Mix. Give 2oz.

For the swollen thighs /89/ he used the following poultice:

**R:** *powders of chamomile flowers, marsh cinquefoil, wormwood each*  
15 *3dr, bryony, self-heal roots each ½oz, flours of wheat, vetch and beans each ½dr, all of which are mixed with two pounds of wheat bread crumbs, cow's milk or better goat's, and reduced by slowly cooking into the form of a poultice*

The following ordinary drink:

20 **R:** scurvy grass 4 handfuls, brooklime, watercress each 2 handfuls, wormwood ½ handful, juniper berries ½lb, sweet flag 3dr,

---

**1** see...136] S.O. omits. **3** nine] S.O.: new. **4** measure] S.O.: quart.  
**5** midday] S.O.: four in the afternoon. | ...7 collar] S.O. omits. **7** washed...  
own] S.O. omits. **14** marsh cinquefoil wormwood] S.O.: the tops of wormwood.  
**15** self-heal] S.O. daisies.

sassaphras unc.ii. Bulliant lege artis in congiis 5 cervisiae novae ad

4. Adde florem cervisiarium ut artis est, et in doliolo reservetur.

Post 14 dies continue bibit.

Pro contractionis poplitis:

- 5 *R: succi e foliis cochleariae expressi unc.i, olei hypericonis, verbasci, sambucini ana unc.s. Coquantur ad succi consumptionem. Expresso admisce pulveris tacamahaccae dri.s, balsami Indi sc.4. Fiat lento igne diligens agitatio, in fine addendo cerae modicum.*<sup>202</sup>

Habuit electuarium cordiale:

- 10 *R: conservae cochleariae unc.ii, absinthii, diaseros Horstei, buglossi, caryophyllatae hortensis, rosarum Damascenarum, radices Helenii conditi ana unc.s, ligni Rhodii, calami aromatici, radices aronis praeparatae, speciei diarrhodonis abbatis, diapleris archonticonis, confectionis alkermes ana dr.s. Cum syrupo sceletyrbico Forresti fiat*  
15 *electuarium.*<sup>203</sup> Dosis quantum fabae.

Tumori duro applicabam sequentem pultem:

- R: absinthii vulgaris pulverizati quantum satis, qui ovibus recentibus eadem die exclusis, cum albumine, vitello /90/ et ovi testis conquassatis et minutissime contusis ad pultis consistentiam*  
20 *permisceantur, frigidaque tumoribus applicetur.*<sup>204</sup> Cuius effectum

<sup>202</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 705: *R* succi e fol cochlear. expressi unc.i, ol. hypericonis, verbasci, sambuccini ana unc.s. Coq. ad succi consumt: Expresso admisce pul. tacamahaccae dr i.s. balsami Indi scr.iiii. Fiat lento igne diligens agitatio, sub finem addendo cerae modicum.

<sup>203</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 686: *R*. conserv. fol. cochlear. vera unc.iii, flor. buglossi, garyophyll. hortens. carniū citri cond. nuc Indicae cond. et incisa an. unc.i. mellig. gran. iuniperi unc.s, extr. ligni Rhodii, sarsaparillae an. sesqui drachmam, calami aromatici,, conf. alchermes an dr.i, cum syrupo scelotyrbico cogantur omnia in electuarii solidi compagem. | <sup>204</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, pp. 136-137: Capit autem absinthii communis quantitatem sufficientem, quae ovis recentibus eodem die exclusis, cum albumine, vitello et ovi testis conquassatis, et minutissime contusis, ad pultis consistentiam permiscetur, frigidaque tumoribus praesenti ut dixi remedio, applicatur.

sassaphras root 2oz. Boil by the usual method in 5 gallons new beer, reduce to 4. Add flowers of yeast as is the practice, and save in a small barrel. Drink without break after the fourteenth day.

For contraction of the knees:

- 5 *R: juice expressed from scurvy grass leaves 1oz, oils of St John's wort, mullein, elder each ½oz. Boil until the juice is used up. With the expression mix tacamahacca powder 1½dr, Indian balsam 4sc. Make on a slow fire stirring carefully, at the end add a little wax.*

He had this cordial electuary:

- 10 *R: scurvy-grass conserve 2oz, wormwood, Horst's diasereos, bugloss, clove-gillyflowers, damask roses, preserved elecampane root each ½oz, rosewood, sweet flag, prepared arum root, diarrhodon Abbatis powder, dipleres archonticon, alkermes confection each ½dr. Make the electuary with Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup. Dose: as much as a*  
15 *bean.*

I applied the following poultice to the hard swelling:

- R: sufficient powdered common wormwood, which should be mixed to the consistency of a poultice with eggs freshly laid the same day, with the white, yolk /90/ and the shells broken and finely*  
20 *powdered. Apply cold to the swelling. Its effect was marvellous and*

---

7 Indian balsam] S.O. balsam of Peru.

mirabile et magna laude canit.

Tumor sublatus, contractionem inungit hoc unguento:

R: unguenti dialtheae, olei chamaemelli, de castoreo, olei  
lumbricorum ana unc s, medullae crurum vitulae, olei lini ana  
5 dr.iii, succi raphani, cochleariae, nasturtii ana unc.s. Cum satis  
quantum cerae et ammoniaci solutione fiat linimentum. Optime  
levatus.

Maii i:

R: unguenti dialtheae unc.s, liliorum alborum, chamaemelli, anethi  
10 ana dr.ii, granorum iuniperi contusorum sc.i. Fiat unguentum.

R: electuarii chalybeati unc.ii, conservarum absinthii, cochleariae  
ana unc.i. Misce. Detur dr.iii stomacho ieiuno.

His rite curatus, equitare ambulare potuit, et dixit se perfecte  
curari.

15

[Case 105] Palpitationis cordis cura.

Domina Puckringe, palpitatione cordis saepe cruciata.

R: diambrae, diamoschu dulcis, aromatici rosarum ana dr.ii,  
20 confectionis alkermes dr.i, diacoralli dr.i, theriacis magnae,  
Mithridatii optimi ana sc.ii, conservae buglossi, cochleariae  
(quoniam habuit scorbutum) ana unc.i. Misce. Fiat electuarium.  
Dosis quantitas avellanae.

Liberata.

25 Generosa Iremonger pedissequa eius curabam /91/  
sequentibus, a palpitatione et tremore cordis.

he sang its praises.

When the swelling had subsided, I anointed the contraction with this ointment:

**R:** marsh mallow ointment, oils of chamomile, castor, worms each  
5 ½oz, veal marrow from the shinbone, linseed oil each 3dr, radish,  
scurvy grass, watercress juices each ½oz. Make a liniment with  
sufficient wax and ammoniac solution. He was very much  
alleviated.

1 May:

10 **R:** ointments of marsh mallows ½oz, white lilies, chamomile, dill  
each 2dr, crushed juniper seeds 1sc. Make the ointment.  
**R:** steeled electuary 2oz, wormwood and scurvy grass conserves  
each 1oz. Mix. Give 3dr on an empty stomach.

He was properly cured, could ride and walk, and declared  
15 himself entirely cured.

[Case 105] Cure of palpitations of the heart.

Lady Puckering: often tortured by palpitations of the heart.

**R:** diambra, sweet diamoschu, aromatic rose [powder] each 2dr,  
20 alkermes confection 1dr, diacorallion 1dr, Venice treacle, best  
Mithridate each 2sc, bugloss and scurvy-grass conserves (because  
she had scurvy) each 1oz. Mix. Make the electuary. Dose: as  
much as a hazelnut.

Freed.

25 I cured Mrs Iremonger, a gentlewoman, her companion, /91/  
of palpitations and tremor of the heart with the following:

---

**17** Case 105] *S.O.*: *Observ.* IX [Second Century], pp. 94-95. **25** Mrs Iremonger  
a gentlewoman her companion] *S.O.*: Mrs Iremonger's waiting maid.

**R:** castoreii dr.i, radices diptami dr.s (quoniam menstrua non rite fluebant) diambrae, diamoschu dulcis, speciei aromaticum rosarum ana dr.ii, theriacis magnae, Mithridatii optimi ana sc.ii, conservae buglossae unc.i. Cum syrupo arthenitia quantum satis fiat opiata.

5            Dimidiam huius tantummodo accipiebat et liberata, etiamsi diu antea gravata, et dixit electuarium auro dignum, et me assignare ut aliis quoque prodessem. Curavit et saepe mihi ingentes reddebat gratias.

10            [Case 106] Scorbuti cura experta.

Domina Broune de Radforde, his symptomaticis scorbuticis oppressa: ventris constipatione, melancholia, vigilia, somnis turbulentis, menstruorum obstructione. Per annum durante, iis obstructis misere ventris torminibus, flatuosis cruciata, tumoribus  
15            ventris instar pugni maxime circa lienem. Crepitu a torminibus liberata. In orificio stomachi palpitationem continuam sentit, et manu adhibita facile discernitur, ut verbis eius uter, as theare weare some live thinge leaped in hir belly.

Haec omnia ex morte filiae charae, /92/ formosa et religiosa  
20            accidebant, quae vitam (anno ab hinc) cum morte mutavit in puerpera et placide cum Domino dormit.

His infrascriptis remediis curata, et ab omnibus symptomatibus liberata:

**R:** foliorum cochleariae recentium, nasturtii aquatici, becabungae,  
25            capillorum veneris, ceterachi ana M.ii, scabiosae, scolopendrii ana



**R:** castor 1dr, Cretan dittany root ½dr (because her periods were not flowing properly), diambra, sweet diamoschu, aromatic rose powder each 2dr, Venice treacle, best Mithridate each 1sc, bugloss conserve 1oz. Make an opiate with sufficient mugwort syrup.

5           She took only half of this and was freed, although she had been weighed down with it for a long time before. She said the electuary was worth gold, and rewarded me so that I might help others as well. It cured her, and she thanked me greatly.

10                   [Case 106] Proven cure of scurvy.

Lady Browne of Radford: overcome by these scorbutic symptoms: constipation of the belly, melancholy, sleeplessness, disturbed dreams, obstructed menstruation. She has been wretchedly tortured by these obstructions lasting a year, with windy abdominal colic and a swelling like a fist, maximally around the spleen. She  
15           was freed from the torments by passing wind. She feels a continuous palpitation at the mouth of the stomach. She feels it easily by applying a hand, in her own words, 'as theare weare some live thinge leaped in hir belly'.

20           All this all arose from the death of her beloved, /92/ beautiful and devout daughter, whose life (a year previously) changed to death in childbirth, and she sleeps peacefully with the Lord.

The remedies below cured and freed her from all symptoms:

**R:** *fresh leaves of scurvy-grass, watercress, brooklime, maidenhair,*

---

7 rewarded me so that I might help others as well] S.O. omits. 10 Case 106] S.O.: Observ. X [Second Century], pp. 95-96. 15 a swelling like] S.O. omits. 18 as theare weare some live thinge leaped in hir belly] English in Libellus. 20 this...22 Lord] All these happened from the death of her daughter, dying in child-bed.

*M.s, florum cordialium ana p.i, radices glycyrrhizae rasae dr.vi, foliorum senae unc.i, rhabarbari, corticis radices capparum, corticis mirabolans Indorum praeparati ana sc.4, tartari cristalli dr.ii, uvarum passarum exemptis arillis dr.x, hordei mundi p.i, squinanthi sc.i.*<sup>205</sup>

- 5 Decoquantur in satis quantum aquarum absinthii, agrimoniae, fumariae, pro lib.i et unc.4, et post ebullitionem manent infusa per noctem. Colaturae adde syrupi sceletyrbici Forrestii unc.ii, diaseros, syrupi rhabarbari unc.i. Misce cum dr.ii aquae cinamomi. Dosis coch.7, ex quibus sedes vi. Postea, *ceratum de ammoniaco Foresti ad regionem lienis, quod ad tumores discutiendos convenientissime latere dolente applicatur.*<sup>206</sup> Probatum.
- 10

- /93/ Etiam si rite purgata, attamen dolore ventris scorbutico adhuc lancinata, cuius causam quaere, folio 91 Senerti,<sup>207</sup> et Eugaleni folio 62.<sup>208</sup> Differentiam a colica dolore invenies foliis 93 et 94 Senerti,<sup>209</sup> et foliis 603, 638, eiusdem libri.<sup>210</sup>
- 15

Post purgationem *urina [...] conturbata atque sedimentorum substantia diversa, permanenteque super his urinarum perturbatione, et pingui earundem superficie de sceletyrbe*

<sup>205</sup>Martini, 'De Scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 667-668: **R** fol. fumariae, cochleariae recentis, bekabungae capillor. Vener. ceterach agrimoniae an. Man.ii scabiosae, scolopendriae an man. dimid flor. cordial. an. pug.i rad glycyrrhiz. rasae dr.vi fol. senae unc.i rhabarb. elect. cort. myrobal. Indor. praepar. an. scr.iiii uvarum passarum exemptis arillis dr.ix hordei mundi pug.i squinanthi scr.i | <sup>206</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 700: ceratum de ammoniaco Foresti, ad renitentes schirrhososque tophos discutiendos, convenientissime lateri doloris admovetur. | <sup>207</sup>Sennert, *de scorbuto tractatus*, p. 95. | <sup>208</sup>Eugalenus, *de scorbuto morbo*, pp. 62-66: 'De ventris dolore quasi colico'. | <sup>209</sup>Sennert, 'doloris ventris scorbutici a colico differentia' *De scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 93-94. | <sup>210</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 603, 638.

spleenwort each 2 handfuls, scabious, hart's-tongue fern each ½ handful, the cordial flowers each 1 pinch, shaved liquorice root 6dr, senna leaves 1oz, polypody of the oak 6dr, rhubarb, bark of caper roots, prepared Indian myrabolans bark each 4sc, tartar crystals 2dr, 5 stoned raisins 10dr, wheat barley 1 pinch, lemongrass 1sc. Boil in sufficient wormwood, agrimony and fumitory waters for 1 pint 4oz, after boiling stand to infuse overnight. To the strained liquid add Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup 2oz, diasereos, rhubarb syrup each 1oz. Mix with 2dr cinnamon water. Dose: 7 spoonfuls, resulting in 10 six stools. Afterwards, *apply Foreest's ammoniac salve to the area of the spleen, because it is very suitable for removing swelling from a painful side.* This has been proved.

/93/ Even though rightly purged, she was attacked by scorbutic abdominal pain. See Sennert page 95 and Eualenus 15 page 62 for the cause of this. You will find the differences from colicky pain on pages 93 and 94 of Sennert, and pages 603 and 638 in the same book.

After purging *the urine was confused, and the varieties of sediment were separated, with continuing disturbance in the urine* 20 *above. These, with the greasy surface, were a warning of scurvy.*

---

14 See... 17 book] S.O. omits. 18 After...separated] Perhaps due to faecal contamination from the purging. 20 with the greasy surface were a warning of] S.O. omits.

*admonitus.*<sup>211</sup> Adde bireae fumariae M.ii, in aliis ut pro Generoso Hanslap.

Item: Haemorrhoides apperientur sanguisugis. Postea utetur electuario ut pro Generoso Hanslap folio /88/.

- 5        Usu horum a scorbuto *liberata fuit, et ad integram sanitatem pervenit*, virtute Divina.<sup>212</sup>

[Case 107] Vertiginis, capitis doloris et  
surditatis cura.

- 10       Generosa Murden, circa aetatis annum 59, de levi  
vertigine, capitis dolore et surditate conquesta. A me ita  
cito curata:  
*R: aloes rosatae dr.i, rhabbarbari pulverizati et aquae cinamomi  
aspersi sc.ii, agarici recenter trochischati sc.i, masticis, myrrhae ana  
sc.s. Cum syrupo betonicae fiant pilulae N.25. Dosis pilulae 5 hora  
ante cenam.*<sup>213</sup> Anno 1626 Aprilis 7.

His usa pilulis felici successu et *has multis laudibus extollere non desiit, mihique, ut anotarem, ea urgente occasionem dedit*, et iterum pro praeservatione habere desiderat.<sup>214</sup>

20

[Case 108] /94/ Fluxus ventris et flatus cura.

Generosus Gorgius Underhill circa aetatis annum 64; fluxu

---

<sup>211</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 213: Tandem ex perseverante praeter rationem urinarum substantia crassa et conturbata, atq. sedimentorum substantia diversa, permanenteq. super his urinarum perturbatione et pingui earundem superficie, de sceletyrbe admonitus. | <sup>212</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 185, liberatus a febre fuit et ad integram sanitatem pervenit. | <sup>213</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum* [...] *liber*, p. 85: *R aloes rosatae dr.i, rhabarb. el. pul. et aq. cinnamomo aspersi sc.ii, agarici recenter trochischati sc.i, mastich, myrrhae a. sc.s. Cum syrupo de absinthio reformatur pilulae, numero xxv. De his pilulis capiat hora una ante coenam.* | <sup>214</sup>Platter, *Observationum* [...] *libri tres*, p. 481: illud multis laudibus extollere non desiit, mihique; ut annotarem, occasionem dedit.

Add 2 handfuls of fumitory to the beer, otherwise as for Mr Hanslap.

ALSO: the haemorrhoids will be removed with leeches. After that she is to use the electuary as for Mr Hanslap, page /88/.

5        *She was freed from scurvy by using these and returned, by divine power, to complete health.*

[Case 107] Cure of giddiness, headache and deafness.

10       Mrs Murden, a gentlewoman about 59 years old: complained of slight giddiness, headache and deafness. I cured her quickly in this way:

*R: aloes rosatae 1dr, powdered rhubarb sprinkled with cinnamon water 2sc, freshly trochisched agaric 1sc, mastic, myrrh each ½sc.*

15       *Make 25 pills with betony syrup. Dose: 5 pills an hour before dinner.*  
27 April 1626.

She used these pills successfully, and *did not cease extolling them with great praise, and by her urging gave me occasion to make a record of that.* She also asked to have them for prevention.

20

[Case 108] /94/ Cure of loose bowels and wind.

Mr George Underhill, a gentleman about 64 years old: weakened by

---

**4** Mr Hanslap] S.O. adds: framed of harts-horn, ivory, worms etc. **8** Case 107] S.O.: Observ. XI, [Second Century], p. 96. **10** 59] S.O.: 53. **18** great... prevention] They were after given for prevention. **21** Case 108] S.O.: Observ. XII, [Second Century], p. 97.

immoderato ventris debilitatus, et flatu misere lancinatus,  
ex esu halicis.

℞: electuarii ventriflui dr.vi, tartari cremoris sc.i, rhabarbari  
pulverizati sc.ii. Cum saccharo fiat bolus: sedes 9 cum levamine.

5 Hora cubitus:

℞: diascordii dr.i, aquae scabiosae unc.iii, syrupi limonum unc.i,  
syrupi papaveris unc.s. Misce. Capiat rasuram cornu cervi bis in  
die quietis.

Pro stomacho:

10 ℞: conservae rosarum rubrarum unc.ii, speciei aromatici rosati  
Gabrielis dr.i, caryophyllorum incisorum dr.s, ambrae griseae gr.iii.  
Misce cum corticibus citri. Sumat mane quantitatem castaniae.

Post pastum tragea sequenti:

15 ℞: coriandri praeparati, seminum foeniculi, anisi, carvi ana sc.ii,  
cornu cervi praeparati, coralli rubri praeparati, cinamomi, nucis  
moschati ana sc.i, speciei aromatici rosati, laetificantis Galeni ana  
sc.s, sacchari rosati tabellatas ad pondum omnium. Gestet scutum  
nostrum stomachale.

Sic rite curatus.

20

[Case 109] Seminis fluxus, nocturnae  
pollutionis cura.

Generosus praedictus anno sequenti, pro fluvio seminis  
nocturno debilitatus, sed *mox ad sanitatem reddiit*, sequenti

---

3 tartari] ♀.

unrestrained loose bowels and wretchedly attacked by wind due to eating gruel.

**R:** ventrifluus electuary 6dr, cream of tartar 1sc, powdered rhubarb 2sc. Make a bolus with sugar: nine stools with relief.

5           At bedtime:

**R:** diascordium 1dr, scabious water 3oz, lemon syrup 1oz, poppy syrup ½oz. Mix. Take hartshorn shavings twice daily on the quiet days.

For the stomach:

10       **R:** red rose conserve 2oz, Gabrieli's aromatic rose powder 1dr, sliced cloves ½dr, ambergris 3gr. Mix with citron peel. Take as much as a chestnut in the morning.

After food, the following sweetmeat:

**R:** prepared coriander, seeds of fennel, anise, caraway each 2sc,  
15       prepared hartshorn, prepared red coral, cinnamon, nutmeg each 1sc, powders, aromatic rose, Galen's laetificans each ½sc, rose sugar tablets to the weight of everything. He should wear our stomach shield.

He was thus properly cured.

20

[Case 109]<sup>21</sup> Cure of seminal discharge,  
nocturnal emission.

The above Gentleman had been weakened by nocturnal seminal emissions the previous year, but soon returned to health when I

---

<sup>21</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

---

2 gruel] S.O.: herrings, [presumably reading *harengis* for *halicis*]. 7 on the quiet days] S.O. omits. 21 Case 109] S.O.: Observ. XIII [Second Century], p. 97-98. 23 The above Gentleman] S.O.: Mr P. See Appendix B, New Patient Identifications.

curatione per me adhibita;<sup>215</sup>

**R:** pulpae cassiae dr.vi, pulpae tamarindorum dr.ii, coralli rubri, mastich ana sc.i.s. Fiat bolus cum saccharo. Rite purgatus.

Postea:

- 5 **R:** *gummi Arabici, tragacanthi, carabe, mumiae, boli Armeni, mandibuli lucii ana sc.ii. Pulverizantur et cum syrupi de rosis siccis vel myrthino fiant pilulae pondere sc.i. Capiat prima vice /95/ pilulas tres, deinde pilulam unam perplures dies mane, et usus lacte chalybeato.*<sup>216</sup> Dorso bracteam plumbi tenuissimam sed latam, gestet supra renum regionem.
- 10

His cito, tuto curatus.

[Case 110] Fluxus alborum, gonorrhoea.

- Generosa Kenton Northampton, aetatis 48, alborum fluxu debilitata et discolorata.
- 15 **R:** *terebinthinae Venetiae limpidae unc.s. Dissolvatur cum vitello ovi ut artis est. Addendo mellis purissimi unc.i, sacchari rosati tabellati unc.ii, vini generosi unc.vii. Misceantur. Bibat de lacteo illo liquore ad unc.i omni die, cuius operationem ad vesicam usque et ultra*
- 20 *pertingere ex urinae violaceo odoreprehenditur.*<sup>217</sup>

<sup>215</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VIII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 566: Deo [...] adiuvante mox ad sanitatem rediit optime [see also p. /179/]. | <sup>216</sup>Rodrigo de Castro, *De universa mulierum medicina*, p. 66: pilulae insuper probatissimae in hunc modum parantur, gummi arabici, tragacanti, Karabes, mumiae, boli armeni, mandibuli lucii piscis an dr.s. In pulverem subtilem redigantur, et cum syrupo myrthino vel de rosis siccis fiant pilulae singulae ponderantes scr.i. Capiet prima vice tres, deinde singulis diebus unam. | <sup>217</sup>Platter, *Observationum[...] libri tres*, p. 770: **R** resinae illius limpidae unc.s dissolvatur in vitello ovi, ut artis est, addendo mellis puri unc.i sacchari ros. tab unc.ii. Vini generosi unc.vii misceatur. Bibat de lacteo illo liquore ad unc.i alternis diebus, cuius operationem ad vesicam usque et ultra pertingere, ex urinae violaceo odore deprehendi potest.

<sup>2</sup> pulpae<sup>2</sup>] pul. [This abbreviation is usually for *pulvis*, but pulpae is written in full in the previous line, and is commonly used with tamarinds].



applied the following cure:

**R:** cassia pulp 6dr, tamarind pulp 2dr, red coral, mastic each 1½sc.

Make a bolus with sugar: rightly purged.

Afterwards:

- 5 **R:** *gum Arabic, tragacanth, carabe, mummy, bole Armeniac, pike's jaw each 2sc. Powder and make pills weighing 1sc with syrup of dried roses or myrtle. Take for the first dose /95/ three pills, then one pill in the morning for several days and use steeled milk. He is to wear very thin broad lead sheets on his back, over the renal area.*
- 10 These cured him quickly and completely.

[Case 110] Flux of the whites, gonorrhoea.

Mrs Kenton, a gentlewoman of Northampton aged 48: weakened and discoloured by a flux of the whites.

- 15 **R:** *clear Venice treacle ½oz. Dissolve in egg yolk by the rule of practice. Add the most refined honey 1oz, rose sugar tablets 2oz, good wine 7oz. Mix. Drink up to 1oz of the milky liquid every day. The effect of this is detected reaching up to and beyond the bladder by the smell of violets in the urine.*

---

**9** wear very thin broad lead sheets] S.O.: plates of lead. **12** Case 110] S.O.:  
Observ. XIV [Second Century], pp. 98-99. **18** effect...urine] S.O. omits.

Sit potus ordinarius tempore sumendi potionem praedictum  
sequentem:

**R:** aquam hordei cum malva et liquiritia.

Utetur bolo sequenti:

- 5 *Faictes un bol de demie dracme d' encens blanc, autant de bol  
Armene et de terre sigillee. Le tout pulverizé subtilement et incorporé  
avec deus blancs d'oeufs frais. C'est chose admirable et secret si en  
usez plusieurs jours six heures avant manger.*<sup>218</sup>

Sit potus talis:

- 10 ***R:** rasurae ligni guaiaci lib.i, corticis euisdem contusi unc.4.  
Macerentur octiduo in lib.8 aquae fontanae cum dr.ii olei sulphuris, in  
fimo aequino in vase vitreo capaci, cera et sulphure prius bene  
obturato. Cola, in colatura novum lignum reassunde ut in eodem  
vase, et fimo macera triduo, et cola ut prius, colatura ad libitum /96/  
15 per cohobationem purificatur, itemedulcoretur et aromatizatur, prout  
postulat necessitas et aegri natura. De simplici colatura, neque  
purificata, neque edulcorata, et aromatizata, dantur unc.2 vel 3 vel 4  
pro viribus aegrae. Huius decocti tanta vis est et energia, ut unc.ii  
alterius decocti lib.i aequent. Picrocholis et lienosis icteritiae  
20 confirmata tuto est, hydrope et Gallico morbo confectis medetur,  
apoplecticis, et aliis gravissimis capitis morbis succurrit. [...] Ex  
magmae, secundum decoctum potest praeparari, addita aquae*

---

<sup>218</sup>Liébaut, *Thresor des Remedes Secrets*, p. 392: faictes un bol de demie dracme d'encens blanc, autant de bol armene et de terre sigillee: le tout pulverizé subtilement et incorporé avec deux blancs d'oeufs frais: c'est chose admirable et secrette, si en usez plusieurs jours six heures avant manger.

---

**5** encens blanc autant] \olibanum, also et quo/. **7** avec deus blancs doeufs frais] \cum ovi alb. N.ii new laid/. | chose admirable] \[xxx] an admirable/. si en usez plusieurs jours] \if you use it for [illegible] days/. **8** six heures avant manger] \six howers before meat/.

Her ordinary drink while taking the above potion should be the following:

**R:** barley water with mallows and liquorice.

Take the following bolus:

- 5     *Make a bolus with olibanum ½dr, also bole Armeniac and sealed earth. Powder everything finely and mix with the white of two fresh eggs. This is something admirable and secret if used for a few days, six hours before eating.*

Her drink should be of this sort:

- 10    ***R:** shavings of guaiacum wood 1lb, bruised bark of the same 4oz. Soak for eight days in 8 pints spring water with 2dr oil of sulphur. Clarify with horse droppings in a capacious glass vessel, well stopped earlier with wax and sulphur. Strain. Put new wood in the strained liquid as in the vessel, soak with the droppings for three*
- 15    *days. Purify the strained liquid as you wish /96/ by double distillation, also sweeten and flavour as necessity and the nature of the illness demand. Give the simple strained liquid, neither purified nor sweetened nor flavoured, 2 or 3 or 4oz depending on the strength*
- 20    *of the patient. This decoction has so much strength and efficacy in 2oz that it is equal to 1 pint of any other. It is entirely proved in yellow choler and splenic jaundice, cures dropsy and the French disease quickly, and helps with apoplexy and other very severe illnesses in the head. From the dregs a second decoction can be*

---

**1** Her ordinary drink] S.O. she drank her ordinary drink warm. **5** Make...8 eating] In French in the MS. **7** admirable and secret] S.O. This is an admirable secret. [In the absence of any indication that these were not Hall's words (S.O. omits the attribution to Liébaut) this has caused some confusion. Dr Bird, in his introduction to Cooke, said that the manuscript 'was intended by the author not to be published till his decease, when men more willingly part with what they have' (*Select Observations*, 1st ed., f.b4.v). Lane, *John Hall*, p. 199, in turn wrote that 'Hall reported on the use of two medicines which he may have numbered among those he would not have wished to be made public during his lifetime.'

quantitate sufficienti. Eius usus erit in mensa, loco potus.<sup>219</sup>

Dorso: emplastri contra rupturam et pro matrice ana unc.i,  
unguenti Comitissae unc.ii, pulveris masticis, sanguinis draconis, et  
coralli albi ana dr.ii, rosarum rubrarum p.i, radices bistortae, musci  
5 quercini ana dr.ii, terrae sigillatae dr.i.s. Malexentur omnia simul  
cum oleo myrtilli, fiat emplastrum, cuius portio extensa supra alutam  
admoveatur lumbis et ossi sacro, altera imo ventri et gestetur inter  
duas purgationes menstruas qua adventante auferatur.<sup>220</sup>

His rite curata.

10

[Case 111] Scorbuti lipothymiae cura.

Generosa Delaberre de Southam iuxta Glosterem diu aegrotabat  
cum fastidio cibi, nunc hunc cibum summis /97/ in deliciis habet,  
15 mox respuit, urinae saepe mutatio, et quando in lecto bene se  
habet, cum surgit lipothymiam patitur.

<sup>219</sup>Potier, *Pharmacopoea spagirica*, pp. 22-23: Decoctum ligni gaiac. Rec. rasurae ligni gaiaci lib.i, corticis eiusdem contus. onc.iiii. Macerentur octiduo in lib.8 aquae fontis, cum dra.i ol. sulphuris, in fimo aequino et vase vitreo cappaci, sure, et sulphure prius bene obturato. Coletur et in colatura novum lignum reassunde ut supra in eodem vase, et fimo macera triduo, et cola ut prius, colatura ad libitum percohabationem purificatur, item edulcoretur, et aromatizatur, prout postulat necessitas et aegri natura. De simplici colatura, neque purificata, neque edulcorata, et aromatizata, dantur onc.ii,iii et iiii pro viribus aegri. Huius decocti tanta est vis et energia, ut onc.ii alterius decocti lib.i aequent. Picrocolis et lienosis isthaec decocti formula tuta est. Hydrope et gallico morbo confectis medetur, apoplecticis, et aliis gravissimis capitis morbis succurrit. [...] Ex magmate, secundum decoctum potest parari, addita aquae quantitate sufficienti, eius usus erit in mensa, loco vini, aut pro nova infusione paranda. | <sup>220</sup>Liébaut, *Thresor des remedes secrets*, p. 398: R unguent. comitiss. unc.ii emplastr. contra rup. et pro matrice an. unc.i pul. mastich sang. drac. et coral. albi an. dr.ii ros. rub. p. i rad. bistortae, musci quercus an. dr.ii terrae sigillatae dr.i.s. Malaxentur omnia simul cum ol. myrtill. fiat emplastrum, cuius portio extensa super alutam admoveatur lumbis et ossi sacro, altera imo ventri, et gestetur inter duas purgationes menstruas, qua adventante auferatur. [Compare fn. /52/].

12 Scorbuti lipothymiae] scorbuti ~~animae~~ lipoth. 13 diu] dive.

*prepared by adding sufficient quantity of water. It was used at table in place of drink.*

*For the back: the plaster against ruptures, that for the womb each 1oz, comitissa ointment 2oz, mastic powder, dragon's blood and  
5 white coral each 2dr, red roses 1 pinch, snakeweed root, oak moss each 2dr, sealed earth ½dr. Soften everything together with myrtle oil. Make a plaster. Spread one part on a piece of leather to the lower back and sacrum, the rest though on the lower belly. Wear it from one menstrual period to another, then remove it.*

10        She was properly cured.

[Case 111] Cure of scorbutic collapse.

Mrs Delabere, a gentlewoman of Southam near Gloucester: ill for a long time, with aversion to food. **/97/** Sometimes she takes the  
15 greatest delight in food, at other times spits it out. The urine changes frequently and while she is well when in bed, she suffers a

---

**12** Case 111] S.O.: Observ. XV [Second Century], pp. 99-100.

Sequentibus curata:

**R:** pilulae hierae cum agarico, Ruffi ana sc.ii, de succino,  
aggregativo, tartari cremoris ana sc.i.s, oxymellitis scillitici quantum  
satis. Fiant pilulae 15, deaurentur. Capiat ii sero, mane iii, omni  
5 3<sup>a</sup> die. Rite purgata.

Lieni: ceratum de ammoniaco Foresti unc.i, emplastrum de  
meliloto unc.s. Fiat emplastrum pro liene, et syndone rubra  
subducatur.

Die quietis:

10 **R:** conservarum rosarum Damascenarum unc.i, conservae  
cochleariae dr.iii, conservae buglossi dr.ii, speciei pleres  
archonticonis dr.s, tartari cremoris, pulveris chalybis praeparati  
ana sc.ii, radices aronis praeparatae sc.i, confectionis alkermes dr.i.  
Cum syrupi zingiberis quantum satis, fiat electuarium molle. Dosis  
15 sero quantitas fabae, mane nucis moschati ante surgit, sic per ii  
dies. Tertia die purganda pilulis praeparatis.

Longe melius se habuit, ita ut ambulare et equitare potuit.  
Tunc Bathoniam se confert, ibi utetur sequenti decoctione cum e  
balneo exivit et in lecto sudet:

20 **R:** scobis ligni guaiaci unc.iii, corticis eius unc.ii, sassaphras unc.i,  
chynae in tenuis orbiculis sectae unc.s, rasurae eboris dr.iii,  
liquiritiae unc.i, agrimoniae, cardui benedicti, cochleariae, nasturtii  
aquatici, becabungae ana M.s, summitatum fumariae, florum  
buglossi, stoechados, anthos ana p.i, nucis moschati, cinamomi ana  
25 dr.ii. Macerentur ad ignem per 12 horas in lib.12 aquae fontanae.  
**/98/** Mane coquantur ad dimidias, dein percolentur. Colatura

---

3 tartari] ȝ. 20 scobis...112,1 mane] This is the recipe prescribed in Bath, not by Hall, so is an example of the use of a Latin source by another physician.

collapse when she gets up.

She was cured with the following:

5     **R:** pills of hiera with agaric, Ruffus's each 2sc, amber, aggregative, cream of tartar each 1½sc, sufficient oxymel of squills. Make 15 pills, gild them. Take 2 in the evening, 3 in the morning, every third day. She was rightly purged.

For the spleen: Foreest's ammoniac salve 1oz, melilot plaster ½oz. Make a plaster for the spleen, and cover it with fine red cloth.

On the quiet days:

10     **R:** conserve of damask roses 1oz, bugloss conserve 2dr, pleres archonticon powder ½dr, cream of tartar, prepared steel powder each 2sc, prepared arum root 1sc, alkermes confection 1dr. Make a soft electuary with sufficient ginger syrup. Dose: the amount of a bean in the evening, of a nutmeg in the morning before rising.  
15     Continue so for two days. On the third day she should be purged with the prepared pills.

She was much better, so that she could walk and ride on horseback. Then she went to Bath. There she used the following decoction when she left the bath, and sweated in bed:

20     **R:** *guaiacum wood chips 3oz, the same bark 2oz, sassaphras 1oz, china cut into thin disks ½oz, ivory shavings 3dr, liquorice 1oz, agrimony, blessed thistle, scurvy grass, watercress, brooklime each ½ handful, tops of fumitory, flowers of bugloss, French lavender, rosemary each 1 pinch, nutmeg, cinnamon each 2dr. Soak by the fire*  
25     *for twelve hours in 12 pints spring water. /98/* In the morning boil,

---

8 cover it with fine red cloth] S.O.: Spread it upon leather, and a red sarcenet upon it. 9 quiet days] S.O.: Those days she purged not.

*dulcoratur saccharo. Dosis unc.4, hoc decocto utendum mane.*<sup>221</sup>

Omni 4<sup>a</sup> die purgata his pilulis:

**R:** pilulae hierae cum agarico, Ruffi ana sc.ii, ex quibus rite purgata.

Nullis aliis pharmacis usa, et sana domum reversa.

5            Laus Deo, liberata ab omnibus doloribus et symptomatibus,  
quorum *in hunc diem, Deo gloria, nullum deprehendit vestigium.*<sup>222</sup>

10            [Case 112] Dysenteriae per iii menses

durante [cura].

Iacobus Ballarde aetatis 60, fluxu sanguineo et spumoso, aliquando  
chyloso, per iii menses, et tenasmo lancinatus.

**R:** hordei cum cortice p.i, seminum lini, foenugraeci conquassatorum

15            ana unc.i, florum chammaemillae, meliloti ana p.i, furfuris macri p.ii.

*Fiat omnium decoctio ad lib.i. In colatura dissolve vitellorum ovorum*

*N.ii, mellis rosati unc.iii, sacchari rubri unc.iii. Misce, fiat glister.*<sup>223</sup>

**R:** philonii Persici sc.ii, aquae plantaginis unc.iii, syrupi cydoniorum

*unc.i. {Fiat potio quam sub noctis initium quum se in somnum daturus*

20            *aeger esset dari iussi.*<sup>224</sup>} Nox quieta. *Mirifice iuvari se a potione*

*dicebat. Sedatur namque dolor et fluxio subsistebatur somnusque*

*suavis obrepebat.*<sup>225</sup>

<sup>221</sup>Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, p. 53: a combination of two recipes on that page, with the addition of antiscorbutic herbs. | <sup>222</sup>Ruland, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 460: in hunc usque diem Deo gloria, nullum deprehendimus vestigium. | <sup>223</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 137. | <sup>224</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 437: Paretur potio, quam sub noctis initium, quum se in somnem daturus aeger esset, dari iussi.

<sup>225</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 138: **R** philonii Persici dr.i sumat ex aqua plantaginis cum syrupo cydoniorum uncia. Mirifice iuvari se a potione dicebat: sedabatur namque dolor, et fluxio sistebatur, somnusque suavis obrepebat.



reduce to half, then strain. *Sweeten the strained liquid with sugar.*

*Dose: 4oz. This decoction should be used in the morning.*

She was purged with these pills every fourth day:

**R:** pills - of hiera with agaric, Ruffus's each 2sc, from which she was  
5 rightly purged. She used no other medicines, and returned home  
well.

She was freed, praise God, from all pains and symptoms, of  
which *to this day, glory be to God, there remain not a trace.*

10 [Case 112] [Cure of] dysentery of three  
months' duration.

James Ballard aged 60: attacked by a bloody and frothy flux,  
sometimes chylous, for three months, and tenesmus.

**R:** *barley with husks 1 pinch, broken linseed, fenugreek seeds each*  
15 *1oz, chamomile, melilot flowers each 1 pinch, rye bran 2 pinches.*  
*Make a decoction of everything to 1½ pints. In the strained liquid*  
*dissolve 2 egg yolks, rose honey 3oz, brown sugar 3oz. Mix. Make*  
*an enema.*

**R:** *philonium Persicum 2sc, plantain water 3oz, quince syrup 1oz.*

20 *Make a potion, which I ordered to be given at nightfall when the*  
*patients was going to sleep. The night was peaceful. He said he*  
*was helped amazingly by the potion. He was settled, for the pain*  
*and flux ceased, and sweet sleep crept up.*

---

7 She...trace] S.O. omits. 10 Case 112] S.O.: Observ. XVI [Second Century],  
pp. 101-102.

Postea clystere astringenti utetur. *Fluxionem ventris sistit et  
ulcus glutinat:*

*R: /99/ summitatum rubi, plantaginis, portulacae, coriandrorum  
praepparatorum, cymini parum torrefactorum et conquassatorum ana  
5 unc.i, amyli torrefacti unc.s, gallarum, nucum cupressi grosso modo  
contritorum ana paria ii, furfuris p.ii. Fiat omnium decoctio in aquae  
chalybeatae ad lib.i. In colatura adde axungiae renum hirci  
liquefactae unc.i, boli Armeni praeparati dr.ii, succi plantaginis unc.4,  
mucaginis tragacanthae unc.i, mellis rosati unc.ii. Misce, paratur  
10 glister.<sup>226</sup>*

Ventri hoc admovi emplastrum:

*R: massae emplastri contra rupturam unc.iii, emplastri  
diaphaeniconis unc.ii, masticis, olibani, coriandri praeparati, boli  
Armeni praeparati, sanguinis draconis ana sc.4, lapidis haematitis  
15 dr.ii, succi plantaginis unc.4, vini rubri crassi unc.iii, olei myrtilli, olei  
cydoniorum ana unc.ii. Misce cum cera et terebinthina. Manibus  
inunctis vino rubro crasso, fiat magdaleon, ex quo super alutam  
extenso emplastrum fiat, et ventri admoveatur.<sup>227</sup>*

In tenasmum:

*R: myrrhae electae, croci, styracis calamitae ana dr.i, opii sc.i, bdellii,  
20 aloes ana gr.18, cerae citrinae liquefactae quantum satis. Fiant*

<sup>226</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum*,[...] *libri sex* p. 138: **R** summitatum rubi, plantaginis, cupressi, olivae, lentisci et centinodiae, ana M.i. seminum sumac, plantaginis et portulacae, coriandrorum praepparatorum, cymini parum torrefactorum et conquassatorum ana unc.i, amyli torrefacti unc.s, gallarum, nucum cupressi, grosso modo contritorum ana paria ii, furfuris p. ii. Fiat omnium decoctio in aquae chalybeatae ad lib.i. In colatura adde axungiae renum hirci liquefactae unc.i, boli Armenici praeparati dr.ii, succi plantaginis unc.iiii, mucaginis tragacanthae unc.i, mellis rosati unc.ii. Misce: paretur clyster. | <sup>227</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum*[...] *libri sex*, p. 138.

Then he is to use an astringent enema. *It stops the belly's flux and closes an ulcer:*

*R: /99/ tops of briars, plantains, purslane, prepared coriander, cumin dried a little and broken each 1oz, dried starch ½oz, galls, 5 coarsely crushed cypress nuts two, both of adequate size, rye 2 pinches. Make a decoction with everything in steeled water to 1 pint. To the strained liquid add liquefied fat of goat's kidneys 1oz, prepared bole Armeniac 2dr, plantain juice 4oz, tragacanth mucilage 1oz, rose honey 2oz. Mix. Prepare the enema.*

10 I applied a plaster on the belly:

*R: a mass of plaster against ruptures 3oz, diaphoenicon 2oz, mastic, olibanum, prepared coriander, prepared bole Armeniac, dragon's blood each 4sc, haematite stone 2dr, plantain juice 4oz, rough red wine 3oz, myrtle oil, quince oil each 2oz. Mix with wax and 15 turpentine. Make a roll with hands wetted with rough red wine, from which make a plaster spread on thin leather, and apply to the belly.*

For the tenesmus:

*R: choice myrrh, saffron, dried styrax each 1dr, opium 1sc, bdellium, aloes each 18gr, sufficient liquefied yellow wax. Make suppositories.*

---

5 two both of adequate size] each iv.

*suppositoria, in anum indito uno.*<sup>228</sup> Ex illis die habuit unum.

Reiteratus philonii potus ut supra, et electuarium  
astringentem:

*R: pulveris boli Armeni praeparatae sc.4, margaritarum selectarum,*  
5 *coralli rubri loti sc.ii, pulveris rosatae novellae, [...] pulveris*  
*diarrhodonis Abbatis ana dr.s, conservae symphyti maioris, corticis*  
*citri conditi ana dr.i. /100/ Excipiantur ex saccharo in aqua rosarum*  
*dissoluto. Fiat electuarium in tessellis ponderis dr.ii. Unam in aurora,*  
*alteram ante cenam devorare iubebam. Interdum olibani lucidi grana*  
10 *aliquot ante cibum sumere iubebam.*<sup>229</sup>

*Cibum imperabam tenuem, modicum et siccantem, et his, nutu*  
Dei, praeter expectationem amicorum consanescebat.<sup>230</sup>

Nota Bene:

*Si est digestio bona et non est seperatio, tunc adest dysenteria.*  
15 *Si est seperatio et nulla est digestio tunc est lyenteria.*  
*Si neque seperatio neque digestio tunc adest diarrhoea.*  
*Si adest putrefactio materiae stomachi tunc est fluxus ventris cum*  
*variis coloribus.*<sup>231</sup>

20

[Case 113] Epilepsiae scorbuticae cura.

---

<sup>228</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 139: **R** myrrhae electae, croci, styracis calamitae ana dr.i, opii  $\mathfrak{z}$ .ii, bdellii, aloes ana dr.s, cerae citrinae liquefactae quantum sat est. Fiant balani (suppositoria, seplasiarii vocant) in anum indito uno. | <sup>229</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 139: **R** pulveris boli Armenici praeparati scr.iiii margaritarum selectarum, coralli rubei loti, ana scr.ii pulveris rosatae novellae (fluxionibus nam que alvi plurimum valet) pulveris diarrhodon Abbatis, ana dr.s. conservae symphyti maioris, corticis citri conditi, ana dr.i. Excipiantur ex saccharo in aqua rosarum dissoluto: fiat electuarium in tessellis ponderis dr.ii. Unam in aurora, alteram ante coenam devorare iubebam Interdum olibani lucidi grana aliquot ante cibum sumere imperabam. | <sup>230</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 166. | <sup>231</sup>Croll, *Basilica chymica*, p. 251.

*Place one in the anus. He had one of these a day.*

The philonium drink was repeated as above, and the astringent electuary:

*R: prepared bole Armeniac powder 4sc, selected pearls, red coral washed 2sc, new rose powder, diarrhodon Abbatis powder each ½dr, comfrey conserve, preserved citron peel each 1dr. /100/ Expand with sugar dissolved in rose water. Make the electuary in small cubes weighing 2dr. I prescribed one to be eaten at dawn, the other before supper. I prescribed some grains of clear olibanum to be taken now and then, before food.*

*I prescribed thin food, restrained and drying and with these, by the will of God, he recovered beyond his friends' expectations.*

NOTE:

*If there is good digestion but not separation, then dysentery is present.*

*If there is separation and not digestion, then it is a lyentery.*

*If neither separation nor digestion, then diarrhoea is present.*

*If putrefaction of the stomach contents is present, then there is a flux of the belly with various colours.*

[Case 113] Cure of scorbutic epilepsy.

---

<sup>1</sup> He had one of these a day] S.O. omits. <sup>21</sup> Case 113] S.O.: Observ. XVII [Second Century], pp. 102-103.

Generosa Laiton, ex nobile stirpe nata, epilepsia scorbutica diu laboravit. Primum quod semper cum febre hi motus convulsivi incidunt, cetera signa quaere Eugalenum folio 86,<sup>232</sup> et Senertum folio 620.<sup>233</sup> Paroxysmo ingruente, misere frigore et horrore

5 membrorumque concussione divexata per dimidiam horam, ita ut totum lectum quassavit. Durat paroxysmus spacio 10 horas, ipsa nesciente et dolorem non sentiente. Postea alio paroxysmo laboravit per vi horas. Eodem die, praeter spem astantium ad se reddiit, **/101/** a paroxysmo liberata.

10 Eam rogabat mater quomodo se habuit. Recte inquit: cur vos omnes me visitare venistis, unde huc, non aegroto nec ullum dolorem sentio. Vix expergefata amicorum confabulatione sed iterum dormit, quasi sopori vigilantia. Tandem ad se reddit spacio 24 horarum, sed sensus non dum perfecti. Me presente, rogabam an  
15 dolores membrorum sentiebat. Respondit dolore et fatigatione membrorum lancinata, ut vix per se ire potuit, et satis mire nequit quomodo eveniet.

Sic Senertus folio 109: *accidit, inquit, interdum et tristis membrorum omnium iactatio et concussio cum levi resolutione*  
20 *coniuncta*.<sup>234</sup> Icteritia quoque per totum corpus defoedata, cum menstrui diminutione.

Curam talem nomine Dei praescripsi:

**R:** electuarii ventrifului dr.vi, tartari cremoris sc.i, rhabarbari pulverizati sc.ii. Fiat bolus; sex sedes.

25 Ad icteritiam:

---

<sup>232</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, pp. 86-88. | <sup>233</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *de scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 620-621. | <sup>234</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 109.

---

**4** folio 620] 602. **23** tartari] ȳ.

Mrs Layton, a gentlewoman born of a noble line: suffered for a long time from scorbutic epilepsy. In the first place, convulsive movements with fever always indicate it. For other signs see Eugalenus page 86 and Sennert page 620. The attack starts by  
5 wretchedly troubling her with a chill, shivering and shaking of the limbs for half an hour so that she shook the whole bed. It then persists for ten hours, during which she is unaware and insensible to pain. She suffered from the subsequent attack for six hours. The same day she came to herself beyond the hope of the  
10 bystanders /101/ after having been freed from the attack.

Her mother asked her how she was. She replied straight away: 'Where have you all come from to visit me? I do not feel illness or any pain.' She was barely kept awake by the conversation among her friends, but fell asleep again, as if in a waking sleep. Eventually  
15 she came to herself for twenty four hours, but her senses were not yet fully restored. Being there, I asked if she felt pain in her limbs. She replied that she was so attacked by pain and weariness in her limbs that she could hardly move, and was so bewildered she could not say how she was going to be.

20 Thus Sennert, page 109: *it sometimes happens*, he says, *that the unhappy shaking and disturbance of all the limbs is associated with some recovery*. She was also disfigured by jaundice throughout the body, with diminution of her periods.

I prescribed a cure in this way, in the name of God:  
25 **R:** loosening electuary 6dr, cream of tartar 1sc, powdered rhubarb

---

**11** Her ... 14 friends] S.O. omits. **13** She... 19 was] S.O.: After she fell asleep, another fit she had, wherein she said she had a cutting pain. **20** Thus... 22 recovery] S.O. omits. **25** loosening] ventrifluus is an adjective, not part of the proper name of the electuary.

**R:** Mithridati optimi dr.i, cornu cervi praeparati sc.ii, pulveris  
lumbricorum dr.ii, conservae berberorum unc.i, pro ii matutinis.  
Melius habuit, ab icteritia liberata.

Postea sic purgata:

- 5 **R:** *pilularum foetidarum, alephanginarum, cochiarum ana sc.i, [...]*  
agarici trochischati sc.s, castorei gr.vi. *Cum syrupo de stoechados*  
*quantum satis fiant pilulae 7.*<sup>235</sup> Dentur iii hora cubitus, mane 4  
cum custodia.

Postea sternutatorio hoc usa:

- 10 **R:** *nucis moschati, radicum paeoniae ana dr.s, ellebori nigri sc.i,*  
*pyrethri, piperis albi ana sc.s. Misce. Fiat pulvis sternutatorius,*  
*cuius portio calamo suffletur in nares.*<sup>236</sup>

*/102/ Dum suspectum accessionis tempus exactum sit mane*  
*quotidie offerentur drachmae duae huius opiatae:*

- 15 **R:** *conservae cochleariae unc.ii, {semper enim medicamenta*  
*antiscorbutica aliis admiscenda, ut malitiam morbi infringeres*<sup>237</sup>  
*dianthos, conservae betonicae ana unc.i, Mithridatii veteris, theriacae*  
*verae ana dr.i, visci quercini, rasurae cornu cervi, seminum paeoniae,*  
*cranii humani inhumati pulverizati ana sc.4. Misce. Capiat per se vel*  
20 *cum aqua betonica, et pauco olei vitrioli.*<sup>238</sup>

Ex his, Laus Deo, paroxysmi repellendi ac ex toto liberata fuit.

<sup>235</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 59: **R** pill. foetidarum, alephanginarum, cocciarum ana scr.i, ellebori nigri gr.vi, syrupi stoechados q.s. fiant pillula octo. | <sup>236</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, pp. 59-60: **R** nucis muscatae, radicum paeoniae ana dr.i ellebori nigri scr.ii, pyrethri, piperis albi ana sc.i. Misceantur: fiat pulvis sternutatorius, cuius portio calamo suffletur in nares.

<sup>237</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 708: semper etiam admixtis iis, quae scorbuto sunt dicata, illiusque malitiam infringere possunt [see also /2/]. | <sup>238</sup>Fernel, *Consiliorum liber*, p. 19: Reliquis diebus insequentibus, dum suspectum accesionibus tempus exactum sit mane quotidie offerantur scr.iiii huiusmodi opiatae. **R:** conservae anthos, et betonicae an dr.i, Mithridatii veteris dr.ii.s, theriacae scr.iiii, visci quercini, seminis paeoniae, cranii humani pulverizatorum an scr.ii. Misce, capiat per se vel cum aqua betonica.



2sc. Make a bolus: six stools.

For the jaundice:

**R:** best Mithridate 1dr, prepared hartshorn 2sc, powder of worms  
2dr, barberry conserve 1oz: for two mornings. She felt better when  
5 freed from the jaundice.

Next she was purged in this way:

**R:** *pills* - foetidae, alephanginae, cochiae *each* 1sc, trochischated  
agaric ½sc, castor 6gr. *Make 7 pills with sufficient syrup of French  
lavender.* Give 3 at bedtime, 4 in the morning with an attendant.<sup>22</sup>

10 Then she used this sneezing powder:

**R:** *nutmeg, peony root each ½dr, black hellebore 1sc, pellitory of  
Spain, white pepper each 1sc. Mix. Make the sneezing powder.  
Blow a portion of it into the nostrils through a reed.*

15 */102/ When it is exactly the expected time of onset in the  
morning, give two drachms of this opiate every day:*

**R:** *scurvy grass conserve 2oz (antiscorbutic medicines should always  
be given mixed with others, so that you diminish the evil of the  
illness) mallows, betony conserve each 1oz, old Mithridate, Venice  
treacle each 1dr, moss from oak, hartshorn shavings, peony seeds,  
20 powdered unburied human skull each 4sc. Mix. Take on its own or  
with betony water and a little oil of vitriol.*

These, praise God, fended off the attack and freed her from

---

<sup>22</sup>Burton, *Anatomy of Melancholy*, p. 109: they must especially beware, a melancholy discontented person [...] never be left alone or idle; but as physicians prescribe physic *cum custodia*, let them not be left unto themselves, but with some company or other, lest by that means they aggravate and increase their disease;

---

2 jaundice] S.O. adds: which was filthy. 9 with an attendant<sup>2</sup>] S.O. omits.  
13 through a reed] S.O. omits.

*Non amplius in hoc malum incidit, sed ex eo tempore multis annis  
bene, recte et libere vivit.*<sup>239</sup>

[Case 114] Hemiplegiae, febris ardentis,  
5 lumbricorum cura.

Filia paedagogi, Liddea Trap, circa aetatis annum secundum, febre  
ardente, hemiplegia laborabat. Ab omnibus quotidie mortem cum  
vita mutare iudicabant.

A me, nutu Dei, sic restituta:

10 **R:** cornu cervi praeparati dr.iii, aquae fontanae lib.i. Bulliant ad  
dimidias, tunc adde aquae rosarum parum, syrupi limonum unc.i,  
sacchari coch.s, olei vitrioli quantum satis ad gratam acetositatem,  
pro potu omnia alio omisso.

*Corde applicabatur:*

15 **R:** *theriacae verae dr.i, pulveris radicum paeoniae dr.s. Fiat  
emplastrum.* Radices paeoniae in orbiculis incisae circa collum  
suspendantur filo. *Inspergetur caput pulvere paeoniae.*<sup>240</sup>  
Inungatur nuca olei succini, olei sassaphras ana dr.s, spiriti  
rosmarini gut.vi. Misce pro nuca.

20 **/103/ Emplastrum pro umbilico:**

**R:** aloes dr.s, pilularum sine quibus sc.i, lumbricorum sc.i, myrrhae  
sc.s. Cum felle bovino fiat emplastrum pro umbilico.

Ad extinguendam sitem et sedem provocare, capiat potionem

---

<sup>239</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 199. | <sup>240</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, pp. 26-27: Emplastrum hoc cordis regioni applicavimus: **R** theriacae verae dr.i rad. paeoniae pul. dr.s. Misce. Item pulvere radice paeoniae capilli conspergantur.

---

**6** Liddea] \Liddea/. **18** spiriti rosmarini] sp. ros [ A standard preparation; sp. usually abbreviates *species*, a powder, but Hall's use of gut. (drops) in the quantity indicates a liquid].

everything. *She has not fallen into this misfortune any more, but has lived very well and without constraint since then, for many years.*

[Case 114] cure of hemiplegia, burning fever,  
5 worms.

The teacher's daughter, Lydia Trapp, about her second year of age: suffered from burning fever and hemiplegia. They expected every day from all this that she would exchange life for death.

I restored her in this way, by God's will:

10 **R:** prepared hartshorn 3dr, spring water 1 pint. Boil, reduce to a half, then add a little rose water, lemon syrup 1oz, sugar ½ spoonful, sufficient oil of vitriol for a pleasant tartness in her drink, laying aside all other drinks.

*This was applied to the heart:*

15 **R:** Venice treacle 1dr, peony root powder ½dr. Make a plaster. Hang peony roots cut in thin disks on a string around her neck. *Sprinkle her head with peony powder.* Anoint the neck with oil of amber, oil of sassaphras each ½dr, spirit of rosemary 6drops. Mix for the neck.

20 **/103/** A plaster for the umbilicus:

**R:** aloes ½dr, pills - sine quibus 1sc, worms 1sc, myrrh ½sc. Make a plaster for the umbilicus with ox gall.

---

**4** Case 114] S.O.: Observ. XVIII [Second Century], p. 104. **7** hemiplegia] S.O.: want of sense and motion in some parts.

hanc:

**R:** syrupi rosacei solutivi unc.i, aquae coctae unc.ii, olei vitrioli quantum satis ad gratam acetositatem. Pro stomacho, unguentum pectorale.

5            *Atque his quidem paucis intra paucis dies sanitati integrae sigillum datum est.*<sup>241</sup>

[Case 115] Articularis doloris cura.

Domina Underhill aetatis 53, dolore articulari manus et quando  
10 manu manum fricat, statim exurgit tumor flatuosus. Habet quoque ruborem faciei subitaneam, cum legit loquela paene amissa, ut astantes non intelligant. Sentit quasi morsum formicarum in multis corporis partibus, haec ex scorbuto.

**R:** sarsaparillae unc.4, sassaphras unc.i, agrimoniae, *cochleariae*,  
15 *nasturtii aquatici*, *becabungae* ana M.i, *corticis radice capparum*, *corticis mirabilanorum Indorum* ana sc.4, polypodii quercini, *liquiritiae* ana unc.s, *uvarum passarum exemptis arillis* dr.x.<sup>242</sup>

Macerentur per noctem in lib.vi aquae fontanae. Mane bulliant ad consumptionem medietatis. Colaturae adde senae unc.i,  
20 rhabbarbari dr.i, una vel altera. Facta ebullitione, adde syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti unc.4. Fiat syrupus: dosis coch.vi vel 8.

Rite purgata et optime se habuit et summis laudibus hunc syrupum extollit, et, laus Deo, *hoc unico machinamento vindicata est*

---

<sup>241</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 207. | <sup>242</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 667-668: [see also p. /92/].

To remove thirst and provoke a stool, take this potion:

℞: loosening syrup of roses 1oz, boiled water 2oz, sufficient oil of vitriol for a pleasant tartness. For the stomach, pectoral ointment.

5     *And so with these few, her complete health was sealed in a few days.*

[Case 115] Cure of painful joints.

Lady Underhill, aged 53: with painful joints in her hands, when she rubs them together a flatuous<sup>23</sup> swelling arises at once. She also  
10     has sudden flushing of the face. When she reads her voice almost disappears, so that bystanders cannot understand her. She feels as if there are ant bites in many parts of the body. This is due to scurvy.

℞: sarsaparilla 4oz, sassaphras 1oz agrimony, *scurvy grass*,  
15     *watercress, brooklime each 1 handful, bark of caper root, rind of Indian myrabolans each 4sc*, polypody of the oak, *liquorice* each ½oz, *stoned raisins 10dr*. Soak overnight in 6 pints spring water. In the morning boil, reduce by half. To the strained liquid add senna 1oz, rhubarb 1dr, one or the other. Once boiled, add  
20     Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup 4oz. Make a syrup. Dose: 6 or 8 spoonfuls.

She was rightly purged and was very well, and extolled this syrup with the highest praise. *She was protected from the misfortune,*

---

<sup>23</sup>See Barrough, *The Method of Physick*: tumours called inflations ... have their original of a phlegmatick humour, and therefore doe yeeld unto touching and handling, and our fingers being laid thereon doe descend somewhat deeply into them.

---

7 Case 115] S.O.: Observ. XIX [Second Century], p. 105. 23 was...device] S.O.: as if it wrought by enchantment.

*ab hoc malo.*<sup>243</sup>

[Case 116] **/104/** Articularis doloris cura experta.

- 5 Eques Underhill aetatis 50, gutta ambulatoria misere cruciatus.  
Dolebant corporis articuli, malleoli, genua, brachia, collum.  
Offerebam petenti huic aegro auxilium sequentem medicinam, qua  
Deo annuente intra dies paucos ex integro evanuerunt dolores:  
**R:** pulveris corticis sarsaparillae, senae ana dr.vi, tartari cremoris  
10 dr.iii. Misce. Dosis sc.4 vel 3, 2 quo quotidie egessit ter vel 4.

Purgato corpore, balneo sequenti usus:

- R:** salis lib.i, sulphuris vivi unc.i.s, aluminis lib.s, baccharum lauri  
pulverizatarum unc.4. Bulliant in satis quantum aquae. Inseat  
usque ad genu quotidie, per horam mane et sero. Non solum a  
15 podagra liberatus, verum etiam a duritie carnis sub digitos pedis  
curatus.

Pro praeservatione, mense Octobris sequenti praescripsi:

**R:** caryocostini dr.ii.s, electuarii de tamarindis unc.s, tartari  
cremoris sc.i. Cum saccharo, fiat bolus.

- 20 Deinde pilulas antipodagricis Plateri in hunc modum  
dispensatas, 5 devoret:  
**R:** *hermodactylorum verorum excorticorum unc.s, aloes, turbith,  
mechoachani ana dr.i, rhabarbari, electuarii myrobalanis citrinae,  
chebulorum, masticis ana sc.iii, euphorbii sc.ii, radicis aristolochiae  
25 rotundae sc.i, seminum hyperici, zingiberis, seminum cuminis ana*

---

<sup>243</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 218:  
sequentibus machinamentis vindicatus est ab hoc malo.

---

9 tartari] ȝ. 18 tartari] ȝ.

praise God, *by this one device*.

[Case 116] /104/ Well-tested cure of painful joints.

Squire Underhill, aged 50: wretchedly tortured by wandering gout.

5 He suffered pain in the joints of the body, the ankles, knees, arms  
and neck. I offered the entreating patient the following medical  
remedy. With God's favour it entirely banished the pains.

*R*: powder of sarsaparilla bark, senna each 6dr, cream of tartar 3dr.

Mix. Dose 4sc, or 3, or 2, by which he daily evacuated three or four  
10 times.

Once the body was purged, he used the following bath:

*R*: salt 1lb, live sulphur 1½oz, alum ½lb, squashed bay-berries 4oz.

He sat in it up to his knees every day, for an hour in the morning  
and evening. He was not only freed from the gout, but was also  
15 truly cured of the hard flesh beneath his toes.

For prevention the following October, I prescribed:

*R*: caryocostinum 2½dr, tamarind electuary ½oz, cream of tartar  
1sc. Make a bolus with sugar.

Then Platter's pills against gout, dispensed in this form.

20 Swallow 5:

*R*: true colchicum peeled ½oz, aloes, turbith, mechoachan each 1dr,  
rhubarb, electuaries of myrobalans, citron, yellow myrobalans,  
mastic each 3sc, euphorbia 2sc, round birthwort root 1sc, St John's

---

3 Case 116] S.O.: Observ. XX [Second Century] pp. 106-107.

*dr.s, salis gemmae sc.s. Cum succo ivae artheticae, diagredii*

*praeparati dr.s, fiant pilulae aliquot.*<sup>244</sup> /105/ Dosis singulis

mensibus dr.i, et sic a dolore incipienti liberatus ex toto. Attamen

pulverem praedictam, cui quantitatem betonicae unc.s cum

5 saccharo rosato unc.i addebam.

Optimum et perplures annos dolor nunquam reversus, Laus

Deo.

Curatus.

10 Case 117] Sanguinis mictus.

Generosus Izod de Toddington, senio confectus, sanguinea mictione

ad levem corporis motionem laborat.

**R:** massae pilularum de terebinthina cum rhabbaro dr.ii,

terebinthinae limpidae dr.i. Cum pulvere liquiritiae, fiant pilulae

15 15. Dentur ex cochleari cum syrupo altheae.

Tabulis sequentibus usus:

**R:** trochischi alkakengi cum opio unc.s, radices consolidae,

terebinthinae coctione induratae ana dr.i, sacchari unc.ii.s. Cum

infusione gummi tragacanthi fiant tabulae, sc.ii ponderis.

20 *Frequenter hordei excorticati cremorem bibatur [...]* Item lac decoctum

*cum ovis, consolidationis gratia.*<sup>245</sup>

Curatus.

---

<sup>244</sup>Platter, *De doloribus*, p. 711: **R** hermodactyl. verorum excort. unc.s, aloes, turbith, agarici ana dr.i.s, rhabarb. myrob. citrin. chebul. ana dr.i, masticis ana dr.i, mastichae sc.ii euphorbii sc.i, zinziberis, s. cymini an. dr.s, croci sc.s. [...] Efficaciores erunt, si diacrydii dr.i addatur [...] et cum succo ivae vel brassicae vel ros. formantur. [other ingredients listed including aristolochiae, hipericon, and sal gemmae, are mentioned on the same page]. | <sup>245</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 282: Frequenter hordei excorticati cremor ane cibos alios bibatur [...] et lac decoctum cum ovis, consolidationis gratia.



*wort seeds, ginger, cumin seeds each ½dr, salt of gems ½sc. Make a few pills with ground-pine juice, prepared scammony ½dr. /105/*

Dose: 1dr each month. He was thus released entirely from a recurrence of the pain. I nonetheless added the above powder to a

5 ½oz quantity of betony with rose sugar 1oz.

He became very well and for several years the pain never returned, praise God.

Cured.

10 [Case 117] Passing blood.

Mr Izod, a gentleman of Toddington, consumed by old age: suffers from bloody micturition on slight movement of the body.

**R:** a mass of turpentine pills with rhubarb 2dr, clear turpentine 1dr.

Make 15 pills with liquorice powder. Give from a spoon with marsh

15 mallow syrup.

He used the following tablets:

**R:** winter-cherry trochees with opium ½oz, comfrey roots, turpentine boiled hard each 1dr, sugar 2½oz. Make tablets with gum tragacanth infusion, 2sc by weight. *Drink cream of refined*

20 *barley often, also milk cooked with eggs to an agreeable thickness.*

Cured.

---

10 Case 117] S.O.: Observ. XXI [Second Century] p. 107.

[Case 118] Flatus stomachi, Septembris 9.

Domina Smith, Catholica Romana, formosa et bene habita, flatu  
stomachi maxime afflicta. Ab emperico stibii infusione forti, mense  
ab hinc accepta. Longe peius se habet. Nocte ter vel 4 haustum  
5 iuris pinsit pro flatu expellendo, aliis dormire pro dolore non potest  
neque in lecto quiescere. Circa aetatis annum 27.

℞: pilulae hierae cum agarico, de succino, Ruffi ana sc.i. Fiant  
pilulae vi. Deaurentur. Dentur hora cubitus iii, mane capiat  
quantitatem /106/ nucis moschati.

10 Electuarium sequentem:

℞: electuarii chalybeati Cratonis unc.i.s, electuarii ventrifului unc.s.  
Misce. Utetur exercitio.

Post pastum:

℞: seminum coriandri praeparatorum, foeniculi, anisi, carvi ana  
15 dr.i.s, cornu cervi praeparati, coralli rubri praeparati, cinamomi,  
nucis moschati ana dr.s, speciei aromatici rosati, speciei  
laetificantis Galeni, diamosci dulcis ana sc.s, sacchari ad ponderis  
omnium. Fiat tragea.

Die 24 Octobris, ad me misit pro pulvere praedicta e Comite  
20 Lecestriensis, ea quantitate devorata quam hic habuit. Et anno  
sequenti obiter vidi, et pro pulverem ingentes mihi reddebat gratias  
ut a saevissimis istis doloribus se omnino liberatam.

*Sic his ita administratis ocysime, salva et incolumis nutu Dei,  
in omne aevum laudandi evasit.*<sup>246</sup>

---

<sup>246</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum*, p. 134: Atque his ita  
administratis ocysime salva et incolumis nutu Dei in omne aevum laudandi  
evasit.

---

**18** tragea] trachea.

[Case 118] Wind in the stomach. 9 September.

Lady Smith, Roman Catholic, beautiful and healthy, very much vexed by wind in the stomach. She took a strong infusion of antimony from an empiric a month ago and is now very much worse. To expel the wind she takes three or four draughts of broth at night, otherwise she can neither sleep for the pain, nor lie peacefully in bed; about 27 years of age.

R: pills - hiera with agaric, amber, Ruffus's each 1sc. Make six pills, gild them. Give three at bedtime, in the morning take the quantity  
10 **/106/** of a nutmeg.

The following electuary:

R: Crato's steeled electuary 1½oz, opening electuary ½oz. Mix. She is to take exercise.

After meals:

15 R: seeds - prepared coriander, fennel, anise, caraway each 1½dr, prepared hartshorn, prepared red coral, cinnamon, nutmeg each ½dr, aromatic rose powder, Galen's laetificans powder, sweet musk each ½sc, sugar to the weight of everything. Make a sweetmeat.

24 October. She sent to me for the above powder, on behalf of  
20 the Earl of Leicester, since she had eaten what she had. The next year I saw her in passing, and she thanked me greatly for the powder because she had been altogether freed from her very severe pains.

*By the very rapid administration of these, she escaped safe and  
25 unharmed, by the will of God to whom be praise in eternity.*

---

**1** Case 118] S.O.: Observ. XXII [Second Century] pp. 107-108. **19** She...had<sup>2</sup>] S.O.: She sent to me for the same powder, which was for the Countess of Leicester, who took it. **24** By...eternity] S.O. omits.

[Case 119] Fluxus ventris, nimiae urinae  
copiae, [cura].

Generosa Winter, vidua, aetatis 28, Catholica Romana; fluxu  
5 ventris, inflammatione renum gravata, magnam urinae copiam  
redit, quantitate potus tripla, aegrotat se paene ad animae  
deliquium, calculo quoque cruciata. Alvi fluore lancinata et  
scorbuto confirmato debilitata.

Sequenti curata:

10 **R:** Mithridatii optimi sc.ii, diascordii dr.s, confectionis alkermes sc.i,  
cornu cervi praeparati sc.s, lapidis bezoar gr.vi, manus Christi  
perlatti dr.i, magisterii perlarum gr.4, coralli praeparati sc.s,  
electuarii laetificantis Galeni dr.i. Misce. Cum syrupi papaveris  
rheadis quantum satis fiat electuarium. Dimidiam partem aculeo  
15 cultelli devorabat, ex quo fluxus refraenatus, cum magno levamine  
et /107/ hilaritate animae. Hora cubitus alteram partem accepit.  
Nox ceteris quietior. Potus, decoctio cornu cervi.

Emplastrum pro orificio stomachi:

**R:** speciei aromatici rosati Gabrielis dr.s, labdani dr.s, Mithridatii  
20 optimi, theriacae Andromachi ana dr.i, cerae flavae dr.ii.  
Dissolvantur in oleum stomachicum Cratonis. Fiat lege artis  
emplastrum.

Ex his venter constipata, pilulis sequentibus laxata:

**R:** pilularum Ruffi, de succino ana dr.i. Fiant pilulae N.10. Capiat  
25 iii hora cubitus. Reiteretur cordiale.

[Case 119] [Cure] of a flux from the belly and  
excessive quantity of urine.

5 Mrs Winter, a gentlewoman, a widow aged 28, Roman Catholic: with  
a flux from the belly and inflammation of the kidneys. She passes a  
large amount of urine, three times more than she drinks. She is  
sick almost to fainting from being tortured by the stone. She has  
been attacked by loose bowel movements and weakened by  
confirmed scurvy.

10 She was cured as follows:

R: best Mithridate 2sc, diascordium ½dr, alkermes confection,  
prepared hartshorn ½sc, bezoar stone 6gr, pearled manus Christi  
1dr, magisterium of pearls 4gr, prepared coral ½sc, Galen's  
laetificans electuary 1dr. Mix. Make an electuary with sufficient  
15 field poppy syrup. She swallowed half from a knife blade, which  
controlled the flux with great relief and **/107/** cheerfulness of spirit.  
She took the other half at bedtime. That night was more restful  
than others. To drink: hartshorn decoction.

A plaster for the mouth of the stomach:

20 R: Gabriel's aromatic rose powder ½dr, labdanum ½dr, best  
Mithridate, Venice treacle each 1dr, yellow wax 2dr. Dissolve in  
Crato's stomach oil. Make a plaster by the usual method.

The stomach became constipated from this: loosened by the  
following pills:

25 R: pills - Ruffus's, of amber each 1dr. Make 10 pills. Give three at  
bed time. Repeat the cordial.

---

2 Case 119] S.O.: Observ. XXIII [Second Century] pp. 108-109.

Postea dabam potionem sequentem:

**R:** *aquae antiscorbuticae Dorncrellii* unc.4, *spleniticae eiusdem* unc.ii, syrupi sceletyrbici Forresti unc.iii.<sup>247</sup> Misce. Detur coch.8 mane.

5 Deinde usa electuario hoc:

**R:** conservarum buglossi, caryophyllatae hortensis, dianthos ana unc.i, conservae cochleariae unc.ii, radicis Helenii conditae dr.iii, speciei diarrhodonis Abbatis dr.i, electuarii diapleris archonticonis unc.s, confectionis alkermes sc.ii. Cum syrupo sceletyrbico

10 Forrestii quantum satis, fiat electuarium. Dosis quantitas avellanae stomacho ieiuno. Reiteretur decoctio cornu cervi.

His, Deo gloria, rite curata, et ab omni accidente liberata.

[Case 120] Scorbuti cura.

15 Domina Jenkenson, pulchra, pia, casta: dolore capitis, levi vertigine, cardialgia, dolore hypochondriorum, animae deliquio, vigilia, calore momentaneo manum et pedum, languore sine causa, gingivarum carne laxa, et saepe sanguinolenta, his cruciata.

**R:** pilularum hierae cum agarico, Ruffi, ana dr.i, alephanginarum sc.ii. Cum aquae betonicae fiant pilulae. Cum sc.ii diatartari, fiant pilulae 15. Capiat **/108/** iii hora somni.

Mane capiat haustum sequentis decoctionis. **R:** vini chalybeati sequentis:

**R:** radicis ireos, corticis ebuli, sambuci, capparum, tamarisci, 25 cichorii, graminis, foeniculi, asparagi, rubiae tinctorum ana unc.s,

---

<sup>247</sup>Dorncrell, *Dispensatorium novum*, pp. 33-36.

---

**22** chalybeati] ~~que~~ [for Quercetani (Du Chesne)].

Next I gave the following potion:

**R:** *Dornkrell's antiscorbutic water* 4oz, *the same for the spleen* 2oz,  
Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup. Mix. Give 8 spoonfuls in the morning.

Then she used this electuary:

- 5 **R:** conserves of bugloss, clove-gillyflowers, clove pinks each 1oz,  
scurvy grass conserve 2oz, preserved elecampane root 3dr,  
diarrhodon Abbatis powder, diapleres archonticon electuary ½oz,  
alkermes confection 2sc. Make an electuary with sufficient  
Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup. Dose: the quantity of a hazelnut on an  
10 empty stomach. Repeat the hartshorn decoction.

By these, glory to God, she was properly cured, and freed from  
all misfortunes.

[Case 120] Cure of scurvy.

- 15 Lady Jenkinson, good-looking, devout and modest: tortured by  
headache, slight giddiness, heartburn, hypochondriac pain,  
fainting, wakefulness, heat spells briefly in the hands and feet,  
weakness without cause, loose flesh in the gums and often blood-  
stained.
- 20 **R:** pills - hiera with agaric, Ruffus's each 1dr, alephanginae 2sc.  
Make pills with betony water, 15 pills with diatartar 2sc. Take  
**/108/** 3 before sleeping.

Take the following decoction in the morning: **R:** the following  
stealed wine:

- 25 **R:** orris root, bark of dwarf-elder, elder, capers, tamarisk, chicory,

---

**14** Case 120] *S.O.*: Observ. XXIV [Second Century] pp. 109-111.

**16** heartburn hypochondriac pain] *S.O.*: pain of the head, of the stomach [as if  
they were two different conditions]. **25** dwarf-elder elder] *S.O.*: elder.

radicis gentianae dr.ii, herbarum absinthii unc.s, soldanellae,  
 artemisiae, agrimoniae, marrubii albi ana M.s, summitatum  
 cantauri dr.ii.s, florum cordialium ana dr.i.s, calami aromatici dr.ii,  
 liquiritiae unc.i, foliorum senae unc.ii, agarici unc.s, mecoachani  
 5 dr.iii, limaturae chalybis praeparatae unc.s, tartari cremoris dr.i,  
 rhabarbari dr.iii, zingiberis dr.i, cinamomi dr.s, seminum anisi dr.ii.  
 Macerentur per triduum in lib.4 vini albi in balneo vase clauso in  
 duplice vase. Postea bulliant lento igne per horam, vase subere  
 clauso. Huius unc.4, syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti unc.ii, pro iii  
 10 matutinis. Praeterea birea antiscorbutica ut antea pro Generosa  
 Talbot, folio /87/. Addebam praedicta birea, sassaphras unc.s,  
 sarsaparillae unc.ii, betonicae, agrimoniae, fumariae ana M.i.  
**R:** conservae cochleariae unc.ii, absinthii, diaseros, buglossi,  
 caryophyllatae hortensis, rosarum Damascenarum, radicis helenii  
 15 conditi, ana unc.s, ligni Rhodii, calami aromatici, radicis aronis  
 praeparatae, speciei diarrhodonis Abbatis, diapleris archonticonis,  
 confectionis alkermes ana dr.s. Cum syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti  
 quantum satis, fiat electuarius, et folio auri coopertum ut super.

Bibat sequentem iulapium:

20 **R:** *aquae antiscorbuticae unc.iii, spleniticae unc.ii, sceletyrbici*  
 Foresti unc.iii.<sup>248</sup>

*In catarrho usa est pulvere pro sutura coronali:*

**R:** *masticis, thuris, succini, caryophylli, sandarach ligni, aloes,*  
*rosarum rubearum ana dr.i. Pulvis suturae coronali inspergandus.*<sup>249</sup>

<sup>248</sup>Dorncrell, *Dispensatorium Novum*, pp. 33-36. | <sup>249</sup>da Monte, *Consultationes Medicae*, col.348: Praeterea fiat pulvis pro sutura coronali **R** garyophyllorum, nucis muscatae, macis ana dr.i, sandaracae, id est vernicis, masthichis, gummi elemii ana scr.iiii. Pulverizentur et misceantur.

5 tartari] ꝓ.



couch-grass, fennel, asparagus, madder each ½oz, gentian root 2dr,  
green shoots of wormwood ½oz, bindweed, mugwort, agrimony,  
white hore-hound each ½ handful, centaury tops 2½dr, the cordial  
flowers each 1½dr, sweet flag 2dr, liquorice 1oz, senna leaves 2oz,  
5 agaric ½oz, mechoachan 3dr, prepared steel filings ½oz, cream of  
tartar 1dr, rhubarb 3dr, ginger 1dr, cinnamon ½dr, anise seeds  
2dr. Soak for three days in 4 pints white wine, in a closed vessel in  
a double boiler. Then boil on a slow fire for an hour, the vessel  
closed with a cork: [take] 4oz of this, Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup  
10 2oz, for three mornings, as well as the antiscorbutic beer for Mrs  
Talbot, as on page /87/. I added sassaphras ½oz, sarsaparilla 2oz,  
betony, agrimony, fumitory each 1 handful.

**R:** scurvy grass conserve 2oz, wormwood, diaserios, bugloss, clove-  
gillyflowers, damask roses, elecampane root each ½oz, rhodium  
15 wood, sweet flag, prepared arum root, diarrhodon Abbatis powder,  
diapleres archonticon, alkermes confection each ½dr. Make an  
electuary with sufficient Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup, and cover with  
gold leaf as above.

Drink the following julep:

20 **R:** *antiscorbutic water* 3oz, *splenitic* 2oz, Foreest's scheletyrbic 3oz.

*For the catarrh she used the powder for the coronal suture:*

**R:** *mastic, frankincense, amber, cloves, sandarach wood, aloes, red  
roses each 1dr. Sprinkle the powder on the coronal suture. She was*

---

**12** handful] *S.O.* adds: whilst it was ready, she took the following.

**13** scurvy... 18 above] similar to the last remedy of the previous case, page  
/107/. **18** leaf as above] *S.O.* adds: After taking the quantity of a nutmeg of  
this. **21** coronal suture] The transverse suture across the top of the skull,  
roughly from ear to ear.

Longe melius.

Ut opus esset, sic purgata:

R: pilularum Ruffique alephanginarum, diatartarum ana sc.i,  
pilulae /109/ hierae cum agarico sc.ii, aquae antiscorbuticae  
5 quantum satis. Fiant pilulae N.vi. Dentur iii hora cubitus.

Decembris 5: dolore dentium cruciata:

R: aquae cochleariae unc.vi, aquae rosarum rubrarum, plantaginis  
ana unc.iii, mellis rosati, diamoschu simplicis ana unc.i, spiritus  
vitrioli quantum satis ad gratam aciditatem. Dosis quantum ore  
10 gargarizare potuit.

A dentium dolore liberata, et ab omnibus symptomatibus, Deo  
gloria, penitus liberata.

[Case 121] 1629: Sanguinis mixtionis calculi, [cura].

15 Butler opidanus, ob levem corporis motionem urinam sanguineam  
cum dolore renum gravativo copiose reddit, et summo ardore urinae  
lancinatus, maximi circa praeputium, *cum tamen eiusmodi materia  
nihil aliud est, quam tartarum resolutum, ex quo coagulatione  
postmodum arenulae generantur*: quaere Horstius observatio 39,  
20 folio 284.<sup>250</sup>

Usus decoctione sarsaparillae per 8 dies. Postea usus est  
*tormentilla, quae cum vino bibita, tormina urinae distillant* curat  
(expertum in Stephano Taylor de Auson, et Iohanne Anglico folio

---

<sup>250</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 284: cum tamen eiusmodi materia  
nihil aliud sit, quam tartarum resolutum, ex quo coagulatione postmodum  
arenulae generantur.

---

9 vitrioli] ①. 14 1629] in margin 20 folio 284] 248, but p. 284 matches the  
borrowing.

much better.

She was purged thus, as was needed:

R: pills - Ruffus's, alephanginae, diatartar each 1sc, pills /109/  
hierae with agaric 2sc. Make six pills with sufficient antiscorbutic  
5 water. Take three at bedtime.

5 December: tortured by toothache:

R: scurvy grass water 6oz, red rose, plantain waters each 3oz, rose  
honey, simple diamoschu each 1oz, sufficient spirit of vitriol for a  
pleasant tartness. Dose: as much in the mouth as she can gargle.

10 She was freed from the toothache, and, glory to God,  
completely freed from all symptoms.

[Case 121] 1629. [cure] of bloody urination, stones.

Butler, of Stratford upon Avon: produces large amounts of bloody  
15 urine on slight movement of the body, with oppressive pain in the  
kidneys. He has been attacked by very great heat on urinating,  
maximally around the prepuce. *This is [due to] no other material  
than dispersed tartar, from the coagulation of which grains of sand  
are afterwards produced* (see Horst, observation 39, page 284).

20 He used sarsaparilla decoction for eight days. Afterwards he  
used *tormentil, which when drunk with wine, cures the torture of*

---

8 simple diamoschu] S.O.: mulberries simple [reading *diamoron* for  
*diamoschu*]. 13 Case 121] S.O.: Observ. XXV [Second Century], pp. 111-112.  
17 This...19 284] S.O. omits. 21 cures...127,3 book] S.O. omits.

510) *nec est ei aliquid par, ut loco citatio dicit Anglicus.*<sup>251</sup> *Lamina plumbea perforata et pluribus foraminibus et aceto vini madefacta renum regioni applicentur saepiusque mutetur.*<sup>252,253</sup>

Hic morbus spacio 8 dierum magna ex parte minutus et usu  
5 curatus.

[Case 122] Scorbuti, alborum fluxus, flatus  
10 uteri, [cura].

Generosa Richardsune, Catholica Romana, flatu uteri, (ita ut quando urinam emittit, crepitos multos uterinos emittit, sicut alii per anum) scorbuto lipothymia, dolore capitis **/110/** rubeorum nimio fluxu, iis sistentibus tum alborum fluxu nimio laborat.

15 Lumbagine saepe, cum maximo dorsi calore lancinata, cum maxima totius corporis imbecillitate et anxietudine. Dolore capitis maximi posterioris partis gravata. Lumen abhorret. Appetitum satis laudabilem habuit, medicinas fastidit.

Restaurativum ex coxa vitulina cum gallo et rasurae cornu  
20 cervi et chyna omni mane pinsebat aquae nostrae lactis cum manu Christi perlata.

---

<sup>251</sup>John of Gaddesden, *Rosa Anglica*, p. 510: tormentilla cum vino bibita, urinae cuciat, et stranguriam curat, sicut sum expertus, nec est ei aliud par. | <sup>252</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 351: Lamina plumbea perforata plurimis foraminibus, renum regioni applicetur, saepiusque mutetur; [See also fn. below, and pp. /110/, /119/ and /128/]. | <sup>253</sup>Bernard de Gordon, *Lilium Medicinae*, p. 602: cum lamina plumbea perforata et madefacta in aceto [see also previous fn.].

---

**1** 510] 99 [which is unrelated].

*dripping urine* (well-tested on Stephen Taylor of Alveston, and by John of Gaddesden, page 510). *Nor is there any equal to it*, as John says in his book. *Apply thin lead sheets perforated with many holes and sprinkled with wine vinegar, to the kidney region, and change*  
5 *often.*

The illness was in large part diminished within eight days, and he was cured by using these.

[Case 122]<sup>24</sup> Cure of scurvy, white flux,  
10 uterine wind.

Mrs Richardson, a gentlewoman, Roman Catholic: suffers from uterine wind (so that when she passed urine she breaks much wind from the womb, just as if from the anus) scorbutic weakness, headache, /110/ excessive red flux. When this stops she then  
15 suffers from excessive white flux. She was often attacked by lower backache with great heat in the back, very great weakness of the whole body and distress. She was oppressed by headache, worst at the back. She cannot stand light. She had a satisfactory, praiseworthy appetite, feels an aversion to medicines.

20 A restorative of a veal joint with a rooster, and shavings of hartshorn and china were crushed every morning in our milk whey

---

<sup>24</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

---

<sup>9</sup> Case 122] *S.O.*: *Observ.* XXVI [Second Century], pp. 112-113.

Pro sistendo fluxu:

℞: aquae lactis unc.iii, *aquae sperniolae* coch.ii, manus Christi  
perlatae sc.ii, confectionis alkermes sc.ii.<sup>254</sup> *Dorso laminam*

5 *plumbeam perforatam et aceto vini madefactam.*<sup>255</sup>

Emplastrum pro matrice:

℞: cornu cervi praeparati sc.i, confectionis alkermes sc.s, lapidis  
bezoar gr.iii, aquae scabiosae unc.ii, syrupi limonum unc.s. Misce.  
Dentur tempore frigoris, nam habuit febrem erraticam.

10 ℞: aquae limacium (mei compositae): ranarum simplicis ana unc.4,  
confectionis alkermes sc.ii, manus Christi perlatae unc.s, *aquae*  
*antiscorbuticae* unc.vi, *spleniticae* unc.ii.<sup>256</sup> Misce. Reiteretur et  
adde unc.i.s syrupi laetificantis Rodorici a Fonseca.<sup>257</sup>

Usu huius mirifice vires amissas recuperavit et dixit auro  
15 potabili longi praestantiorum esse hanc divinam aquam, et  
nunquam sine ea esse velit, nam dixit quod fuit instar omnium. Sic  
penitus curata, Deo trino unico laus in seculo seculorum; et viro  
mortuo, nupsit et peperit prolem sex ab hinc annis.

20 [Case 123] /111/ Vomitus, tumoris pedum,  
febris quotidianae cachexiae, scorbuti cura.

Generosa Peirse de Auson, Catholica Romana, pulchra, circa aetatis  
annum 28, melancholia, vomendi conatu inani, tumore pedum  
vespertino, imbecillitate totius corporis, febre quotidiana scorbutica,  
25 cum levi horrore, dolore splenis, doloribus variis articularum

---

<sup>254</sup>Croll, *Basilica chymica*, p. 276; Croll recommends aqua sperniola 'in profluvio muliebri contumacissimo', p. 277. | <sup>255</sup>Bernard de Gordon, *Lilium medicinae*, p. 602 [see also p. /109/]. | <sup>256</sup>Dorncrell, *Dispensatorium novum*, pp. 33-36. | <sup>257</sup>I have not identified a source for this.

with pearled manus Christi.

To control the flux:

R: milk whey 3oz, frog-spawn water 2 spoonfuls, pearled manus Christi 2sc, alkermes confection 2sc. *On the back: lead sheets perforated and wetted with wine vinegar.*

A plaster for the womb:

R: prepared hartshorn 1sc, alkermes confection ½sc, bezoar stone 3gr, scabious water 2oz, lemon syrup ½oz. Mix. Give at the time she feels cold, because she had an erratic fever.

10 R: snail water (my own compound), simple of frogs each 4oz, alkermes confection 2sc, pearled manus Christi ½oz, *antiscorbutic water* 6oz, *splenitic* 2oz. Mix. Repeat and add 1½oz of Rodrigo de Fonseca's laetificans syrup.<sup>25</sup>

15 She recovered her lost strength wonderfully, and said this divine water far surpassed potable gold, and she wished never to be without it because, she said, it was the equal of anything. She was thus completely cured, and after the death of her husband remarried and bore an heir six years later.

20 [Case 123] /111/ Cure of vomiting, swelling of the feet, quotidian fever, wasting, scurvy.

Mrs Peers, a gentlewoman of Alveston, Roman Catholic, beautiful, about the age of 28: oppressed by melancholy, vain attempts to vomit, swelling of the feet in the evenings, weakness of the whole  
25 body, quotidian scorbutic fever with slight shivering, splenic pain,

---

<sup>25</sup>There are several versions of laetificans syrup. I have not yet found one attributed to Rodrigo de Fonseca.

---

20 Case 123] S.O.: Observ. XXVII [Second Century] pp. 113-114.

gravata, urina sicut aqua clara.

℞: electuarii de tamarindis unc.s, syrupi diaserios unc.i, oxymellitis nostri unc.s, aquae buglossi unc.ii, olei vitrioli gut.vi. Misce: sedes vi. Die sequenti urina turbida.

5 Die sequenti:

℞: speciei aromatici rosati sc.i, electuarii de tamarisco dr.ii, aliis ut antea additis.

Hora somni:

℞: lapidis bezoar gr. iii, laudani Paracelsi gr.ii, confectionis alkermes  
10 sc.s. Nox quieta.

14 die:

℞: syrupi papaveris unc.i, aquae scabiosae unc.i, olei vitrioli quantum satis, lapidis bezoar gr.4, aquae rosarum parum. Usa vino chalybeato ut pro Generosa Talbot folio /87/, et pro Domina  
15 Jenkenson folio /108/, cui addebam syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti.

℞: vini unc.vi, syrupi sceletyrbici unc.4, *aquae antiscorbuticae* unc.ii, *spleniticae* unc.ii, syrupi laetificantis unc.iii.<sup>258</sup>

℞: cornu cervi praeparati sc.i, confectionis alkermes sc.ii, magisterii perlarum, tincturae coralli ana gr.vi, manus Christi perlati dr.s,  
20 lapidis bezoar gr.vi, conservae cochleariae quantum satis. Fiat electuarius melle. Addebam speciei pleres archonticonis. A symptomatibus liberata.

Ob maerore in suffocationem matricis incidebat:

℞: castorei dr.i, faeculae bryoniae sc.s. Cum aqua hystERICA fiat  
25 pilulae N.5. Dentur hora nocturna. Umbilico emplastrum carannae cum mosco. Naribus attrehebat fumum assae foetidae. Bene

---

<sup>258</sup>Dorncrell, *Dispensatorium novum*, pp. 33-36.



various pains in the joints. Urine: like clear water.

R: tamarind electuary ½oz, diasereos syrup 1oz, our oxymel ½oz, bugloss water 2oz, oil of vitriol 6 drops. Mix. Six stools. The next day the urine was turbid.

5           The following day:

R: aromatic rose powder 1sc, tamarind electuary 2dr, with other items added as before.

At bed time:

R: bezoar stone 3gr, Paracelsus's laudanum 2gr, alkermeres  
10       confection ½sc. The night was restful.

14th:

R: poppy syrup 1oz, scabious water 1oz, sufficient oil of vitriol, bezoar stone 4gr, a little rose water. She used steeled wine as for Mrs Talbot page /87/ and Lady Jenkinson page /108/, to which I  
15       added Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup.

R: wine 6oz, scheletyrbic syrup 4oz, antiscorbutic water 2oz, splenitic 2oz, laetificans syrup 3oz.

R: prepared hartshorn 1sc, alkermeres confection 2sc, magisterium of pearls, tincture of coral each 6gr, pearled manus Christi ½dr,  
20       bezoar stone 6gr, sufficient scurvy grass conserve. Make an electuary with honey. I added pleres archonticon powder. She was freed from her symptoms.

On account of sadness she fell into suffocation of the mother:

R: castor 1dr, bryony dregs ½sc. Make 5 pills with water for the  
25       womb. Give at nightfall. To the umbilicus: caranna plaster with musk. She inhaled assafoetida smoke through her nostrils:

levata.

Postea purgata:

**R:** pilulae Ruffi, speciei hierae simplicis ana sc.i.s, castorei sc.i,  
faeculae bryoniae sc.s, aquae hystericæ quantum satis. Fiant  
5 pilulae 5, hora somni.

Sic rite curata.

[Case 124] /112/ *Matricis motus, doloris,*  
*praefocationis cura.*<sup>259</sup>

- 10 Alice Collins, pedissequa dominae Puckringe, circa aetatis annum  
24, suffocatione matricis cruciata. Menstruis obstructis,  
paroxysmo finito lachrimas effundit, item urina sicut aqua fontana.  
*A me vero ad extirpationem morbi et symptomatum huiusmodi*  
*medela erat praescripta.*<sup>260</sup>
- 15 **R:** *radicis bryoniae unc.s, foliorum senae unc.s, zingiberis dr.s,*  
*cinamomi dr.i, sacchari dr.vi. Infundantur per noctem in seri lactis*  
*lib.i.s. Mane bulliant parum et coletur. Adde syrupi artemisiae*  
*compositi unc.ii. Ex hac infusione potui per aliquot dies exhibebatur*  
*mane unc.v calide.*<sup>261</sup>
- 20 Rite purgata recteque se habuit.

[Case 125] Vermium cura.

Hester Silvester, filia Generosae Smith, nunc marita de Burforde,  
vermibus lancinata anno praeterito, a me pulvere sequenti curata.

---

<sup>259</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI, *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 62. | <sup>260</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 447: *A me vero ad relevationem morbi et symptomatum huiuscemodi medela erat praescripta.* | <sup>261</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria I', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 63: **R** *radicum bryoniae drach iii fol. senae mundatae unc.s zingiberis scrup. s. cinamomi drach.i sacchari unc.s Infundantur per noctem in seri lactis caprini calentis lib.i.s. Ex hac infusione potui per dies aliquot exhibebatur stomacho ieiuno ad unc. quinque calide.*

successfully relieved.

Afterwards she was purged:

**R:** pills - Ruffus's, simple hiera powder each 1½sc, castor 1sc,  
bryony dregs ½sc, sufficient water for the womb. Make five pills:  
5 [take] at bed time.

She was thus properly cured.

[Case 124] /112/ Cure of *motion of the womb*,  
*pain, choking*.

10 Alice Collins, Lady Puckering's companion, about 24 years old:  
tortured by suffocation of the mother. Her periods were obstructed,  
when the paroxysm ends she bursts into tears. Also, the urine is  
like spring water. *I did indeed prescribe these medicines to root out  
the illness and symptoms:*

15 **R:** bryony root ½oz, senna leaves ½oz, ginger ½dr, cinnamon 1dr,  
sugar 6dr. Infuse overnight in milk whey 1½ pints. In the morning,  
boil a little and strain. Add compound mugwort syrup 2oz. Give  
5oz of this infusion to drink hot, in the morning, for a few days.

She was rightly purged and became well.

20

[Case 125] Cure of worms.

Hester Sylvester, the daughter of Mrs Smith, gentlewoman, now  
married in Burford: attacked by worms last year, and cured by me

---

8 Case 124] S.O.: Observ. XXVIII [Second Century], p. 114. 21 Case 125]  
S.O.: Observ. XXIX [Second Century], p. 115.

Nunc ad me misit pro pulvere.

*R: corallinae, seminis sanctonici ana unc.i, dictamni albi, bistortae, tormentillae ana unc.s. Omnia in pulverem redigantur, et aceto acerrimo irrorentur, ac ad umbram quousque sicci fiant. Tractentur,*  
5 *quorum pondus a dr.s ad dr.iii (illi dr.s) usque, pro virium et morbi magnitudine signetur, aliquando in vino quandoque nostra aqua portulacae, vel pomo sub cineribus cocto.*<sup>262</sup>

Iterum curata, laus Deo.

10 [Case 126] /113/ Tympanitis, vocis raucedinis cura.

Lynes opidana, tympanite laborat, aetatis 53. Ingenti ventris tumore gravata, ut progredi vix posset, cum vocis raucedine et fastidio cibi. Ab amicis pro desperata relinquitur. Et alia hydropis symptomata, quae comitare assolent. *Ad haec mala curatu*

15 *difficilima propulsanda, talem instituo, divina adiutus gratia, medendi methodum.*<sup>263</sup>

*R: radicum iridis, azari ana dr.ii, radicum imperatoris, Helenii, rubiae maioris, corticis radicis ebuli ana dr.iii, origani, calaminthi ana p.i, soldanellae unc.i, mecoachan dr.iii, seminum anisi, baccae lauri ana*  
20 *unc.s. Bulliant secundum artis in lib.ii vini albi in balneo mariae bene obturato, ad horas 4. Postea coletur et dulcoretur cum saccharo.*

*Bibat mane et vespere unc.vi.*

---

<sup>262</sup>Amatus Lusitanus, *Curationum medicinalium centuriae quatuor*, p. 313: *R: corallinae, seminis sanctonici an. uncias duas, dictamni albi, bistortae, tormentillae an. unciam unam. Omnia in pulverem redigantur, et aceto acerimo irrorentur, ac ad umbram quousque sicci fiant, tractentur quorum pondus a drachma media ad tres usque, pro virium et morbi magnitudine signetur, aliquando in vino, quandoque vero, aqua graminis vel portulacae: iureve alicuius carnis.* | <sup>263</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...]* *centuriae*, p. 461: *Ad haec mala curatu alias difficilima propulsanda talem instituo, divina adiutus gratia, medendi methodum.*

with the following powder. Now she sent to me for it.

*R: sea-moss, French wormwood each 1oz, white dittany, snakeweed, tormentil each ½oz. Reduce all to a powder, sprinkle with sharp vinegar and dry in shade. Take this, from ½dr to 3dr by weight (for*  
5 *her, ½dr) according to strength and the degree of the illness. It is sometimes put in wine, sometimes our purslane water, or in an apple cooked in the ashes.*

She was cured again, praise God.

10 [Case 126] /1113/ Cure of tympany, hoarse voice.

Lynes of Stratford upon Avon: suffers from tympany. Age: 53. She has been weighed down by a huge swelling of the belly so that she could hardly get about, with hoarseness of the voice and aversion to food. Her friends despair of her as in a hopeless condition.

15 Symptoms of dropsy also accompanied this, as they commonly do. *In order to cure and avert these most difficult of misfortunes I establish, with the help of divine grace, a method of treatment like this:*

*R: orris root, wild ginger, pellitory of Spain, elecampane, briar, bark of*  
20 *elder root each 3dr, origanum, calamint each 1 pinch, bindweed 1oz, mecoachan 3dr, anise seed, bay berries each ½oz. Boil by the rule of practice in 2 pints white wine in a closed bain Marie for four hours,*

---

4 for her ½dr] S.O.: but she took a drachm. 8 praise God] S.O. omits.

10 Case 126] S.O.: Observ. XXX [Second Century], pp. 115-116. 15 of...do] S.O. omits. 16 In...19 ] S.O.: yet by God's blessing she was cured as followeth.

*Deinde evacuetur pilulis de soldanella sic:*<sup>264</sup>

*R: summitatum soldanellae sc.ii, cinamomi sc.i, pilulae aggregativae dr.i, trochischi alhandal sc.s, elaterii gr.4. Cum succo radice iridis, fiant pilulae, ex dr.i, quinque. Sumat iii circa mediam noctem, ut*  
5 *opus reiterentur.*<sup>265</sup>

*Ventriculus reliquaque viscera hoc electuario erunt corroboranda:*

*R: succi radice iridis dr.iii, canellae, galangae ana dr.ii, caryophylli, macis ana dr.i, zedoariae sc.ii, soldanellae unc.s. Pulverizentur et*  
10 *cum melle despumato misceantur in formam electuarii. Sumat alternis vel singulis diebus, quantitatem nucis Ponticae [...]*  
*imperantur etiam pulveres a pastu sumendi, ut ventriculus a crudis humoribus perfrigeratus modice calefiat, facilius concoquat flatusque discutiatur.*<sup>266</sup>

15 *R: seminum coriandri praeparatorum unc.s, /114/ seminum foeniculi, anisi ana dr.ii, carvi dr.i, cinamomi dr.i, radice acori veri, galangae, corticis citri sicci ana dr.i, rosarum rubrarum dr.s, sacchari ad ponderem omnium. Post pastum sumendus coch.s.*

His optime valere caepit. Ianuarii 4 1630.

<sup>264</sup>Feyens, *De flatibus*, p. 175: *R* rad. Imperat. helenii, rubiae mai. cort. rad. ebuli an. dr.iii, rad. irid. asari an. dr.ii, origani, calaminth an. p. i, soldanell. unc.i, gratiol. dr.ii, sem.anisi bacc. lauri an. unc.s. Bulliant secundum artem in duabus partib. vini et una aquae, aut vino integro, in balneo mariae bene obturato, ad horas tres aut quatuor: postea coletur et dulcoretur cum saccharo, bibatque mane et vesperi cyathum unum, deinde vacuetur cum pilulis sequentibus. | <sup>265</sup>Feyens, *De flatibus*, p. 176: *R* pil. aggregat. dr.i, trochisch. alhand. sc.s summitatum soldanell. et gratiolae et cinamomi tenuissime pulverisatorum an. sc.i. Cum succo rad. iridis, fiant pilulae ex drachma quinque, sumat duas circa mediam noctem. | <sup>266</sup>Feyens, *De flatibus*, pp. 176-177: Ventriculus reliquaque viscera his electuariis erunt corroboranda: *R* succi rad. irid.dr.iiii, canell. galangae an. dr.ii, caryophyll., macis an. dr.i, zedoariae scr.ii, soldanell. unc.s. Pulverisentur et cum melle despumato misceantur in formam electuarii. Sumat alternis vel etiam singulis diebus, quantitate nucis Pont. [...] Imperantur etiam pulveres a pastu sumendi, ut ventriculus a crudis humoribus perfrigeratus modice calfiat, facilius concoquat flatusque discutiatur.

*then strain and sweeten with sugar. Drink 6oz morning and evening.*

*Then purge her with bindweed pills in this way:*

*R: tops of bindweed 2sc, cinnamon 1sc, aggregative pills 1dr,  
alhandal trochees ½sc, wild cucumber 4gr. With orris root juice,  
5 make 5 pills from 1dr. Take 3 about midnight, repeat as needed.*

*The stomach and other organs should be strengthened with this  
electuary:*

*R: orris root juice 3dr, canella, galangal each 2dr, cloves, mace each  
1dr, zedoary 2sc, bindweed ½oz. Powder, mix with purified honey to  
10 form an electuary. Drink it on alternate, or every day, as much as a  
hazelnut. I also prescribed powders to be taken with meals, so that  
the stomach, cooled by the undigested humours, warms moderately.  
This promotes digestion readily and disperses wind.*

*R: prepared coriander seeds ½oz, /114/ fennel, anise seeds each  
15 2dr, caraway 1dr, cinnamon 1dr, roots of sweet flag and galangal,  
dried citron rind each 1dr, red roses ½dr, sugar equal to the weight  
of all. Take ½ spoonful after meals.*

*With these she began to feel much better. 4 January 1630.*

---

**10** Drink...day] S.O. omits.

[Case 127] Hystericae passionis, id est  
melancholiae, [cura].

Generosa Baker, opidana, aetatis 38, lumbagine, desiderio mingendi  
cruciata. Urina pauca et alba. Ob metum scorbuti sequenti utetur

5 exoptato eventu:

℞: syrupi laetificantis Roderici a Fonseca dr.ii, *diatartari eiusdem*  
dr.i,<sup>267</sup> aquae buglossi unc.iii. Misce: vi sedes.

℞: pilularum Ruffi sc.ii, hierae cum agarico sc.i, pilularum  
foetidarum sc.i, castorei sc.s. Cum aqua artemisiae fiant pilulae

10 N.7. Deaurentur: sedes vii.

℞: ligni sassaphras incisi unc.i.s, cinamomi optimi unc.i.

Infundantur in aquam fontanam unc.14 pro horis xii. Deinde  
bulliant ad medias, colaturae adde saccharum albissimum unc.12.

Bulliat ad consistentiam electuarii, cui adde dianthos, conservae

15 buglossi ana dr.vi, florum caryophyllati unc.s, radice enulae  
campanae conditae, zingiberis conditi ana dr.ii, speciei aromatici  
rosati gr.vii, confectionis alkermes unc.s, ambrae griseae, mosci ana  
gr.vii. Misce, fiat electuarium.

Praedicta aegrotans melius habere caepit 14 dierum spacio,  
20 quibus per 30 dies administratis, victusque ratione convenienti non  
neglecta, pristinas vires optime recuperavit. Deo gloria.

[Case 128] Tussis inveteratae, [cura].

25 Smith, aetatis 38, opidana, diu tussi inveterata et phlegmate

---

<sup>267</sup>Rodrigo de Fonseca, *Consultationes medicae*, p. 53

**13** unc12] in margin; ~~unc.ii~~ in text. **20** victusque...recuperavit] Identical words  
occur on page /123/, Case 136, but I have not found a source.



[Case 127] Cure of fits of the mother, that is,  
melancholy.

Mrs Baker, a gentlewoman of Stratford upon Avon aged 38: tortured  
by lower backache with desire to urinate. Urine: little and clear.

5 She used the following for fear of scurvy, with the desired result.

**R:** Rodericus de Fonseca's laetificans syrup 2dr, his diartartar 1dr,  
bugloss water 3oz. Mix. Six stools.

**R:** pills - Ruffus's 2sc, hiera with agaric 1sc, foetidae pills 1sc,  
castor ½sc. Make seven pills with mugwort water, gild them. Seven  
10 stools.

**R:** sliced sassaphras wood 1½oz, best cinnamon 1oz. Infuse in  
spring water 14oz, for twelve hours. Then boil, reduce to half. To  
the strained liquid add refined white sugar 12oz. Boil to the  
consistency of an electuary, add dianthos, bugloss conserve each  
15 6oz, clove-gillyflower flowers ½oz, preserved elecampane root,  
preserved ginger each 2dr, aromatic rose powder 7gr, alkermes  
confection ½oz, ambergris, musk each 7gr. Mix. Make an  
electuary.

This patient started to become better within fourteen days,  
20 with ministrations for 30 days, not neglecting a rational and  
appropriate diet. She recovered her former strength very well.  
Praise God.

[Case 128] [Cure] of persistent cough.

25 Smith, aged 38, of Stratford upon Avon: tortured for a long time by

---

**1** Case 127] *S.O.*: Observ. XXXI [Second Century], pp. 116-117. **24** Case 128]  
*S.O.*: Observ. XXXII [Second Century], p. 117.

viscoso et capitis **/115/** dolore cruciata.

**R:** florum sulphuris dr.ii, pulverum enulae campanae, ireos, glycyrrhizae ana dr.i, mellis quantum satis ad omnium incorporationem. Fiat electuarium cui adde olei sulphuris gut.x.

5 Fiat linctus.

Deinde:

**R:** auripigmenti dr.i, vitelli ovi quantum satis. Fiat massa ex commixtis quae ad ignem exsiccentur deinde pulverizentur, cui pulveri adde foliorum tobacchi dr.s, tussilaginis sc.iii, seminum anisi  
10 sc.4, olei anisi gut.iii. Fiat suffumigium, excipiat parum per tubulum ore.

His breve curata.

[Case 129] Scorbuti cura experta. 1630

15 Februarii 8.

Uxor, lumbagine, convulsione, gingivarum corruptione, faetore anhelitus, flatu, melancholia, cardiaca passione, spontanea lassitudine, respirationis difficultate, strangulationis metu, alvi  
20 astrictione, ventris torminibus, diu laboravit. Nocte inquieta debilitata.

**R:** electuarii de tamarindi unc.s, tartari cremoris dr.i. Misce. Dorso emplastrum oxycroceum applicatum, a torminibus ventris et lumbagine liberata.

10 die, frigore accepto relapsa misere lumbagine lancinata, ut  
25 se in lecto movere non potuit, sed cum astantes adiuverent,

---

**21** tartari] ꝑ.

persistent cough, viscous phlegm and /115/ headache.

**R:** flowers of sulphur 2dr, powders of elecampane, orris, liquorice each 1dr, sufficient honey to bind everything. Make an electuary, to which add oil of sulphur 10 drops. Make a linctus.

5           Then:

**R:** orpiment 1dr, sufficient egg yolk. Make a mass from the ingredients, dry them by the fire, then powder. Add to the powder tobacco leaves ½dr, coltsfoot 3sc, anise seed 4sc, anise oil 3 drops. Make a fumigant. Take a little through a tube in the mouth.

10           These cured her in a short time.

[Case 129] Well-tested cure of scurvy.

8 February 1630.

[My] wife: suffered for a long time from lower backache, convulsions,  
15   diseased gums, foul-smelling breath, wind, melancholy, cardiac  
passion, spontaneous tiredness, difficulty in breathing, fear of  
choking, binding of the bowel movements, abdominal torment. She  
was weak and restless at night.

**R:** tamarind electuary ½oz, cream of tartar 1dr. Mix. Oxycrocium  
20   plaster was applied to the side. She was freed from the abdominal  
torment and lower backache.

10th: She caught a cold, relapsed wretchedly and was attacked

---

**9** Take a little through a tube in the mouth] *S.O.*: Of this he took in a pipe; this patient was in fact female. **12** Case 129] *S.O.* Observ. XXXIII [Second Century], pp. 118-119. **14** My wife] *S.O.*: Wife, (whether of the author, which is most probable, or of the man that went before, or of some other, I know not, because not mentioned); [See note above: the previous patient was female]. **16** spontaneous tiredness] *S.O.*: laziness.

exclamaret quasi aculiis perforata.

Linimentum hoc pro lumbis dolentibus applicabam:

**R:** pinguis gallinae, olei amygdalarum dulcium, anethi, rosacei,  
mucilaginis /116/ radice altheae cum aqua malvae extractae ana  
5 unc.s. Misce. Post unctionem, emplastrum oxycroceum applicare  
iubebam exoptato eventu, nam nox quietior fuit. Attamen mane  
flatu cruciata, tunc adhibebam electuarium antiscorbuticum

Danielis Senerti, sic concinatum:

***R:** conservae germinum ac florum cochleariae unc.iii, florum buglossi,  
10 caryophyllati hortensis, rosarum Damascenarum ana sesquiunciam,  
carnium nucis Indicae conditae, corticis citri conditae ac minutim  
concesorum ana unc.i, melliginis granorum iuniperi dr.iii, confectionis  
alkermes sesquidrachmam, syrupi de canella dr.vi. De succo  
cochleariae aut sceletyrbici Foresti quantum satis pro cogendo  
15 electuario, cui iusti acoris gratia admisceatur spiriti sulphuris acidi  
quantum satis.<sup>268</sup> Fiat.*

Pro ventris constipatione, suppositorium hoc:

**R:** mellis unc.i, speciei hierae picrae sc.ii, trochischi alhandal sc.s,  
seminum cumini unc.s. Fiat suppositorium longum. Pro cardiaca  
20 passione usa est electuario pleres archonticon. Usa electuario  
praescripto unc.s stomacho ieiuno, et electuario pleres  
archonticonis in quacunque hora, et postea vino chalybeato utetur.

**R:** herbarum fumitoriae, bacabungae, nasturtii aquatici,  
cochleariae, betonicae, agrimoniae, scolopendriae ana M.s, corticis

---

<sup>268</sup>Martini, 'de scorbuto', in Sennert, *de scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 674-675: **R** conserv. germinum ac flor. cochleariae verae unc.iii, flor.buglossi, garyophyll. hortens. rosarum damascen. an. sesquiunciam, carniū nucis Indicae conditae, cort: citri condit. ac minutim concisorum an. unc.i, melliginis granorum iuniperi dr.iii, confect. alchermes sesquidrachmam, syr. de canella dr.vi, de succo cochleariae aut scelotyrbici Foresti q.s. pro cogendo electuario, cui iusti acoris gratia, admisceatur sp. sulphuris acidi q.s.

by lower backache so that she could not lie in bed. When the attendants helped her, she cried out as if pricked by thorns.

I applied this liniment for the lumbar pains:

**R:** chicken fat, oils of sweet almonds, dill, roses, mucilage of /116/

5 marsh mallow root extracted with mallow water each ½oz. Mix.

After the anointing, I prescribed oxycrocium plaster to be applied with the desired outcome, for the night was more peaceful.

However, she was tortured by wind in the morning, so I used Daniel Sennert's antiscorbutic electuary, compounded in this way:

10 **R:** conserve of scurvy grass buds and flowers 3oz, flowers of bugloss, clove-gillyflowers, damask roses each 1½oz, preserved coconut flesh, preserved citron peel chopped very small, juniper berry juice 3dr, alkermes confection 1½dr, cinnamon syrup 6dr. Make the electuary with sufficient scurvy grass juice or Foreest's scheletyrbic to bind it.  
15 Add spirits of sulphuric acid for a pleasantly bitter taste. Make it.

For constipation of the belly, this suppository:

**R:** honey 1oz, hiera picra powder 2sc, alhandal trochees ½sc, cumin seeds ½oz. Make a long suppository. For the cardiac passion she used pleres archonticon electuary. She used the above electuary,  
20 ½oz on an empty stomach, and pleres archonticon electuary at any time whatever, and afterwards the steeled wine:

**R:** herbs - fumitory, brooklime, watercress, scurvy-grass, betony,

---

11 flesh] S.O.: nutmeg.

capparum, fraxini, tamarisci ana unc.s, *radicis enulae campanae*,  
 polypodii quercini ana dr.iii, rubiae tinctorum, liquiritiae, calami  
 aromatici, *eryngiorum ana unc.s, santali citrini, coralli rubri, rasurae*  
*eboris ana dr.vi, caryophyllae, macis, cinamomi, zingiberis ana dr.iii,*  
 5 *ceterach, florum genestae, anthos, calendulae, epithymi ana p.i,*  
*baccarum iuniperi unc.i, limaturae chalybeatae* (praeparatae  
 secundum Cratonem<sup>269</sup>) *unc.4, vini albi lib.8. Macerentur per*  
*octiduum ad minimum ad ignem balneo mariae, bis in die agitando.*  
*Deinde transcolentur ter quatuorve, tunc colaturae adde croci dr.s*  
 10 *prius in aquae cochleariae extractae satis quantum, confectionis*  
*alkermes sc.ii, saccharo optimo quantum satis ut fiat vinum gustui*  
*gratum. Dosis unum vel alterum cochlearium in principio, quae*  
*deinceps, si opus sit, augeatur.*<sup>270</sup>

His, Laus Deo curata.

15

[Case 130] /117/ Scorbuti longe confirmati cura.

Generosa Combes, circa aetatis annum 36, gingivarum  
 putrefactione, difficili respiratione, lipothymia caecitate subitanea,  
 pulsu parvo et inaequali, urina crassa et rubra, mox clara, et die  
 20 sequenti furfuraceo excremento plena, vomitu, lumbagine et quasi  
 lumbifracta (ut si movere non potuit), vario corporis partium dolore,  
 ita dolore corporis et dorsi corripitur et adeo gravi et molesto ut *mori*

<sup>269</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum* [...] *liber secundus*, pp. 378-79. | <sup>270</sup>Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, p. 74: Vinum Chalybeatum. **R**: limatura chalybis unc.iiii, rad.eryngiorum, enulae campanae ana unc.is santali citrini unc.i, coralli rubri, rasurae eboris ana dr.vi, cariophyllorum, macis, cinnamomi, zingiberis ana dr.iii, ceterach, florum genista, anthos, epithymi ana p. ii, vini albi generosi lib.vi. Macerentur per octiduum ad minimum ad ignem baln. mar. calidum, dein transcolentur per manicam Hippocratis ter quatuorve, ut vinum optimum clarificetur, quod dulcorari saccharo poterit, ut fiat vinum gustui gratum: dosis unum aut alterum cochleare in principio, quae deinceps, si opus sit, augeatur.

agrimony, harts-tongue each ½ handful, bark of capers, ash,  
 tamarisk each ½oz, *elecampane root*, polypody of the oak each 3dr,  
 madder, liquorice, sweet flag, *eringoes each ½oz, yellow*  
*sandalwood, red coral, ivory shavings each 6dr, cloves, mace,*  
 5 *cinnamon, ginger each 3dr, spleenwort, broom flowers, rosemary,*  
*marigold, dodder each 1 pinch, juniper berries, steel filings* (prepared  
 according to Crato) 4oz, *white wine 8 pints. Soak for eight days at*  
*least on a fire in a bain Marie, shaking twice a day. Then strain*  
*three or four times, add saffron ½dr to the strained liquid, first*  
 10 *extracted in sufficient scurvy-grass water, alkermes confection 2sc,*  
*with sufficient best sugar that the wine tastes pleasant. Dose: one or*  
*two spoonfuls at first, thereafter increase as is needed.*

These cured her, praise God.

15 [Case 130] /117/ Cure of long-established scurvy.  
 Mrs Combe, a gentlewoman aged about 36 years: seized by  
 putrefaction of the gums, difficulty in breathing, weakness with  
 sudden blindness. Pulse: small and unequal. Urine: thick and red,  
 then clear, the following day full of excrement like bran. She is  
 20 seized by vomiting, lower backache as if her back were broken (so  
 that she could not move), varied pain in the parts of the body. The

---

15 Case 130] S.O.: Observ. XXXIV [Second Century], pp. 120-121.

17 putrefaction... 137,6 degree] S.O.: being troubled with a long confirmed scurvy, accompanied with the like and more dreadful symptoms, than are in the former observation described, was cured as followeth.

*magis, quam diutius cum eo vivere optat.*<sup>271</sup>

Illam per annum hoc dolore luctantem vidi etiamsi gravida fuit. *A ventriculi orificio ad os usque quiddam instar pali figi sibi conqueritur, et flatu egregie lancinata.*<sup>272</sup>

5           Humoris praeparatio talis:

**R:** oxymellitis nostri unc.iii, syrupi diaserios unc.ii, syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti unc.ii, aquae nasturtii aquatici unc.iii. Detur unc.4 cum vino generoso pro iii matutinis: omne die ii vel iii sedes.

Deinde sic purgata:

10       **R:** pilulae hierae cum agarico, alephangini, Ruffi ana sc.ii, olei salviae, chynae gut.vii. Cum aqua betonica fiant pilulae N.10. Deaurentur. Hora somni capiat iii. Rite purgata. Postea usa est vini chalybeati ut folio /116/ et electuario antiscorbutico ut pro uxore mea. Postea capiat aquam nostram antiscorbuticam ut pro  
15       generosa Richardsune. Pro lumbis unctione praedicto ex pinguedine gallinarum et ceteris ut folio antecedenti. Post unctionem applicetur emplastrum de ammoniaco Foresti.

Pro gingivarum corruptione et oris vitiis:

**R:** aquae cochleariae simplicis unc.vi, *aquae ferratae* unc.vii,<sup>273</sup>  
20       mellis rosati et diamoronis simplicis ana unc.ii, olei vitrioli quantum satis ad gratam acetositatem. Fiat oris collutio. Potus birea antiscorbutica praeparata ut folio /116/.

Emplastrum stomachale:

**R:** speciei diambrae, speciei aromatici rosati Gabrielis ana sc.i.s, olei  
25       masticis dr.i, olei spicae, macis ana dr.i, caryophylli gr.5, stiracis

---

<sup>271</sup>Based on Vulgate, Tobit iii, 6; mori magis quam vivere. | <sup>272</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 180: a ventriculo orificio ad os usq. quiddam instar pali figi sibi conquerebatur. | <sup>273</sup>Baudouin Ronsse, 'De scorbuto' in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 286-288.



pain in the body and back is so severe and troublesome that she wishes rather *to die than to live* with it any longer.

I saw her struggle with the pain that year, even while she was pregnant. *She complains of being transfixed by something like a*  
5 *spike from the opening of the stomach to her mouth*, and attacked by wind to a remarkable degree.

A preparation for the humours, like this:

R: our oxymel 3oz, diasereos syrup 2oz, Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup  
2oz, watercress water 3oz. Give 4oz with good wine on three  
10 mornings: two or three stools each day.

Then she was purged:

R: pills - hiera with agaric, alephanginae, Ruffus's each 2sc, oils of  
sage, china 6 drops. Make 10 pills with betony water, gild them.  
Take three at bed time: rightly purged. Afterwards she used steeled  
15 wine as on page /116/ and the antiscorbutic electuary as for my  
wife. Then take our antiscorbutic water as for Mrs Richardson. For  
the lower back: the above ointment of chicken fat and other  
ingredients as on the previous page. After the anointing, apply  
Foreest's ammoniac salve.

20 For corruption of the gums and weaknesses in the mouth:

R: simple scurvy-grass water 6oz, iron water 7oz, rose honey and  
mulberry simple each 2oz, sufficient oil of vitriol for a pleasant  
tartness. Make an oral rinse. Her drink was antiscorbutic beer  
prepared as on page /116/.

25 A stomach plaster:

R: diambra powder, Gabrieli's aromatic rose powder each 1½sc,

---

21 iron water] S.O.: water wherein iron was quenched.

liquidi dr.i, cerae flavae dr.vi, labdani dr.iii. Fiat emplastrum. Pro dorso emplastrum oxicroceum et saepe his utentibus. Hora somni capit 5 pilulas ex terebinthina Cypri et tartari.

His a tristi morbo liberata, et peperit filiam formosam etiamsi  
5 gravida. *His usa atque praeter omnium spem rediviva et sanitati integrae restituta Dei Optimi Maximi ope, cui soli esto gratiarum actio, benedictio et perennis laus in secula infinita, Amen.*<sup>274</sup>

10

[Case 131] /118/ Febris tertianae nothae cura.

Domina Clarke, circa aetatis annum 44, febre tertiana notha corripitur. Duos habuit paroxysmos, tertio veniente obviam dedi sequentem vomitorium:

15 **R:** poculi chymici dr.vi: vomitus vii, sedes i. Habuit paroxysmum levem. Postea calore superveniente, habuit decoctum de cornu cervi.

Die intermittenti, glister:

**R:** malvae, betonicae, mercurialis, origani, calaminthi ana M.s,  
20 seminum anisi, foeniculi ana dr.ii, hordei integri p.i, florum chamaemillae, meliloti ana p.i. Fiat decoctio ad unc.x. In colatura dissolve catholiconis, diaphaeniconis ana unc.i, speciei hierae picrae, pulveris Holland ana dr.i. Fiat glister. Rite purgata.

Ante paroxysmum:

---

<sup>274</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 213: praeter omnium spem rediviva et sanitati integrae restituta ista mulier est Dei opt. max. ope, cui soli esto gratiarum actio, benedictio et laus perennis in secula infinita. [See also p. /31/].

---

3 tartari] ♀.

mastic oil 1dr, spikenard and mace oils each 1dr, cloves 5gr, liquid styrax 1dr, yellow wax 6dr, labdanum 3dr. Make a plaster. For the back, use oxycrocium plaster frequently. Take 5 pills of Cyprus turpentine and tartar before sleeping.

5           She was freed from this sad illness, and bore a beautiful daughter, for she was pregnant. *The use of these revived her beyond all hope, and restored her to complete health by the power of almighty God most high, to whom alone be thanks, blessing and perpetual praise, forever and ever. Amen.*

10

[Case 131] /118/ Cure of a bastard tertian fever.

Lady Clark, about 44 years old: seized by a bastard tertian fever.

She had two attacks, with the third coming on I gave the following emetic against it:

15    ℞: the chymical cup 6dr: seven vomits, one stool. She had a slight attack. Then when the hot spell was coming on she had the hartshorn decoction.

On the intervening day, this enema:

℞: mallows, betony, spurge, origanum, calamint each ½ handful,  
20    seeds of anise, fennel each 2dr, whole barley 1 pinch, chamomile and melilot flowers each 1 pinch. Make a decoction to 10oz. In the strained liquid dissolve catholicon, diaphoenicon each 1oz, hiera picra powder, Holland powder each 1dr. Make an enema: rightly purged.

25           Before the attack:

---

7 restored...9 Amen] S.O. omits. 11 Case 131] S.O.: Observ. XXXV [Second Century], p. 121.

℞: confectionis alkermes sc.s, laudani Paracelsi gr.ii, magisterii perlarum gr.iii. Misce pro una vice, quibus remediis ab eo tempore restituta.

Dei gratia, huc usque domina belle habuit.

5

[Case 132] Mictio sanguinis cum dolore et ardore urinae ad levem corporis motionem, aetatis 39.

Generosus Thomas Underhill de Lamcot, circa aetatis annum 39, praedictis diu debilitatus.

- 10 ℞: massae *pilularum de terebinthinae cum rhabarbaro Cratonis* dr.ii.<sup>275</sup> Formentur pilulae vi ex dr.i. Dentur iii mane, involvantur pulvere liquiritiae. Dosis dr.s, cum cochleariis aliquot syrupi altheae Ferneli.

His finitis:

- 15 ℞: trochischi alkekengi cum opio unc.s, radicis consolidae, terebinthinae coctione induratae ana dr.i, sacchari unc.ii.s. Cum infusione gummi tragacanthae in aqua malvae, fiant tabulae ponderis sc.ii. Capiat unam sero.

Mane:

- 20 ℞: terebinthinae limpidae unc.s. Dissolvantur cum vitello ovi ut artis est, addendo mellis unc.i, sacchari rosati tabulati unc.ii, vini generosi unc.vi. Misceantur. Bibat de lacteo illo /119/ liquore ad unc.i omni mane, quotidie 3 vel 4 sedes ex unc.i. Hora cubitus trochiscos praeparatos habuit, quoque *laminam plumbeam perforatam in aceto madefactam* renibus applicatam nocte atque
- 25

---

<sup>275</sup>Crato, *Consilliorum* [...] *liber secundus*, p. 371: Recommended for calculi, 'cuius assumptione etiam viae urinariae, ad commodius excludendum calculum, laxantur.'

R: alkermes confection ½sc, Paracelsus's laudanum 2gr,  
magisterium of pearls 3gr. Mix as one dose, which restored her.

Thanks be to God, the Lady recovered in every way.

5 [Case 132] Passing blood with pain and burning  
urine on slight movement of the body. Age: 39.

Mr Thomas Underhill, a gentleman of Lamcot, about 39 years old:  
weakened for a long time by the above.

R: a mass of Crato's turpentine pills with rhubarb 2dr. Form 6 pills  
10 from 1dr. Give 3 in the morning, coated in liquorice powder. Dose:  
½dr with a few spoonfuls of Fernel's marsh mallow syrup.

When this was finished:

R: trochees of winter cherry with opium ½oz, comphrey roots,  
turpentine boiled hard each 1dr, sugar 2½oz. Make tablets  
15 weighing 2sc with gum tragacanth infusion in mallow water. Take  
one in the evening.

In the morning:

R: clear turpentine ½oz. Dissolve in egg yolk as is the practice, add  
honey 1oz, rose sugar tablets 2oz, good wine 6oz. Mix. Drink the  
20 milky /119/ liquid, up to 1oz every morning: three or four stools  
daily from 1oz. He had prepared trochees at bedtime, *also a  
perforated lead sheet wetted with vinegar was applied to the kidneys*

---

3 Thanks...way] S.O. omits. 5 Case 132] S.O.: Observ. XXXVI [Second  
Century], pp. 121-122.

die.<sup>276</sup>

Ex toto sanatus.

[Case 133] Mictio sanguinis absque dolore.

- 5 Chatherina Sturley opidana, aetatis 44, corpulenta pinguis: *urinam omnino sanguineam emittit, absque omni dolore lumborum et orificii vesicae, ne in ipsa excretionem quicquam sentit.*<sup>277</sup> *Non a calculo nex exulceratione [...] restat igitur in acrimonia biliosi sanguinis et imbecillitate renum huius affectus causam esse quaerendam.*<sup>278</sup>
- 10 *Hinc eo respiciendum esse iudicabam, ut sanguis acrior temperetur et renum retentrix corroboretur, sequentem igitur praescripsi potionem digestivam, quae:*
- R: glycyrrhizae rasae dr.vi, hordei mundi p.i, iuiubarum N.5, foliorum nymphaeae, violarum, rosarum ana p.i, seminum portulacae,*
- 15 *acetosae, 4 seminum frigidorum maiorum ana dr.i, radicis cichorii unc.i, herbarum endiviae, acetosae, plantaginis, fumariae ana M.i. Coquantur in brodio ciceris. Coletur, lib.i dulcoretur sacchari candi unc.ii. Fiat potio, de qua 3<sup>a</sup> pars vacuo stomacho sumatur per octiduum.*
- 20 *Electuarium sequentem ad renum corroborationem ordinabam:*
- R: cornu cervi usti praeparati, coralli rubri praeparati ana dr.i, sacchari rosati antiqui, diacydonis sine speciebus ana unc.i.s, syrupi de rosis siccis quantum satis. Fiat electuarium molle de quo 2 horis*

---

<sup>276</sup>Bernard de Gordon, *Lilium medicinae*, p. 602, [see /109/]. | <sup>277</sup>Horst, *Observationum[...] libri quatuor*, p. 279: *urinam omnino sanguineam emittit, absque omni dolore lumborum, nec etiam in ipsa excretionem quicquam sentit.* | <sup>278</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 280: *nec a calculo continuum solvente, nec etiam ab exulceratione [...] restat igitur in acrimonia biliosi sanguinis et imbecillitate renum huius affectus causam esse quaerendam.*

night and day.

He was cured of everything.

[Case 133] Passing blood without pain.

- 5 Katherine Sturley of Stratford upon Avon, aged 44, stout and fat:  
*passing entirely bloody urine without any pain in the back or at the  
mouth of the bladder. She feels nothing in the excretion, neither from  
a stone nor ulceration. The cause of this conditions remains to be  
sought in the bile-filled sharpness of the blood, and weakness of the*  
10 *kidneys.*

*I concluded from this that the over-sharp blood should be  
mellowed, and the retaining power of the kidneys strengthened. I  
therefore prescribed the following digestive potion, which was:*

- R: liquorice shavings 6dr, wheat barley 1 pinch, jujubes 5, leaves of*  
15 *water-lilies, violets, roses each 1 pinch, purslane, sorrel seeds, the  
four greater cold seeds each 1dr, chicory root 1oz, green shoots of  
endive, sorrel, plantain, fumitory each 1 handful. Boil in chickpea  
broth. Strain. Sweeten with sugar candy 2oz. Make a potion. Drink  
a third on an empty stomach for eight days.*

- 20 *I prescribed the following electuary to strengthen the kidneys:*

*R: burnt prepared hartshorn, prepared red coral each 1dr, old rose  
sugar, diacydonium without powders each 1½oz, sufficient rose juice  
syrup. Make a soft electuary, take ½oz two hours before meals,*

---

4 Case 133] S.O.: Observ. XXXVII [Second Century], pp. 122-123. 14 wheat]  
S.O.: French. | jujubes...water-lilies] S.O. jujubes, 5 leaves of water-lilies.  
22 without powders] S.O. omits.

ante cibum unc.s sumatur quotidie bis.<sup>279</sup>

Curata his, sed medicamentum sequens primus tenet:

*R: saniculae, alchemillae, virgae auriae [...] pyrolae, betonicae,*

*agrimoniae ana M.i, altheae M.ii, filicis, florum chamaemillae,*

5 *hypericonis, artemisiae, rubeae, origani, tormentillae foliorum et*

*radicum ana M.i. Fiat sacculus linneus, tres /120/ partes ulnae*

*latus et longus. Herbis illis minutim incisis et aequaliter extensis sic*

*repleto ipsum ne nimium spissae locentur. Consue sacculum*

*undequaque ne herbe in seipsas concidant. Deinde sacculum*

10 *faecibus vini optimi incoquito. Incoctum in duos orbes ligneos*

*paulatim comprimito totique lumborum regioni apponito. Aeger vero*

*in ventrem decumbat, idque tamdiu repeti donec fluxus sanguis*

*sistatur. Quod ut commodius fiat, duos para sacculos ut uno*

*refrigerato, aliter mox admoveatur calidus.*<sup>280</sup>

15 Nota Bene:

*Verum si hic sanguis purus fuerit, cum urina diligenter mixtus,*

---

<sup>279</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 280: Hinc eo respiciendum esse putavi, ut sanguis acrior temperetur, et renum retentrix corroboraretur: illius ratione praecripsi digestivam potionem sequentem, quae **R** rad. cichor. unc.i. herb. endiviae, acetosae, plantag. fumar. ana M.i. fl. nymphaeae, rosar. violar. ana pi. sem.portulacae, acetosae 4 frig. maior ana unc.i hord. mund. p. i iuiubarum num.v glycyrrh. rasae unc.vi Coq. in brodio cicer. coletur lib.i dulcoretur sacch. cand unc.ii fiat potio, de qua tertia pars vacuo stomacho sumatur per octiduum. Quo ad renum corroboratiunum, sequens electuarium ordinabam, de quo 2 horis ante cibum unc.s sumatur, quotidie bis. **R** sacch rosat. antiq. diacyd. s.s. ana ana unc.i.s. coralli rub. praep. corn. c. usti praep. ana dr.i. syr. de rosis siccis q.s. f. elect. molle. | <sup>280</sup>Willich, *Urinarum probationes*, p. 220: Rec. saniculae, alchimillae, virgae auriae (nostri vocant *Heidnisch wundtkraut*), pyrolae, betonicae, agrimoniae singul manip. i, altheae manip. ii, filicis, flor. chamem. hypericon. arthemis. rubeae, origani, tormentill. folior. et radicum ana manip. i. Fiat sacculus lineus, tres partes ulnae latus et longus. Herbis illis minutim incisis et aequaliter extensis sic repleto ipsum. Ne nimium spissae locentur. Consue sacculum undiquaque: ne herbae in seipsas concidant. Deinde sacculum foecibus vini optimi incoquito: incoctum inter duos orbes ligneos paulum comprimito: totique lumborum regioni apponito. Aeger vero in ventrem decumbat. Idque tamdiu repete: donec fluxus sanguis sistatur. Quod ut commodius fiat, duos para sacculos: ut uno refrigerato, aliter mox admoveatur calidus.

15 Nota Bene] in margin



twice a day.

These cured her, but chiefly the following medicine:

*R: sanicle, lady's mantle, golden-rod, wintergreen, betony, agrimony  
each 1 handful, marsh mallow 2 handfuls, fern, flowers of  
5 chamomile, St John's wort, mugwort, briars, origanum, flowers and  
root of tormentil each 1 handful. Make a linen bag, three quarters of  
a /120/ forearm's length long and broad. Slice the herbs finely and  
spread evenly so that they fill everything and are not placed too  
thickly. Sew the bag together wherever the herbs are not, then boil  
10 the bag in the dregs of good wine. Press the boiled bag little by little  
between two wooden rollers, place it on the whole lumbar region.  
The patient should in fact lie face down. Repeat this until the flux of  
blood stops. It is convenient to prepare two bags so that as one cools,  
the other may be applied hot.*

15 NOTE:

*If fresh blood is thoroughly mixed with the urine but does not*

---

2 the...medicine] S.O.: first I applied the following. 6 three...broad] S.O.:  
three bags of half a yard long apiece. 16 fresh...142,9 78] S.O. omits all the  
aphorisms.

*non graviter redolens, et in dorso, ubi situs renum est, cruciatus  
pungens aderit, non adeo vehemens: a renibus defluit.*

*Quicumque repente sanguinem sponte mingat, praesertim  
liquidum: his in renibus venulae rupturam notat.*

- 5        *Si quis sanguinem meiat, ac grumos, et urinae stillicidio laboret,  
dolore ad hypogastrium, id est, imum ventrem et peritoneum, sive  
femen pertinente, ea, quae sunt circa vesicam loca laborant  
(Hippocratis Liber 4, aphorismus 78).<sup>281</sup>*

10

[Case 134] Febris ardens continua cum ventris  
constipatione.

- Domina Hunks aetatis 69, febre continuae ardenti cum tormine  
lateris et dolore stomachi lancinata, constipatione ventris cruciata  
15        *per 8 dies. Incurrit in has aegritudines deploratas, urina eius  
confusa ac lethalis apparebat. Sed implorato a me et amicis et ab  
aegra extremis illis malis percussa, Deo omnipotente archiatro, sana  
iterum desperata Domina evasit in hunc modum:<sup>282</sup>*

**R:** herbarum malvae, /121/ altheae, mercurialis ana M.i. Fiat

- 20        decoctio. **R:** huius unc.12, diaphaeniconis, diacatholiconis ana

---

<sup>281</sup>Willich, *Urinarum probationes*, p. 216: Verum si hic sanguis purus fuerit, cum urina diligenter mistus, non graviter redolens, et in dorso, ubi situs renum est, cruciatus pungens aderit, non adeo vehemens: a renibus defluit: [similar to Hippocrates's *Aphorisms*, IV, LXXVII, but with the addition of pain in the back]; Quicumque repente sanguinem sponte mingunt, praesertim liquidum: his in renibus venulae rupturam notat [Aphorism IV, LXVIII]; Si quis sanguinem meiat, ac grumos, et urinae stillicidio laboret, dolore ad hypogastrium, id est, imum ventrem, et peritoneum, sive semen pertinente, ea, quae sunt circa vesicam, loca laborant [Aphorism IV, LXXX]. | <sup>282</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria IV', *Curationum*, [...] *centuriae* p. 352: incurrit in has aegritudines deploratas. Urina eius confusa ac lethalis apparebat. Sed implorato et a medico et ab aegroto extremis istis malis percusso, Deo omnipotente Archiatro, sanus iterum desperatus senex evasit hunc in modum.

---

**11** 134] Aphorism 4.78 is the second one quoted.

smell strongly, and if a stabbing pain, not really painful, appears in the back where the kidneys are, then [the blood] certainly stems from the kidneys.

Anyone who passes blood suddenly and spontaneously,  
5 especially visibly, demonstrates a ruptured vein in the kidneys.

If someone passes blood and sand, and suffers from poor urinary stream with pain in the hypogastrium - that is, the belly and peritoneum - or if it reaches the thighs, then the area around the bladder is troubled (Hippocrates Book 4, aphorism 78).

10

[Case 134] Continual burning fever with  
abdominal constipation.

Lady Hunks, aged 69: attacked by a continual burning fever with torment in the sides and stomach ache, tortured by abdominal  
15 constipation for eight days. *It happened in these lamentable diseases that the urine appeared confused and heralded death. But her friends and the patient, struck by these most severe misfortunes, appealed to me. The Lady, from giving up hope, was healed again through almighty God the Chief Physician, and escaped in this way:*  
20 **R:** green shoots of mallow, /**121**/ marsh mallow, good King Henry

---

**11** Case 134] S.O.: Observ. XXXVIII [Second Century], pp. 123-124. **16** But... 19 way] S.O.: yet was recovered as followeth.

unc.i, pulveris sancti dr.i. Fiat glister: ii sedes. Postea iulapium nostrum antefebbrificum.

Lateri dolenti applicetur unguentum dialtheae cum oleo amygdalarum dulcium:

- 5 *R: unguenti dialtheae unc.ii, olei amygdalarum dulcium unc.s. Dissolvantur et misceantur ad ignem, pro unguento quo cum inunxisset latus, superimposuit linteum duplicatum tepide butyro perlitum et dolor remisit.*<sup>283</sup>

Die sequenti:

- 10 *R: decoctionis praeparati lib.s, poculi chymici unc.ii. Fiat glister: iii sedes.*

Pro expectoratione:

*R: syrupi scabiosae magistralis unc.i, lohoch passularum Quercetani unc.ii.*

- 15 *Dieta erat humectans. Potus, decoctum hoc: R: hordei mundi unc.iii, rosarum, violarum ana p.i, liquiritiae rasae dr.iii, passularum unc.ii, ficuum N.iii, sacchari candi unc.ii. Decoquantur in lib.xvi aquae ad consumptionem lib.ii. Colaturam bibat.*<sup>284</sup>

- 20 *Febris desiit, sitis remisit, appetitus reddiit, citra difficultatem spirat, beneque dormivit atque omnia praeter omnium spem et expectationem, Dei omnipotentis manu et ope, in illa senio confecta intra dies 14 adeo meliora facta, ut diceret se se a morte reviviscere et iuvenescere ex senio. Deo praepotenti ac omnipotenti medico soli*

---

<sup>283</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 181: *R* unguenti dialtheae unc.ii. olei amygd. dul. unc.s Dissolvantur et misceantur ad ignem pro ung. quo cum inunxisset latus, superimposuit linteum tepide butyro perlitum. Et dolor remisit. [also p. /178/]. | <sup>284</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, pp. 181.

each 1 handful. Make a decoction. **R:** of this 12oz, diaphoenicon, diacatholicon each 1oz, holy powder 1dr. Make an enema: two stools. Afterwards our antipyretic julep.

5        Apply marsh mallow ointment with sweet almond oil to the painful side:

***R:** marsh mallow ointment 2oz, sweet almond oil ½oz. Dissolve, mix by the fire. For the ointment with which she anointed her side, she placed it on a folded cloth smeared with warm butter, and the pain diminished.*

10        The next day:

**R:** ½ pint of the prepared decoction, the chymical cup 2oz. Make an enema: three stools.

An expectorant:

**R:** magisterial scabious syrup 1oz, du Chesne's raisin lohoch 2oz.

15        *Her diet was moistening. To drink: this decoction:*

***R:** wheat barley 3oz, roses, violets each 1 pinch, liquorice shavings 3dr, raisins 2oz, figs 3, sugar candy 2oz. Boil in 16 pints water until 2 pints are gone. Drink the strained liquid.*

20        *The fever stopped, thirst diminished, appetite returned. She breathed with less difficulty, and slept well. Beyond every hope and expectation in her old age, all her symptoms improved within fourteen days, by the hand and power of God almighty. She said that she was revived from death and rejuvenated in old age. To God the all-*

---

**3** antipyretic] S.O.: antiscorbutics. **16** wheat] S.O.: French.

*laus esto in secula seculorum.*<sup>285</sup>

[Case 135] Vertiginis, capitis doloris,  
5 tenebricosae visionis cura.

Baronetus Puckringe, circa aetatis annum 38, *vir egregie doctus, rarae constitutionis, macilentus admodum et phlegmaticus;*<sup>286</sup> musis deditus si quis alius; optimo vivendi genere tum victu optimo usus. De vertigine levi conquestus, et *post cibum subito virium deiectio*  
10 *interdum aderat, [...] dolor capitis et tenebricosa visio sequebatur, [...] appetitus mediocris,* urina bene colorata sed spumosa et alia accidentia ex consensu visarum concoctione orta.<sup>287</sup>

[1:] *Imbecillitas concoctionis adiuvetur;*  
15 2: *Caput et nervorum /122/ genus corroberetur;*  
3: *Peccans causa, tam in capite recepta, quam recipienda, derivetur et revellatur.*

20

---

<sup>285</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria IV', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 353: Fabris desiit, sitis remisit, appetitus rediit, citra difficultatem spiravit, beneque dormivit atque omnia praeter omnium spem et expectationem, Dei omnipotentis manu et ope in sene decrepito intra dies duodecim adeo meliora facta, ut diceret se se a morte reviviscere et iuvenescere ex senio. Deo praepotenti ac omnipotenti medico soli laus esto in omne aevum. | <sup>286</sup>Foreest, *De febribus ephemeris et continuis*, p. 178: vir egregie doctus, annorum triginta, rarae constitutionis, macilentus admodum et biliosus. | <sup>287</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 104: Interdum post cibum etiam subita virium deiectio aderat [...] dolor etiam oculorum, tenebricosa visio sequebatur [...] appetitus mediocris [These are three subheadings in Horst's text].

*powerful and omnipotent physician alone be praise, for ever and ever.*

[Case 135] Cure of giddiness, headache,  
5 darkened vision.

Baronet Puckering, about 38 years old, *a man remarkably learned, of uncommon constitution, very thin and phlegmatic, as devoted to the muses as anyone: he followed the best way of life and also an excellent diet. He complained of slight giddiness, and after meals*  
10 *suddenly lost strength, accompanied now and then by headache and followed by darkness of vision and poor appetite. Urine: well coloured but frothy. Other effects sprang from sympathy of the vision with digestion.*

[The Plan]:<sup>26</sup>

- 15 [1] *The weakness of the digestion should be aided;*  
*2. The head and nervous system /122/ should be strengthened;*  
*3. the causative fault, both when received into the head and about to be received, should be diverted and removed.*

---

<sup>26</sup>Plans set out and numbered like this are common in practicae; this one, borrowed from Horst's *Observationum*, is the only example in Hall; see Bylebyl, 'Teaching *Methodus Medendi* in the Renaissance', in Kudlein and Durling (eds), *Galen's Method of Healing*, pp. 157-171.

---

**4** Case 135] S.O.: *Observ.* XXXIX [Second Century], pp. 124-126. **8** he...diet] S.O. omits.

- 1: *Ante omnia, lenem primarum viarum evacuationem, per unc.i.s mannae in brodio dissoluta.*<sup>288</sup> Iussi herbarum agrimoniae, toto cichorii in iusculo: iii sedes.
2. Purgatus:
- 5 **R:** pilularum de paeonia dr.i, de succino, Ruffi ana sc.i, *cephalalgicarum Fernelii* unc.ii.<sup>289</sup> Cum aqua betonica fiant pilulae N.15. Capiat iii hora somni; mane sedes iii.
3. His finitis, usus pulvere carminativo post pastum ut folio /94/, addita diamoschu dulce sc.i.
- 10 4. *Rotulas capitales ordinavimus:*
- R:** *speciei diamoschu dulcis dr.i, olei nucis moschati per expressionem sc.i, olei succini albi gutt.iii, ambrae griseae gr.iiii, sacchari in aqua lavendulae soluti unc.4. Fiat confectio in rotulis, de quibus 2 vel 3 ieiuno stomacho sumantur.*<sup>290</sup> Quibus omnibus Deus ex alto
- 15 benedixit, et rescripsit se magnum capitis levamen habuisse horum usu.
5. Attamen venas haemorrhoidas sanguisugis apperiere vellem felici successu. His Deo Optimo Maximo annuente, Dominus de republica bene meritus perfecte curatus.
- 20 Pro preservatione autumnio sequenti, sequenti usus:
- R:** radice foeniculi, petrosellini ana unc.i, brusci, asparagi ana

<sup>288</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 104: 1. imbecillitas concoctionis adiuvetur: 2 caput et nervorum genus corroboretur: et 3. peccans causa, tam in capite recepta, quam recipienda, derivetur et revellatur. Quoad primam intentionem, ante omnia lenem primarum viarum evacuationem per unc.i.s. mannae in brodio prunorum dissolutae. | <sup>289</sup>see fn. page /19/. | <sup>290</sup>Horst: *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 105: Quoad secundum intentionem rotulas capitales ordinavimus, quae **R** spec. diamosch. dul. dr.i, olei nucis mosch. per express. sc.i, succini albi gutt.iii, amb. grys. gr.iiii, sacch. in aq. fl. lavend. soluti unc.iiii. F. confectio in rotulis, de quibus 2 vel 3 ieiuno stomacho sumantur.

1 1] in margin, as are numbers 2-5 below.



1. *First of all, a gentle evacuation of the main passages, with ½oz of manna dissolved in broth.* I prescribed herbs, agrimony and whole chicory, in broth: three stools.
2. He was purged:
- 5     **R:** pills - of peony 1dr, amber, Ruffus's each 1sc, Fernel's for headache 2sc. Make 15 pills with betony water. Take 3 before sleeping: three stools in the morning.
3. When these were finished, he used the carminative powder on page /94/ after meals, with added sweet diamoschu 1sc.
- 10    4. *We prescribed rolls for the head:*
- R:** powder for sweet diamoschu 1dr, pressed nutmeg oil 1sc, oil of white amber 3 drops, ambergris 4gr, sugar dissolved in lavender water 4oz. Make a confection in rolls, take two or three on an empty stomach. With all of these God blessed him from on high, and he
- 15    wrote back that his head was greatly relieved by their use.
5. Nevertheless, I wished the haemorrhoid veins to be emptied with leeches. This was happily successful. These, by the favour of almighty God the most high, perfectly cured one who deserved well of the people.
- 20       He used the following for prevention, the following autumn:
- R:** roots of fennel, parsley each 1oz, butcher's broom, asparagus

---

**3** three stools] *S.O.* omits.   **14** With...use] *S.O.* by which he found much ease.  
**17** These...19 people] *S.O.* omits.

unc.i.s, calami aromatici unc.ii, agrimoniae, betonicae, capillorum  
veneris ana M.s, radices enulae campanae dr.ii, passularum solis  
exacinarum M.i, glycyrrhizae dr.i, florum genestae, anthos ana  
p.i, seminum anisi, foeniculi dulcis ana dr.ii. Fiat decoctio in satis  
5 quantum aquae buglossi et boraginis pro lib.s. In hac decoctione  
infunde foliorum senae unc.s, rhabarbari pulverizati dr.ii, cinamomi  
sc.ii. Fiat infusio in cineribus per noctem. Mane cola, colaturae  
adde syrupi de cichorio cum rhabarbaro unc.ii.s, /123/ syrupi  
Augustani unc.i, olei vitrioli quantum satis ad gratam aciditatem.  
10 Divide in ii partes aequales et indatur phialis pro ii vicibus. Primo  
die 4 sedes, secundo 7.

Humore praeparato, sic purgatur:

℞: pilularum de paeonia dr.i, de succino, Ruffi ana sc.i,  
*cephalalgicarum Fernelii* sc.ii,<sup>291</sup> oleorum salviae, chynae gut.5. Cum  
15 aqua betonica, fiant pilulae N.15. Capiat iii hora cubitus, mane ii: 5  
sedes, et sic successive. Deinde utetur pulvere per folium /122/,  
addito pulveris diamoschu dulcis sc.i, confectionis alkermes sc.iii.  
Mane rotulam unam vel alteram (folio /122/) quibus addebam  
confectionis alkermes sc.i.

20 *Postmodum pristinae indies sanitati caepit restitui.*<sup>292</sup>

[Case 136] Febris 3<sup>a</sup> ardens.

Baronetus Clarke de Brome Court, circa aetatis annum 57, febre  
25 tertia ardenti corripitur, cum dolore stomachi et capitis. Urina

<sup>291</sup>See fn. page /19/. | <sup>292</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 217.

each 1½oz, sweet flag 2oz, agrimony, betony, maidenhair each ½  
handful, elecampane root 2dr, stoned raisins 1 handful, liquorice  
1dr, broom flowers, rosemary each 1 pinch, anise seeds, sweet  
fennel each 2dr. Make a decoction in sufficient bugloss and borage  
5 waters for ½ pint. In the decoction infuse senna leaves ½oz,  
powdered rhubarb 2dr, cinnamon 2sc. Make an infusion in the  
coals overnight. Strain in the morning, add to the strained liquid  
chicory syrup with rhubarb 2½oz, /123/ Augsburg syrup 1oz,  
sufficient oil of vitriol for a pleasant acidity. Divide into 2 equal  
10 parts and pour into vials for 2 doses: four stools from the first dose,  
seven from the second.

After the preparation of the humour he was purged thus:

R: pills - of peony 1dr, amber, Ruffus's each 1sc, *Fernel's for*  
*headache* 2sc, oils of sage, china 5 drops. Make 15 pills with  
15 betony water. Take 3 at bedtime, in the morning 2: five stools, and  
continue so. Then he is to use the powder as on page /122/,  
adding sweet diamoschu powder 3sc: in the morning 1 or 2 rolls  
(page /122/) to which I added alkermes confection 1sc.

*After a while, I restored him. He regained, day by day, his*  
20 *former health.*

[Case 136] Burning tertian fever.

Baronet Clark of Broom Court, about 57 years old: seized by a  
burning tertian fever with stomach ache and headache. Urine: red,

---

15 and continue so] S.O. omits. 22 Case 136] S.O.: Observ. XL [Second Century], p. 126.

rubra et vitreum fregit in finestra collocata.

*Huic utenti meo consilio ita tribus dierum spacio, sic per Dei gratiam subveni.*<sup>293</sup>

**R:** poculi chymici unc.s, oxymellitis nostri unc.ii: vomitus vii, sedes

5 viii. *Hoc epoto ore et alvo egressit plurima, et indies se omnia remiserere et ad sanitatem declinare.*<sup>294</sup> Die sequenti dedi decoctionem cornu cervi, de quo saepe in die caepit.

Summis laudibus decantabat, quibus Deus ex alto benedicat.

His per iii dies administratis, victusque ratione conveniente non

10 neglecta, pristinas vires optime recuperavit.

[Case 137] Anginae desperatae cura.

15 Comes Northamptoniensis circa aetatis annum 29, angina cruciatus cum inflammatione gutturis, interim febre comitante, *spiritus non nisi recte cervice trahitur, vox etiam laeditur,*<sup>295</sup> *aegre alimentum transglutire potuit.*<sup>296</sup> **/124/** *Multa in ore adest humiditas et viscositas [...] semper a fluxionibus malum originem habet, quae in*  
20 *hoc malo e venis iugularibus atque e capite ipso derivantur.*<sup>297</sup> *Eo enim magis periculosum hoc malum est, quo accidentia anginae*

<sup>293</sup>Rulandthe Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 198: Huic utenti meo consilio ita per Dei gratiam subveni. | <sup>294</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria IV', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 209: Haustu isto percolato ac epoto ore et alvo egressit plurima, et inde indies se omnia remiserere et ad sanitatem declinare. | <sup>295</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 156 | <sup>296</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 157: aegre alimentum potionemque transglutire potest aeger. <sup>297</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 157: multa tunc in ore adest humiditas et viscositas [...] Semper a fluxionibus malum istud originem habet, quae in hoc malo e venis iugularibus atque e capite ipso derivantur.

<sup>9</sup> His...recuperavit] See Case 127, p./114/. | victusque...recuperavit] Identical words as on p. /114/, Case 127.

and it broke the glass broke at the end of the collection.

*He followed my advice, so that through God's grace I rescued him within three days:*

**R:** the chymical cup ½oz, our oxymel 2oz: seven vomits, eight stools.

- 5 *After draining this, he discharged much upwards and downwards, and in a few days everything was ejected and he was bending towards health.* The next day I gave hartshorn decoction, which he took frequently during the day.

- He sang the highest praises of [these remedies] with which  
10 God might bless him from on high. After three days of treatment, not neglecting a prudent diet, he completely recovered his earlier strength.

[Case 137] Cure of a desperate quinsy.

- 15 The [second] Earl of Northampton, about 29 years of age: tortured by quinsy with inflammation of the throat, with an accompanying fever. *He does not draw breath unless his neck is straight. Even speaking is painful, and he could swallow food only with difficulty.*  
**/124/** *There is much damp and viscous stuff in his mouth. The*  
20 *original disorder always comes from their flows, which are derived in this misfortune from the jugular veins and head itself. For the disease is all the more dangerous to the degree that the character of the sore throat is more powerful, while on the contrary, as it is*

---

**1** and it broke the glass broke at the end of the collection] S.O. omits. **9** He... high] S.O. omits. **14** Case 137] S.O.: Observ. XLI [Second Century], pp. 126-128. **19** The... 148,1 dangerous] S.O. omits.

*fuerint fortiora, ut contra, quanto fuerint debiliora, tanto minus periculosum.*<sup>298</sup>

Imprimis *venae sectio eiusdem lateris statim ab initio morbi* sed ipse admittere noluit, sic ergo purgatus:<sup>299</sup>

- 5     **R:** foliorum senae unc.i, rhabarbari dr.iii, agarici dr.ii, cinamomi unc.s, seminum anisi, foeniculi ana dr.i, calami aromatici unc.s, liquiritiae dr.iii. Infundantur per horas 12 lege artis in aquae fontanae lib.iii. Bulliant deinde lento igne ad 3<sup>as</sup>. Coletur. Colaturae adde syrupi cichorii cum rhabarbaro, diaseros ana unc.i.
- 10    Fiat.
- R:** huius (quoniam erat ad manus) unc.4, syrupi diaseros, cichorii cum rhabarbaro ana dr.vi. *Misce. Aegre transmittere ob transglutiendi difficultatem potuit; sedes vi foetidas. A fortiter autem purgantibus abstinendum in principio mali,*
- 15    *humores enim potius exagitabuntur, eaque ratione ad locum affectum ut liberius fluant, occasio dabitur.*<sup>300</sup> Reiteretur purgatio: 8 sedes.

- Gargarismate hoc primis diebus uti iubebam [...]:* diamoronis simplicis, mellis rosati ana unc.ii, aquae matrisylvae, plantaginis,
- 20    hordei ana unc.4, oleorum vitrioli et sulphuris ana quantum satis ad acredinem. *Calide et in ore tamdiu detinebat et quantum fieri poterit, intimas faucium partes ea leviter colluet, id equidem praestat*

---

<sup>298</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, pp. 157-158: eo enim magis periculosum hoc malum est, quo accidentia anginae fuerint fortiora, uti contra, quanto fuerint debiliora, tanto minus periculosum. | <sup>299</sup>Bruele, *Praxis Mmdicinae*, p. 158: *venae sectio fiet eiusdem lateris statim ab initio mali in omne angina.*

<sup>300</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 159: *Conveniunt autem medicamenta liquida potius quam pilulae, cum eas ob transglutiendi difficultatem transmittere non possit. A fortiter autem purgantibus medicamentis hic consulto abstinebimus in principio mali, humores enim potius exagitabuntur, eaque ratione ad locum affectum ut liberius fluant, occasio dabitur.*

---

4 noluit] nolit.

*weaker so it is less dangerous.*

Most important is: *venesection immediately on the same side as the illness started*, but he refused and was therefore purged in this way:

- 5     ℞: senna leaves 1oz, rhubarb 3dr, agaric 2dr, cinnamon ½oz, anise and fennel seeds each 1dr, sweet flag ½oz, liquorice 3dr. Infuse for twelve hours by the usual method in spring water 3 pints, then boil on a slow fire, reduce to a third. Strain. Add chicory syrup with rhubarb, diasereos each 1oz to the strained liquid. Make it.
- 10    ℞: of this (since it was to hand) 4oz, diasereos syrup, chicory with rhubarb each 6dr. Mix. *He could scarcely get it down because of the painful difficulty in swallowing. Six foul-smelling stools. One should abstain from more powerful purges at the beginning of the illness, for the humours will be stirred up, and for this reason it*
- 15    *gives them an opportunity to flux more freely to the affected part.*  
Repeat the purge: eight stools.

*Gargle on the first days following as I prescribed:*

- ℞: mulberry simple, rose honey each 2oz, waters of woodbine, plantain, barley each 4oz, oil of vitriol and sulphur each sufficient
- 20    for sharpness. *Hold it in the mouth hot and the amount as much as possible for a long time. It will gently wash out the inmost parts of the pharynx; and indeed it is better that the humours do not run so*

---

**12** One...15 part] S.O. omits.

*ne humores ita libere in locum affectum irruant.*<sup>301</sup> Cataplasmate ex absinthio viridi et /125/ axungia adhibeto mane et sero, felici successu.

Nocte inquieta a remotione cataplasmatibus, petit consilium Dr Clayton Oxoniae, misit celeri cursu, omnes imminens periculum timebant. Phlebotomare noluit. Statim cataplasmate sequenti a dolore et periculo liberatus:

*R: nidi hyrundinis cum toto, nempe stramine, luto et stercore hirundinum, N.ii. Bulliant in oleo chamaemellino ac liliorum.*

10 *Pistentur et setaceo cribro transmittantur. Addendo stercoris canis ossa comedentis unc.i, farinae, seminis lini et foeni graeci ana unc.i, unguenti dialtheae, axungiae gallinarum ana unc.s. Fiat puls in modum cataplasmatibus. Loco calide admoveri iubebam, exoptato eventu.*<sup>302</sup>

15 Usus suffumigatio succini, et tempore somni in ore tenebat trochischum sublingualem talem:  
*R: succi liquiritiae, sacchari albi ana dr.i, seminum portulacae, cucumeris, meloni, citrulli mundatorum ana sc.i, amyli, tragacanthi ana dr.s, sacchari penidii sc.4. Fiat trochiscos.*

20 Pro uxore et aliis angina laborantibus trochiscos tales felici successu ordinabam:

<sup>301</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 160: gargarismate primis diebus uti poterimus, quod tempus principium morbi complectitur, et tam diu ore detinebat donec incalverit, et quantum fieri poterit, intimas faucium partes ea leviter colluet: id equidem praestat ne humores ita libere in locum affectum irruant.

<sup>302</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 261: *R* nidum hirundinis cum toto, nempe stramine, luto et stercore hirundinum numero.ii. Bulliant in oleo chamaemellino ac liliorum: pistentur, et setaceo cribro transmittantur, addendo stercoris canis ossa comedentis unc.ii, oesypi humidae unc.i, olei liliorum quantum sat. est. Fiat puls in modum cataplasmatibus, et loco affecto calide admoveri iubebam.

**8** nidi] nidum in both Hall and Vallerioli; but both specify two nests (numero ii) at the end of the sentence.



*freely in the affected area. Apply a plaster of green wormwood /125/ and fat in the morning and evening; happily successful.*

As the night was sleepless after removal of the plaster, he requested advice from Dr Clayton of Oxford, and sent [for him] at  
5 precipitate speed.<sup>27</sup> Everyone feared imminent peril.

He refused venesection but was instantly freed from pain and danger by the following plaster:

*R: two whole swallows' nests, including straw, dirt, and swallows' droppings. Boil in oils of chamomile and lilies. Pound them and filter  
10 through a sieve of bristles. Add droppings from dogs which have eaten bones 1oz, flour, linseed and fenugreek seeds each 1oz, marsh-mallow ointment, chicken fat each ½oz. Make a poultice in the form of a plaster. I prescribed it applied hot to the place, with the desired outcome.*

15 He used amber fumes, and before sleeping held a trochee of this sort in his mouth, under the tongue:

*R: liquorice juice, white sugar each 1dr, husked seeds of purslane, cucumber, melon, water-melon each 1sc, starch, tragacanth each ½dr, barley sugar 4sc. Make trochees.*

20 I have successfully prescribed trochees like these for [my] wife and others suffering from sore throat:

---

<sup>27</sup>Dr Thomas Clayton, M.D. (Oxon), 1575-1647: Raach, *Directory*, p. 36.

---

**4** Dr...7 plaster] S.O.: Dr Clayton from Oxford, yet would not be let blood, who prescribed the following cataplasm; [but see below: Hall takes the credit for the cure].  
**19** Make trochees] S.O.: for his wife and others **20** I] The recipe following is an interpolation without direct bearing on the present case.

℞: seminum papaveris albi sc.ii, gummi tragacanthi, Arabicae ana dr.s, seminum portulacae, meloni excortici, cucumeris, citrulli mundi ana dr.s, succi liquiritiae dr.s, sacchari rosati, penidii ana dr.ii. Cum syrupo de papavere fiant trochischi parvi.

- 5            Sed praescriptis contentus his solis ante adventum Doctoris.  
*Auxilium, Laus Deo Christo Iesu salvatori nostro optimo maximo  
praesens sensit, fauces apertae, tumor et inflammatio tonsillarum ac  
uvulae sublata atque facile traxit spiritum et facile glutivit, et mihi  
salarium magnum dedit, et postea saepe ingentes reddebat*  
10       gratias.<sup>303</sup>

Rite folio /126/ collocari loco:

Sed sequentem adhibebam (cataplasmate adhibeto, quae omissa fuerunt in folio praecedenti).

*Gargarismum:*

- 15       ℞: aquae plantaginis lib.i.s, scabiosae unc.4, florum rosarum  
rubrarum dr.i, corticis granatorum dr.s. Bulliant unica levi,  
ebullitione deinde colentur. Colaturae adde syrupi diamoronis, mellis  
rosati ana unc.ii. Misce.<sup>304</sup> Colluebat os cum hoc gargarismate  
saepe in die.

- 20            Deinde coch.semis sequentis eclegmatis deglutiebat:

℞: syrupi capillorum veneris, syrupi liquiritiae ana unc.s,

<sup>303</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum*, [...] *centuriae* p. 222: Sed auxilium, laus Deo Christo Iesu Salvatori nostro Opt. Max. praesens at valentissimum statim sensit ex solo oleo ligni Heraclii, de quo dabam dimidium cochlear, nimirum circa drach.iii quo fauces et partes affectas colluebat crebro, et mox sputum multum promotum, fauces apertae, tumor et inflammatio tonsillarum ac uvulae sublata, atque intra diei spatium evasit libera, facile traxit spiritum, et facile glutivit.

<sup>304</sup>Foreest, *De febribus ephemeris et continuis*, p. 97: hoc gargarismo ut uteretur iussi. ℞ aquar. plantag. lib.i flor. ros. rub. dr.i corticum granat. dr.s bulliant unica levi ebullitione, deinde colaturae adde diamoronis sy. granat. ana unc.i mis. pro gargarismate.

7 sensit] sentit. 11 Rite...loco] Hall must have completed the case report, then decided to add a treatment missing from the previous page.

**R:** white poppy seeds 2sc, gums of tragacanth, Arabian each ½dr, husked seeds of purslane, melon, cucumbers, water-melons each ½dr, liquorice juice ½dr, rose sugar, barley sugar each 2dr. Make small trochees with poppy syrup.

- 5           But in fact the Earl was satisfied with [the preceding] prescriptions alone, before the Doctor arrived. *He felt their present help, praise to God, Jesus Christ, our almighty and most high Saviour. His throat was opened, the swelling and inflammation of the tonsils and uvula lifted, and he breathed and swallowed easily.*
- 10       He gave me a large payment, and often afterwards thanked me greatly.

On the correct page: **/126/** put in place:

But I used the following, (applied as a poultice which was omitted from the preceding page).

- 15           *A gargle:*

**R:** *plantain water 1½ pints, scabious 7oz, red rose flowers 1dr, pomegranate rind ½dr. Simmer once, boil, then strain. To the strained liquid add mulberry syrup, rose honey each 2oz. Mix.* He rinsed his mouth with this gargle frequently during the day.

- 20           Then he drank half a spoonful of the following linctus:

**R:** maidenhair syrup, liquorice syrup each ½oz, cold diatragacanth

---

**5** the Earl was satisfied with the preceding prescriptions alone before the Doctor arrived] *S.O.*: but he contented himself with the former. **12** On...place] Hall had already concluded in his usual way, then added an omitted recipe, though its description (a poultice) does not match what follows.

diatragacanthi frigidi in tabulis dr.i.s, syrupi diamoronis unc.s,  
syrupi papaveris ad reprimendam salcedinem unc.s. Misce. Fiat  
eclegma.

Potus ordinarius pro uno die:

- 5    **R:** liquiritiae, seminum anisi, ficuum, passularum solis ana unc.i.  
Bulliant in lib.4 aquae fontanae ad consumptionem librae.

His cito, tuto, laus Deo, Comes curatus. Ruland dat *coch.s*  
*nimirum dr.iii olei ligni Heraclii, quo fauces et partes affectas*  
*colluebat.*<sup>305</sup> Arcanum.

10

[Case 138] Icteritiae citrinae cura.

Generosa Stoker, circa aetatis annum 44, pedissequa Generosae  
Sheldon de Weston, icteritia per totum corpus sparsa cum dolore et  
torminibus dextri lateris, in mortis periculo ab amicis diiudicatur.

- 15    **R:** electuarii de succo rosarum dr.ii, diacatholiconis dr.i.s,  
diaphaeniconis dr.ii.s, rhabarbari sc.i, spicae gr.v, syrupi cichorii  
cum rhabarbaro unc.s, aquae cichorii unc.iii. Fiat haustus: ii  
sedes.

- 20    Icteritia, constipatione ventris misere oppressa, nam semper  
alvus astricta. **/127/** Venae sectio ad unc.4 (nam in maiore  
quantitate nolem quia sanguis frenum cholerae). A vene sectione a  
dolore lateris liberata.

- 25    **R:** ammoniaci dr.i, oxymellitis unc.ii, aquae agrimoniae unc.i, et sic  
per 4 dies. Rite purgata. Gelatinum praescripsi ex rasura cornu  
cervi unc.i, lumbricorum N.10 cum singulis rubeis in collo et vino

---

<sup>305</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 222: ex solo  
olei ligni Heraclii, de quo dabam dimidium cochlear, nimirum circa drach.iii  
quo fauces et partes affectas colluebat.

tablets 1½dr, poppy syrup to reduce saltiness ½oz. Mix. Make the eclegma.

His ordinary drink for one day:

℞: liquorice, anise seeds, figs, raisins each 1oz. Boil in 4 pints

5 spring water until a pint is gone.

These, praise God, cured the Earl quickly and safely. Ruland gives *½ spoonful, equal to 3dr, of oil of hazel wood, with which he rinsed the throat and parts affected.* This is a secret.

10 [Case 138] Cure of yellow jaundice.

Mrs Stoker, a gentlewoman, aged about 44 years, companion to Mrs Sheldon of Weston: with jaundice spread over the whole body, pain and torment in the right side. Her friends judge her to be in danger of death.

15 ℞: electuary of rose juice 2dr, diacatholicon 1½dr, diaphoenicon 2½dr, rhubarb 1sc, spikenard 5gr, chicory syrup with rhubarb ½oz, chicory water 3oz. Make a draught. Two stools.

With the jaundice, she was wretchedly overwhelmed by abdominal constipation because her bowels were always bound.

20 **/127/** Venesection to 4oz (I did not wish a larger quantity, because 'blood is a restraint on choler'). The venesection freed her from the pain in the side.

℞: ammoniac 1dr, oxymel 2oz, agrimony water 1oz. Continue the course for four days. She was properly purged. I prescribed jelly of

---

**6** Ruland...8 secret] S.O.omits. **10** Case 138] S.O.: Observ. XLII [Second Century], pp128-129. **11** companion] S.O.: servant. **21** blood is a restraint on choler] S.O. omits [this a common comment in medical texts].

albo lotis. In lib.i.s aquae fontanae bulliant ad dimidium. In fine  
ebullitionis adde croci sc.i subtilissime pulverizati. Fiat gelatinum.  
Detur cochlearia bina in iusculo cum herbis chelidonii, cortice  
berberis, rosmarini et calendulae floribus. Potus: decoctio cornu  
5 cervi.

Potus sudoriferus talis:

℞: vini albi unc.4, aquae chelidonii unc.iii, croci dr.s, theriacae  
Andromachi dr.i.s, lapidis bezoar sc.s, succi stercoris anserini  
coch.iii. Fiat potus sudoriferus. Dosis unc.4, capiat ad 4  
10 matutinos.

Sero utetur sequenti electuario:

℞: santali rubri et albi dr.iii, passularum Corinthii in vino albo  
infusarum, post in cribro transmissarum unc.4, rhabarbari dr.i,  
croci sc.i. Misce, fiat electuarium. Dosis quantitas avellanae. His  
15 icteritia liberata.

Usu a meo consilio electuario sequenti per 10 dies:

℞: electuarii chalybeati unc.ii, rhabarbari pulverizati sc.iii,  
ammoniacy pulverizati sc.4, electuarii de tamarindo unc.s, diatrionis  
santalorum dr.iii. Misce, fiat electuarium. Dosis unc.s. Utetur  
20 exercitio.

His Deo soli laus esto, intra 20 dies a morte liberata.

[Case 139] Ulceris, gonorrhoeae virulentae cura.

25 Generosus Harvey, circa aetatis annum 65, Northamptoniensis, de

hartshorn shavings 1oz, worms 10, each one with red round the neck and washed in white wine. Boil in 1½ pints spring water, reduce to half. After boiling, add finely powdered saffron 1sc. Make jelly. Give two spoonfuls in broth with shoots of celandine, barberry bark, flowers of rosemary and marigold. Her drink: the hartshorn decoction.

A sweating drink of this sort:

**R:** white wine 4oz, celandine water 3oz, saffron ½dr, Venice treacle 1½dr, bezoar stone ½sc, juice of goose droppings 3 spoonfuls.

10 Make a sweating drink. Dose: take 4oz on four mornings.

She is to use the following electuary in the evening:

**R:** red and white sandalwood 3dr, currants soaked in white wine then sieved 4oz, rhubarb 1dr, saffron 1sc. Mix. Make the electuary. Dose: the amount of a hazelnut. These freed her from

15 the jaundice.

On my advice she used the following electuary for ten days:

**R:** steeled electuary 2oz, powdered rhubarb 3sc, powdered ammoniac 4sc, tamarind electuary ½oz, diatrion santalon 3dr. Mix. Make the electuary: dose ½oz. She is to take exercise.

20 These, to God alone be praise, freed her from death within twenty days.

[Case 139] Cure of an ulcer, virulent gonorrhoea.

Mr Harvey, Gentleman of Northampton, about 65 years of age:

---

**1** with red round the neck] *S.O.* omits. **23** Case 139] *S.O.*: *Observ.* XLIII [Second Century], pp130-131. **24** Mr...Northampton] *S.O.*: One of Northampton [it is not clear why this identity should be concealed.

ardore et stillicidio urinae cum ulcere in orificio vesicae conquestus.

**/128/** A me anno praeterito aqua stillititia lactis et albuminum  
ovorum cum malvia, qua usu longe melius se habuit. Multorum  
medicorum opiniones discrepantes habuit. Mea opinio nunc et ut  
5 antea quod ulcere sordido in canali vergae laborabat, nam pus in  
fundo matulae mucosum vidi, porro cum urina per penem vidi et  
ramentorum excretionem et tumorem sub scroto. Praeterea  
stillicidium et ardorem urinae in extremitate vergae sentiebat, cui  
sequentia remedia inveniebam.

10 Potio diuretica et cathartica: usus est potione terebinthinae ut  
folio /95/, per 8 dies. Potus ordinarius, cremor hordei seu potius  
aqua hordei cum malvia et liquiritia. Tempore huius *laminam*  
*plumbeam plurimis foraminibus perforatam, regioni renum applicare*  
*iubebam, saepiusque mutetur.*<sup>306</sup>

15 Die et nocte iniectionem sequentem ordinabam:  
*R: trochischorum alborum Rhazis sine opio dr.i.s, lapidis calaminaris*  
*(id est cadmiae fossilis), tutiae praeparatae ana dr.i, plumbi usti et*  
*loti aqua plantaginis, boli Armeni purissimi ana dr.ii. Fiat pulvis*  
*subtillissimus, cuius dr.i misceatur cum decocto sequenti, et iniiciatur,*  
20 *addendo dr.i mucilaginis gummi tragacanthi, factae cum aqua*  
*plantaginis.*

*R: ramulorum equiseti, foliorum plantaginis ana M.i, radicis*  
*consolidae unc.ii, rosarum rubrarum p.i, corticis granatorum dr.ii.*  
*Conquasantur, decoquantur in aqua chalybeata.*<sup>307</sup>

<sup>306</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 351: Lamini plumbea perforata plurimis  
foraminibus, renum regioni applicetur, saepiusque mutetur [see /109/, /110/,  
/119/. | <sup>307</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, pp. 781-782: **R** trochischorum  
alborum Rhazis sine opio unc.iii lapidis calaminaris, id est cadm. fossilis,  
tuthiae praep. an. dr.ii, plumbi usti et loti aqua plantag. boli Armenae  
purissimae an. unc.i. fiat pulvis subtillissimus instar alkool, cuius dr.i  
misceatur cum decocto sequente et iniiciatur, addendo dr.i mucilag. gummi



complained of burning and dribbling urine and an ulcer at the mouth of the bladder. /128/ The previous year I gave him distilled water of milk and egg white with mallow which made him much better. He received differing opinions from many physicians. My  
5 opinion, now as before, is that he suffered from a dirty ulcer in the penile urethra, for I saw mucous pus at the bottom of the chamber-pot. As he was passing urine, I saw little pieces being excreted with the urine from the penis, and swelling under the scrotum. In addition he felt the urine dribbling and burning at the end of his  
10 penis. I contrived the following remedies for these.

A diuretic and cathartic potion: he used the turpentine potion as on page /95/ for eight days. His ordinary drink: barley cream, or better, barley water with mallow and liquorice. At the same time  
15 *I prescribed lead sheet with very many perforations, to be applied to the area of the kidneys, and changed often.*

I prescribed the following injection for the day and night:  
*R: Rhazes's white trochees without opium 1½dr, calamine stone (that is, cadmium dug up), prepared tutty each 1dr, lead burnt and washed with plantain water, the most refined bole Armeniac each  
20 2dr. Make a very fine powder. Mix 1dr of it with the following decoction and inject, adding 1dr of gum tragacanth mucilage made with plantain water.*

*R: horse-tail fern twigs, plantain leaves each 1 handful, daisy roots 2oz, red roses 1 pinch, pomegranate rind 2dr. Beat, boil in steeled*

---

2 The...4 better] S.O. omits. 3 made...10 penis] S.O. omits. 4 He received differing opinions from many physicians] S.O.: omits. | My...10 these] S.O.: omits.

Sed finito lacteo illo liquore sequentibus usus est tabulis:

*R: trochischi de alkekengi cum opio unc.s, radice consolidae, terebinthinae coctione induratae ana dr.i, /129/ sacchari unc.ii.s. Cum infusione gummi tragacanthi fiant trochischi sc.ii ponderis.*<sup>308</sup>

5 Capiat cum lacte vel aqua stilliticia ovorum, mane per plures dies.

Fistulam plumbeam in virga immitti iubebam et ibi remanet quamdiu sinere potuit, vel *candelam ceream, tenuem flexilem et longam sensim in ductum hunc aliquoties intruderet, inunctam unguento de mineo vel rubro camphorato.*<sup>309</sup> In tumorem scroti per

10 plures dies decoctionem novam sarsaparillae pinsare iubebam et semper gestabat laminam plumbeam circa renes. Ab ardore urinae penitus liberatus.

Nunc gonorrhea lancinatus, cui pulverem sequentem per 10 dies praescripsi:

15 *R: sarsaparillae unc.i.s, corticis ligni guaiaci unc.s, cinamomi optimi dr.s gr.15, senae dr.ii, epithymi, radice ellebori ana dr.i, sacchari albissimi unc.ii. Misce, fiat pulvis et dividatur dr.i.s pro dosi, aliquando omitti elleborem et epithemem.*<sup>310</sup>

His recte se habuit, et Londinum equitabat. Nescio quo fato  
20 iterum repullulare incepit. Consilium eruditissimi Dominis Harvey

---

tragac. Facte cum aqua plantag. **R** equifeti fol. plantaginis fol an. M.i, rad. consolidae unc.ii, ros. rubr. p. i, cort. granat. dr.ii. conquas. decoquantur in aqua chalybeata.

<sup>308</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 761: **R**: trochisc. de alkekengi cum opio unc.i, rad. consolidae, terebinth. coctione induratae an. dr.ii, sacchari unc.v. Cum inf. gummi tragac. fiant tabulae sc.ii ponderis. | <sup>309</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 771: Postremo iussi, ut candelam ceream, tenuem, flexilem et longam, sensim in ductum hunc alio quousq. intruderet, inunctam balsam. | <sup>310</sup>Crato, *Consiliorum [...] liber secundus*, pp. 366-377: item in gonorrhoea virulenta, et similibus casibus. Descriptio haec est: **R**: salsae parigliae unc.iii, cortic. ligni guaiac. unc.i, cinnamon opt dr.i.s, senae oriental. el. unc.s, epithymi, rad. ellebori an dr.ii, sacchari albiss. unc.iii. Misc. fiat pulvis subtilissimus. et dividatur dr.i.s pro dosi. Potest etiam omitti elleborus et epithym.

water.

When the milky-white water was finished, he used the following tablets:

*R: winter cherry trochees with opium ½oz, comphrey roots, turpentine  
5 cooked dry each 1dr, /129/ sugar 2½oz. Make trochees with gum  
tragacanth, 2sc by weight. Take with milk or distilled water of eggs  
in the morning, for several days.*

I prescribed a lead tube to be placed in the penis, to remain  
there as long as he could hold it, or *a wax candle, thin, flexible and*  
10 *long, was slowly inserted into the channel several times, covered  
with ointment of red lead or red camphor.* For the scrotal swelling I  
ordered a fresh decoction of crushed sarsaparilla for several days,  
and he always wore a lead sheet over the kidneys. He was  
completely freed from the burning urine.

15 Now he was attacked by gonorrhoea, for which I prescribed the  
following powder for ten days:

*R: sarsaparilla 1½oz, guaiacum bark ½oz, best cinnamon ½dr 15gr,  
senna 2dr, dodder, hellebore root each 1dr, best white sugar 2oz.  
Mix. Make the powder and divide into 1½dr per dose. Sometimes*  
20 *the hellebore and dodder is omitted.*

These made him well, and he rode to London. It started again,  
by some fate unknown to me. He asked advice from the most

---

8 [... 12 days] S.O.: For many days a leaden pipe was put into the yard, and there kept (which was anointed with *ung. rubrum*). as long as he could. His cods being tumified, were anointed with *unguent. de minio*. 13 and...kidneys] S.O.: omits.

petebat, cuius consilio sequenti usus:

℞: trochischorum albi Rasis unc.s, trochischorum Gordoni sc.i,  
aloes optimi dr.ii.s, penidiorum dr.i.s, aquae plantaginis lib.s. Fiat  
iniectio.

5            Usus electuario quantitas fabae hora cubitus:

℞: trochischi alkakengi cum opio unc.s, syrupi ex succo limonum  
quantum satis, gummi tragacanthi, masticis cristallae praeparatae,  
coralli praeparati ana sc.i. Fiat electuarium. His iterum restitutus.  
His itaque omnibus rite administratis continuo ac expedite meire  
10        coepit ac belle habuit.

          Anno sequenti ad fontem St Vincenti equitabat et usu aqua.  
Optime fuit. De caruncula debilitate, a chyrurgo fistula ferrea  
laesus et iterum relapsus, quem nunquam postea curare potuit.

15

[Case 140] /130/ Matricis suffocatio et convulsio  
oculorum et menstruum obstructio.

1631 Februarii i: Generosa Maria Combes, opidana circa aetatis  
annum 13, duobus ab hinc annis lunarem evacuationem satis  
20        copiosam, singulis mensibus habuit; ab aetatis anno undecimo  
copiosa fluere incipiebant, nunc ob maerore et variolis retenti.  
Sentiebat primo in oculo dextro convulsionem levem (ut verbis eius  
utar, a twichinge as though hir eye was pulled inwarde, presently it  
would be gone), tandem ambo oculi convulsi cum summo capitis  
25        dolore. Cui *pilularum cephalalgicarum Fernellii* hora cubitus dr.s

---

18 1631 Februarii ij] in margin.

learned Dr Harvey, and followed his counsel:

℞: Rhazes's white trochees ½oz, Gordon's trochees 1sc, best aloes 2½dr, barley sugar 1½dr, plantain water ½ pint. Make an injection.

5           He used an electuary, the amount of a bean at bedtime:

℞: alkekengi trochees with opium ½oz, sufficient lemon juice syrup, gum tragacanth, prepared crystal mastic, prepared coral each 1sc. Make an electuary. These again restored him. After all of these had indeed been given, he began to pass water continuously and  
10           quickly, and was well.

          The next year he rode to St Vincent's well and took the waters. He was very well. On account of incapacity from a small growth [in the urethra], he was injured by a surgeon with an iron tube and relapsed again. He could never afterwards be cured.

15

[Case 140] /130/ Suffocation of the womb,  
          convulsion of the eyes and obstructed periods.

1 February 1631. Mrs Mary Combe, a gentlewoman of Stratford upon Avon, about the age of thirteen: her periods started two years  
20           previously, satisfactory in quantity and every month. They started to flow plentifully from the age of eleven years, now are held back by sadness and smallpox. First she felt a slight convulsion in the right eye (in her own words, 'a twichinge as though hir eye was pulled inwarde, presently it would be gone') then convulsions in both eyes  
25           with very severe headache. I prescribed *Fernel's headache pills* for

---

**16** Case 140] *S.O.*: *Observ.* XLIV [Second Century], pp. 131-133. **21** by sadness and smallpox] *S.O.*: omits. **23** a twichinge as though hir eye was pulled inwarde presently it would be gone] In English in the Libellus.

devorare iubebam,<sup>311</sup> ex quibus iii sedes, et sic die sequenti reiteratis pilulis. Tandem matricis suffocatione misere divexata. In ipso paroxysmo spacio 9 horarum cum levi intervallo remanebat.

Tandem nutu Dei et sequentis remediis, liberata:

- 5     **R:** fumum ungulae equinae. Dabam quoque aquam hystericam, in *Pharmacopoeiam Londinensis* descriptam,<sup>312</sup> coch.iii per intervalla ut capere potuit. Applicabam emplastrum hystericum infra umbilicum.

- Postremo unguento sequenti uti iubebam quo matricem  
10     perungi interius iubebam:

*R: musci gr.4, galliae moschati sc.i, olei lileorum quantum satis, vel unc.s. Misce, fiat unguentum, ex quibus expurgifecta et ad se reddebat.*

*Suffumigia ex quibus suffitus ad nares demittatur:*

- 15     **R:** castorei, galbani in aceto dissoluti ana unc.s, sulphuris unc.i, assae foetidae dr.i. Fiant trochischi cum oleo de castoreo.<sup>313</sup>  
  
/131/ **R:** pilularum de paeonia , de chamaepity ana sc.ii, olei salviae clyisiae g.v. Fiant pilulae N.10. Dentur hora somni iii, adde extracti hysterici sc.ii. Ex duabus pilulis devoratis, die sequenti v  
20     vel vi sedes.

Die sequenti, suffocatione matricis iterum gravata, sed paroxysmus fuit parvus, attamen spacio unius horae mutua in paroxysmo. Trochischis praedictis ignitis, naribus admotis, statim expurgifecta. Unguento quoque praedicto matricem inungere

---

<sup>311</sup>See page /19/ | <sup>312</sup>*Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*, p. 9. | <sup>313</sup>Rueff, *De Conceptu*, f. 83v: **R** musci sc.i, galliae muscatae dr.i, olei lilliorum unc.ii. Misce et fiat unguentum. Suffumigia quoque ex quibus suffitus ad nares dimittatur sic parata proderunt. **R** castorei, galbani in aceto soluti ana unc.s, sulphuris unc.i, assae foetidae dr.i. Si suffumigia vel trochiscos parare volueris, cum oleo de castoreo conficies.

this, ½dr to be taken at bedtime. This resulted in three stools, and the same the next day when the pills were repeated. Then she was wretchedly troubled by suffocation of the mother. The attack lasted for nine hours, with slight intervals.

5           Eventually, by the aid of God and the following remedies, she was freed:

**R:** fume of horse's hoof. I also gave water for the womb as described in the *Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*. She drank 3 spoonfuls, at intervals as she was able. I applied a plaster for the womb below  
10   the umbilicus.

          Finally I prescribed the use of the following ointment with which I ordered the womb to be anointed from within:

**R:** musk 4gr, musk galls 1sc, lily oil sufficient, or ½oz. Mix. Make the ointment, by which it was aroused and restored to itself.

15           *Fumigants, from which the fume is sent down to the nose:*

**R:** castor, galbanum dissolved in vinegar, each ½oz, sulphur 1oz, assafoetida 1dr. Make trochees with castor oil.

**/131/ R:** pills - of peony, of ground-pine each 2sc, oil of clary sage 5 drops. Make 10 pills. Give three hours before sleep, add water for  
20   the womb 2sc. From swallowing two pills, five or six stools the next day.

          The following day she was again weighed down by suffocation of the mother, but the attack was slight, though she was in the paroxysm for a whole hour together. The above trochees, burnt and  
25   applied to the nostrils, awakened her instantly. I also prescribed

---

**7** water for the womb] S.O. adds: now called *aq. brioniae compos.* | described... Londinensis] S.O. omits. **20** swallowing...pills] S.O. omits. **24** The... instantly] S.O. omits. **25** I...157,2 reluctant] S.O.: Inwardly were given two spoonfuls of *aq. brion. comp.*

iubebam. Duo cochlearias aquae hystericae dabam, se reluctante.

Nox quieta. Iterum pilulas ii devorare iubebam, hora cubitus.

Mane me veniente, de dolore stomachi et capitis conquesta.

Die 11 Februarii: febricula cum suffocatione parva afflicta. Ad  
5 praecautioem:

℞: extracti hysterici dr.ii. Cum aqua hysterica quantum satis, fiant  
pilulae 10. Dentur pilula i stomacho ieiuno, et sic recte habuit.

March 28: Iterum incidebat in hystericum passionem cum  
oculorum convulsione. Oculi convulsi per duos dies antequam  
10 hysterica passione gravata.

℞: pilularum de paeonia, chamaepity, hiera cum agarico ana sc.ii,  
pilulae de succino, Ruffi ana dr.i, extracti hysterici dr.ii. Cum aqua  
hysterica fiat massa, ex quibus fiant pilulae 5 ex dr.i, auro  
coopertae; iii dentur hora cubitus.

15 His ab hysterica passione liberata. Laus Deo.

[Case 141] Tumoris labri et naris rheumatis cura.

20 Filia primogenita Dominae Haringeton, post variolas, tumore naris  
et labri nunc buccae laborat, cum rheumate e capite distillante;  
circa aetatis annum 10.

℞: herbarum becabungae, nasturtii aquatici, cochleariae ana M.4,  
baccarum iuniperi lib.s, agrimoniae M.i, absinthii, cardui benedicti



the womb to be rubbed with the above ointment. I gave two  
spoonfuls of water for the womb, though she was reluctant: the  
night restful. Again I prescribed two pills to be taken at bedtime.  
When I came in the morning, she complained of stomach ache and  
5 headache.

11 February: She was vexed by a slight fever with a little  
choking. For prevention:

**R:** extract for the womb 2dr. Make 10 pills with sufficient water for  
the womb. Give 1 pill on an empty stomach. She became well.

10 28 March: She fell again into a uterine passion with  
convulsion of the eyes. She had convulsions of the eye for two days  
before being weighed down by the uterine passion.

**R:** pills - of peony, ground-pine, hiera with agaric each 2sc, of  
amber, Ruffus's each 1dr, extract for the womb 2dr. Make a mass  
15 with water for the womb, of which make 5 pills from 1dr; cover with  
gold. Give 3 at bedtime.

These freed her from the uterine passion. Praise God.

[Case 141] Cure of swelling of the lips and nasal  
20 catarrh.

Lady Harington's first-born daughter: after smallpox, suffers from  
swelling of the nose and lips and now the cheeks, with catarrh  
dripping from her head. About ten years old.

**R:** shoots of brooklime, watercress, scurvy grass each 4 handfuls,  
25 juniper berries ½lb, agrimony 1 handful, wormwood, blessed thistle

---

**4** she complained of stomach ache and headache] S.O.: I found her eased of  
her pain of head and stomach. **19** Case 141] S.O.: Observ. XLV [Second  
Century], pp. 133-134. **21** daughter] S.O.: son.

ana M.s. Bulliant in **/132/** congiis 5 cervisiae novae ad 4.

Colaturae recipe lib.ii, senae unc.ii, agarici unc.s, rhabarbari dr.ii,

sarsaparillae unc.ii, sassaphras unc.i, hermodactylis unc.i.s,

liquiritiae unc.i, polypodii unc.ii, seminum anisi, carvi, coriandri

- 5 ana unc.s, cinamomi dr.ii. Colentur. Colaturae adde sacchari quantum satis. Fiat syrupus. **R**: huius unc.xii, syrupi cichorii cum rhabarbaro unc.ii. Dosis coch.3 vel 4.

Pro labro, *aquam Mercuriali Rulandi* et lamina plumbea nocte adhibenda.<sup>314</sup> Potus cervisia praescripta.

- 10 *Hec cum continuassent, intra paucos dies sanatae simul labri ex toto.*<sup>315</sup> Anno sequenti me obiter videns, ingentes mihi gratias dabat.

Margaret Baker, aetatis 9, post variolas tumore nasi et labri defoedata, sequenti rite curata:

- 15 **R**: pilulae de succino dr.s. Fiant pilulae iii. Dentur hora somnis, et sic per 4 dies. Rite purgata. Labrum lavetur aqua Mercuriale Rulandi.

Rite curata.

- 20 [Case 142] Tormina ventris post partum.

Domina Rainsford, formosa et optima structura, 27 annos agens, interiectis tribus a partu diebus, tormine ventris misere lancinata, a quo ipsam vindicabam sequenti:

**R**: albi in gallinae stercore in birea cum saccharo ad pondus dr.i.

---

<sup>314</sup>There is a reference to this but without a recipe in Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 158, . There is also a recipe for *aqua Mercurialis Alex. Ped.* on p. 311. | <sup>315</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 158: hanc lotionem cum continuasset, intra paucos dies sanatae sunt manus ex toto.

---

**8** Mercuriali] ☿<sup>le</sup>. **16** Mercuriale] ☿<sup>le</sup>.

each ½ handful. Boil in /132/ 5 gallons new beer, reduce to 4.

Take 2 pints of the strained liquid, senna 2oz, agaric ½oz, rhubarb 2dr, sarsaparilla 2oz, sassaphras 1oz, colchicum 1½oz, liquorice 1oz, polypody 2oz, seeds of anise, caraway, coriander each ½oz, cinnamon 2dr. Strain. Add sufficient sugar to the strained liquid, make a syrup. **R:** of this 12oz, chicory syrup with rhubarb 2oz.

Dose: 3 or 4 spoonfuls.

For the lips: *Ruland's mercury water*. Wear a lead sheet at night. To drink: the above beer.

10        *When these had been continued, her lips were at once healed of everything within a few days.* The following year she saw me in passing, and thanked me greatly.

Margaret Baker, aged 9, was disfigured after smallpox by swelling of the nose and lips. She was properly cured as follows:

15        **R:** amber pills ½dr. Make 3 pills. Give before sleeping, and repeat for four days. She was rightly purged. Her lips were washed with Ruland's mercury water.

She was rightly cured.

20        [Case 142] Abdominal torment after birth.

Lady Rainsford, good-looking and of very fine structure, approaching 27 years: wretchedly attacked by abdominal torment three days after giving birth, from which I reclaimed her with the following:

---

**13** Margaret Baker] In Libellus this is part of Case 141, but S.O. separates it as Observ. XLVI [Second Century], p. 134. **20** Case 142] S.O.: Observ. XLVII [Second Century], p. 134.

Ventri quoque adhibere calide iubebam hoc:

℞: lactis noviter mulsi mellis ana lib.i, marrubii corticis M.i, farinae triticiae unc.iii, croci dr.i. Bulliant ad consistentiam cataplasomatis.

His a torminibus liberata.

5

[Case 143] Febris ardens continua, dolor capitis,  
haemorrhagia narum parva.

10 **/133/** Gratia Court, uxor pharmacopei, aetatis 27, ardenti febre  
eaeque continua, lumbagine, haemorrhagia narium parva, dolore  
capitis cum delirio parvo, gravissime afflicta. Iussi imprimis tundi  
venam et sanguinem extrahere ad unc.4 vel 5 (etiam si grvida  
spacio 14 septimanarum).

15 Eodem die cardiaco sequenti usa:

℞: cornu cervi praeparati sc.ii, speciei liberantis, pulveris Pannonici  
rubei, confectionis alkermes ana sc.ii, conservae berberorum unc.i.  
Omni 3<sup>a</sup> hora instar fabae devorabat.

*Potus nullus alius nisi sequens:*

20 *℞: aquae fontanae coctae lib.iii, syrupi granatorum unc.i.s, iulapii  
rosarum unc.ii, spiritus vitrioli guttas tot quot satis ad gratam  
acetositatem.<sup>316</sup> Plantis pedum, raphanum contusum sale et aceto  
rosaceo conspersum, 4<sup>a</sup> quaque hora adaptare vellem.<sup>317</sup>*

Pro linguae inflammatione gargarismum:

<sup>316</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 194: Potus nullus alius, quam sequens. ℞ aq. fontanae clarae lib.iiii, iulapii ros. unc.iii, spiritus vitriol. rectif. guttas tot, quot suff. ad gratam acetositatem [see also pp. /30/ and /259/].

<sup>317</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico* p. 168: plantis pedum raphanum minutim incisum et contusum, acetoque rosac. et sale conspersum tertia quaque hora adaptare [see also /143/].

R: the white of chicken droppings in beer, with sugar to the weight of 1 dr. I also prescribed this to be applied hot to her belly:

R: fresh milk mixed with honey each 1 pint, horehound bark 1 handful, wheat flour 3oz, saffron 1 dr. Boil to the consistency of a  
5 poultice.

These freed her from her torments.

[Case 143] Continual burning fever, headache,  
slight nose bleed.

10 **/133/** Grace Court, the apothecary's wife, aged 27: very severely afflicted by a burning and continual fever, lower backache, slight nosebleed, headache with slight confusion. First I prescribed opening a vein and taking 4 to 5 oz (although she was in the fourteenth week of pregnancy).

15 She used this for stomach problems, the same day:

R: prepared hartshorn 2sc, powder for liberans confection, red Pannonian powder, alkermer confection each 2sc, barberry conserve 1oz. She swallowed the amount of a bean every third hour.

20 *She drank only the following:*

*R: boiled spring water 3 pints, pomegranate syrup 1½oz, rose julep 2oz, spirits of vitriol the amount of necessary for a pleasing tartness. I prescribed bruised radishes sprinkled with salt and rose vinegar, applied to the soles of the feet every fourth hour.*

25 A gargle for inflammation of the tongue:

---

**6** torments] S.O.: adds: The translator hath freed several from this distemper with chamomel posset-drink. **8** Case 143] S.O.: Observ. XLVIII [Second Century], pp. 135-137. **10** the apothecary's wife] S.O.: wife to my apothecary [leaving open whether this means Cooke's or Hall's].

*R: aquae fontanae clarae lib.ii, iulapii rosacei unc.i.s, spiritus vitrioli guttas tot quot sufficit ad gratam aciditatem*<sup>318</sup> *diamoronis simplicis dr.vi, aceti rosati unc.i. Hoc saepe in die os eluebat, et phlegmatibus aestu densatis atque ibidem impactis, abstersis et sublatis nunc melle rosato nunc butyro aridiores partes oblinebat.*<sup>319</sup>

Carpes utrinque unguentum antifebrificum hoc applicare iubebam:

*R: unguenti populeonis unc.i, telas araneorum multas, nucis arboris parum. Misce.*<sup>320</sup>

10 *Pro dorsi dolore:*

*R: unguenti populeonis, rosarum ana unc.s, alabastrini dr.ii, olei nymphaeae dr.vi, camphorae sc.s. Misce. Sed quoniam non erant olea ad manus, sequenti usa:*

*R: olei scorpionis dr.ii, amygdalarum unc.s, cum unc.i unguenti rosati fiat.*<sup>321</sup>

*Pro dolore capitis oxyrrhodium tale, qua ascensus vaporum prohibeatur:*

*R: aquae rosarum, plantaginis, florum /134/ sambuci ana unc.iii, olei rosacei, aquae lactucis abluti aliquoties unc.i.s, pulveris santallorum rubrorum dr.i.s. Misce [...] intingantur panni linei et capiti*

<sup>318</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 194: Gargarismus ad faucium. *R* aq. fontanae purae lib.iiii, iulapii rosac. unc.iiii, ol. vitriol. rectific. guttas tot, quot suff. ad gratam acetositatem. | <sup>319</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 266: Hoc quotidie bis eluebat balneator os, faucesque, et phlegmatibus aestu densatis atque ibidem impactis, abstersis et sublatis, nunc melle rosato nunc butyro recenti aridiores partes oblinebat. | <sup>320</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 291 [see also /54/]. | <sup>321</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 142: Illinatur, si infestavit dolor dorsi: Oleo scorpionum, vel amygdalino cum ung. ros. Si adsit maximus calor *R* ung. ros. popul. ana unc.i, alabast. unc.s, ol. nymphaeae unc.i.s, camphorae sc.i. M.

*R: clear spring water 2 pints, rose julep 1½oz, sufficient drops of spirit of vitriol for a pleasing acidity, mulberry simple 6dr, rose vinegar 1oz. She washed her mouth often during the day and, the phlegm being thick and also impacted, she rubbed the dried parts*  
5 *alternately with rose honey and butter to cleanse and remove it.*

I prescribed this antipyretic to be applied on both wrists:

*R: populeon ointment 1oz, lots of spiders' webs, a little walnut. Mix.*

*For back pain:*

*R: ointments of populeon, rose each ½oz, alabaster 2dr, oil of water lilies 6dr, camphor ½sc. Mix. But since this oil was not to hand, she*  
10 *used the following:*

*R: oils of scorpions, 2dr, almonds ½oz. Make it with 1oz of rose ointment.*

*For headache, this sort of oxyrrhodinum, which prevented the rising*  
15 *of the vapours:*

*R: waters of roses, plantain, /134/ elder flowers each 3oz, rose oil, water of lettuce washed several times 1½oz, red sandalwood powder 1½dr. Mix. Soak linen cloths and apply to the head.*

---

14 oxyrrhodinum] A generic name for a mixture of oil and water of roses, not a specific remedy. See also /143/.

*apponantur.*<sup>322</sup>

Ne in carum incederet, usa est decoctione cornu cervi  
sequenti:

- R: aquae fontanae purae lib.ii, seminum et corticis citri ana dr.i, cornu  
5 cervi praeparati unc.s, speciei liberantis dr.ii. Coquantur ad lib.s  
consumptionem. Colaturae adde succi granatorum et saccharum  
quantum satis ad acetositatem suavem. Bulliant iterum,  
despumando semper, et purificentur cum albumine ovi. De hoc  
accipit, singulis diebus haustus tres, mane unum, et duabus ante  
10 prandium horis alterum, tertium ante cenam ii horis.*

- Ad cordis corroborationem et malignitatem citius debellandam,  
capiat omni die bis ieiuna ante haustus sumptionem de decoctione  
praedicto, magnitudinem nucis moschati alexipharmaci cordialis  
insequentis:*
- 15 R: rob ribum, conservae carnis citri ana unc.i, speciei liberantis,  
magaritarum praeparatarum, smaragdi praeparati ana sc.i. Cum  
syrupi granatorum, fiat electuarium molle. Vesperi tertium bibitura  
haustum decoctionis cornu cervi, tantundem capiat de electuario  
cordiali.*<sup>323</sup>

---

<sup>322</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, pp. 143-144: Alii ἀνακολλήματα parant, temporibus nec non fronti applicantes, quo ascensus vaporum prohibeatur. Huiusmodi est oxyrrhodinum ex oleo rosat. et quarta aceti parte confectum. Vel hoc: **R** aq. rosar. plantag. florum sambuci ana unc.iii, ol ros. aquae lactucae abluti aliquoties unc.i.s, pul. santalor. rub. dr.i.s. M. F oxyrrhodinum. [...] Intingantur linei panni et capiti apponantur. | <sup>323</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, pp. 246-247: **R** aq. fontanae purae lib.ii, sem. et cortic. citri ana dr.i, cornu cervini usti unc.s, specier liberantis dr.ii. Coq. ad lib.s consumptionem. Colaturae add. succi granatorum et saccha. q.s. ad acetositatem suavem; bulliant iterum, despumando semper, et purificentur cum albumine ovi. De hoc accepit singulis diebus haustus tres, mane unum, et horis duabus ante prandium alterum, tertium horis duabus ante coenam. Ad cordis corroborationem et malignitatem citius debellandam, capiat singulis diebus bis ieiuna ante sumptionem haustus de iulapio, magnitudinem nucis moschatae alexipharmaci cordialis insequentis: **R** rob ribum, conser carnis citri ana unc.i, specier liberantis dr.ii, margaritar. praeparat. smaragd praep. ana sc.i. Cum syrup. granator. fiat elect. molle. Vesperi tertium bibitura



So as not to fall into a stupor, she used the following  
hartshorn decoction:

*R: pure spring water 2 pints, seeds and rind of citron each 1dr,  
prepared hartshorn ½oz, liberans powder 2dr. Boil, reduce by ½  
5 pint. To the strained liquid add pomegranate juice and sufficient  
sugar for an agreeable tartness. Boil again, skimming all the time,  
and purify with egg white.*

*She took three draughts of this every day, one in the morning, the  
second two hours before lunch, and the third two hours before  
10 dinner.*

*To strengthen the heart and more quickly subdue the malice,  
take a draught of the above decoction every second day fasting  
beforehand, after the amount of a nutmeg of the following cordial:*

*R: blackcurrant juice, conserve of citron flesh each 1oz, liberans  
15 powder, prepared pearls, prepared emeralds each 1sc. Make a soft  
electuary with pomegranate syrup. She is to take a draught of the  
hartshorn decoction on the third evening, take just as much of the  
cordial electuary.*

Die 16: pulvis Pannonicus rubeus et postea glister:

℞: radicis altheae unc.i, herbarum 4 emollitivarum ana M.i, hordei p.i.s, cucurbitae unc.s. Fiat decoctio ad unc.12. Dissolvantur cassiae unc.i, mellis violarum unc.i, olei violarum unc.iii. /135/

5 Cum sale fiat glister.

Die 20 Iunii: evomebat vermem cum melancholia vitrea. Tunc dabam electuarium sequentem, instar fabae omni 3<sup>a</sup> hora:

℞: conservae rosarum vitriolatae unc.i, speciei diarrhodonis Abbatis dr.i, pulveris Pannonici rubei sc.i, conservae berberis quantum  
10 satis. Fiat electuarium.

*His remissionem paroxysmorum introduximus et illa mentis compos redderetur et brevi tempore convaluit, et his finem curae imposui.*<sup>324</sup> *Deo omnipotenti est gloria et honos in seculo seculorum.*<sup>325</sup> Amen.

15

[Case 144] Febris 3<sup>a</sup> notha, icteritia citrina, capitis dolor, lumbago, tormina ventris in gravida.

Comitissa Northamptoniensis, generosa ex nobile stirpe nata  
20 moribus, et educatione insignis *et omnibus naturae dotibus quae generosam mulierem decent, cumulati ornata, mireque formosa et pulchra*; gravida 7 menses, in febrem 3<sup>am</sup> notham incidebat.<sup>326</sup>  
Icteritia quoque citrina defoedata, torminibus ventris et capitis cruciata, lumbagine lancinata; circa aetatis annum 26.

---

haustum iulapii, tantundem capiat de electuario cordiali.

<sup>324</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 102: His remissionem gravissimorum accidentium introduximus, ut a aeger mentis compos vicissim redderetur.

<sup>325</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 555: Dei omnipotenti sit laus et honos et gloria in secula seculorum. | <sup>326</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 67: et omnibus naturae dotibus quae generosum hominem decent, cumulate ornatus, mireque facetus et comis [See also /139/].

16th: red Pannonian powder, and afterwards an enema:

**R:** marsh mallow root 1oz, the four emollient plants each 1 handful, barley 1½ pinches, gourds ½oz. Dissolve in it cassia 1oz, violet honey 1oz, violet oil 3oz. /135/ Make an enema with salt.

5            20 June: She vomited a worm with greenish bile. I then gave the following electuary, the amount of a bean every third hour:

**R:** vitriolated rose conserve 1oz, diarrhodon Abbatis powder 1dr, red Pannonian powder 1sc, sufficient barberry conserve. Make an electuary.

10            *With these we brought on a remission of the attacks, and returned to her possession of her mind, and in a short while she regained her health. By these I set the end of her cure. To God almighty be glory and honour for ever and ever. Amen.*

15            [Case 144] Bastard tertian fever, yellow  
                 jaundice, headache, lower backache,  
                 abdominal pain in pregnancy.

The [second] Countess of Northampton, a gentlewoman of noble stock, distinguished in character and education, *richly endowed*  
20            *with all the natural talents which adorn a well-born mother, and remarkably beautiful:* she fell into a bastard tertian fever when seven months pregnant. She was also disfigured by jaundice, tortured by abdominal pains and headache, and attacked by lower backache. Age: about 26 years.

---

12 To God almighty be glory and honour for ever and ever Amen] S.O.: omits.

15 Case 144] S.O.: Observ. XLIX [Second Century], pp. 137-139.

Meum petens consilium, sequenti usa. Purgare nolit nec vellem. Hora ante paroxysmum hypositaliam hanc praescripsi:

**R:** florum calendulae, rosmarini ana p.i., cardui benedicti p.s, florum et foliorum meliloti p.ii. Bulliant in satis quantum

5 possetalae ad lib.s. Capiat cum saccharo pauxillo, dimidium partem calide hora ante paroxysmum, ex qua paroxysmus retardatus spacio ii horarum. Tunc pullulare incipiebat, tunc alteram partem calide exhausit. A febre, horrore **/136/** et rigore liberata.

10 Tunc icteritia per urinam maxime apparebat, calore febris egregie urgenti, deinde sudore maximo erumpente, sed paroxysmus altero brevior. In calore febre et sudore, decoctionem cornu cervi ex succo limonum libere coepit. Aquam rosarum in decoctionem admittere nequit.

15 Die quietis omni 3<sup>a</sup> hora sequentem electuarium instar fabae devorabat:

**R:** conservae berberorum unc.s, pulveris Pannonici rubei sc.ii, postquam semel degustavit abhorrebat, nam crustas berberorum non placebat. Gelatinum habuit ex rasuris cornu cervi cum floribus  
20 calendulis et croco.

22 Iulii: ante paroxysmum habeat gr.5 lapidis bezoar, et hora ante paroxysmum hypositaliam ut antea. Nunc quoniam pedisequa dabat hora ante paroxysmum paene totam hypositaliam, et febre irruente parum, causam fuit ut horrore et rigore iterum afflicta.

25 Sed ardor et sudor cito evanierunt et paroxysmus brevior sex horarum spacio.

After seeking my advice, she used the following. She does not want to be purged, nor do I wish it. I prescribed this posset ale an hour before the attack:

**R:** flowers - marigold, rosemary each 1 pinch, blessed thistle ½ pinch, flowers and leaves of melilot 2 pinches. Boil in sufficient posset ale for ½ pint. Take half of it hot with a little sugar an hour before the attack. This delayed the onset of the attack for two hours. When it started to recur she drank the second half hot. She was freed from the fever, shivering **/136/** and rigors.

10 Then the jaundice appeared very strongly in her urine, the heat of the fever following on rapidly. Very severe sweating broke out but the second attack was shorter than the previous one. For the hot fever and sweating she took plenty of hartshorn decoction with lemon juice. She would not take rose water in the decoction.

15 She swallowed the following electuary on the quiet day, the amount of a bean every third hour:

**R:** barberry conserve ½oz, red Pannonian powder 2sc. But after taking it once she loathed it, because the barberry peels were unpleasant. She took jelly of hartshorn shavings with marigold and

20 crocus flowers.

22 July: before the attack she is to take bezoar stone 5gr, and the posset ale an hour before the attack, as before. Now, because her companion gave her nearly all the posset ale before the attack, and only a little when the fever started, she was again afflicted by

25 shivering and rigors. But the heat and sweating quickly passed,

---

**2** nor do I wish it] *S.O.* omits. **18** because...unpleasant] *S.O.* omits.  
**22** Now...24 started] *S.O.* omits.

23: hora 5 matutina die quietis:

℞: tincturae coralli, magisterii perlarum ana gr.4, lapidis bezoar gr.5, pulveris Pannonici rubei gr.12, hora ante prandium et hora ante cenam.

5            24: Hora tertia matutina ante paroxysmum ut antea, et hypositaliam praedictam, febris secula mitis.

Iulii 25: ut 23.

Die 26: Pedibus applicare iubebam calide absinthii, rutae, parthenii, urticae, ana partes aequales. Contundantur et plantis pedum applicantur, hypositaliam ut antea. Fronti, calore existente, 10            unguentum populeon cum opio. Dorso **/137/** emplastrum oxycroceum, ex quo dolor dorso penitus ablatum. Febris adeo obscura fuit, ut vix cognosceretur.

28:

15            ℞: cornu cervi praeparati, pulveris Pannonici rubei ana dr.s, aquae cardui benedicti unc.ii, syrupi papaveris rheadis unc.s, lapidis bezoar gr.4. Misce. Detur quinta hora ante paroxysmum, et herbae plantis pedum applicentur.

Calore veniente:

20            ℞: syrupi papaveris unc.i, limonum unc.s, aquae scabiosae unc.ii, olei vitrioli gut.5, aquae celestis gut.vii. Misce.

Quibus paucissimis remedii intra 12 dies nobilis Comitissa optime convaluit, et *a saevissimo et exitiali morbo liberata est. Deo optimo et misericordissimo, laus soli esto.*<sup>327</sup>

25            Augusti uno: Frigore accepto, relapsa. Herbae pedibus

---

<sup>327</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 226: a saevissimo ac exitiali morbo liberatus est. Deo opt. et misericordissimo laus soli esto.

and the attack lasted less than six hours.

23rd: at five o'clock on the quiet day:

℞: coral tincture, magisterium of pearls each 4gr, bezoar stone 5gr,  
red Pannonian powder 12gr: an hour before lunch and an hour  
5 before dinner.

24th: at 3 o'clock in the morning before the attack: as before,  
and the above posset ale. The fever was mild at the time.

25th: as on 23rd.

26th: I prescribed wormwood, rue, feverfew, nettles in equal  
10 amounts, to be applied hot to her feet. Bruise and apply to the  
soles of the feet; the posset ale as before. For the forehead, as the  
heat came on: populeon ointment with opium. For the back: **/137/**  
oxycrocium plaster, which entirely removed the backache. The fever  
was so faint that it could hardly be detected.

15 28th:

℞: prepared hartshorn, red Pannonian powder each ½dr, water of  
blessed thistles 2oz, field poppy syrup ½oz, bezoar stone 4gr. Mix.  
Give five hours before an attack, and apply the herbs to the soles of  
the feet.

20 When the heat is returning:

℞: syrup of poppies 1oz, of lemons ½oz, scabious water 2oz, oil of  
vitriol 5 drops, caelestis water 7 drops. Mix.

The noble Countess was completely healed by these very few  
remedies with twelve days, and *was freed from a most savage and*  
25 *deadly illness. Praise be to God alone, the highest and most merciful.*

---

**10** Bruise...feet] S.O. omits. **24** and<sup>1</sup>...merciful] S.O. omits.

applicatae duabus horis ante paroxysmum. Pulsibus:

*R: unguenti populeonis unc.s, telas araneorum multas, nucis arboris parum,<sup>328</sup> quae exterius motum caloris inhibeat, nimirum pulsibus ac temporibus populeum cum telis araneorum tempore paroxysmi, addita bombacis portiuncula appositum* - Gregor Horst.<sup>329</sup>

In rigore:

*R: aquae bezoarticae coch.s, lapidis bezoar gr.5, succi limonum coch.ii, ii horas ante paroxysmum. Calore veniente, unguenti populeonis unc.s, opii in aqua rosarum dissoluti sc.s, temporibus applicatum.*

Nobilis Domina cum gravissime iterum febre conflictata, his remediis curata cito, tuto, et valetudine firma potita est et gaudet. Postea filiam peperit formosam, et me obiter illuc veniente in ulnis filiam formosam gestantem vidi, et dixit Deo et mihi gratias pro ea dabat, nam sentiebat se vivere non potuisse.

[Case 145] **/138/** Haemorrhoidarum caecarum inflammatio.

Theologus Fosset circa aetatis annum 55, vir doctrina insignis; *cruciabatur infestissimo et intolerabili haemorrhoidum dolore. Ad quem sublevandum [...] multa, variaque auxilia frustra adhibuit.*

---

<sup>328</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 291 [See also /54/, 133/].

<sup>329</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 59:[see also preceding fn. and /54/, /133/].



1 August: she relapsed after catching cold. The herbs were applied to her feet two hours before the attack. To the pulses:

*R: populeon ointment ½oz, a lot of spider webs, a little of a walnut tree, which restrained the outward movement of the heat. Populeon with spider webs was definitely applied to the pulses and temples, spread on a small piece of cotton - Gregor Horst.*

For the rigor:

*R: bezoar water ½ spoonful, bezoar stone 5gr, lemon juice 2 spoonfuls, two hours before the attack. When the heat is coming on apply to the temples populeon ointment ½oz, opium dissolved in rose water ½sc.*

The noble Lady, struck a second time with this most severe fever, was quickly and entirely cured by these remedies, and attained sound good health, and rejoices. She bore a beautiful daughter afterwards and, meeting in passing, I saw her carrying her beautiful daughter in her arms. She declared that she gave thanks to God and to me for her, because she had not thought that she could survive.

[Case 145] /138/ Inflammation of internal haemorrhoids.

The Reverend Fawcet, about 55 years old, a man distinguished for his learning: *tortured by most dangerous and intolerable pain of the haemorrhoids. To help himself he tried many different remedies in*

---

**1** 1 August] S.O. August 5th. **3** walnut tree] Perhaps meaning the bark or wood rather than the nut. **4** which... **6** Horst] S.O.: Her temples were anointed with populeon. **14** She... **16** arms] S.O.: After she was brought to bed with a daughter, which I saw in her arms. **16** She... **18** survive] S.O. omits. **20** Case 145] S.O.: Observ. L [Second Century], p. 139.

*Tandem ad me veniens, questus mihi est de hoc occulto malo multa.*

*Pro quo tollendo*<sup>330</sup> *fotum lactis calidi, deinde tepide applicetur oleum sequens:*

**R:** *olei seminum lini unc.ii, sambucini unc.i. Misce. Applicetur parum cum linteis duplicatis.*

Nocte dieque:

**R:** *tapsivalentia quantum satis et inungatur. A toto refraenatus.*

Unguentum:

**R:** *unguenti populeonis unc.i, opii torrefacti pulverizati sc.i. Misce.*

- 10 *Applicetur parti.*<sup>331</sup> *Sed Rodericus a Fonseca oleum buxi commendat, et est, inquit, instar omnium. Est enim narcoticum, et sicut dentium dolores quo vis ad miraculum usque sedat, ita et reliquos dolores et praesertim hunc haemorrhoidum sedare solet, si illius gutta una vel altera supra haemorrhoides apponatur, cum stilo gossipio involuto. Item si cum oleo seminis lini misceatur, ut ad unc.s*
- 15 *olei, sc.i olei buxini misceatur [...] vel misceantur flores sulphuris cum terebinthina multoties in aqua rosacea lota, et loco balsami sulphuris imponatur. Habet vim dissoluendi, laxandi et aperiendi haemorrhoides caecas, ut effundant sanguinem quod precipue*
- 20 *procurari solet in hoc affectu.*<sup>332</sup>

<sup>330</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria I', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 52: cruciabatur infestissimo et intolerabili haemorrhoidum dolore: ad quem sublevandum medicus alius ipsi multa, variaque auxilia frustra adhibuit. Tandem ad me veniens, questus mihi est de hoc occulto malo multa: pro quo tollendo balsamum sulphuris. | <sup>331</sup>Rodrigo de Fonseca, *Consultationes*, p. 96.

<sup>332</sup>Rodrigo de Fonseca, *Consultationes*, p. 97: Est enim narcoticum: et sicuti dentium dolores quos vis ad miraculum usq; sedat, ita et reliquos dolores, et praesertim hunc haemorrhoidum sedare solet, si illius gutta una supra haemorrhoides apponatur, cum stylo gossipio involuto. Item si cum oleo seminis lini misceatur, ut ad unciam semis praedicti olei sc.i olei buxini misceatur. Quod si supradictum balsamum sulphuris non reperitur, misceantur flores sulphuris cum terebinthina multoties in aqua rosacea lota, et loco balsami sulphuris imponatur. Habent n. haec vim dissoluendi, laxandi

**16** *sulphuris]* ♀. **17** *sulphuris]* ♀.

*vain. He finally came to me and complained a lot about this hidden mischief.*

*To relieve it, apply hot milk kept warm, then tepid, then the following oil:*

- 5     *R: linseed oil 2oz, and elder oil 1oz. Mix. Apply a little with a folded cloth.*

*Night and day:*

*R: sufficient tapsi valentia and rub in. Everything was entirely curbed.*

- 10     *An ointment:*

*R: populeon ointment 1oz, 1oz, dried powdered opium 1sc. Mix.*

*Apply to the part. Rodericus de Fonseca though, recommends box-tree oil, and says it is the equal of anything. It is a narcotic, even for toothache, which it always allays wonderfully by its strength. It*

- 15     *alleviates both other pains and is especially good at allaying that of haemorrhoids if a drop or two is put on them with a pen wrapped in cotton wool. Also it may be mixed with linseed oil, mixing up to 1oz with 1sc of box-tree oil. Alternatively, flowers of sulphur with*
- 20     *turpentine washed many times in rose water, and apply it in place of balsam sulphur. It has power to melt away, loosen and open internal haemorrhoids so that they drain blood, because one should be in the habit of attending to this especially in this condition.*

---

<sup>12</sup> Rodericus...22 condition] S.O.: omits.

Sed praedicto a dolore liber sanusque factus.

[Case 146] /139/ Pulmonis suffocatio.

Anna Warda opidana, honesta, formosa, pia, religiosa, *tam ore quam*  
5 *a/vo* nigra evacuabat.<sup>333</sup> Postea suffocatione pulmonum  
strangulata, ut omnes mortem expectabant. Loqui non potuit,  
anhelitus emittebat sonoriferum, et sic per horam. Me domum  
veniente, me vocabant parentes. Statim orificio stomachi  
curcubitulam magnam applicabam, et incantamenti similiter  
10 articulate loqui potuit, et sic bis ante Generosae Goodyear et  
Generosae Savage quae in mortis periculo ab omnibus relictæ.

Nocte rotulam pectoralem nostram in ore tenere iubebam.

Glistere:

*R: olei carminativi Quercetani diacolocynthidos unc.ii*, decoctionis  
15 carminativum pro glistere lib.s.<sup>334</sup> Sedes ii.

Die sequenti:

*R: electuarii de tamarindo unc.s*, de succo rosarum unc.iii, tartari  
cremoris sc.i. Cum saccharo fiat bolus: 8 sedes.

*Curata, et artis laudum maxima evasit buccinator.*<sup>335</sup> Laus  
20 Deo.

[Case 147] 1632. Melancholia ex utero,  
menstrua alba cum uterinis doloribus.

---

et aperiendi hemorrhoides caecas, ut effundant sanguinem quod precipue  
procurari solet in hoc affectu.

<sup>333</sup>See fn. p. /11/. | <sup>334</sup>Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, pp. 135-  
136. | <sup>335</sup>Amatus Lusitanus, *Curationum [...] centuriae duae*, p. 325: et artis  
laudum maximus evasit buccinator [see also p. /147/.

---

17 tartari] ♀.

And so he was freed from the above pain, and made healthy.

[Case 146] /139/ Choking of the lungs.

Anne Ward of Stratford upon Avon, respected, good-looking,  
5 devoutly pious: passed black matter *upwards and downwards*.  
Afterwards she felt strangled with choking of the lungs, so that  
everyone expected her death. She could not speak, breathed with  
loud gasps and continued so for an hour. Her parents called me as  
I was coming home. I at once applied a large cupping glass to the  
10 mouth of the stomach, and as if by a spell she was able to speak  
distinctly. (Twice before it was the same, with Mrs Goodyear and  
Mrs Savage gentlewomen, whom everyone had forsaken in peril of  
death).

I prescribed our pectoral roll to be held in the mouth at night.

15 An enema:

℞: *Du Chesne's carminative diacolocynth oil* 2oz, the carminative  
decoction for enemas ½ pint: two stools.

The next day:

℞: electuaries of tamarinds ½oz, of rose juice 3oz, cream of tartar  
20 1sc. Make a bolus with sugar: eight stools.

She was cured, *and became the greatest trumpeter of praises of  
the art*. Praise God.

[Case 147] Melancholy from the womb, white

25 discharge with uterine pains.

---

**3** Case 146] S.O.: Observ. LI [Second Century], pp. 139-140. **4** respected  
good-looking] S.O.: omits. **10** as if by a spell] S.O.: omits. **16** diacolocynth]  
S.O.: *diacathol*. **21** trumpeter of praises of the art] See also page /147/.  
**24** Case 147] S.O.: Observ. LII [Second Century], pp. 140-141.

Generosa Finnes, nobilis ex praesapia Baronis de Wimbelton,  
annorum 22, uxor filii primogeniti vicecomitis Say et Seale; pia,  
formosa, religiosa, si quae altera mirae indolis *et omnibus naturae*  
*dotibus quae nobilem mulierem decent cumulate ornata*.<sup>336</sup> His

5 symptomatibus misere afflicta: menstrorum obstructione spacio  
duorum mensium, et cum tempore idonea **/140/** et quantitate  
laudabili fluebant, malum colorem aqueum habuerat, cum summis  
uterinis doloribus.

Praeterea anhelitu difficili cum cordis tremore et palpitatione  
10 quasi pectus rumperetur. Post somnum aegrotat cum ventris  
tormine, et circa umbilicum rasionem sentit, sed misere his  
doloribus circa tempus fluendorum menstruorum afflicta. Flatu  
rumpante, longe melius.

Praeterea rem duram in ventre sentit movere, sicut infans, sed  
15 pannis callidis applicatis, dolor flatu removetur. Dolo splenis  
cruciata, alborum fluxu demaciata, lumbagine gravata, levi vertigine  
afflicta, ita ut huc et illuc quasi temulenta movet et sentit domum  
circulariter moveri.

Praeterea scorbutu per longum tempus emaciata. *Cum ad eam*  
20 *in lecto decumbentem venissem ac omnia symptomata iudicassem*,<sup>337</sup>  
iudicabam ex scorbutu originem malorum ortam, *quorum malorum*  
*curam talem in nomine Dei capessebam*.<sup>338</sup>

**R**: pilularum de succino dr.ii, Ruffi dr.i. Fiant pilulae N.5 ex  
drachma. Capiat iii hora cubitus, mane ii. *Harum pilularum multa*

<sup>336</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 67: et omnibus naturae dotibus  
quae generosum hominem decent, cumulate ornatus [See also p. /135/].

<sup>337</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum*, p. 146: cum ad eum in lecto  
decumbentem venissem, ac morbum eiusque accidentia iudicassem. | <sup>338</sup>

Ruland, 'Centuria II', *Curationum*, p. 148: quorum malorum curam talem  
capessebam [also p. /147/].

Mrs Fiennes, a gentlewoman of the noble stock of Baron  
Wimbledon, 22 years, wife of the first son of Viscount Saye and  
Seale, devoutly pious, good-looking, as full of remarkable inborn  
qualities as anyone and *richly endowed with all the natural talents*  
5 *which adorn a noble woman*: has been wretchedly afflicted by these  
symptoms - menstrual blockage for two months. At the time they  
flowed /140/ in laudable quantity, they had a bad watery colour,  
with very severe uterine pain.

In addition there is shortness of breath with trembling of the  
10 heart, and palpitations as if her chest is going to crack. She is  
unwell with abdominal pain after sleeping, and feels a tearing  
sensation round the umbilicus. She was wretchedly afflicted with  
these pains around the time of her menstruation. She feels much  
better after passing wind.

15 She also feels something hard moving in her belly, like an  
infant, but the application of hot cloths removes the pain with the  
wind. She is tortured by splenic pain, emaciated by the white flux,  
weighed down by lower backache, afflicted with slight giddiness so  
that she staggers as if drunk and feels the house spinning round  
20 her.

She had also been emaciated by scurvy for a long time. *When*  
*I had visited her, lying in bed, and studied all the symptoms*, I judged  
that the origin of the evil had its roots in scurvy, *of which I*  
*undertook the cure in this way, in God's name*:

25 **R**: pills - of amber 2dr, Ruffus's 1dr. Make 5 pills from a drachm.

---

<sup>1</sup> of<sup>1</sup> ...5 woman] S.O.: wife to the Lord Say's eldest son, a very religious excellent woman.

*et felici operationem statim revallescebat optime.*<sup>339</sup>

Pro flatu:

**R:** speciei pleres archonticonis unc.i, sacchari rosati unc.4. Misce.

Capiat post pastum coch.s. Horum usu menstrua laudabili

5 quantitate erumpebant.

Rescripsit die 16, quod massas carneas multas instar hepatis  
e matrice expellebat cum torminibus sicut in partu, quae in aqua  
dissolvere nolent. Ad matricem mundificandam pilulis sequentibus  
usa:

10 **/141/ R:** pilulae hierae cum agarico, de succino ana dr.i.s,  
terebinthinae Cypri, pilularum Ruffi ana dr.s. Fiant pilulae N.20.  
Dentur iii hora somni, mane ii, cum custodia. His finitis, capiat  
dr.ii electuarii pleres archonticonis et utetur exercitio.

March 5: pro 4 matutinis capiat dr.i tartari cremoris in  
15 iusculo. Hora elapsa, aquae nostrae chalybeatae sic compositae:  
**R:** *olei sulphuris partem. i, spiritus vini partes ii. Bulliant in spatha  
ceu capula ferrea noviter fabrefacta, evaporando lento igne ad  
consumptionem humiditatis [...] hunc pulverem servabis in phialis  
optime clausis ne aer intret, quia resolveretur.*<sup>340</sup>

20 **R:** huius pulveris dr.ii, impone in unc.4 aquae agrimoniae, et  
macerentur super cineres calidos. Usa est: **R:** huius aquae unc.s in  
iusculo, et utetur exercitio. Primo die evomebat, ut saepe accidet 2<sup>a</sup>

<sup>339</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 142: huius  
potionis multa et felici operatione statim revallescebat optime ac quasi  
miraculose. | <sup>340</sup>Béguin, *Tyrocium chymicum*, pp. 389-390: Crocus Martis  
etiam cum oleo sulphuris sit: infundendo in cochlear ferreum, olei sulphuris et  
spiritus vini partes aequales, evaporando lento calore, ad consumptionem  
humiditatis: postea si resideat ad aliquot dies, invenies pulverem  
subtilissimum quem servabis in phialis optime clausis, ne aer intret, quia  
resolveretur. [Béguin gave du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, p. 244 as  
his source, but Hall's wording is closer to Béguin's].

14 tartari] ♀.



Take 3 at bedtime, 2 in the morning. *She grew very well again at once by the intense and happy working of these pills.*

For wind:

**R:** pleres archonticon powder 1oz, rose sugar 4oz. Mix. Take ½  
5 spoonful after meals. After using these, her menstruation restarted in laudable quantities.

She wrote on the 16th, because she expelled large fleshy masses like liver from her womb with pain as if in labour. These would not dissolve in water. She used the following pills to clean  
10 the womb:

**/141/ R:** pills - hiera with agaric, amber each 1½dr, Cyprus turpentine, Ruffus's each ½dr. Make 20 pills. Give 3 at bedtime, 2 in the morning with an attendant. When these are finished take 2dr of pleres archonticon electuary, and take exercise.

15 5 March: Take cream of tartar 1dr in broth, for four mornings, an hour later our steeled water made in this way:

**R:** *oil of sulphur 1 part, wine spirit 2 parts. Boil in a pan or newly made iron cup, evaporate on a slow fire until the moisture is gone. You are to store this powder in vials, very well closed lest air gets in,*  
20 *because that melts it.*

**R:** of this powder 2dr, place in agrimony water 4oz, and soak over hot coals. She used: **R:** of this water ½oz in broth, and she is to take exercise. She vomited, as it often provokes, on the first day

---

<sup>9</sup> would not dissolve in water] Demonstrating that they were solid matter, not blood clots.

vel 3<sup>a</sup> die non provocat. *Verum hepatis restaurativum, conducetque omnibus morbis qui inde oriuntur, ut hydropisi et cachexia et morbo virgineo.*<sup>341</sup> Usa per 15 dies.

5 Emplastrum ex ammoniaco Foresti et oxycrocei syndone flava subducatur, et spleni apponetur. Usa est omni die pleres archonticono cum saccharo, et birea antiscorbutica non neglecta, ut folio 3. Diacubebe dr.ii, mane.

Horum usu, *quasi miraculose revallescebat, quod soli Deo operanti omnia in omnibus adscribendum est, cuius nomen*  
10 *benedictum sit in infinita secula.*<sup>342</sup>

[Case 148] Vermes, lumbago, dolor lateris, febris.

[xxxx ob 53].

Francisca Finch, opidana aetatis 47, de praedictis conquesta. Sic,  
15 laus Deo, gratis curabam:

**/142/ R:** pulveris Dudliani, scammonii praeparati ana gr.14, tartari cremoris gr.10, aquae boraginis unc.i.s, syrupi rosarum coch.s.

Deiicit 4<sup>tus</sup> cum vermium minorum copia. Die sequenti reiteretur.

Curata.

20

[Case 149] Delirium in puerpera.

---

<sup>341</sup>Béguin, *Tyrocium chymicum*, p. 390: Si aliquot grana in iusculo sive liquore congruo dentur, verum hepatis restaurativum erit, conducens omnibus morbis, qui inde oriuntur, ut hydropisi et similibus. | <sup>342</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curatiorum [...] centuriae*, p. 142.

---

**13** xxxx ob 53] in margin [reading *obiit* 53 does not fit the patient's dates, nor is a reference to case 53 feasible, as it is very different]. **16** tartari] ♀.

but not on the second and third. *This is a true restorative of the liver, and it will collect all the illnesses flowing from there, such as dropsy and wasting and the green sickness.* She took it for fifteen days.

- 5            Spread plasters - Foreest's ammoniac, oxycrocium - on yellow silk, and apply to the spleen. She took pleres archonticon with sugar every day, nor did she neglect the antiscorbutic beer as on page /3/, diacubebs 2dr, in the morning. By using these *she grew well again as if by a miracle, which should be ascribed to the work of*
- 10    *God alone, whose name be blessed through endless ages.*

[Case 148] Worms, lower backache, pain in the side, fever.

- Frances Finch of Stratford upon Avon, aged 47, complained of the
- 15    above. I cured her in this way, praise God, without payment:
- /142/ R:** Dudley's powder,<sup>28</sup> prepared scammony each 14gr, cream of tartar 10gr, borage water 1½oz, syrup of roses ½ spoonful. She evacuated four times with a great many small worms. It was repeated the next day.
- 20            Cured.

[Case 149] Frenzy after childbirth.

---

<sup>28</sup>Dudley's powder: the author of a famous powder, called, pulvis comitis Warwicensis, or the Earl of Warwick's powder; *A New and General Biographical Dictionary*, Vol.5, p. 8; Sir Robert Dudley was the illegitimate son of the first Earl of Leicester (DNB).

---

**5** Foreests] S.O.: Fernel's. **8** By... 10 ages] S.O.: By these she was cured. **12** Case 148] S.O.: Observ. LIII [Second Century], p. 142. **20** Cured] S.O.: adds notes on similar treatments. **22** Case 149] S.O.: Observ. LIV [Second Century], pp. 142-143.

Generosa Jacksune, religiosa, uxor theologi iunioris, circa aetatis  
annum 24, *puerpera, non bene post partum purgata, in grave  
delirium subito nullo progressu alio morbo, incidebat. Irascebatur illis  
potissimum, quos unice ante amabat [...] multa tamen religiosa locuta,*  
5 *[...] haec per intervalla. Febris aderat acuta, quare phrenitidem  
veram esse iudicabam.*<sup>343</sup>

Multis negotiis impeditus, visitare non potui. Sequentem felici  
successu praescripsi:

**R:** syrupi artemisiae unc.i, electuarii lenitivi, diacatholiconis ana  
10 dr.iii, rhabarbari, castorei ana sc.s, aquae betonicae unc.iii. Misce.  
Stomacho flatuum pleno evomebat: postea sine torminibus 5 sedes  
ut rescripsit vir eique.

Maii 22: Venae sectio ad unc.vi: sanguis niger et aquosus. Attamen  
delirio nondum penitus ablato.

15 23 Maii:

**R:** foliorum malvae, violarum, betae, lactucae, boraginis ana M.ii,  
hordei unc.i, seminum cucumeris, cucurbitae ana unc.s. Fiat  
decoctio in satis quantum aquae ad unc.12. Coletur, colaturae  
adde olei violacei unc.iii **/143/** cassiae recenter extractae,  
20 diacatholiconis ana unc.i, salis dr.i. Fiat glister.

*Dein ob vigilias et inquietudinem dabam syrupum sequentem:*

**R:** syrupi papaveris rheadis unc.i.s, syrupi violarum unc.s, aquae  
scabiosae unc.iii, aquae rosarum parum, olei vitrioli ad acredinem.

*Item fronti apponere iubebam oxyrrhodinum tale :*

---

<sup>343</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 86: Puerpera iuvenula, non bene post partum purgata, in grave delirium subito nullo praegresso alio morbo, incidit, irascebatur illis potissimum, quos maxime amare debet, marito scilicet et parentibus: multa tamen religiosa locuta, facie vehementer rubebat et oculis. Febris aderat acuta, quare phrenitidem veram esse statim iudicavi.

Mrs Jackson, a gentlewoman, devout, wife of the younger minster,  
about 24 years old: *after childbirth, as she was not well purged, she  
fell suddenly into a severe frenzy with no other illness appearing.*  
*She was enraged, chiefly with those whom previously she had most*  
5 *loved, though she spoke much about religion.* This happened at  
intervals. *An acute fever appeared, from which I judged this to be a  
true phrenitis.*

I was hampered by much business, so could not visit her. I  
prescribed the following with happy success:

10 **R:** mugwort syrup 1oz, softening electuary, diacatholicon each 3dr,  
rhubarb, castor each ½sc, betony water 3oz. Mix. She brought up  
wind when her stomach was full, then five stools without torment,  
as her husband wrote.

22 May: venesection to 6oz. Blood: black and watery. Yet the  
15 frenzy was not entirely removed.

23 May:

**R:** leaves of mallow, violets, beets, lettuce, borage each 2 handfuls,  
barley 1oz, cucumber, gourd seeds each ½oz. Make a decoction in  
sufficient water for 12oz. Strain. To the strained liquid add oil of  
20 violets 3oz, **/143/** freshly extracted cassia, diacatholicon each 1oz,  
salt 1dr. Make an enema.

*Then because of sleeplessness and restlessness I gave the  
following syrup:*

**R:** corn poppy syrup 1½oz, syrup of violets ½oz, scabious water 3oz,  
25 a little rose water, oil of vitriol for acidity.

*I also prescribed oxyrrhodinum of this sort, applied to the*

---

**13** as her husband wrote] S.O.: omits.

R: olei rosaceum omphacini unc.iii, aceti rosarum unc.i, pulveris  
santalorum rubrorum dr.i.s, aquae lactucae, plantaginis, rosarum  
ana unc.i. Fiat. *Gallinam per medium dissectam tepentem et  
cruentam capitis vertici iussi imponi.*<sup>344</sup> *Plantis pedum raphanum [...]*  
5 *et contusum acetoque rosato et sale conspersum, tertiaque hora  
adoptare* revulsionis causa.<sup>345</sup>

25:

R: cassiae recenter extractae cum aqua betonica unc.i, syrupi  
rosarum solutivi unc.s, aquae buglossi, boraginis, violarum ana  
10 unc.i. Fiat haustus. Detur in aurora. *Item scarificationem in  
scapulis et humero adhibere iussi.*<sup>346</sup> Haec tamen omnia praesentis  
medici iudicio submitto; mutanda, augenda detrahenda ut praesens  
occurrit occasio postulabat.

His solum modis medicamentis restituta, *atque sic Deo*  
15 *auxiliante convaluit per unicam septimanam, ab his exitiis morbis  
et symptomatibus.*<sup>347</sup>

[Case 150] Febris continuae et 3<sup>ae</sup>

20 scorbuticae cura.

Maii 2: Generosa Woodward de Haven Dasset, virgo intacta, bene  
morata et optime dotata, attamen gibbosa, aetatis 28, sex ab hinc  
septimanis in febrem ardentem continuam incidebat. Tunc a

---

<sup>344</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 86: Dein ob vigilias et inquietudinem  
dedi syrupum de de papavere dilutum. Oxyrrhodinum item fronti apponere  
iussi, [...] Gallinam per medium dissectam tepentem et cruentam, capitis  
vertici iussi imponis. | <sup>345</sup>Ruland the Younger, *De morbo Ungarico*, p. 168:  
Plantis pedum, raphanum minutim incisum et contusum, acetoq. rosac. et  
sale conspersum tertia quaque hora adaptare [also pp. /133/, /178/].

<sup>346</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 86. | <sup>347</sup>Ruland, 'Centuria VI',  
*Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 444.

forehead:

R: omphacine oil of roses 3oz, rose vinegar 1oz, red sandalwood powder 1½dr, waters of lettuce, plantain, roses each 1oz. Make it.

5 *I ordered a chicken cut in half, to be placed still warm and bloody on the top of her head; on the soles of her feet radishes bruised and sprinkled with rose vinegar and salt, and changed every three hours to draw away [the humours].*

25th:

10 R: freshly extracted cassia with betony water 1oz, loosening rose syrup ½oz, waters of bugloss, borage, violets each 1oz. Make a draught, give it at dawn. *I also prescribed the application of scarification to the shoulders and upper arm.* I submit all this to the judgement of the attending physician, for they should be changed, increased or decreased, as the existing circumstances demand.

15 She was restored by these medicinal methods alone, *and with God's help recovered from the deadly illnesses and symptoms within a week.*

20 [Case 150] Cure of continual and tertian scorbutic fever.

2 May. Mrs Woodward, a gentlewoman of Avon Dassett, spinster of good character and greatly accomplished though hump-backed, aged 28: fell into a continual burning fever six weeks ago. Then,

---

2 roses] made from unripe fruit. 12 scarification] S.O. adds: with cups. | all...14 demand] S.O. omits. 19 Case 150] S.O.: Observ. LV [Second Century], pp. 144-145. 21 of<sup>2</sup>...accomplished] very witty and well-bred.

medico purgatione et venae sectione, a febre continua ardente ad  
tertianam notham incidebat perniciosam, cum /144/ icteritia  
citrina, maculis quasi pulicum morsibus cutem summam  
faedentibus, in brachiis et multis aliis corporis partibus, quae  
5 *principio erubescunt floridaeque sunt, qualia fere a nuperis pulicum  
morsibus in cute remanent stigmata.*<sup>348</sup>

His visis, scorbuto laborare affirmabam, nam saepe in febribus  
diuturnis et tertianis et quartanis scorbutus coniungatur. Nec me  
fefellit opinio, materia enim febrilis et vitiosa in mesaraicis collecta et  
10 *diutius haerens tandem dispositionem scorbuticam in diuturnis ducit,  
unde febris curatu difficiliores redduntur, imo non curantur (ut  
Eugalenus docet<sup>349</sup>) nisi simul medicamenta, quae scorbutus requirit,  
adhibeantur.*<sup>350</sup> *Habet icterus ortum non ex obstructione vesiculae  
fellis, sed ex flavo humore in epate a colluvie scorbutica laeso*  
15 *copiosus genito et in totum corpus effuso.*<sup>351</sup>

Sequentem methodum nomine Dei aggressus: menstruis  
carebat, constipatione ventris molesta. Me post paroxysmum  
veniente, symptomatibus febris sequentibus occurrebam, morbo in  
alium diem omisso:  
20 **R:** tincturae coralli gut.vi, speciei liberantis sc.s, manus Christi  
perlata sc.ii, lapidis bezoar gr.v, cum conservae berberis. Eodem

---

<sup>348</sup>Alberti, 'Schorbuti historia', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 395: quae principio erubescunt floridaeque sunt, qualia fere a nuperis pulicum morsibus in cute remanent **στίγματα**. | <sup>349</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 86 [I have not identified the passage in Eugalenus to which Hall referred]. | <sup>350</sup>Sennert, *De febribus libri IV*, p. 285: Saepe accidit in hisce regionibus, in febribus diuturnis et tertianis et quartanis scorbutus coniungatur. Materia enim febrilis et vitiosa in mesaraicis collecta et diutius haerens tandem dispositionem scorbuticam induit; unde febres curatu difficiliores redduntur, imo non curantur, nisi simul medicamenta, quae scorbutus requirit, adhibeantur. <sup>351</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 123: Habuit ille icterus ortum non ex obstructione vesiculae fellis, sed ex flavo humore in epate a colluvie scorbutica laeso copiosius genito et in totum corpus effuso.



from purging and venesection by a physician, she fell from the continual burning fever into a dangerous bastard tertian with /144/ yellow jaundice, very disfiguring spots like flea bites all over the skin, on the arms and many other parts of the body. *These at*  
5 *first grew red and florid, rather like the signs that remain in the skin after fleabites have faded.*

Seeing these, I asserted that she suffered from scurvy, for *scurvy is often joined with lasting and tertian and quartan fevers.* Nor did my opinion fail me, *for febrile and vicious material is*  
10 *collected in the meseraics and drying still further, finally induces the scorbutic condition. Further, (as Eugalenus says) they are not cured unless the medicines which scurvy requires are used. Jaundice has its root, not in obstruction of the gall bladder, but from yellow humour abundantly produced in the liver from decayed scorbutic matter and*  
15 *diffused through the whole body.*

I followed the following method, in the name of God. She was without periods, and with a troublesome constipation of the bowels. When I came after an attack, I dealt with the following symptoms of fever, leaving the disease for another day.  
20 **R:** coral tincture 6 drops, liberans powder 1sc, Manus Christi pearled 2sc, bezoar stone 5gr, with barberry conserve. I instructed her to take the hartshorn restorative with pearled manus Christi

---

9 for ...15 body] S.O. omits. 18 When...day] S.O.: I coming on the intermitting day.

die, saepe de restaurativo ex cornu cervi cum manu Christi perlato  
devorare iubebam, cum iusculo vitulino his herbis confecto:  
becabunga, nasturtio aquatico, boragine, cichorio.

**/145/** Maii 26:

- 5     **R:** speciei diaturbith cum rhabbaro (quoniam aliud purgativum  
non erat ad manus) sc.4. Maceretur per noctem in hypositaliam,  
mane coletur et cum saccharo caepit. Me absente, 4 sedes sine  
terminibus. Circa vespas hospitem ingratum expectabat cum  
animae anxietate. Pulsibus unguentum antifebrificum pedibus,  
10    absinthio, rutae, chamaemellae bullitis in aqua, et vesica impositis  
applicare calide iubebam ante paroxysmum.
- R:** speciei liberantis dr.ii, conservae berberis unc.ii. Saepe in die  
capiat quantitatem fabae. Dabam aquam nostram antiscorbuticam  
ut folio /110/.

- 15           Pro icteritia et scorbuto:

- R:** ammoniaci pulverizati sc.ii, oxymellitis simplicis unc.ii, aquae  
agrimoniae unc.i. Die quietis reiteretur ut opus est. Emplastro de  
ammoniaco pro liene usa, electuarium diacrocuma instar nucis  
moschati post pastum. A febre penitus liberata, nondum tamen a  
20    scorbuto immunis.

Iunii 13:

- R:** vini chalybeati (ut folio /41/) unc.vi, syrupi cochleariae unc.iii,  
becabungae, nasturtii aquatici ana dr.ii. Misce. Dosis sit coch.vi, et  
utetur exercitio et omnia alia die:
- 25    **R:** pilularum stomachicarum, Ruffi. Capiat pilulas iii ex dr.s, hora  
cubitus.

Laus trino et uno Deo, rite curata. Videbam illam anno

often on the same day, with these herbs chopped up in veal broth:  
brooklime, watercress, borage, chicory.

**/145/** 26 May:

**R:** diaturbith powder with rhubarb (because no other purgative was  
5 to hand) 4sc. Soak overnight in posset ale, in the morning strain  
and give with sugar. While I was absent, four stools without pain.  
In the evening she awaited the unwelcome visitor with an anxious  
mind. I prescribed an antipyretic ointment to the pulses, with  
wormwood, rue and chamomile boiled in water for the feet, and [the  
10 same] applied hot in a bladder before the attack.

**R:** liberans powder 2dr, barberry conserve 2oz. Take the amount of  
a bean often during the day. I gave our antiscorbutic water as on  
page /110/.

For the jaundice and scurvy:

**R:** powdered ammoniac 2sc, simple oxymel 2oz, agrimony water 1oz.  
15 It was repeated on the quiet days as needed. She used the  
ammoniac plaster for the spleen, as much diacrocuma electuary as  
a nutmeg after meals. She was completely freed from the fever,  
though not yet exempt from the scurvy.

20 13 June:

**R:** steeled wine (as on page /41/) 6oz, scurvy grass syrup 3oz,  
brooklime, watercress each 2dr. Mix. The dose should be 6  
spoonfuls, and she is to take exercise, and every other day:

**R:** Stomach pills, Ruffus's. Take 3 pills [made from] ½dr at bedtime.

25 She was rightly cured, praise God the three and one. I saw  
her the following year, very well coloured and fleshed out, and she

---

**11** liberans<sup>1</sup>] *S.O.*: apply hot in bladders. **25** praise... 175,1 thanks] *S.O.*  
omits.

sequenti, optime coloratam et carnosam et mihi gratias dabat.

[Case 151] Iunii 27. Secundinae retentae et corruptae, [cura].

5 Generosa Hopper aetatis 24, post partum secundinae retentae et corruptae, ita ut frustulatim foetidae expelluntur, *unde dirus faetor sursum ad ventriculum, cor, /146/ hepar et diaphragma et per consequens ad cerebrum ascendit, ut mox dolores capitis, [...] deliquia plurima et sudores frigidi proveniunt, ita ut periculum mortis.*<sup>352</sup>

10 Ad haec symptomata refraenanda, emplastrum sequentem umbilico imponi iubebam:  
*R: colocynthis decocti in aqua et succi rutae ana partes aequales, quibus miscebis myrrham, semines lini, foenigraecum, hordei farinam ana cochlearium. Decoquantur omnia simul. Emplastrum autem ex*  
15 *his confectum, toto ventri ab umbilico ad pudenda usque imponatur.*<sup>353</sup> *Unguento basilico matricem deungere iubebam:*<sup>354</sup>

*R: castorei gr.vi, myrrhae, croci ana gr.iii, Mithridatii sc.s. Fiant pilulae N.iii. Detur circa horam 9 vel horam somni.*

His, laus Deo, 24 horarum spacio ex toto liberata.

20

<sup>352</sup>Rueff, *De conceptu*, f. 25v: unde dirus foetor sursum ad ventriculum, cor, hepar et diaphragma, et per consequens ad cerebrum ascendit, unde mox dolores capitis, praecordiorum, imminutio spiritus, deliquia plurima et sudores frigidis proveniunt, ita ut periculum mortis. | <sup>353</sup>Rueff, *De conceptu*, f. 26v: R colocynthis decocti in aqua partem unam, et tantundem succi rutae, quibus miscebis myrrham, semen lini, foenograecum, hordei farinam cuiusque cochlearium, decoquantur omnia simul: emplastrum autem ex his confectum toto ventri ab umbilico ad pudenda usque imponatur. | <sup>354</sup>Rueff, *De conceptu*, f. 26r: In hoc casu unguento Basilico matricem deungere pro expellendis secundis itidem non parum proderit.

3 Iunii] in margin.

gave me thanks.

[Case 151] June 27. Cure of retained and  
corrupted products of conception.

5 Mrs Hopper, a gentlewoman aged 24: the products of conception are  
retained and corrupted after birth, so that small foul-smelling  
pieces are expelled. *A foul smell rises thence to the stomach, heart,*  
*/146/ liver, diaphragm and in consequence to the brain, so that*  
*headache, many collapses and cold sweats soon ensue, with*  
10 *resulting danger of death.*

To control these symptoms, I prescribed the following plaster  
to be placed on the umbilicus:

*R: colocynth decoction in water and rue juice equal parts, with which*  
*mix myrrh, linseed, fenugreek, barley flour each a spoonful. Boil*  
15 *everything together. Also, place a plaster of this mixture over the*  
*whole belly from the umbilicus to the pubis. I also prescribed*  
*anointing the womb with basilicon ointment:*

*R: castor 6gr, myrrh, saffron each 3gr, Mithridate ½sc. Make 3*  
pills. Take them about 9 o'clock or at bedtime.

20 These, praise God, freed her from everything within twenty  
four hours.

---

**3** Case 151] *S.O.*: Observ. LVI [Second Century], pp. 145-146. **20** praise God]  
*S.O.* omits.

[Case 152] Hysterica passio, loquela amissa,  
convulsio faciei et oculorum et totius corporis.

Archer opidana, molitrix brasii, subito convulsione faciei et  
5 oculorum rapta, loquela amissa, *matrix e sede sua ferebatur*.<sup>355</sup> Sic  
sicut mortis imago iacuit, aliquando vehementer se huc et illuc  
oculis apertis movebat. Omnes in momento se mori expectabant.  
Me praesente, iussi pharmacopeum potionem sequentem cito  
praeparare.

10 Iubebam:

**R:** castorei dr.i, succi rutae coch.i, aquae salviae dr.ii, syrupi  
artemisiae unc.i. Volens nolens hanc potionem devorabat, et assae  
foetidae naribus adhibere vellem. Spacio 3 minutarum loqui potuit,  
et astantes novit.

15 Die sequenti:

**R:** speciei hierae cum agarico dr.s, pilularum foetidae, de paeonia  
ana sc.i, foeculae bryoniae, diagridii ana gr.vi. Fiant pilulae 5.  
Mane capiat cum custodia.

**/147/** Postremo:

20 **R:** radice bryoniae dr.iii, foliorum senae unc.s., zingiberis sc.s,  
cinamomi dr.i, sacchari unc.i. *Infundantur per noctem in seri lactis  
calentis lib.i.s.*<sup>356</sup> Ex hac infusione potui, per dies aliquot  
exhibeantur stomacho ieiuno unc.5.

*Haec Dei optimi maximi benignitate et sedula mea cura perfecte*  
25 *et cito sana facta pauperima suprascripta opportuna auxilia*

---

<sup>355</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 133: *matrix enim e sua sede ferebatur*. | <sup>356</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria IV', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 312: *Infundantur per noctem in seri lactis calentis lib.ii*.

[Case 152] Fit of the mother, loss of speech,

convulsions of the face, eyes and of the whole body.

Archer of Stratford upon Avon, dealer in malt: suddenly seized by a

5 convulsion of the face and eyes, and loss of speech. *Her womb was carried off from its home.* She lay there like the image of death.

Sometimes she moved violently hither and thither with open eyes.

Everyone expected her to die at any moment. Being present, I

instructed the apothecary to prepare the following potion speedily.

10 I prescribed:

**R:** castor 1dr, rue juice 1 spoonful, sage water 2dr, mugwort syrup 1oz. She drank this potion whether she would or not, and I wanted assafoetida applied to her nose. In the space of three minutes she recovered her speech, and recognised the bystanders.

15 The next day:

**R:** pills, - hiera powder with agaric ½dr, foetidae, of peonies each 1sc, bryony dregs, diagrydium each 6dr. Make 5 pills, take in the morning with an attendant.

**/147/** Finally:

20 **R:** bryony root 3dr, senna leaves ½oz, ginger ½sc, cinnamon 1dr, sugar 1oz. *Infuse overnight in 1½ pints milk whey kept warm.*

Administer the potion from this infusion on an empty stomach for some days, 5oz.

*This cure, by the favour of almighty God most high and my*

---

2 Case 152] S.O.: Observ. LVII [Second Century], p. 146. 4 Avon] S.O. Good-wife. dealer in malt] S.O. omits. 8 Being...speedily] S.O. omits. 14 recognised the bystanders] S.O.: stood up. 24 by...177,3 God] S.O.: With which the cure was perfected.

*medica;*<sup>357</sup> *et voti compos [...] et artis [laudum] et Dei maxima evasit buccinator.*<sup>358</sup>

5 [Case 153] Febris in puerpera, dicta febris lactis.

Generosa Lewes, soror generosi Fortescue, puerpera tertia a partu die frigore accepto, incidebat in febre, frigore accepto cum ventris torminibus. Haec species febris dicta febris lactis nam cum lacte obstructa misere, modo frigore mox calore iterum frigore gravata in  
10 mortis periculo, *quorum malorum curam talem capessebam*, iuvante Deo.<sup>359</sup>

Potus: dococtio cornus cervi praeparati, iulapium nostrum antifebrificum, cochlearia bina omni 4<sup>a</sup> hora. Iussi quoque glister ex lacte et saccharo sordido iniecare, ventri origanum et maioranam  
15 calide pannis linneis involuta ventri applicare.

His cito curata.

[Case 154] Scorbutus confirmatus cum variis  
20 symptomatibus. Augusti 13 1632.

Generosa Vernon de Hanberrey, uxor theologi, religiosa, formosa, pulchra, circa aetatis annum 30, de his conquesta. Sentit frigiditatem in plantis pedum, *instar vaporis, frigidiorisque aerae in stomachum traduci per partium continuitatem*, tunc misere

---

<sup>357</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 133: Haec Dei Opt. Max. benignitate et sedula mea cura perfecta ac cito sana facta est per sequentia opportuna auxilia medica. | <sup>358</sup>Amatus Lusitanus, *Curationum [...] centuriae duae*, p. 325: voti compos fuit factus, et artis laudum maximus evasit buccinator [see also p. /139/]. | <sup>359</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II, *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 148. [also p. /140/.



*attentive care, made her entirely and quickly well, with the above cheap and opportune medical help. Her wish was granted, and she became the greatest trumpeter [of praises] of the art and of God.*

5 [Case 153] Puerperal fever, called milk fever.

Mrs Lewis, a gentlewoman, Mr Fortescue's sister: caught a cold three days after giving birth. She fell into a fever and caught a cold with abdominal pains. This sort of fever is called milk fever for when she was wretchedly obstructed with the milk, now cold then  
10 hot, again cold, she was oppressed in the danger of death. *I undertook the cure of this wretched illness in this way, with God's help:*

A drink: prepared hartshorn decoction, our antipyretic julep: 2 spoonfuls every fourth hour. I also prescribed the injection of an  
15 enema of milk and unrefined sugar and origanum and marjoram applied to her belly, wrapped in a hot linen cloth.

These quickly cured her.

[Case 154] Confirmed scurvy, with various  
20 symptoms. 13 August 1632.

Mrs Vernon, a gentlewoman of Hanbury, the minister's wife, devout, very beautiful, about 30 years of age, complained of these: she feels a cold in the soles of her feet *like a vapour, and with the spreading of a colder wind into her stomach through the intervening parts, then*

---

**5** Case 153] S.O.: Observ. LVIII, [Second Century], p.147. **8** This... 12 help] S.O.: was cured as followeth. **19** Case 154] S.O.: Observ. LXI [misprint for LIX] [Second Century], pp. 147-149. **21** devout very beautiful] C omits.

aegrotat.<sup>360</sup> Postea calore afflicta, deinde sudore frigido, spacio duorum horarum optime habet. Praeterea melancholia et tremore cordis, splenisque dolore afflicta, ita ut manum super splenem tenere cogitur /148/ cum forti expressione.

5 Dentium et gingivarum dolore lancinata, lumbagine et calculo lancinata, totiusque corporis lassitudine. Tumore parvo pedum vespertino lacescita. Tempore fluendorum menstruorum terminibus misere lancinata, fluxuque nimio et inordinato eorum debilitata. Hysterica passione saepe afflicta, donec lachrymas  
10 effundit non liberata. Maculis nigris aliquando femora defaedata. Venter aliquando non semel ex officio 4 dierum spacio non respondit, mox iterum effraenatu fluxu quasi exanimis. Urinae color varius, mox turbida, tunc melius habet, mox clara sicut aqua fontana, tunc peius.

15 Hec sunt symptomata quibus affligitur generosa: causas quaere ex Danieli Senerto, *Tractatus de scorbuto*,<sup>361</sup> et Eugaleno.<sup>362</sup>

Curam eius ita, nomine Deo aggredior qui percutit et sanat, *mortificat et vivificat [...] qui habet vitae potestatem et mortis*.<sup>363</sup>

Glistarem talem iniicere iubebam, quoniam deerant nonnulla:

20 **R:** malvae, mercurialis, bismalvae ana M.i. Bulliant in satis quantum lactis ad lib.s. In colatura dissolve diapheniconis, diacatholiconis ana dr.vi, pulveris Holland dr.i. Fiat glistere: iii sedes

---

<sup>360</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 53: instar vaporis, frigidiorisq. aurae, in cerebrum traduci per partium continuitatem. | <sup>361</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 31-64. | <sup>362</sup> Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, pp. 2-4.

<sup>363</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, pp. 1-2: Dominus mortificat et vivificat [...] qui vitae et mortis habes potestatem [also p. /150/.

---

**16** *Tractatus de scorbuto*] in margin.

feels wretchedly ill. Afterwards she was afflicted by hot spells, then cold sweats, and was again very well in two hours. In addition she was afflicted by melancholy, trembling of the heart and splenic pain, as if it were squeezed by a hand held over the spleen /148/ with  
5 great pressure.

She was attacked by toothache and pain in the gums, by lower backache and the stone. Her whole body felt exhausted. She was harassed by slight swelling of the feet in the evening. She was wretchedly attacked by torments at the time of her periods, and  
10 weakened by their excessive and irregular flux. She was often troubled by fits of the mother, not freed from them until she cried. Her thighs were at times disfigured by black spots. Her bowels sometimes did not answer to their duty once within four days, then again the flux would be let loose as if she were lifeless. Urine:  
15 various colours, now turbid at which she felt better, then clear like spring water, when [she felt] worse.

These are the symptoms with which the gentlewoman was afflicted. For the causes see Daniel Sennert, *Tractatus de scorbuto*, and Eugalenus.

20 I undertake her cure in the name of God who maketh sore and bindeth up; *killeth and maketh alive; hast power of life and death.*

I prescribed taking an enema of this sort, because a few [items] were missing:

**R:** mallows, mercury, marsh mallow each 1 handful. Boil in  
25 sufficient milk for ½ pint. In the strained liquid dissolve

---

4 as...great] *S.O.*: so that she was forced to press it hard with her hands. 15 now... worse] *S.O.* omits. 17 These...21 death] *S.O.* omits. 20 maketh...death] I use the King James Bible, 1611 for the translations (Job 5:18; 1 Samuel, 2:6; Wisdom, 16:13).

cum flatibus. Hora cubitus *theriacae Londinensis* dr.ii.<sup>364</sup>

14:

**R:** becabungae, nasturtii aquatici ana M.s, florum calendulae, rosmarini ana p.i. Bulliant in satis quantum seri lactis ad lib.i.s.

- 5 Colatura adde sacchari lib.s. Iterum bulliant et despumatur, postea adde croci dr.s in panno raro ligati. Una vel altera ebullitione facta, ab igne removetur.

- /149/ R:** huius decocti coch.8, pulveris Holland et tartari crystalli ana partes aequales, quantum vi denarii tenere potest. Ieiunet ii  
10 horis postea iusculum cum carne vitulina et herbis, boragine, buglossa, becabunga, nasturtio et cichorio. Capiat prandium tempore usuali, caenet circa quintam horam. Hora cubitus, capiat *theriacam Londinensis* ut antea.<sup>365</sup> Rescripsit longi melius esse.

Pro hysterica passione usa *aqua hysterica Londinensis*.<sup>366</sup>

- 15 In frigiditatem pedum applicatum fuit hoc emplastrum:  
**R:** picis lib.ii, resinae optima pulverizatae et percribatae, thuris optimi pulverizati ana lib.ii, seci ovium unc.i, croci unc.ii, macis unc.ii, laudani unc.4, caryophilli unc.i. Misce et coqua ad spacium semis horae, aut eo plus. Ponendo picem primo in loco, extendatur  
20 super alutam quam tenuissime, ut fiant inde emplastra ad formam soleae calciariae, quae in applicatione assuatur socco linteo plantis pedis adaptato et sic utere ad plantas per dies 14, vel per mensem, vel per septimanas sex, et tunc removentur, et pro certo valet in quocunque dolore.

- 25 Hoc solo emplastro curabam Generosum Feriman seniore

---

<sup>364</sup>*Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*, p. 90. | <sup>365</sup>*Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*, p. 90.

<sup>366</sup>*Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*, p. 9

---

8 tartari] 𐀀.

diaphoenicon, diacatholicon each 6dr, Holland powder 1dr. Make an enema: three stools with wind. At bedtime: *London treacle* 2dr.

14th:

R: brooklime, watercress each ½ handful, marigold and rosemary

5 blossoms 1 pinch. Boil in sufficient milk whey for 1½ pints. To the strained liquid add sugar ½lb. Boil again and skim, then add saffron ½dr tied in thin cloth. Boil again once or twice, remove from the fire.

/149/ R: 8 spoonfuls of this decoction, Holland powder and tartar  
10 crystals each equal parts, the amount six pennies can hold.<sup>29</sup> Fast for two hours, then broth with veal and herbs: borage, bugloss, brooklime watercress and chicory. Take lunch at the usual time, dine at about five o'clock. At bedtime, take *London treacle* as before. She wrote to say she was much better. For the fits of the mother  
15 she used the *London water for the womb*.

For cold feet this plaster was applied:

R: pitch 2lb, best gum powdered and sieved, best frankincense powdered each 2lb, sheep suet 1oz, saffron 2oz, mace 2oz, laudanum 4oz, cloves 1oz. Mix. Boil for the space of half an hour  
20 or longer. First put the pitch in place. Spread it on leather very thinly, so as to make plasters shaped like the soles of slippers. These are joined by sewing to a linen sock shaped to the sole of the foot. Use it on the soles for fourteen days, or for a month or for six weeks, then remove. This is certainly powerful in any pain  
25 whatsoever.

I cured old Mr Ferriman, a gentleman worn out by

---

<sup>29</sup>Approximately 7 grams, or 11 grains.

**14** She...better] S.O.: omits.

confectum a veteri pedum dolore.

In tumorem lienis unguentum magistralis pro liene. In  
dolorem dorsi emplastrum nephriticum nostrum:

℞: opii gr.15, cerae, plumbi ana unc.ii, olei rosarum, nymphaearum  
5 ana unc.ii, succi solani unc.i. Bulliant in formam emplastri. Fiat  
emplastrum. Extendet pars nephriticum supra alutam et dorso  
applicetur.

Pro flatu stomachi:

℞: conservae buglossi unc.ii, speciei pleres archonticonis dr.ii.

10 Dosis instar nucis moschati. Usa quoque aqua nostra  
antiscorbutica cum syrupo betonicae rubrae. Biream habuit  
praedictam antiscorbuticam et vinum chalybeatum horum usu.

Rite, laus Deo, convaluit.

15 [Case 155] /150/ Febris ardens cum  
convulsione faciei et tortura oris.

Tu Domine, qui *vitae et mortis habes potestatem et deducis ad  
portas mortis et reducis*;<sup>367</sup> confiteor *nulla humana ope, nullis artis  
praesidiis, nullo consilio, sed sola tua bonitate atque clementia,*

20 *salvum me fecisti, et a saevissimis et maxime exitialibus signis,  
febrique lethali, praeter omnium spem atque expectationem redivisti  
et, quasi e orci faucibus ereptum pristinaeque sanitati restituisti.*<sup>368</sup>

Pro qua *gratias ago tibi, misericordissimi Deus et Pater Domini nostri*

---

<sup>367</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 2: Domine, qui vitae et mortis habes potestatem, et deducis ad portas mortis et reducis [based on Vulgate, Sam. 2,6]. | <sup>368</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 1: ut ab sevissimis et maxime exitialibus morbis saepe homines liberentur [...] praeter omnium spem atque expectationem redivivus ad se, quasi e orci faucibus ereptus, redeat aeger, pristinaeque sanitati restituatur. Hoc ipsum nulla humana ope, nullis artis presidiis, nullo consilio, sed sola Dei bonitate atque clementia fieri, bene instituti hominis fuerit existimare.

longstanding pain in the feet, with this plaster alone.

For the swollen spleen: magisterial ointment for the spleen.

For backache, our nephritic plaster:

℞: opium 15gr, wax, lead each 2oz, oils of roses, water lilies each

5 2oz, nightshade juice 1oz. Boil in the form of a plaster. Make the plaster, spread some on leather and apply to the back.

For wind in the stomach:

℞: bugloss conserve 2oz, pleres archonticon powder 2dr. Dose: the amount of a nutmeg. She also used our antiscorbutic water with

10 clove-gillyflower syrup. She took the above antiscorbutic beer and used their steeled wine.

She recovered rightly, praise God.

[Case 155] /150/ Burning fever with facial

15 convulsion and spasm of the mouth.

You Lord, who *hast power of life and death; thou ledest to the gates of hell, and bringest up again; I confess neither by human work, nor help from the art, nor advice, but only by your goodness and mercy you made me whole, and recovered me beyond all hope and*

20 *expectation from the most severe and deadliest signs of a lethal fever, as if rescued from the jaws of hell and restored to perfect health.*<sup>30</sup>

For this *I give thanks to you, most merciful God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who through your fatherly mercy has made me*

---

<sup>30</sup>Translation from King James Bible, *Wisdom of Solomon*, 16:13.

---

**4** lead] S.O.: red lead. **6** and...back] S.O. omits. **14** Case 155] S.O.: Observ. LX [Second Century], pp. 149-151.

lesu Christi, quod pro tua paterna misericordia me salvum fecisti. Da  
 mihi gratiam, ut grato animo et memoria agnoscam tua beneficia.<sup>369</sup>  
 Quamobrem uni tantum Deo Optimo Maximo acceptum fero, quod a  
 tam gravi exitiisque morbo levatus fui [...] cuius Dei numen ut una  
 5    mecum laudibus celebrare amici possint, illiusque immensam  
 potentiam admirari, historiam omnem ad veri fidem referam.<sup>370</sup>

Circa aetatis annum 57, die Augusti 27 anno salutis 1632,  
 usque ad 19 diem Septembris, haemorrhoidarum fluxu immoderato  
 debilitatus, attamen quotidie hic et illic patientes visitare  
 10    compulsus, equo invectus gradu citato duro, fluxu  
 haemorrhoidarum refraenato, spacio /151/ 14 dierum. Postea  
 dolore dentium misere lancinatus tandem in febrem incidebam  
 ardentem lethalem (quae tunc ubique grassatur, et paene omnis qui  
 infecti mortem cum vita mutabant) *qua igitur sim in hac saevissima*  
 15    *febre abigenda methodo usus, quibusque soli auxiliis bona Dei*  
*voluntate servatus, iam dicere aggredior.*<sup>371</sup>

Primo sic purgatus:

R: rhabarbari infusi dr.i, syrupi diaserios unc.i, electuarii de succo  
 rosarum dr.iii: ex hac sedes 4. Postea usus decoctione cornu cervi  
 20    sic, per urinam morbus bene expulsus, ita ut nocte quatuordecim  
 matulae semiplenae fuerunt, nam lotiam in vitro singulo servare  
 iubebam, et die totidem nam singulis horis urinam emittere

<sup>369</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 231: Gratias  
 ago tibi misericordissime Deus et Pater Domini nostri Iesu Christi, quod pro  
 tua paterna misericordia et in praepotente manu tua aegrotos meos sanos  
 facis. Da ipsis gratiam, ut grato animo et memoria agnoscam tua beneficia.

<sup>370</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 2: Quamobrem uni tantum Deo  
 Opt. Max. acceptum fero, quod a tam gravi exitiisque morbo uxor mea levata  
 fit: [...] cuius Dei numen ut una mecum laudibus celebrare omnes possint,  
 illiusque immensam potentiam admirari, historiam omnem ad veri fidem  
 referam. | <sup>371</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 6: qua igitur sim in hoc  
 saevissimo abingendo morbo methodo usus, quibusque sit auxiliis bona Dei  
 voluntate servata mulier, iam dicere aggredior.



whole. Give me grace, that I may recognize and remember your  
blessings with a grateful mind. It was only on account of receiving so  
much from almighty God the most high, that I was raised from such a  
severe and deadly illness. So that my friends may rejoice with me,  
5 and the divine will of God and his unbounding power be admired, I  
report the whole story, faithful to the truth.

About the 57th year of age, from 27 August in the year of  
salvation 1632 to 19 September, I had been weakened by an  
excessive flux from the haemorrhoids. I nevertheless had to visit  
10 patients here and there every day, riding at great speed on a hard-  
mouthed horse.<sup>31</sup> The flux of the haemorrhoids was checked for  
/151/ fourteen days. Then I was wretchedly attacked by  
toothache, and fell into a deadly burning fever (which was then  
seeking victims everywhere, and almost all who were infected  
15 exchanged life for death). Therefore what I used in this most severe  
fever as a method of driving it away, and by the help of which alone I  
was protected by the aid of God's good will, I now put forward.

First I was purged in this way:

R: rhubarb infusion 1dr, diasereos syrup 1oz, electuary of rose juice  
20 3 dr, resulting in four stools. Next I used hartshorn decoction with  
this effect. The illness was well expelled in the urine so that at  
night fourteen chamber-pots were half filled (I ordered each passage

---

<sup>31</sup>Translation following Conrad Gesner, *Historiae animalium liber 1* (Zurich, Frosch, 1551) p.532: equus durus (duri oris) difficulter flectitur [a hard horse (of a hard mouth) is steered with difficulty].

---

2 It...6 truth] S.O. omits. 13 which... 15 Therefore] According to Lane, *John Hall*, p.xxiii, Birmingham had an outbreak of plague at about this time, but deaths in Stratford were not unusually high.

coactus, et quod mirum dictu, me non ultra lib.ii decoctionis cervi  
(omni alio potu interdicto) bibere (ita ut timebam hydropem  
matulae) et sic fluxu urinae 4 dierum spacio durabat. Ad maciem  
reductus vires exhaustae fuerat, ut in lecto movere sine servorum  
5 ope non potui. Habui etiam convulsiones oris et oculorum.  
*Spirante columba et dissecta, pedibus supposita, ut vapore ad ima  
revocantur, nam saepe delirio parvo afflictus.*<sup>372</sup>

Tunc uxor ad consilium duos medicos appellabat. Usus fui  
glistere emolliente cum herbis emollientibus, et diacatholico, et  
10 lenitivis. A medicis amicis electuarium sequentem instar nucis  
moschati bis in die devorabam:  
℞: electuarii de gemmis calidis dr.ii, speciei pleres archonticonis dr.i  
(ob metum scorbuti), manus Christi perlati unc.i, **/152/** conservae  
buglossi, violarum ana unc.ii, luiulae unc.i, syrupi violarum unc.s,  
15 limonum unc.i, olei vitrioli gut.vi. Fiat electuarium.

27 Septembris: sic purgatus:

℞: electuarii lenitivi unc.i.s, aquae absinthii unc.4. Misce: sedes iii.

Hora somni:

℞: syrupum diacodii et papaveris rheadis cum diascordio.

20 Pro calore dorsi:

℞: refrigerantis Galeni unc.i.s, cerati santalini unc.s, succi sedi,  
aceti vini ana coch.i. Fiat unguentum molle.

Emplastrum pro regione cordis:

℞: labdani dr.vi, storacis calamitae unc.s, speciei aromatici rosati

---

<sup>372</sup>Donne, *Devotions upon Emergent Occasions*, p. 284.

---

**21** refrigerantis] infrig.

of urine to be stored in a single vessel) and as many in the day, for I was forced to pass urine every hour. Strange to say, I did not drink more than 2 pints of hartshorn decoction (all other drink being forbidden) for I feared dropsy of the chamber pots. The flux of urine  
5 continued thus for four days. I was emaciated, my strength exhausted, so that I could not move in bed without the help of servants. I had spasms of the mouth and eyes. *A breathing pigeon, dismembered, was applied to the feet, to draw the vapours down* for I was often slightly delirious.

10 Then my wife called in two physicians for advice. I used a softening enema with the emollient herbs, diacatholicon, and softeners. I swallowed the following electuary from my friends the physicians, the amount of a nutmeg twice a day:

R: electuary of cold gems, 2dr, pleres archonticon powder 1dr  
15 (because scurvy was feared), pearled manus Christi 1oz, /152/  
bugloss, violet conserves each 2oz, wood-sorrel 1oz, syrup of violets ½oz, of lemons 1oz, oil of vitriol 6 drops. Make an electuary.

27 September: purged thus:

R: softening electuary 1½oz, wormwood water 4oz. Mix. Three  
20 stools.

At bedtime:

R: diacodium syrup and corn poppies with diascordium.

For heat in the back:

R: Galen's cooling [ointment] 1½oz, sandalwood salve ½oz,  
25 houseleek juice, wine vinegar each 1 spoonful. Make a soft ointment.

A plaster for the region of the heart:

R: labdanum 6dr, styrax calamita ½oz, aromatic rose powder 4sc,

sc.4, mosci gr.4. Misce.

Iterum sic purgatus:

℞: syrupi diaseros unc.i.s, electuarii de succo rosarum dr.iii, aquae cichorii quantum satis.

5           Nota Bene: sed antequam medici ad me veniebant, e vena iecoraria unc.vii sanguinis extraxi, et 3<sup>a</sup> ab ista die, sanguisugae venis hemorrhoidalis applicata. Inde unc.x sanguinis, quantum coniectura, assequi possum extractum. Sed primo Deo, deinde decoctioni cornu cervi, postremo venae sectioni gratias ago.

10           Viribus bene restitutus, nam nunc cibum capere potui, antea nil nisi potus gratum. Usus vino chalybeato cum succo cochleariae, et syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti, et semel in septimana purgatus cum pulvere sancti et rhabarbaro infusione et diaseros.

              Dolore dentium ad huc misere saepe afflictus. Olei ligni  
15       Heraclei penitus curatus. Postea pruritu scrota cum excoriatione misere divexatus. Curabam decoctione sarsaparillae nostro cum herbis antiscorbuticis.

              Deus haec omnia fecit, cui soli sit omnis honor et gloria in secula seculorum, Amen.

20

[Case 156] /153/ 8 [xxx] 16--. Capitis dolor inveteratus.

Baronetus Puckringe, circa aetatis annum 44 plus minus, dolore capitis lancinatus, maxime mane et circa horas vespertinas, nocte  
25       tamen quando super dorsum iacet, capite parum declinante

---

5 Nota Bene] in margin. 21 xxx] Illegible, possibly Apr. or less likely Sep.; Hall left the year incomplete.

musk 4gr. Mix.

I was purged again like this:

**R:** diasereos syrup ½oz, electuary of rose juice 3dr, sufficient  
chicory water.

5 NOTE: Before the physicians attended me, I took 10oz of blood from  
the hepatic vein, and the third day after that, leeches were applied  
to the haemorrhoidal veins. The 10oz of blood is an estimate of the  
quantity I could extract. But I give thanks first to God, then to the  
hartshorn decoction, and finally to the venesection.

10 I was quite restored to strength, for now I could take food.  
Previously nothing but fluid was welcome. I used steeled wine with  
scurvy grass juice, and Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup. Once a week I  
was purged with holy powder, rhubarb infusion and diasereos.

I was often wretchedly afflicted with toothache. I was  
15 completely cured with oil of hazel wood. Then I was wretchedly  
troubled by itching of the scrotum with excoriation. I was cured by  
our sarsaparilla decoction with antiscorbutic herbs.

God did all this, to whom alone be all honour and glory for  
ever and ever. Amen.

20

[Case 156] /**153**/ 8 [xxx] 16- -. Long-standing  
headache.

Baronet Puckering, aged about 44 years more or less: attacked by  
headache, worst in the morning and around the evening hours. He  
25 feels relief at night though, when he lies on his back with his head

---

**8** But...venesection] *S.O.* omits. **21** Case 156] *S.O.*: Observ. LXI [Second Century],  
pp. 151-153. | 8 xxx 16-] *S.O.* omits. **23** Puckering] *S.O.* adds: of Warwick.

levamen sentit. *Ego, divina adiutus gratia, talem curandi ingredior viam*:<sup>373</sup>

℞: pilularum de paeonia dr.i, de succino, Ruffi, ana sc.i, *cephalalgicarum Fernelii* sc.ii.<sup>374</sup> Cum aquae betonicae fiant pilulae

- 5 N.15. Capiat ii hora cubitus, mane iii. His finitis, sanguisugae hemorrhoidis applicare iubebam, felice et exoptato eventu, nam a dolore capitis penitus liberatus.

Deinde usus opiata sequenti:

- ℞: ligni sassaphras incisi dr.vi, cinamomi pulverizati, calami  
10 aromatici ana unc.s. Infundantur in aquae buglossi unc.12 pro horas 24, deinde bulliant ad medias. Colaturae adde: *conservae florum cichorii, buglossi ana unc.s, theriacae Alexandrinae dr.i, confectionis alkermes, de hyacintho ana dr.i.s, chalybis praeparati unc.i, diatrionsantaloni, diambrae, diamoschu dulcis ana dr.s,*  
15 *lapidis bezoar sc.s, cornu cervi praeparati, margaritarum praeparatarum ana sc.ii. Fiat cum syrupo conservae citri opiata. Deglutiat avellanae maioris magnitudine de opiata praedicta, mane et hora cubitus.*<sup>375</sup>

- Frigore accepto in febrem quotidianam nocturnam incidebat,  
20 sic purgatus:

℞: syrupi diaserios unc.ii, rhabarbari expressi dr.i, tartari cremoris sc.i, aquae betonicae unc.ii. Fiat haustus, quem retinebat per dimidiam horae, partem tunc evomebat, attamen 4 sedes habuit.

---

<sup>373</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VI', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 437. | <sup>374</sup>See page /19/. | <sup>375</sup>Du Chesne, *De priscorum philosophorum [...] Materia*, p. 358: prius deglutiat avellanae maioris magnitudine de opiata sequenti. ℞ conservae florum, cichor. buglossi ana unc.i, florum rorismarini unc.s theriacae Alexandrinae dr.i, confect. alkermes, et de hyacintho ana dr.ii.s, diacoralii diatrissant. diambrae, diamosci dulcis ana dr.i, lapidis bezoardici sc.s, cornu cervi praepar. margar. praepar. ana sc.iiii. Cum syrupo cons. citrii, fiat opiata.

---

21 tartari] ♀.

hanging down a little. *I undertake, with thanks to divine favour, to make a cure in this way:*

R: pills - of peony 1dr, amber, Ruffus's each 1sc, *Fernel's for headache* 2sc. Make 15 pills with betony water. Take 2 at bedtime,  
5 3 in the morning. When these were finished I prescribed the application of leeches to the haemorrhoidal veins. This had the happy and desired result, for he was completely freed from the headache.

Then he used the following opiate:

10 R: sliced sassaphras wood 6dr, powdered cinnamon, sweet flag each ½oz. Infuse in bugloss water 12oz for twenty four hours, then boil, reduce to half. To the strained liquid add *conserves of chicory and bugloss flowers each ½oz, Venice treacle 1dr, alkermes, hyacinth confection each ½dr, prepared steel 1oz, diatrion santalon, diambra,*  
15 *sweet diamoschu each ½dr, bezoar stone ½sc, prepared hartshorn, prepared pearls each 2sc. Make an opiate with syrup of preserved citrons. Swallow the amount of a large hazelnut of the above opiate, morning and bedtime.*

After catching cold he fell into a nightly quotidian fever; purged  
20 thus:

R: diasereos syrup 2oz, expressed rhubarb 1dr, cream of tartar 1sc, betony water 2oz. Make a draught. He retained it for half an hour then vomited some, but still had four stools.

Die sequenti pro tussi et phlegmate:

**R:** syrupi capillorum veneris, /154/ hyssopii ana unc.i, syrupi  
scabiosae magistralis unc.s. Fiat linctus gustui gratus. Vox iterum  
reddita et magnam phlegmatis copiam eiciebat, decoctione chynae  
5 cum herbis capillaris, et limacis, et santalli citrini, rasurae eboris et  
rasurae cornu cervi, et iulapium ex decoctione apperitivo cum  
syrupo.

Pro febre:

**R:** aquae cordialis frigidae Saxoniae coch.ii, cum coch.iii huius  
10 iulapii:  
**R:** magisterii perlati dr.i, aquae scabiosae unc.4, syrupi veronicae  
rubrae unc.i, confectionis alkermes sc.i. A febre liberatus.

Postea usus condito Doctoris Lapwort in praeservationem  
sanitatis:

15 **R:** conservae florum betonicae, caryophyllata hortensis (id est,  
vetonicae rubrae) ana unc.i, corticis citri conditi dr.vi, extracti  
calami aromatici dr.i, corticis winterani pulverizati sc.ii.s, seminum  
paeoniae dr.i, olei cinamomi gut.4. Cum syrupo betonicae quantum  
satis fiat conditum. Capiat instar nucis moschati. Usus saepe felici  
20 successu ut mihi dixit, idcirco vellem ut acciperet.

Pro liene:

**R:** emplastri magisterii pro liene unc.i.s, diachylonis magistralis  
dr.vi, carannae in aceto scillitico dissolutae dr.4, radice ellebori albi  
sc.ii, olei ligni Rhodii sc.i. Misce, fiat emplastrum. Super alutam  
25 extendatur, et serico cooperiatur et interbassatam applicetur lienis



The next day, for cough and phlegm:

5     **R:** maidenhair syrup, /**154**/ hyssop each 1oz, magisterial scabious  
syrup ½oz. Make a linctus with a pleasing taste. He regained his  
voice, and brought up large amounts of phlegm with a decoction of  
china with the capillary herbs, snails, yellow sandalwood, ivory  
shavings and hartshorn shavings, and a julep of the aperient  
decoction with syrup.

For the fever:

10     **R:** cordial water frigida Saxoniae 2 spoonfuls with 3 spoonfuls of  
this julep:

**R:** magisterium of pearls 1dr, scabious water 1oz, syrup of cloves  
1oz, alkermes confection 1sc. He was freed from the fever.

Afterwards he used Dr Lapworth's preserve to maintain  
health:<sup>32</sup>

15     **R:** conserve of betony flowers, clove-gillyflowers each 1oz, conserve  
of citron peel 6dr, extract of sweet flag 1dr, powdered winter cherry  
rind 2½sc, peony seeds 1dr, oil of cinnamon 4 drops. Make a  
preserve with sufficient betony syrup. Take the amount of a  
nutmeg. He used this often with success and told me so, and on  
20     that account I wished him to take it.

For the spleen:

**R:** magisterial plaster for the spleen 1½oz, magisterial diachylon  
6dr, caranna dissolved in vinegar of squills 4dr, white hellebore root  
2sc, oil of rosewood 1sc. Mix. Make a plaster. Spread it on soft

---

<sup>32</sup>Probably Dr Edward Lapworth MD; Raach, *English Country Physicians*, p. 62; there was also a William Lapworth MA (Cantab.) in Warwick, p. 62.

---

**3** with a pleasing taste] he liked it well. **6** and<sup>2</sup>...syrup] S.O.: with syrup of lemons and violets. **13** Dr Lapworths] Edward Lapworth M.D., Oxford. **19** and<sup>1</sup>...it] S.O. omits.

regioni: liberatus ab omnibus symptomatibus. Ad praecautiorem  
habuit fontenellam in brachio sinistro.

*Laus Deo soli, omnino evasit a dolore et accidentibus.*<sup>376</sup>

5

[Case 157] /155/ Calor et asperitas linguae.

Tyler Aldermanus, de calore et asperitate linguae conquestus, cui  
cito sequenti succurrebam:

10     ℞: syrupi scabiosae magistralis, becabungae, nasturtii aquatici,  
succo cochleariae praeparati ana unc.s, tussilaginis, liquiritiae,  
papaveris rheadis ana unc.i. Misce. Capiat saepe cum bacculo  
liquiritiae.

Curatus.

15

[Case 158] Matricis suffocatio.

Filia Aldermani Smith, virgo, circa aetatis annum 22, ob mensium  
diminutione et maerore, incidebat in hystericam passionem cum  
oculorum convulsione et visus obscuritate. Durante paroxysmo  
spasmo et colli distortionem et cordis palpitationem una cum febre  
20     cruciata, ita ut lectum totum huc et illuc quassat. Paroxysmo  
durante (nam per intervalla recedunt paroxysmi) meo monitu,  
aquae hystericæ coch.iii in os instillare iubebam. Postea  
cubiculum fumari accensis ungulis cabulinis. Cito a paroxysmo  
rediit.

25

Ad praecautiorem:

---

<sup>376</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 85: laus Deo soli, omnino evasit a tam saevo malo, atque accidentibus ipsius.

leather, cover with silk, sew together. Apply to the region of the spleen. He was freed from all symptoms. As a precaution he had a fontanelle in the left brachial [vein].

*Praise God alone, he escaped entirely from the pain and*  
5 *associated circumstances.*

[Case 157] /155/ Heat and roughness of the tongue.

Alderman Tyler: complained of heat and roughness of the tongue. I helped him quickly with the following:

10 **R:** magisterial scabious syrup, brooklime, watercress, prepared scurvy-grass juice each ½oz, coltsfoot, liquorice, corn poppy each 1oz. Mix. Take often with a liquorice stick.

Cured.

15 [Case 158] Suffocation of the womb.

Alderman Smith's daughter, a spinster aged about 22 years: fell into a fit of the mother with convulsions of the eyes and darkened vision because of diminished periods and grief. During the attack she was tortured by spasm and twisting of the neck, and palpitations of the  
20 heart with fever so that her whole bed shook hither and thither. By my advice, during an attack (because the attacks are lessening at intervals) I prescribe water for the womb, 3 spoonfuls dripped into her mouth. Afterwards fumigate the room with burning horse hooves. She recovered quickly from the attack.

25 For prevention:

---

4 Praise...circumstances] S.O. omits. 7 Case 157] S.O.: Observ. LXII [Second Century], p. 153. 15 Case 158] S.O.: Observ. LXIII [Second Century], pp. 153-154. 21 because...intervals] S.O.: omits.

**R:** castorei pulverizati dr.s, pilulae foetidae dr.i. Fiant pilulae 7, deaurentur. Rite purgata, a symptomatibus liberata. Postremo:

**R:** pulveris castorei dr.s, extracti hysterici dr.i. Fiant pilulae 9.N, iii hora cubitus, mane ii.

- 5           *Sic haec pauca, quibus integram sanitatem ex insperato et ocyssime recepit, nec unquam in posterum haec mala repullularunt.*<sup>377</sup>

- 10                           [Case 159] Variolarum morbillorum cura –  
                          anglice smale poxe.

Filius unicus theologi Hollihock, qui dictionarium doctissimum composuit, febre ardente continuo, lumbagine, tussi correptus.

Praecursores **/156/** dixi morbillorum, nec me fefellit opinio, nam die sequenti in facie apparebant, post assumptionem potionis

- 15           sequentis:

**R:** diascordii dr.i, tincturae coralli, lapidis bezoar ana gr.iii, in aqua foeniculi, exoptato eventu nam a dolore dorsi et stomachi liberatus et pullulare incipiebant.

*Ad oculorum praeservationem:*

- 20           **R:** aquae plantaginis, euphragiae, rosarum ana dr.i, camphorae sc.i, croci gr.ii. Misce, fiat collyrium, et penna leni oculi saepe inungantur.<sup>378</sup> Ad gutturis et faucium praeservationem, *mandabam*

---

<sup>377</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria I', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 63: Atque haec pauca erant, quibus integram sanitatem ex insperato et ocyssime recepit, nec unquam in posterum haec mala repullularunt. | <sup>378</sup>Amatus Lusitanus, *Curationum medicinalium centuriae quatuor*, p. 232: Ad oculorum praeservationem. **R:** aquae plantaginis, euphragiae, rosarum, an drach.i camphorae, scriptulum unum, croci grana duo. Misce, fiat collyrium et penna leni, oculi saepe inungantur.

---

**9** Variolarum] \veloararum/ morbillorum. **10** anglice smale poxe] Anglice ~~measeles~~ \smalepoxe/. **21** leni] levi [following Hall's source].

R: powdered castor ½dr, foetidae pills 1dr. Make 7 pills, gild them.

She was rightly purged, and freed from her symptoms.

Finally:

R: castor powder ½dr, extract for the womb 1dr. Make 9 pills: 3 at

5 bedtime, in the morning 2.

*It was with these few that she regained complete health unexpectedly and very speedily, nor did this illness ever reappear.*

[Case 159] Cure of small pox.

10 The only son of Reverend Holyoak who compiled the most learned dictionary: seized by continual burning fever, lower backache, cough. I said they were the precursors /156/ of measles, nor did my opinion fail me, for the next day they appeared on his face after he took the following potion:

15 R: diascordium 1dr, coral tincture, bezoar stone each 3gr, in fennel water, with the desired result, for he was freed from pain in the back and stomach, and [the pocks] began to spring out.

*To preserve the eyes:*

R: waters of plantain, eyebright, roses each 1dr, camphor 1sc, saffron

20 2gr. Mix. make eyedrops and anoint the eye often with a fine feather. To preserve the throat and gullet, I ordered him to gargle

---

9 Case 159] S.O.: Observ. LXIV [Second Century], pp. 154-55. 12 measles] The MS has measles changed to smallpox in the heading, but not in the text. 17 the pocks] A good sign, as the body was expelling the dangerous humours.

*ut continuo cum lacte caprino vel vaccino et aqua plantaginis simul mixtis gargarissaret. Est oris et gutturis praestantissimum remedium cum signa exanthematum se produnt.*<sup>379</sup>

5       *Syrupus granatorum in tali casu arcanus ut pulmones, pectus, gula a morbillis tuta forent, cum simul angustia et tussis adessent, ut continue hoc eclegmate lamberet praecepi:*

*R: syrupi granatorum dulcis unc.ii, sacchari penidiarum dr.iii, syrupi ex infusione rosarum, diamoronis ana unc.s, diatragacanthonis frigidis in tabulis dr.iii amidi purissimi sc.ii. Fiat eclegma.*<sup>380</sup> Sed  
10       quoniam non erant ad manus, usus est: syrupi magistralis scabiosae dr.s, capillorum veneris, liquiritiae ana unc.i, felici successu.

*Ad odoratus sensorium:*

*R: aceti rosati optimi parum, cum pane sisiligine et naribus admoveto.*<sup>381</sup>  
15

*Cibus huic sub noctem hordeatum hoc modo confectum:*

*R: hordei mundati p.i, /157/ amygdalarum dulcium unc.ii. Fiat hordeatum pro lib.i. Saccharo violato dulcoretur et eo loco cibi utebatur. Ut morbilli magis per cutem prodierent, decocto liquiritiae, ficuum et hordei communalis ad maiorem expulsionem utebatur.*  
20  
*Calide sese in lecto continendo et imperavi ut ignem satis luculentum*

---

<sup>379</sup>Foreest, *De febribus ephemeris et continuis*, p. 98: mandavi ut continuo cum lacte caprino et aqua plantaginis simul mixtis tepide gargarissaret: [...] estque oris tum gutturis praestantissimum remedium, cum signa exanthematum se produnt. | <sup>380</sup>Foreest, *De febribus ephemeris et continuis*, p. 98: Deinde ut etiam pulmo, pectus, gula intus a morbillis tuta forent, cum simul angustia ac tussis adessent, ut continuo ex hoc elegmate lamberet, praecepi: **R:** sy. granat. dulc. unc.ii, zacch penid. dr.iii sy. ex infus. ros diamoronis ana unc.s diadrag. frig. in tabul. dr.iii, amidi purissimi sc.ii. Fiat elegma: ita profuit, ut in simili casu etiam pro arcano haberem. | <sup>381</sup>Amatus Lusitanus, *Curationum medicinalium centuriae quatuor*, p. 232: Ad odoratus sensorium. **R:** aceti rosati optimi parum, et naribus admoveto, et odoret.

*continuously with goat's or cow's milk, mixed at the same time with plantain water. This is a supreme remedy for the mouth and throat when the exanthematous signs show themselves.*

*In a case like this, Pomegranate syrup is a secret, to protect the lungs, chest and throat from measles, despite the simultaneous presence of laboured breathing and cough. I therefore instructed him to lick this eclegma without a break:*

*R: sweet syrup of pomegranates 2oz, barley sugar 3dr, syrups of rose infusion, mulberries each ½oz, cold diatragacanth in tablets 3dr. refined flour 2sc. Make an eclegma. But this was not to hand, so he used magisterial scabious syrup, maidenhair fern, liquorice each 1oz, with happy effect.*

*For the sense of smell:*

*R: a little best rose vinegar with wheat bread, applied to the nostrils.*

*His food before night was barley made in this fashion:*

*R: wheat barley 1 handful, /157/ sweet almonds 2oz. Make barley water to 1 pint. Sweeten with violet sugar and use in place of food.*

*To make more spots appear through the skin, he used a decoction of liquorice, figs and common barley for greater expulsion. He stayed*

*warm in bed and I ordered that he have a sufficiently bright fire in*

---

**13** For ...smell] S.O.: to refresh the senses. **16** handful] Mostly I have translated p. as pinch (*pugillum*) but handful is also possible and seems more likely here.

**17** Sweeten...appear] sweetnd with sugar of violets, that the pox might be expelled more. **18** through...expulsion] To the skin was used a decocotion of liquoris, figgs and common barly, which was given hot.

*in cubiculo haberet.*<sup>382</sup> Potus ptisana.

His rite, laus Deo curatus.

[Case 160] Gutta ambulatoria. Aprilis 10.

- 5 Generosus Comitis Northamptoniensis habuit dolorem extremum modo in unum mox in alium genu ita ut pro dolore egre ambulabat, urinae quoque aliquando retentione lacinatus. Nomen, ni fallor, Peterus Hugges, Wallicus, aetatis 34.

Subito liberatus, paucis his administratis:

- 10 **R:** pilulae sine quibus, foetidae ana dr.i, ex opoponace sc.ii, pulveris trochischi alhandal sc.i, salis prunellae gr.15. Fiant pilulae, deaurentur. Capiat pilulam circa horam decimam vespertinam, mane 4 circa septimam horam, per iii dies. Rite purgatus.
- R:** emplastri oxycrocei, diachylonis cum gummi ana unc.i, olei
- 15 lateribus dr.i. Fiat emplastrum. Loco dolenti applicatur.
- Liberatus.

27 Decembris, ob praecautioem:

- R:** electuarii cariocostini unc.s, tartari cremoris sc.i, syrupi diaseros unc.i, aquae betonicae unc.4. Misce.
- 20 **R:** pilulae sine quibus dr.i, foetidae dr.i.s, trochischi alhandal sc.i.
- Fiant pilulae 10. Dentur 5 pro vice.

Penitus liberatus, Deo gloria.

---

<sup>382</sup>Foreest, *De febribus ephemeris et continuis*, p. 99: Cibus huic sub noctem erat hordeatum hoc modo confectum. **R:** hordei mundati p. i, amygd. dul. unc.ii, fiat hordeatum ut artis est pro lib.i et saccharo violaceo dulcoretur, et eo loco cibi utebatur subinde. Ceterum cum morbilli magis per cutim prodirent, decocto glycyrrizae, ficuum et hordei communis ad maiorem expulsionem utebatur calide sese in lecto continendo, et imperavi ut ignem satis luculentum, cum morbilli erumperent, in cubiculo quo decumbebat, haberet.

---

18 tartari] ♀.



*his bedroom.* To drink: a ptisane.

These, praise God, rightly cured him.

[Case 160]<sup>33</sup> Wandering gout. 10 April.

- 5 A Gentleman of the Count of Northampton: had severe pain now in one and then the other knee, so that he scarcely walked for pain. He has at some times been attacked by retention of urine. His name if I am not mistaken was Peter Hugges, a Welshman, aged 34.

He was quickly freed, by these few ministrations:

- 10 **R:** pills - sine quibus, foetidae each 1dr, opoponax 2sc, powder of alhandal trochees 1sc, saltpetre 15gr. Make pills, gild them. Take 1 pill about ten o'clock in the evening, 4 in the morning about seven o'clock, for three days. He was truly purged.

- R:** oxycrocium plaster, diachylon with gum each 1oz, oil of bricks  
15 1dr. Make a plaster. Apply to the painful area. He was freed.

27 December: for prevention:

**R:** caryocostinum electuary ½oz, cream of tartar 1sc, diasereos syrup 1oz, betony water 4oz. Mix.

**R:** pills, sine quibus 1dr, foetidae 1½dr, alhandal trochees 1sc.

- 20 Make 10 pills. Give 5 per dose.

He was completely freed, praise God.

---

<sup>33</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

---

**4** Case 160] *S.O.*: Observ. LXV [Second Century], pp. 155-56. **7** His... Welshman] *S.O.*: omits..

[Case 161] Ascharides. Decembris 28.

Generosa Bove de Kinges Coton, aetatis 46, pruritu in ano et ascharidibus lancia, cito curata sic:

- 5 **R**: pilulae hierae cum agarico dr.ii, Ruffi dr.i, foetidae sc.i. Fiant pilulae N.15. **/158/** Capiat ii hora somni, mane iii. His finitis, *datur rotula una, vel dr.i vel plus ponderans.*

- R: seminis Macedonici, seminis santonici ana sc.4, corticum granatorum, cornu cervi usti ana dr.s, dictamni albi, rhabarbari electi,*  
10 *caryophyllorum ana sc.i, cinamomi dr.ii, croci sc.i. Misce, fiat pulvis et cum sufficiente quanto sacchari fiant rotulae ad quantitatem dr.i.<sup>383</sup>*  
Utetur suppositorio ex lardo aliquando glister ex lacte et saccharo sordido. Spacio 15 dierum capiat rotulas praedictas.

A pruritu et vermibus penitus liberata.

15

[Case 162] 1633. Febris scorbutica.

- Domina Browne de Ratforde, aetatis 49. Januarii i. Scorbuto confirmato diu laboravit, nunc febre scorbutica continua ardente  
20 cruciata. His symptomatibus divexata: cordis palpitatione, flatu stomachi et ventris; etiamsi ructu vel crepitu flatu emittit, parvum tamen sentit levamen. Os habet siccum perpetuo etiamsi modico potu contenta.

---

<sup>383</sup>Amatus Lusitanus, *Curationum medicinalium centuriae quatuor*, p. 313: **R** seminis Macedonici, seminis sancti ana drachmas tres, corticum granatorum, cornu cervi usti ana drachmas duas, dictamni albi, rhabarbari electi, gariophyllorum ana drachmam unam, cinamomi drachmas octo, croci drachmam unam, misce et fiat pulvis, et cum libris tribus sacchari, ad ignem fiant rotuli [...] datur autem rotulus unus vel alter, drachmam vel plus ponderans.

---

**17** 1633] in margin.

[Case 161] Roundworms. 28 December.

Mrs Bovey, a gentlewoman of Kings Coughton aged 46: attacked by anal itching and roundworms. She was quickly cured in this way:

5    **R:** pills - hiera with agaric 2dr, Ruffus's 1dr, foetidae 1sc. Make 15 pills. **/158/** Take 2 at bedtime, 3 in the morning. When these were finished, *give one roll, either 1dr or weighing more:*

***R:** Macedonian parsley seeds, wormseed each 4sc, pomegranate rind, burnt hartshorn each ½dr, white dittany, choice rhubarb, cloves each*  
10    *1sc, cinnamon 2dr, saffron 1sc. Mix. Make a powder and make rolls 1dr in amount, with sufficient sugar.* She is to use a lard suppository, followed by an enema of milk and unrefined sugar. Take the above rolls for fifteen days.

She was completely freed from the itching and worms.

15

[Case 162] 1633. Scorbutic fever.

Lady Browne of Radford, aged 49, 1 January: suffered for a long time from long-established scurvy, now tortured by a continual burning scorbutic fever. These symptoms trouble her: palpitation of  
20    the heart, wind in the stomach and bowels. Even when she passes wind or belches, she feels only a little relief. Her mouth is perpetually dry although she is satisfied with a small amount to

---

**2** Case 161] S.O.: Observ. LXVI [Second Century], p. 156. **14** itching and worms] S.O.: adds additional recipes here. **16** Case 162] S.O.: Observ. LXVII [Second Century], pp. 157-58.

*Pulsum habet varium, debilem, inaequalem ac saepe  
vermicularem ut repere magis quam pulsare iudicarem.*<sup>384</sup> *Mitio-  
rem habet in hac febre scorbutica calorem quam in exquisita, et minori  
cum siti ac inquietudine sunt coniunctae, aut si haec graviora, tamen*  
5 *anxietas per intervalla recurrens et ad praecordia molesta, et pulsus  
tardus et inaequalis. Febres has caute ab aliis febris continuis  
discernit, quibus si accedant urinae crassae et /159/ subrubrae cum  
crasso subrubro ac gravi et inaequali sedimento et sitis minor sit  
quam pro putredinis magnitudine (sicut in illa) signum hoc multo*  
10 *firmiter est.*<sup>385</sup> *Animi deliquio cum e lecto surgit, ut statim  
expiratura videatur. Pulsus tunc temporis fortior et magis quam  
antea percipitur; procul dubio propter summam eius necessitatem, et  
quod vapores cor pravae, quibus molestatur, expellere conatur.*<sup>386</sup>

*Ego ab huius pulsus parvitate admonitus et Dominam monui, ne*  
15 *temere se de lecto precipitaret, quod facilis ac subitus descensus,  
animi deliquium ei minaretur [...] Familiare huius mali accidens quod  
a vaporum exhalatione fit, qui ab interna hac putrefactione solvuntur  
et sursum ad cordem et eius capsulam exhalant, cum flatu.*<sup>387</sup> *In*

<sup>384</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 88: Pulsus est varius, nunc debilis, et inaequalis ac saepe vermicularis, ut repere magis, quam pulsare videatur.

<sup>385</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 129-130: Nam febres hae continuae scorbuticae mitiorem calorem habent, et minori cum siti, ac inquietudine sunt coniunctae; aut si haec sint graviora, tamen anxietas per intervalla recurrens, et ad praecordia molesta, et pulsus tardus, ac inaequalis febres facile ab aliis febribus continuis discernit. Quibus si accedant urinae crassae, et subrubrae, cum crasso subrubro, ac gravi, et inaequali sedimento, et sitis minor sit, quam putredine magnitudine, signum hoc multo firmiter est. | <sup>386</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 88: ut aeger statim expiraturus videatur, pulsus fortior et magis, quam antea percipitur: proculdubio propter summam eius necessitatem, et quod cor vapores pravae, quibus molestatur, expellere conatur. | <sup>387</sup>Eugalenus *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 297: Ego etiam ab huius pulsus parvitate admonitus, aegrotum monui, ne temere se de lecto praecipitaret, quod facilis ac subitus de eo descensus animi deliquium eo minaretur [...]

quod a vaporum exhalatione fieri putos, qui ab interna has putrefactione solvuntur et sursum ad cor et eius capsulam exhalant.

7 discernit] deferunt [following Hall's source].

drink.

*She has a changing pulse, weak, unequal and often wormlike, so that I judge it more to crawl than to beat. She has less heat in a scorbutic than an intense acute fever, and it is less associated with*  
5 *thirst and restlessness. Or, if the heat is worse, anxiety still recurs at intervals and troubles her over her heart, and the pulse is slow and unequal. One distinguishes these fevers carefully from other continual fevers by this: if thick /159/ reddish urine with thick, reddish, heavy and uneven sediment are added, and thirst is less*  
10 *than matches the degree of putrefaction (as in her case) this sign is much more convincing. When she rises from bed she feels faint, so that it seems she is going to die on the instant. At that time the pulse feels rather stronger and larger than before, without doubt because there is the greatest need, and because the heart is attempting to*  
15 *expel the corrupt vapours which trouble it.*

*The smallness of the pulse warned me and I advised the lady not to fear that she would fall out of bed, because the descent is easy and with support. This is a common consequence of this mischief, because it arises from an exhalation of vapours released by internal*  
20 *putrefaction, and breathes out as high as the heart and its container,*

---

7 One...this] S.O. omits. 11 so... 15 it] S.O.: with many other deadly symptoms.

13 because...192,16 putrefaction] S.O.: Having great torment in the belly.

18 This...192,16 putrefaction] S.O. omits.

- abdomine advertuntur flatus in utrumque latus*<sup>388</sup> (nam de  
torminibus lateris conquesta); *flatulentam melancholiam parit  
minera scorbuti siquidem circumscripta sedibus hypochondriorum in  
liene. Mesareo circa pancreas ebulliat [...] ac putrescens veluti*  
5 *fermentetur.*<sup>389</sup> *Nec in anteriorem nec posteriorem corporis regionem  
diffusi, flatus ventriculi affectionem monstrantes, praecordia  
coangustantes, ac libertatem respiratus impediens: adsunt et  
gravissimi ventris membranarum ac musculorum lacinata iique vel  
continue vel per intervalla affligentes.*<sup>390</sup>
- 10 *Hanc a me petentem et efflagitantem auxilium intra paucos dies  
per Dei gratiam et clementiam,*<sup>391</sup> *his /160/ paucis sequentibus  
machinamentis vindica est,*<sup>392</sup> *ab torminibus ventris et deliquio  
animi et ventris constipatione spacio 24 horarum. Nota Bene:  
Sitiebat multum et bibebat saepius, sed non magnus haustus.*
- 15 *Lingua fissuris divellebatur ab acrimonia vaporum ab hac  
putrefactione ascendentium.*<sup>393</sup>

Glistere:

- R:** decoctionis communis pro glistere unc.12, sacchari sordidi  
unc.4, butyri recentis unc.ii. Misce. Sedes habuit duas, sed  
20 antequam glistere administrare iubebam, devorabat sequentem

<sup>388</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 603. | <sup>389</sup>Alberti, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 403: Flatulentam melancholiam parit minera scorbuti, siquidem circumscripta sedibus hypochondriorum in liene, masareo circa pancreas ebulliat ac [...] putrescens veluti fermentetur. | <sup>390</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 603 [continuing directly from the previous Martini borrowing].

<sup>391</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 219: hunc a me petentem et efflagitantem auxilium intra horae spatium per Dei gratiam et clementiam. | <sup>392</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 218: his paucis sequentibus machinamentis vindicatus est ab hoc malo.

<sup>393</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 312: Sitiebat multum et bibebat saepius, sed non magnos haustus. Labia et lingua quibusdam fissuris divellebantur ab acrimonia vaporum, ab hac putrefactione ascendentium.

**13** Nota Bene] N.B. in margin and in text.

with wind. The wind could be felt in either side of the belly (she complained of pain in the sides). The source of scurvy in the spleen produces a flatulent melancholy, since the regions of the hypochondria encircle the spleen. The melancholy bubbles up in the meseraic veins around the pancreas and putrefies as if it were fermenting. The winds spread out neither in the front nor back part of the body, indicating that they are affecting the stomach, constricting the precordium, obstructing freedom of respiration. She is attacked by most severe winds from the stomach, limbs and muscles, either continuously or breaking out at intervals.

[The patient], pleading and demanding help from me, was freed through God's grace and mercy /160/ by the following few devices in a few days, and from torments of the belly and fainting and constipation within twenty-four hours. NOTE: She was very thirsty and drank often, but not large draughts. Her tongue was covered in cracks due the acrid nature of the vapours rising from putrefaction.

An enema:

R: the common decoction for an enema 12oz, unrefined sugar 4oz, fresh butter 2oz. Mix. She had two stools. But before I prescribed the administration of the enema, she swallowed the following electuary:

---

<sup>2</sup> source of scurvy] the spleen.

electuarium:

**R:** speciei liberantis dr.i, in conserva berberis, hora ante glisterem, et hora somni lapidis bezoar gr.5. Mane iterum electuarium praescriptum. Glistere repetito, ex quo iii sedes cum magno levamine. Nota Bene: Omnia calida e glisteribus exterminanda quoniam flatum ascendere cogunt. Gelatinum ex cornu cervi cum iusculo, in iusculo herbae antiscorbuticae.

Hora somni:

**R:** aquae cordialis frigidae Saxoniae unc.i, syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti coch.ii.

3<sup>a</sup> die sic purgata:

**R:** mannae unc.i, rhabarbari expressi dr.i, tartari sc.i, syrupi sceletyrbici Foresti unc.i, aquae cichorii unc.iii. 4 sedes. Pro siti usa decoctione cornu cervi, et his pancratice valet Domina.

Causa huius ex maerore mortis fuit filiae unicae, quae post partum obiit. Fuit filia phoenix sui sexui, pia, religiosa, si quae alia optimae structurae, (quam semper honoris causa nomino) et sic cum Deo relinquo.

[Case 163] /161/ Calculus, lumbago, febris.

Domina Rainsfforde, calculo cruciata, febre, siti, circa aetatis annum 62, sequenti curata, ita ut nunc valet. Domina modesta, pia, benigna, et de omnibus bene merita. Sacrarum literarum lectioni addictissima, linguae Gallicae et Itallicae experta.

---

5 Nota Bene] in margin. 12 tartari] ȳ.



R: liberans powder 1dr in barberry conserve an hour before the enema, and at bedtime bezoar stone 5gr. Repeat the above electuary in the morning: The enema was repeated, which resulted in 3 stools with great relief. NOTE: All the heat ought to be removed  
5 with enemas, because they force the wind to rise. [Take] hartshorn jelly in broth containing antiscorbutic herbs.

At bedtime:

R: cordial water frigida Saxoniae 1oz, Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup.

She was purged thus on the third day:

10 R: manna 1oz, expressed rhubarb 1dr, tartar 1sc, Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup 1oz, chicory water 3oz. Four stools. She used the hartshorn decoction when thirsty, and with these she becomes heartily healthy.

The cause was from grief at the death of her only daughter,  
15 who died after giving birth. This daughter was a phoenix of her sex, devoutly pious, as well structured as anyone (I name her always to honour her). So I leave her with God.

[Case 163] /161/ Stone, lower backache, fever.

20 Lady Rainsford: tortured by the stone, fever and thirst, about 62 years old. She was cured with the following, so that now she is healthy. She is modest, pious, kindly and well-deserving of everyone. She was most devoted to reading the Holy Scriptures, and was experienced in the French and Italian languages.

---

4 All...rise] S.O. omits. 14 The... 17 God] S.O. omits. 19 Case 163] S.O.: Observ. LXVIII [Second Century], pp158-59. 22 She... 24 languages] S.O. omits.

℞: pulveris elleboris dr.i, terebinthinae Cypri dr.ii. Misce. Dentur pilulae 5 ex drachma.

℞: olei scorpionum unc.i, amygdalarum dulcium dr.ii. Misce, illineatur dorsum.

- 5 ℞: decoctionis emollientis unc.12, electuarii lenitivi, diaphaeniconis ana unc.i, syrupi rosarum solutivi unc.iii. Misce, fiat clyster, ii sedes. Sex horis elapsis, alium exhibui ex decocto praeparato, sacchari unc.4, butyri unc.4. Fiat.

Sed nota, omni 3a hora capi iubebam sequentem:

- 10 ℞: speciei liberantis dr.i, syrupi papaveris erratici unc.s, possetalae quantum satis. Nox quieta.

℞: rhabarbari pulverizati dr.ii, aquae fumae terrae unc.8. Bulliant ad 4, colaturae adde tartari cremoris sc.i, syrupi diaseros unc.ii. Fiat haustus: 5 sedes.

- 15 Die sequenti glister ex oleo seminum lini, hora cubitus:

℞: speciei liberantis sc.ii, cornu cervi praeparati sc.i, tincturae coralli sc.s.

Et sic mane, laus Deo trino et uno curata.

20

[Case 164] Arthritis scorbutica.

Februarii i 1633.

Episcopus Wigorniensis Dr Thorberrey, circa aetatis annum 86, arthritide scorbutica diu cruciatus. *Falsa arthritidis imagine*

- 25 *medicos eius decipiunt ludificantque*, qui in veteri medicina expertes

---

13 tartari] ♀.

R: hellebore powder 1dr, Cyprus turpentine 2dr. Mix. Give 5 pills from 1dr.

R: oils- of scorpions 1oz, of sweet almonds 2dr. Mix. Rub on the back.

- 5 R: emollient decoction 12oz, lenitive electuary, diaphoenicon each 1oz, loosening rose syrup 3oz. Mix. Make an enema: two stools. After six hours had passed, I administered another [enema] from the prepared decoction: sugar 4oz, butter 4oz. Make it.

But NOTE: I prescribed the following to be taken every third  
10 hour:

R: liberans powder 1dr, syrup of corn poppies ½oz, sufficient posset ale. The night was restful.

R: powdered rhubarb 2dr, fumitory water 8oz. Boil, reduce to 4. To the strained liquid add cream of tartar 1sc, diasereos syrup 2oz.

- 15 Make a draught: five stools.

An enema of linseed oil the next day, at bedtime:

R: liberans powder 2sc, prepared hartshorn 1sc, coral tincture ½sc.

And so in the morning she was cured, praise God the three and one.

20

[Case 164] Scorbutic arthritis.

1 February 1633.

The Bishop of Worcester, Dr Thornborough, about 86 years old: tortured for a long time by scorbutic arthritis. *The deceptive*

- 25 *appearance of the arthritis misled and toyed with his physicians,*

---

**18** praise...one] S.O. omits. **21** Case 164] S.O.: Observ. LXIX [Second Century], pp. 159-60.

et docti.<sup>394</sup>

*Inquirenti mihi de omnibus diligentius de arthritide an fixa vel  
vaga, deinde de urina, postea maculis, confessus reverendus pater  
ante paucos dies subnigras maculas sibi in cruribus apperuisse,*

5 *quae in citrinum colorem /162/ desiissent, unde de scorbuto  
confirmatus.*<sup>395</sup> Urinam eius modo rubram, modo crassam inveni,  
nam frequens eius mutatio est signum scorbuti, *quae quantum  
memoria mea repetere mecum possum, fuit quotidie mutatio aut  
crassae, sublividae et rubrae vel albae, subsidentes et turbidae*  
10 *apparuerunt, cum et sine sedimento.*<sup>396</sup>

Maculae: *Quod crassum et gravius est ad crura decumbit,  
ibique maculas varias excitat, quae in principio rubicundae, illis, quae  
a pulicum morsibus relinquuntur, non absimiles, hinc sublividae et  
purpuriae erumpunt, tandemque inclinant ad colorem nigrum [...] sunt*  
15 *maiores [...] et minores morsibus pulicum similes,*<sup>397</sup> *frequentius [...] in  
cruribus, cum natura vitiosos humores soleat ad partes ignobiliores et  
remotas depellere.*<sup>398</sup>

Vigilia: Nox inquieta. *Ob salsos, et acres humores vapores ad*

---

<sup>394</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 97: Hoc loco de iis saltem dicemus, qui in articulis tantum excitantur, et falsa arthritide imagine medicos decipiunt ludificantque. | <sup>395</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 167: Itaq. inquirenti mihi de omnibus diligentius, confessa aegra est, ante paucos dies subnigras maculas sibi in cruribus apparuisse, quae in citrinam colorem desiissent. Unde de scorbuto confirmatus. | <sup>396</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 100: quae quantum memoria mea repetere mecum possum, aut crassae, sublividae et rubrae, vel albae, subsidentes, et turbidae, apparuerunt, cum, et sine sedimentis. | <sup>397</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 82: Quod autem crassum et gravius est, ad crura decumbit, ibique maculas varias excitat, quae in principio rubicundae, illis, quae a pulicum morsibus relinquuntur, non absimiles, hinc purpureae, et sublivida erumpunt, tandemque ad nigrum colorem inclinant [...] et maiores [...] et minores pulicum morsibus similes. <sup>398</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 83.

---

11 Maculae] in margin. 18 Vigilia] in margin.

who were experienced and learned in traditional medicine.

I enquired more thoroughly concerning the arthritis,  
whether it was fixed or wandering, then about his urine and  
finally the blotches. *The Reverend Father revealed that blackish*  
5 *blotches had appeared on his legs a few days earlier, which*  
*/162/ changed to a yellow colour, which confirmed scurvy.* I  
found his urine now red, now turbid, frequent change being a  
sign of scurvy. *As far as I can recall from memory, it changed*  
*daily: either thick, bluish, red or white, appearing to be clearing or*  
10 *turbid, with or without sediment.*

Blotches: *What is thick and heavier sinks to the legs, where it*  
*causes various blotches which are at first ruddy, not dissimilar to*  
*those left by fleabites. They break out bluish and purple, then turn*  
*black. Both the larger ones, and the smaller ones similar to fleabites,*  
15 *occur more frequently on the legs, since nature is accustomed to*  
*banish vicious humours to the less noble and more distant parts.*

Wakefulness; a restless night: *They are harassed by*  
*wakefulness because of salty and bitter windy humours rising to the*  
*head, and if they sleep, they are terrified.*

20

25

---

2 I...10 sediment] S.O.: livid spots in his thighs. 11 Blotches...16 parts] S.O. omits. Blotches] in margin. 17 Wakefulness...19 terrified] S.O. omits. | Wakefulness] in margin.

*caput ascendentes vigiliis infestantur, et si dormiunt, terrentur.*<sup>399</sup>

- Sic huic episcopo accedebat, nam filius eius eques aestate praeterita dispensatorem eius gladio transfodit, quoniam pecuniam quam mutuam accepit, iterum solvere rogabat. Ira accensa, gladio
- 5 capite vulnerato, et sanguine vestibus tinctis, ira in furorem conversa, stricto gladio pectus transfodit filius, ita ut ne verbum unum vel alterum emisit. Haec audiente episcopo et servum in sanguine volventem (quem unice amabat) perspiciente, statim animi deliquium passus. Cum ad se reddiit ex imaginatione /163/ et
- 10 metu mortis filii (quem in deliriis habuit) ob homicidium, melancholia gravi corripitur; ob maerorem et metum supplicii (nocte somniabat filium suspensum esse) a terrore ob visum suspensi filii expergefactus. Postea melancholia gravi afflictus, ita ut edere nec dormire potuit. Hinc illae lachrymae et morbi causa.
- 15 Nunc de dolore genu et tali conquestus. Dixi se non laborare podagra simplici, sed arthritide scorbutica vaga, *nam arthritidis scorbutum saepe comitatur* quae dictus scorbutica vaga, *quae tamen ipsa non in uno loco ad morbi solutionem subsistit, sed vaga [...]* modo in genu, mox in pede cum [...] et
- 20 *sine tumore corripitur*, sed in genu et circa talum magnus tumor fuit, in pede tumor sicut hydropicus, nam digitis non cedit sicut in hydrope vera, neque *arthritidis vera fuit ab antiquis descripta*, nam ista locum non mutet, haec modo in genu mox

---

<sup>399</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 111.

What affected the bishop was this. His son, a knight, had stabbed with his sword one of the Bishop's servants the previous summer, for borrowing money and then asking for the debt to be cancelled. His son's rage was inflamed when his head was wounded with a sword, his clothes stained with blood. Then, anger turning to fury, his son drew his sword and stabbed [the servant] through the chest, so that he never said another word. The Bishop fainted on hearing this, and seeing the servant (whom he especially loved) rolling in blood. When he recovered, he was seized in his imagination with severe melancholy /163/ and fear of the execution of his son (as he thought in his delirium) for murder. Because of grief and fear of the punishment (he dreamed at night that his son had been hanged) he was woken in terror by the sight of his execution. Following this he was troubled by severe melancholy so that he could neither eat nor sleep. This was the cause of these tears and the illness.

He now complained of pains in his knees and elsewhere. I told him he did not suffer from a simple gout but a wandering scorbutic arthritis, *for it often accompanies the arthritis of scurvy* which is called wandering scurvy, *because it does not stay in one place until the weakening of the illness but, wandering it seizes now the knee, then the foot with or without swelling.* There was a lot of such swelling in the knee and around the ankle, in the foot similar swelling to dropsy, though it did not yield to the fingers as in a true

---

2 What... 18 l] S.O.: If he did sleep it was with terror, which happened from the sudden slaughter of one of his family, which did much terrify and perplex his spirits, and afflicted him grievously with melancholy.

in pede, huc et illuc vaga ista *ad solutionem usque membrum,*  
*quod primo apprehendit, obsideat. [...] haec ortum habet ab*  
*humoribus serosis, tenuibus et acribus ad motum promptis et ad*  
*locum mutandum aptis.*<sup>400</sup>

5 Praedixi me levare, sed nunquam curare quoniam senio  
confectus, et ipse dixit, visitandi sunt senes curandi iuvenes.  
Sed quoniam noctes insomnes erant et dies molestae, iubet me  
tentare se aliquid levaminis ei darem, nam sic vivere mori est.

Nomine Dei, sequentes praescripsi, purgatione omissa ob  
10 vires imbecilles et quoniam ante purgatus:

**/164/** gelatinum ex rasuris cornu cervi, herbis  
antiscorbuticis, coxendice vituli et perdicis cum passulis et  
dactylis compositum. Colaturae addebam tincturam croci  
parum et alkermes cum saccharo cando dulcorandum, palato  
15 acceptum, naribus odoriferum, stomacho aptum. Succum  
cochleariae praeparatum cum vino ter in die accipere vellem,  
et *tumoribus dolentibus lumbricos vivos imponi iubebam*, cum  
saepe in eodem dolore, felici successu applicavi ceteris, *eum*  
*exilire, circumgirari, incurvavi, tabescere et emori.*<sup>401</sup> Viderim  
20 sequenti experimento Eugaleni: *tumoribus livides*  
*accomodatissimo quod in tribus 4 diebus omnem hunc tumorem*  
*et duritiem discutiat ac tollit* et pulverem absinthii et ovis ut

<sup>400</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 102: Eodem modo et arthritis scorbutum saepe comitatur; quae tamen et ipsa non in uno loco ad morbi solutionem subsistit, sed vaga est [...] et sine tumore corripiatur; cum arthritis ab antiquis descripta locum non mutet, sed ad solutionem usque membrum, quod primo apprehendit, obsideat [...] ortum autem habet ab humoribus serosis, tenuibus, et acribus ad motum promptis et ad locum mutandum aptis. | <sup>401</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 350: si imponatur loco maximo dolenti lumbricus vivus, eum exilire, circumgirari, incurvari, tabescere, et emori.



dropsy, nor was it a true arthritis as described by early authorities,  
for that does not change its place, now in the knees and then in the  
feet, hither and thither. *It takes possession of the limb which was  
first seized in order to weaken it. It has its roots in thin, watery,*  
5 *bitter humours ready for movement and apt for changing place.*

I warned that I could alleviate but never cure it, because he  
was weakened by age. He replied, 'the old should be visited, the  
young cured'. But because his nights were sleepless and his days  
troubled, he instructed me to try to give some alleviation, for 'to live  
10 so is to die'.

I prescribed the following in the name of God, omitting  
purgation because of his weak strength and since he had been  
purged before:

**/164/** A jelly of hartshorn shavings, antiscorbutic herbs, veal bones  
15 and partridge, made with raisins and dates. To the strained liquid I  
added a little tincture of saffron and alkermes with sugar candy for  
sweetening, acceptable to the palate, fragrant to the nose, and  
suitable for the stomach. I wished him to take prepared scurvy-  
grass juice three times a day. *I prescribed live worms to be placed*  
20 *on the painful swellings*, seeing that I have applied them  
successfully in other cases, *for they leap up, curl around, bend*  
*down, dwindle away, and die.* I have observed this as in  
Eugalenus's experience: *it is most appropriate for livid swellings*

---

**1** nor...5 place] S.O. omits. **6** I<sup>1</sup>...10 die] I said he might be eased, but never perfectly cured, which I effected as follows. **17** acceptable...stomach] S.O. omits. **19** three] S.O.: twice or thrice. **21** for...198,2 before] S.O. omits.

antea.<sup>402</sup>

Balneum pro pedibus ante usum pultis:

℞: becabungae M.10, cervisiae quantum satis. Bulliant et fiat  
balneum in quo pedes mane et vesperi balniet. E balneo nox longe  
5 aliis quietior, et ea nocte *somno complexus arctior quam antea*.<sup>403</sup>  
Deinde remisi aquam nostram antiscorbuticam, cum caepit aquam  
antiscorbuticam. Usus succo cochleariae ut antea et gelatinum.  
Habuit quoque biream antiscorbuticam.

His laus Deo a dolore et tumore pedum penitus liberatus.

10 Mensa altera visitatum inveni eum ambulans strenue, et mihi  
ingentes reddebat gratias. Laus Deo Optimo Maximo.

15 [Case 165] /165/ Vomitus extremus, flatus  
stomachi, respiratio difficilis, ventris constipatio,  
scorbutus. 1633.

Generosus Simon Underhill, circa aetatis annum 40, de praedictis  
symptomatibus conquestus, quae re vera sunt signa scorbuti.

20 Causas quaere foliis 238-240, 242 Eugaleni,<sup>404</sup> et foliis 115, 612,  
721 Danielis Senerti, *Tractatus de scorbuto*.<sup>405</sup>

Multum confert habere alvum fluvidam.

℞: ialapae sc.i, tartari cremoris sc.s, terebinthinae Cypri quantum

---

<sup>402</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 136: Sequenti experimento, hisce  
tumoribus accomodatissimo, quod in duobus ac tribus diebus, omnem hunc  
tumorem et duritiem discussit et tollit. | <sup>403</sup>Echoing Cicero, 'Scipionis  
somnia, Book VI', *De Re Publica*: arctior, quam solebat, somnus complexus  
est. | <sup>404</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, pp. 238-40, 242-43. | <sup>405</sup>Sennert, *De  
scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 115-116; Martini, 'De scorbuto' in Sennert, *De scorbuto  
tractatus*, pp. 612-13, 721-22.

---

23 tartari] ♀.

*because it dissipates and removes all swelling and hardness in three or four days.* Wormwood powder and egg as before.

A bath for the feet before he used the poultice:

5     ℞: brooklime 10 handfuls, sufficient beer. Boil and make a bath, bathe the feet in it morning and evening. After the bath the night was more restful than for a long time. *He was gripped by sleep more closely than before.* Then I reduced our antiscorbutic water, seeing he took [another] antiscorbutic water. He used scurvy grass juice as before, and jelly. He also took antiscorbutic beer.

10         These, praise God, freed him completely from the pain and swelling of his feet. The next month I contrived to visit him. He was walking vigorously and thanked me greatly. Praise to almighty God most high.

15                 [Case 165] /**165**/ Very severe vomiting, wind in the stomach, difficulty of breathing, constipation of the belly, scurvy. 1633.

Mr Simon Underhill, a gentleman about 40 years old: complained of the above symptoms, which are true signs of scurvy. For the  
20     causes, see Eugalenus, pages 238-240, 242, and Daniel Sennert, *Tractatus de scorbuto*, pages 115, 612, 721.

This causes very loose bowel movements:

℞: jalap 1sc, cream of tartar ½sc, sufficient Cyprus turpentine. Make 3 pills. He was wholly purged.

---

**15** Case 165] S.O.: Observ. LXX [Second Century], pp. 160-61. **19** For ...21 721] S.O. omits.

satis. Fiant pilulae N.iii. Rite purgatus.

Pro anhelitu difficili, capiat:

℞: speciei pleres archonticonis dr.ii, conservae cochleariae unc.ii,  
confectionis alkermes sc.i. Misce. Dosis instar nucis moschati,  
5 hora ante pastum. Reiteretur saepe. Usus quoque diacrocuma  
ante cenam ad dr.ii.

His longe melius, ita ut me nesciente curriculo ad domum  
evectus cum ad me venisset. Dixit se hic mori aut curari, nam  
longe malit quam sic vivere, nam sic vivere continuo mori dixit.

10 Nocte post primum somnum, 7 die Martii, flatu a stomachi  
caput petente pro dolore dixit se insumere ad dolorem  
compescendum:

℞: pulveris Pannonici rubeae sc.ii cum syrupo violarum ex cochleari.

Nox postea quieta. Mane clyster ex decoctione becabungae,  
15 nasturtii aquatici, cochleariae, urticae. Cuius decoctionis  
accipiebam unc.12, pulveris Holland dr.i, diaphaeniconis unc.i,  
speciei diaturbith cum rhabarbari dr.i.s. Misce, fiat glister. Multos  
emisit bombardos et crepitus. Sed ante glisterem devorare vellem  
conservae cochleariae dr.iii, pulveris Pannonici rubeae sc.i.

20 Die 9:

℞: succi cochleariae praeparati unc.8, syrupi becabungae, nasturtii  
aquatici ana unc.ii. Usus vino chalybeato, electuario pleres  
archonticonis post pastum, et continuo birea antiscorbutica.

His spacio 14 dierum sanus evasit, laus Deo.

25

For the difficulty in breathing, take:

R: pleres archonticon powder 2dr, scurvy grass conserve 2oz,  
alkermes confection 1sc. Mix. Dose: the amount of a nutmeg, an  
5 hour before meals. Repeat often. He also used diacrocuma, up to  
2dr before dinner.

He improved a great deal, so it was unexpected when he  
turned up at my home, brought to me in a carriage. He said he  
would rather die here or be cured, for he much preferred that to  
10 living like this. 'For', he said, 'to continue to live like this is to die'.

During the night of 7 March, wind from the stomach reached  
his head, like a pain. He asked for something to control it:

R: red Pannonian powder 2sc with syrup of violets, from a spoon.

The rest of the night was restful. In the morning: an enema of a  
15 decoction of brooklime, watercress, scurvy-grass and nettle. I took  
12oz of the decoction, Holland powder 1dr, diaphoenicon 1oz,  
diaturbith powder with rhubarb 1½dr. Mix. Make an enema. He  
discharged many cannon blasts and farts. Before the enema I  
wished him to swallow scurvy grass conserve 3dr, red Pannonian  
20 powder 1sc.

On the 9th day:

R: prepared scurvy-grass juice 8oz, syrups of brooklime and  
watercress each 2oz. He used steeled wine, pleres archonticon  
electuary after meals, and antiscorbutic beer all the time.

25 Within fourteen days he was healthy again. Praise God.

[Case 166] /166/ Hysterica passio, brachiorum  
convulsio et buccae sinistrae, cum animae  
deliquio. Februarii 22.

Generosa Swift, virgo intacta, casta, proba, eximiae structurae,  
5 consanguinea Baroneti Broke de Castro Warwici, circa aetatis  
annum 20: suffocatione matricis, tortura oris, convulsionibus  
manuum et brachiorum misere lacinata. Rite a medico experto  
purgata, et multa frustra adhibenda.

Tandem huic deploratae generosae nomine Dei sic  
10 succurrebam:

℞: decoctionis bryoniae cum herbis uterinis lib.s, speciei hierae  
picrae dr.ii, pulveris Holland dr.i. Fiat glister, ii sedes cum fructu.  
Dabam aquae hystericæ unc.i, sed evomebat, et statim pilulas  
sequentes:

15 ℞: extracti hystericæ sc.i, faeculae bryoniae sc.s. Fiant pilulae N.iii,  
deaurantur. Hora dimidia elapsa iterum evomebat pituitam et  
melancholiam acidam, et de calore stomachi conquesta, sicut fuit  
excoriatio. Iussi bibere haustum aqua limpide frigide ad lib.s.  
Statim iterum evomebat, iterum haustus aquae reiteratus, tam cito  
20 ut in stomacho calido evomebat. Tunc iterum repetere iubebam.  
Retenuit et longe melius habuit.

Pro convulsione:

℞: unguenti Martiati unc.s, olei sassaphras et succini ana gut.5.  
Misce. Inungatur nuca. Umbilico emplastrum ex caranna, in cuius  
25 medio granae quinque sivet et moschi, super bombacem et

[Case 166] /166/ Fit of the womb,  
convulsion of the arms and left cheek, with  
fainting. 22 February.

Mrs Swift, a gentlewoman, spinster, modest, well-conducted, of  
5 excellent structure, a relative of Baron Brooke of Warwick Castle:  
wretchedly attacked by suffocation of the womb, spasm of the  
mouth, convulsions in the hands and arms. She was properly  
purged by an experienced physician and consulted many in vain.

Then I hastened to the aid of this desperately ill gentlewoman  
10 in the name of God, thus:

**R:** bryony decoction with feverfew ½lb, hiera picra powder 2dr,  
Holland powder 1dr. Make an enema: two stools with relief. I gave  
water for the womb 1oz but she vomited, then at once the following  
pills:

15 **R:** extract for the womb 1sc, bryony dregs ½sc. Make 3 pills, gild  
them. After half an hour she vomited phlegm and black acid bile  
again, and complained of heat in the stomach, as if it were being  
scalded. I directed her to drink clear cold water, up to ½ pint. She  
vomited again at once. Again I repeated the draught of water, so  
20 that as it reached the heat of her stomach, she vomited. Then I  
directed it repeated once more. She retained it, and was much  
better.

For the convulsion:

**R:** Martiatum ointment ½oz, oils of sassaphras and amber each 5  
25 drops. Mix. Rub onto the neck. To the umbilicus: a plaster of

---

**1** Case 166] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXI [Second Century], pp. 161-62. **3** 22 February] *S.O.* omits. **4** modest well-conducted of excellent structure] *S.O.* omits. **8** experienced physician] *S.O.*: expert physicians.

gelatinum ex rasuris cornu cervi cum pauxilio faeculae bryoniae et aronis, et sic per plures dies. Usa *sternutatorio Rulandi*.<sup>406</sup> /167/ Habuit deliquium parvum animae adhuc bis in hora antea 4 vel sexties.

5 Hora somni:

℞: mosci optimi gr.5, cinamomi, caryophylli, nucis moschati ana sc.i. Cum confectione alkermes fiant pilulae deaurandae.

His, laus Deo, penitus liberata.

10

[Case 167] Febris ardens, hydrops scorbutica.

Generosa Finnes (quam semper honoris causa nomino) ex stirpe nobili orta, puerpera tertio post partum die, febre ardenti corripitur cum siti et virium deiectione.

15

Obstetrice praesente hypositaliam ex succo limonum et oxalidis, et cum pullo offam succo oxalidis intentere vellit et sic comederit. His stomacho nimis frigefacto in tumorem hydropicum incidebat cum tumore dextri femoris et cruris ita ut pro dolore movere non potuit. Obstetrix emplastrum de

20

minio applicabat et strenue circumligare iubat. Dolore et tumore adhuc augente, tandem meam petit praesentiam.

Cum tumorem durum percipiebam, hydropicem scorbuticum iudicabam ex duro tumore. Differentiam in tumorem hydropicum et scorbuticum, quaere folio 623 Danieli Senerti

25

*Tractatus de scorbuto*.<sup>407</sup> Parva hemiplegia debilitata et phlegmate paene suffocata. *Generosae desperatae auxiliares*

<sup>406</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria II', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 125.

<sup>407</sup>Martini, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 623.



caranna with five grains of civet and musk in the middle on cotton-  
wool, and hartshorn shavings with a little bryony dregs and arum.  
Continue for several days. She used *Ruland's sneezing powder*.

**/167/** She had slight fainting attacks, up to twice an hour,  
5 previously four to six.

At bedtime:

**R:** best musk 5gr, cinnamon, cloves, nutmeg each 1sc. Make gilded  
pills with alkermes confection.

These completely cured her, praise God.

10

[Case 167] Burning fever, scorbutic dropsy.

Mrs Fiennes, a gentlewoman (whom I name always with respect),  
born of noble stock: seized by a burning fever with thirst and loss of  
strength three days after giving birth.

15

The midwife in attendance wished to give her posset ale with  
lemon juice and wood-sorrel, and a morsel of chicken with wood-  
sorrel juice, so she ate it. They cooled her stomach too much. She  
fell into a dropsical swelling with swelling of the right leg and thigh,  
so that she was unable to move for pain. The midwife applied a  
20 plaster of red lead and instructed it to be tightly fastened round.

The pain and swelling increased and finally she asked me to attend.  
When I saw the hard swelling, I diagnosed scorbutic dropsy. For the  
differences between a dropsical and a scorbutic swelling, see Daniel  
Sennert, *Tractatus de scorbuto*, page 623. She was weakened by a

---

**4** She...6 bedtime] *S.O.*: being troubled with faintings, twice an hour there was  
given her the following. **11** Case 167] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXII [Second Century],  
pp. 162-165. **12** whom...stock] *S.O.* omits. **19** she...pain] *S.O.*: for the pain  
the midwife could not move it. **22** For...24 623] *S.O.* omits.

*manus meas maiorem in modum flagitanti divino auxilio adiutus  
ita auxiliior.*<sup>408</sup>

Et primo ne phlegmatis copia suffocetur linctum talem  
praescripsi:

- 5     ℞: syrupi hyssopii, syrupi becabungae, nasturtii aquatici, scabiosae  
magisterii ana unc.i. Cum bacculo liquiriticae saepe lambebat  
exoptato eventu.

Enema:

- ℞: malvae, becabungae, nasturtii aquatici, cochleariae ana M.i,  
10     /168/ radice foeniculi, petroselini ana unc.ii, summitatum  
sambuci M.s. Bulliant in satis quantum aquae ad unc.12.  
Colaturae adde sacchari sordidi unc.4. Optime purgata a flatu et  
phlegmate, et sic die sequenti rite purgata, cum exoptato eventu.

Hora cubitus:

- 15     ℞: pulveris Pannonici rubeae dr.s, cornus cervi praeparati sc.s,  
confectionis alkerme sc.i. Cum syrupi limonum capiat. Nocte  
sudore madefacta, reiteratus mane pulvis in animae deliquium,  
nam quando e lecto vel cathedra se movere vellit, viribus deiectionis in  
animi deliquium incederet. Hoc quoque scorbuti signum non  
20     contemnendum.

Ad vires restaurandas, dabam electuarium hoc:

℞: conservae cochleariae unc.ii, speciei pleres archonticonis unc.s.  
Misce. Instar nucis moschati detur per tertiae horis spacium  
antequam surgeat.

25

---

<sup>408</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 505:  
Aegrotanti desperato auxiliares meas manus maiorem in modum flagitanti  
divino auxilio adiutus ita auxiliior.

slight hemiplegia and almost choked with phlegm. *I help the desperately ill gentlewoman in great measure with the skill of my hands and by calling on divine aid, in this way:*

First, so that she was not choked by abundance of phlegm, I  
5 prescribed a linctus of this sort:

**R:** syrups of hyssop, brooklime, watercress, magisterial scabious  
each 1oz. She licked it often with a liquorice stick, with the desired  
result.

An enema:

10 **R:** mallow, brooklime, watercress, scurvy grass each 1 handful,  
**/168/** fennel, parsley roots each 2oz, tops of elder ½ handful. Boil  
in sufficient water to 12oz. To the strained liquid add unrefined  
sugar 4oz. She was very well purged of wind and phlegm, and thus  
the next day was rightly purged with the desired result.

15 At bedtime:

**R:** red Pannonian powder ½dr, prepared hartshorn ½sc, alkermes  
confection 1sc. Take it with lemon juice. That night she was  
soaked in sweat. The powder was repeated in the morning during a  
faint for, when she wished to move from a bed or chair, she fell from  
20 diminished strength into a faint. This too is sign of scurvy that  
should not be disregarded.

To restore strength I gave this electuary:

**R:** scurvy grass conserve 2oz, pleres archonticon powder ½oz. Mix.  
Give the amount of a nutmeg three hours before she rises.

---

20 This...disregarded] S.O. omits.

Sic multis negotiis impeditus, diutius cum illa versari non potui. Cras vellem ut servum ad me mitteret, ipse mihi nunciat quod nocte phlegmate paene suffocata. Iterum syrupum phlegmaticum praeparatum remisi, et aquam nostram antiscorbuticam ut pro Episcopo. Capiat mane coch.vi et hora cubitus, et his optime, laus Deo, restituta praeter amicorum expectationem qui mortem prae foribus iudicabant.

Glister omni alio die:

**R:** turionum sambuci M.i, cochleariae, nasturtii aquatici, becabungae ana M.s, urticarum recentium cum toto M.i, radices petroselini, foeniculi ana unc.i. Bulliant in satis quantum aquae. **/169/** Colaturae **R** unc.12, diacatholiconis unc.i, speciei diaturbith cum rhabbaro dr.ii. Fiat glister, sedes iii. Restauratium quoque habuit ex limacibus et lumbricis terrestres, rasis cornu cervi et croco cum herbis antiscorbuticis ut pro Episcopo Wigorniae, et pullo et perdici cum cinamomo.

Biream habuit talem antiscorbuticam:

**R:** turionum sambuci, foliorum betonicae, agrimoniae, scabiosae, absinthii ana M.i, nasturtii aquatici, becabungae ana M.ii, cardui benedicti, fumariae, chamaedrios ana M.s, nasturtii aquatici, becabungae ana M.ii, cochleariae M.4, baccarum iuniperi lib.s. Incisa et contusa infundantur in liquoris cervisiae incocti congios quinque. Bulliant ad 4r. Hae *species comprehendantur nodulo* et cum praedicto bulliant.<sup>409</sup> Postea referventur et in doliolo filo suspendantur seminum coriandri, anisi ana unc.s, liquiritiae unc.i, sarsaparillae unc.ii, sassaphras unc.i, corticis winterani unc.s.

---

<sup>409</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 141.

Because I was hindered by much business, I could not stay with her longer. I asked her to send a servant to me the next day. He reported that she had almost been choked by phlegm during the night. I sent back the prepared syrup for phlegm again, and our  
5 antiscorbutic water as for the Bishop. Take 6 spoonfuls in the morning and at bedtime. These restored her very well, praise God, beyond the expectation of her friends who thought death was at the doors.

An enema every other day:

10 **R:** elder buds 1 handful, scurvy-grass, watercress, brooklime each ½ handful, entire fresh nettles 1 handful, parsley, fennel roots each 1oz. Boil in sufficient water. **/169/ R:** of the strained liquid 12oz, diacatholicon 1oz, diaturbith powder with rhubarb 2dr. Make an  
15 enema: three stools. She also had a restorative of snails and earthworms, hartshorn shavings and saffron with antiscorbutic herbs as for the Bishop of Worcester, and chicken and partridge with cinnamon.

She had an antiscorbutic beer of this sort:

**R:** elder buds, leaves of betony, agrimony, scabious, wormwood each  
20 1 handful, watercress, brooklime each 2 handfuls, blessed thistle, fumitory, wall germander each ½ handful, watercress, brooklime each 2 handfuls, scurvy grass 4 handfuls, juniper berries ½lb. Infuse sliced and bruised in uncooked beer mash, 5 gallons. Boil, reduce to four gallons. *Combine these powders in a little knot* and  
25 boil with the above. Afterwards boil again, and hang on a string in

---

**16** as ... Worcester] S.O.: omits.

Stent 14 diebus, deinde ieiuno stomacho capiat haustum, et ante prandium et cenam et cum cubitum descedit.

Pro contractione tibiae, a principio unguento sequenti:

**R:** olei lumbricorum, chamaemellini, de castoreo ana unc.i, pinguae  
5 anserinae, gallinae ana unc.s, unguenti dialtheae unc.ii, succi e  
foliis cochleariae, becabungae, nasturtii aquatici ana unc.i, cerae  
quantum satis. Fiat unguentum. Hoc unguento exoptato eventu  
usa, nam trium dierum spacio per se sine bacculo ambulare potuit.

Omni **/170/** die capiat unc.4 huius:

10 **R:** cochleariae, nasturtii aquatici partes aequales, becabungae  
dimidiam partem. Contundantur in mortareo lapideo et in lacti  
coquantur, non magna liquoris copia affundenda.<sup>410</sup> Potus ut antea.

Bis in septimana capiat enema:

**R:** urinae pueri impuberis unc.12. His incoque fermenti unc.i.s,  
15 seminum foeniculi, anisi, anethi ana unc.i.s, mellis despumati unc.i.  
Fiat clyster.<sup>411</sup>

Inde rediviva pristinae sanitati restuitur, Dei solo nutu, praeter  
amicorum spem.<sup>412</sup>

20

[Case 168] Scorbuta hydropica, respiratio

difficilis, tumor pedum, icteritia citrina, ventris et

lateris tumor. 1633 Martii xii.

<sup>410</sup>Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 168: **R:** cochlear. nasturt. aquat. part. aeq. becabung. dimid. part. Contundantur in mortareo lapideo, et in lacte caprino, vel sero coquantur. Succus tamen praestat, et ob id non magna liquoris copia affundenda. | <sup>411</sup>Willich, *Urinarum probationes*, p. 321: Accip. urinae pueri impubis unc.x. His incoque fermenti unc.i.s semin. foeniculi: anisi: anethi: ana unc.i.s. Mellis despumati, unc.i. Fiat clyster. | <sup>412</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII' *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 530: Inde mox redivivus pristinae sanitati restituitur praeter meam et aliorum spem Dei solo nutu.

the barrel, coriander, anise seeds each ½oz, liquorice 1oz,  
sarsaparilla 2oz, sassaphras 1oz, skin of winter cherries ½oz.  
Stand for fourteen days, then take a draught on an empty stomach,  
and before lunch and dinner and when retiring to bed.

5           The following ointment from the beginning, for contraction of  
the leg:

*R:* oil of worms, chamomile, of castor each 1oz, goose, chicken fat  
each ½oz, marsh mallow ointment 2oz, juice and leaves of scurvy-  
grass, brooklime, watercress each 1oz, sufficient wax. Make an  
10          ointment. She used this ointment with the desired result, for within  
the space of three days she could walk without a stick.

**/170/** Take 4oz of this, every day:

*R: scurvy-grass, watercress equal parts, brooklime half a part.*  
*Pound in a stone mortar and boil in milk, not pouring in a large*  
15          *amount of liquid.* The drink as before.

Take an enema twice weekly:

*R: urine of a prepubescent boy 12oz. In this boil leavening 1½oz,*  
*fennel, anise, dill seeds each 1½oz, purified honey 1oz. Make an*  
20          *enema.*

*Then she was revived, restored to her previous health by the*  
*will of God alone, beyond the hope of friends.*

[Case 168] Scorbutic dropsy, difficulty of breathing,  
swelling of the feet, yellow jaundice, swelling of the  
25          belly and sides. 12 March 1633.

---

15 before] *S.O.*: adds: till the beer was ready. 20 by...friends] *S.O.* omits.

23 Case 168] *S.O.*: *Observ. LXXIII [Second Century]*, pp. 165-67.

Generosus Fortescue, Catholicus de Cookehill, aetatis 38, *crebris potationibus deditus*,<sup>413</sup> *optimi habitus, natura sanguineus, satis obesus et utcunque densus*,<sup>414</sup> incidebat ex crapula in hydropem scorbuticam cum respiratione difficili, tumore ventris, scroti, pedum  
5 duro, flatu hypochondriaco, icteritia citrina per totum corpus diffusa.

De his conquestus, ad quem veniens, sequentia ordinabam praesidia:

R: pulveris senae laxativae, speciei diaturbith cum rhabarbaro ana  
10 sc.ii, syrupi cichorii cum rhabarbaro unc.i, possetalae quantum satis. Fiat haustus, 8 sedes.

13:

R: pilularum stomachi, Ruffi, sine quibus ana sc.i. **/171/** Fiant pilulae 5: sedes vi.

15 14: venae sectio ad unc.vii.

15:

R: polypodii quercini, liquiritiae ana unc.i, radices cichorii unc.s, herbarum becabungae, cochleariae, nasturtii aquatici, fumariae, centaurii minoris ana M.s, foliorum senae unc.iii, agarici incisi  
20 dr.vi, rhabarbari dr.ii, tartari cremoris dr.i, florum chamaemelli, turionum sambuci ana p.ii, seminum foeniculi, dauci ana dr.i.s, cinamomi, caryophylli, corticis winterani ana dr.i, zedoariae dr.s, croci sc.s, passularum solis enucleatarum unc.iii. Fiat infusio in lib.8 aquae fontanae per noctem. Mane bulliant ad 3 partis  
25 consumptionem. Quotidie capiat coch.8, ex quibus 5 sedes

---

<sup>413</sup>Foreest, *De febribus ephemeris et continuis*, p. 94. | <sup>414</sup>Foreest, *De febribus ephemeris et continuis*, p. 113.

---

20 tartari] ♀.



Mr Fortescue, a gentleman, Catholic, of Cookhill aged 38: given to  
*frequent heavy drinking, of very good build, sanguine by nature,*  
*fairly fat though compact.* He fell into scorbutic dropsy from  
drunkenness, with difficulty in breathing, hard swelling of the belly,  
5 scrotum, feet, wind in the hypochondrium. yellow jaundice had  
spread over his whole body.

He complained of these, and when I came I prescribed the  
following defence:

R: laxative senna powder, diaturbith powder with rhubarb each 2sc,  
10 chicory syrup with rhubarb 1oz, sufficient posset ale. Make a  
draught: eight stools.

13th:

R: pills.- stomach, Ruffus's, sine quibus each 1sc. /171/ Make 5  
pills: six stools.

15 14th: Venesection to 7oz.

15th:

R: polypody of the oak, liquorice each 1oz, chicory root ½oz, shoots  
of brooklime, scurvy grass, watercress, fumitory, lesser centaury  
each ½ handful, senna leaves 3oz, sliced agaric 6dr, rhubarb 2dr,  
20 cream of tartar 1dr, chamomile flowers, elderflower buds each 2  
pinches, fennel, carrot seeds each 1½dr, cinnamon, cloves, peel of  
winter cherries each 1dr, zedoary ½dr, saffron ½sc, stoned raisins  
3oz. Make an infusion in 8 pints spring water overnight. In the  
morning boil, reduce by a third. Take 8 spoonfuls daily, resulting in

quotidie.

18:

**R:** pilularum aggregatarum, stomacharum, Ruffi, ana dr.s,  
gambogii praeparati gr.14. Fiat pilulae N.10, pro ii vicibus: ex  
5 unaque dosi, sedes 5.

Post pastum:

**R:** diambrae dr.ii, sacchari rosati unc.ii. Coch.s dosis.

Restaurativum ut pro Generosa Finnes, folio 169 et folio 164. Omni  
3<sup>a</sup> die purgandus.

10 *Pro siti lenienda, loco cervisiae frequenter utatur decoctione  
infusione sassaphras, quae fiat hoc modo:*

**R:** rasurae ligni sassaphras unc.i, radices liquiritiae rasae unc.ii,  
seminum foeniculi dr.ii, passularum minorum unc.i.s. Indantur in  
lagenam stanneam et affundantur aquae ferventissimae lib.vi.

15 *Optime claudatur et in loco frigido sua sponte frige fiat.*<sup>415</sup>

Diacrocuma usus ad dr.ii.

Omni mane per 5 matutinis et post pastum:

**R:** speciei pleres archonticonis dr.ii, sacchari unc.i. Dosis coch.s.

Die 24:

20 Purgatus pilulis praedictis ut 18 die, sedes 8. *Decoctum ligni sancti  
hoc modo praeparatum:*

**R:** ligni sancti in ramenta pulverati lib.i, aquae lib.9. Bulliant ad  
dimidias et sub finem decoctionis adiciebam soldanellae siccae M.i,  
interioris cinamomi unc.ii, passularum cum acinis unc.ii. Fiat

25 *decoctio. /172/ Illam calentem in alterum vas vitreum infundi*

---

<sup>415</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, pp. 141-142: pro siti lenienda loco cerevisiae frequenter utatur quae fiat hoc modo: **R:** rasur. ligni sassafras unc.i, rad. liquirit. rasae unc.ii, sem. foenic. dr.ii, passul. minorum unc.i.s. Indantur in lagenam stanneam et affundantur aquae ferventissimae mensurae duae, optime claudatur, et in loco frigido sua sponte frige fiat.

five stools each day.

18th:

R: pills - aggregative, for the stomach, Ruffus's each ½dr, prepared gamboge 14gr. Make 10 pills for 2 doses. Five stools from 1 dose.

5           After meals:

R: diambra 2dr, rose sugar 2oz. Dose: ½ spoonful. The restorative as for Mrs Fiennes, page /169/ and page /164/. He was purged every third day.

10           *To assuage thirst, instead of beer he frequently used a decoction of sassaphras infusion, made in this way:*

*R: shavings of sassaphras wood 1oz, of liquorice root 2oz, fennel seeds 2dr, small raisins 1½oz. Place in a pewter flask and pour on boiling water 6 pints. Close very well and allow to cool in a cold place. He used diacrocuma up to 2dr.*

15           Every morning on five mornings, and after meals:

R: pleres archonticon powder 2dr, sugar 1oz. Dose: ½ spoonful.

24th:

He was purged with the above pills as on the 18th: eight stools. A *decoction of guaiacum, prepared in this way:*

20           *R: guaiacum wood broken into chips 1lb, water 9 pints. Boil, reduce to a half. Near the end of cooking, I added dried bindweed 1 handful, inner cinnamon 2oz, raisins with seeds 2oz. Make a decoction. /172/ I ordered this to be poured, hot, into another glass*

---

15 Every...meals] S.O.: attaches this to the previous sentence.

*iubebam, in quo vini generosi lib.iii inieceram. Ex hoc syrupo calido  
unc.9 mane sumere, vesperi unc.vi consulebam, eumque probe  
stragulis opertum elicere sudorem.*<sup>416</sup> Victus erat exsiccans.

Omni 3<sup>a</sup> die glistere ex urina et fermento ut pro Generosa  
5 Fienes, folio /170/, et semel in septimana bolo sequenti purgatus:  
℞: ialapae sc.i, tartari cremoris dr.i, electuarii de tamarindis unc.s.  
Fiat bolus: vii sedes. His tumor penitus sublatus.

Nescio quo fato sed 3 Aprilis in febre incidebat. Duos habuit  
paroxysmos in rigore et horrore vi horis, in calore iii. Iterum  
10 purgatus bolo praedicto: 5 sedes magnas et aquosas. Hoc a febre  
liberatus.

Deinde usus per mensam birea antiscorbutica praedicta et  
pulverem post pastum:  
℞: pulveris Pannonici rubeae, speciei diambrae, speciei diamoschu  
15 dulcis ana dr.i, olei anisi destillati gut.iii, sacchari albi unc.4.  
Misce, fiat pulvis. Dosis quantum super vi denarii tenere potuit.

*Hoc modo sex septimanarum numero perfecte restitutus.*<sup>417</sup> Deo  
[...] sit laus, honor et gloria in aevum.<sup>418</sup>

20

<sup>416</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 89: Parabam autem decoctum ex ligni sancti in ramenta pulverati lib.i, in aquae libris novem decocti (erat autem aqua pluvia) ad dimidias, et sub finem decoctionis adiciebam soldanellae siccae manipulum, interioris cinamomi uncias duas, passularum cum acinis unc.ii. Ubi perfecta decoctio esset, illam calentem in alterum vas vitreum infundi iubebam, in quo vini generosi libras tres inieceram, et ex hoc syrupo calido uncias novem mane sumere, vesperi vero sex consulebam: eumque probe stragulis opertum elicere sudorem [also p. /81/. | <sup>417</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 523: Hoc itaque modo sex septimanarum numero perfecte restitutus est. | <sup>418</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 524: Deo τῷ ἀρχιᾶτρω sit laus et honor in omne aevum. Amen.

6 tartari] ♀. 12 birea antiscorbutica] biream antiscorbuticam.

*jar, into which I poured 3 pints of good wine. I advised drinking this syrup hot, 9oz in the morning, in the evening 6oz, and to cover himself properly with the bedcovers, to elicit sweat. His diet was drying.*

5            Every third day, an enema of urine and leavening as for Mrs Fiennes, page /170/. He was purged weekly with the following bolus:

**R:** jalap 1sc, cream of tartar 1dr, tamarind electuary ½oz. Make a bolus. Seven stools. These removed the swelling completely.

10           I do not know by what fate, but on 3 April he fell into a fever. He had two attacks of rigors and shivering for six hours, then was hot for three. He was purged again with the above bolus: five stools, large and watery. This freed him from the fever.

             Next he used the above antiscorbutic beer with meals, and this  
15        powder after meals:

**R:** red Pannonian powder, powders, diambra, sweet diamoschu each 1 dr, distilled anise oil 3 drops, white sugar 4oz. Mix. Make a powder. Dose: the amount that can be held on six pennies.<sup>34</sup>

*In this way he was completely restored in six weeks. Praise,*  
20        *honour and glory be to God, for ever.*

---

<sup>34</sup>Approximately 7 grams, or 11 grains.

**5** and leavening] S.O. omits. **19** Praise...ever] S.O. omits.

[Case 169] Scorbutus confirmatus cum sudore.

Kimberley Generosus circa aetatis annum 26, diu lassitudine totius corporis laboravit, plus appetit quam digerit, icteritia defaedatus, lumbagine, crurum imbecillitate, dolore pungitivo capitis maxime iuxta aurem corripitur. Urinae frequens mutatio et **/173/** pauca, aliquando crassa, modo clara sicut aqua fontana, levi membrorum iactatione aliquando gravatus, crurum doloribus lancinatus, dolore capitis et tumore gingivarum, digitorum dolore et tumore afflicto, vagoque dolore et flatu hypochondriaco lancinatus, morphea defoedatus, cum multis aliis scorbuti signis. A medicis multa incassum accepit. Usus balneis naturalibus sine fructu. Saepe purgatus et decoctione sudorifera usus sed frustra.

Hunc sanum reddidi paucis sequentibus. Maii 1:

**R:** diatartarii unc.ii. Quotidie cochlearium parvum accepit, ex unde 4 sedes. *Purgato suaviter corpore singulis diebus. Ter quaterve hora nimirum matutina qua sudor expectatur et quarta pomeridiana assumuntur unc.4 succi expressi ex herbis sequentibus. Admisceatur sacchari quantum satis et canellae dr.i.*

**R:** cochleariae, nasturtii aquatici ana lib.s, becabungae unc.4 [...] contendantur et exprimentur, adde cinamomi dr.i, sacchari quantum satis.<sup>419</sup>

<sup>419</sup>Wier, 'De scorbuto', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, pp. 324-325: Purgato suaviter corpore, singulis diebus bis, hora nimirum matutina, qua etiam in plerisque sudor expectatur, et quarta pomeridiana assumuntur unc.iiii succi expressi ex herbis sequentibus, admiscebiturque sacchari puri quantum voles, et canellae parum. **R** cochleariae, sisymbrii, cardamines, nasturtii hyemalis dicti an. partes aequales: bacabunge partem mediam, quantitate observata unius praedictae herbae: hae virides in mortario lapideo cum pistillo ligneo contundentur exprimenturque.

[Case 169]<sup>35</sup> Long-standing scurvy with sweating.

Mr Kimberley, a gentleman about 26 years old: suffered from tiredness of the whole body for a long time. He has better appetite than digestion and is disfigured by jaundice. He is seized by lower  
5 back pain, weakness of the legs, stabbing pain in the head especially near the ear. Urine: frequent small changes, /173/ sometimes thick, more recently clear like spring water. He was weighed down by slight shaking in the limbs, attacked by pains in the legs, headache and swelling of the gums, afflicted by pain and  
10 swelling of the fingers, attacked by wandering hypochondriac pain and wind, disfigured by morphew,<sup>36</sup> with many other signs of scurvy. He took much from physicians, to no avail, and used natural baths without profit. He was purged often and used a sweating decoction, but to no purpose.

15 I returned him to health with these few following. 1 May:  
**R:** diatartar 2oz. He received a small spoonful every day, resulting in four stools. *He was pleasantly purged in the body on each day. He definitely took 4oz of the expressed juice of the following plants at three or four o'clock in the morning when sweating was expected,*  
20 *and at four o'clock in the afternoon. Mix with sufficient sugar and cinnamon 1dr.*

**R:** scurvy grass, watercress each ½lb, brooklime 4oz. Bruise and

---

<sup>35</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications. | <sup>36</sup>A non-specific illness of the skin, associated with freckles or scaliness, but nowhere well defined.

---

**1** Case 169] S.O.: Observ. LXXIV [Second Century], pp. 167-69.

Usus praeterea birea antiscorbutica tali:

**R:** corticis fraxini, tamarisci, capparum ana unc.ii, raphani  
silvestris incisi unc.vi, herbarum absinthii, fumiterrae,  
chamaedryos, cardui benedicti, chelidonii ana M.s, betonicae,  
5 scabiosae, ceterach, valerianae, urticae ana M.i, nasturtii aquatici,  
becabungae ana M.ii, cochleariae M.iiii.

Sequentes indantur sacculo et cum birea bulliant:

**R:** /174/ baccarum iuniperii contusarum unc.vi, corticis winterani  
unc.s, sarsaparillae unc.ii, sassaphras unc.s, liquiritiae unc.i,  
10 seminum anisi, carvi, coriandri ana unc.s, nucis moschati N.ii.  
Postea sacculus in doliolo filo suspendatur pro iiii congiis bireae  
antequam florem cervisiariam addis. Infunde succi pomorum  
curtipendulum lib.i, succi cochleariae praeparati lib.ii, vini albi lib.i.  
Ut artis est adde florem et tempore idoneo vase obturato. Usui  
15 servetur pro potu ordinario. Pro tumore digitorum, imponatur  
digito tumenti lumbricus vivus ut pro Episcopo folio /164/.

His pilulis purgatus:

**R:** pilulae hierae cum agarico, masticis stomachi imperialis Ruffi  
ana dr.s. Fiat multa quinque ex dr.i: quinque sedes ex dr.i.

20 Mai 13:

***R:** novem lumbricos in mortario contusis cum ii cochleariis vini albi per  
pannum expressos. His addatur reliqua pars vini ita ut in toto habuit  
libram unam vini. Summatur coch.iii mane et miridie et vesperi, et  
omni 3<sup>a</sup> die purgatus.<sup>420</sup>*

25

---

<sup>420</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 350: **R** novem lumbricos in mortario contusos, cum 2 cochl. vini, per pannum expressos: his addatur, dimidia vini mensum: sumantur cochlearia 3 mane et meridie, et vesperi [see /88/].



*express, add cinnamon 1dr, sufficient sugar.*

He also used this kind of antiscorbutic beer:

**R:** bark of ash, tamarisk, capers each 2oz, horseradish 6oz,  
wormwood, fumitory, germander, blessed thistle, celandine plants  
5 each ½ handful, betony, scabious, spleenwort, valerian, nettles  
each 1 handful, watercress, brooklime each 2 handfuls, scurvy  
grass 4 handfuls.

Put the following in a bag and boil with the beer:

**R: /174/** bruised juniper berries 6oz, winter cherry skins ½oz,  
10 sarsaparilla, 2oz, sassaphras ½oz, liquorice 1oz, anise, caraway,  
cloves, coriander seeds each ½oz, nutmegs 2. Afterwards hang the  
bag by a string in a barrel for 4 gallons of beer. Before you add the  
brewers' yeast pour in juice of short-stemmed apples 1 pint,  
prepared scurvy-grass juice 2 pints, white wine 1 pint. Add the  
15 yeast by the rule of practice and close at the right time in a suitable  
vessel. Keep for use as the ordinary drink. For swelling of the  
fingers, place a living worm on the swollen finger as for the Bishop,  
page /164/.

He was purged with these pills:

20 **R:** pills - hiera with agaric, mastic, stomachic, imperial, Ruffus's  
each ½dr. Make lot, 5 [pills] from 1dr. Five stools from 1dr.

13 May:

**R:** 9 worms bruised in a mortar with 2 spoonfuls of white wine,  
pressed through a cloth. Add the rest of the wine to these, so that  
25 you have 1 pint of wine in all. Drink 3 spoonfuls morning, mid-day

---

**13** short-stemmed apples] S.O.: pippins. **14** Add... 16 vessel] S.O. omits.

**R:** pilularum aggregativarum dr.i, stomachi dr.s, gummi gambogiae praeparati gr.14. Fiat pilulae N.10: ex quinque, sedes 5.

Indies ad sanitatem reductus. Potus birea praeparata, usque ante potum eodem die:

- 5 **R:** electuarii chalybeati unc.4, conservae cochleariae unc.ii. Misce. Dosis instar nucis moschati et utetur exercitio per horam. Tunc capiat **/175/** haustum bireae. Birea bis reiterata, et electuario chalybeato usus per 15 dies, et post pastum conservae cochleariae unc.i, buglossi unc.s, speciei pleres archonticonis dr.ii. Misce:
- 10 instar nucis moschati post pastum.

Omni 4 vel 6 die, morsulis sequentibus purgatus, et dicuntur *morsuli purgantes de mechoacano*:

**R:** conservae violarum unc.i, speciei diatragacanthis frigidis dr.i.s, turbith gummosi, mechoacani albissimi et optimi ana dr.s,

- 15 *diagrydium cum oleo foeniculi praeparato dr.ii* (ego usus diagridio praeparato cum fumo sulphuris, aut Horsteus cum foeniculi oleo) *sacchari in aqua foeniculi dissoluti unc.14, olei cinamomi gutt.vi, olei anisi gutt.4. Fiat confectio in morsulis: ex dr.vii, sedes 8.*<sup>421</sup> Usus birea per iii menses.

- 20 *His per divinam virtutem, ipsaque medicamenta a maestissimo et intensissimo dolore partium liberatus fuit, ut iam anno elapso, nunquam amplius reciderit in haec articulorum mala tristitia et acerba,*<sup>422</sup> et Deo et mihi ingentes reddebat gratias, et vocat me

<sup>421</sup>Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 293: Morsuli purgantes de Mechoaca. **R** conser. violar. unc.i, sp. diatragacanth. frig. dri.s., turbith gummosi, mechoacan albiss. opt. ana unc.s diagryd. cum ol. foeniculi praeparat dr.i.s, sacch in aq. foeniculi solut unc.xiv, ol. cinam. gutt.vi, anisi gutt.iiii. F. cons in morsulis.

<sup>422</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, pp. 179-80: per divinam virtutem, ipsamque aquam a moestissimo et intensissimo dolore gonagrae liberatus mox fuit, ut iam annis multis nunquam elapso amplius reciderit in haec articulorum mala tristitia et acerba.

and afternoon. He was purged every third day.

R: pills - aggregative 1dr, stomachic ½dr, prepared gamboge gum  
14gr. Make 10 pills: from 5, five stools.

Day by day he was restored to health. He drank the prepared  
5 beer, and every day before the drink:

R: steeled electuary 4oz, scurvy grass conserve 2oz. Mix. Dose: the  
amount of a nutmeg, and he is to take exercise for an hour. Then  
take /175/ a draught of the beer. The beer was repeated twice, and  
the steeled electuary used for fifteen days. After meals: scurvy grass  
10 conserve 1oz, bugloss ½oz, pleres archonticon powder 2dr. Mix: the  
amount of a nutmeg after meals.

Every fourth to sixth day he was purged with the following  
morsels, called *purgative morsels of mechoachan*:

R: conserve of violets 1oz, powder for cold diatragacanth 1½dr,  
15 turbith gum, best white mechoachan each ½dr, diagrydium with  
prepared fennel oil 2dr (I use diagrydium prepared with sulphur  
fumes, or Horst's with oil of fennel) sugar dissolved in fennel water  
14oz, cinnamon oil 6 drops, anise oil 4 drops. Make sweetmeats in  
morsels. From 7dr, eight stools. He took the beer for three months.

20 By these, through divine power and the medicines, he has been  
freed from the most ill-omened and intense pain in his parts so that  
one year later, he has never again relapsed into this sad and bitter  
mischief of the joints. He gave great thanks to God and to me, and

---

7 and...hour] S.O. omits. 16 I...fennel] S.O. omits. 20 through...parts] S.O. omits.  
22 one...joints] S.O. omits.

patrem, quoniam ab orci faucibus salvum feci et integre convaluit.

[Case 170] Ascharida.

- 5 Generosa Editha Stauton, melancholia et ascharidibus misere  
lancinata nocte dieque. Curabam ut antea Generosae Bove.

Cito liberata et perfecte curata.

- 10 [Case 171] **/176/** Scorbutus, paralysis, hystERICA  
passio, animae deliquium.

- Generosa Wilsune, aetatis 34, honesta, pia, religiosa si quae altera,  
decessit ad sanitatem recuperandam Bristol nam ut sentiebat  
calculi cruciata. Aquam fontanam Sancti Vincenti nimiam avidem  
15 exhausit ad lib.13 unoque die pro calculo extirpando, ita ut corpore  
nimio refrigerato in paralysem incidebat. Statim Bathoneam se  
contulit, a doctore Lapwort purgata, et balneo usa. Convaluit.

- Domum rediit tempore pluvioso et tempestivo, ea nocte  
hystERICA passione cum animae deliquio et levi paralyse sinistri  
20 lateris conflictata. Meum petit consilium. *Accersitus ego invocato  
numine divino talia adhibeo auxilia.*<sup>423</sup>

**R:** aloes lucidae dr.ii, agarici trochischati, rhabarbari electi  
pulverizati ana dr.i, corticis radice caprarum, winterani, tamarisci

---

<sup>423</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VII' *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 523.

he calls me father because I saved him from the jaws of death. He recovered completely.

[Case 170] Roundworms.

- 5 Mrs Edith Stoughton, a gentlewoman: wretchedly attacked by melancholy and worms day and night. I cured her as for Mrs Bovey above.

She was quickly freed and perfectly cured.

- 10 [Case 171] /176/ Scurvy, paralysis, fit of the mother, fainting.

- Mrs Wilson, a gentlewoman aged 34, respected, as devoutly pious as anyone: went to Bristol for the restoration of her health, because she felt tortured by the stone. She drank the water of St Vincent's Fountain with excessive greed, up to thirteen pints in one day, in order to expel the stone. As a result her body became excessively cooled and she fell into a paralysis. She took herself at once to Bath, was purged by Dr Lapworth, and used the baths.<sup>37</sup> She recovered.
- 15

- 20 She returned home in wet and stormy weather, and was distressed by a fit of the mother at night, with fainting and a slight paralysis on the left side. She asks my advice. *Being summoned, I invoked the holy will and employed aids of these kinds.*

**R:** clear aloes 2dr, trochiscated agaric, choice powdered rhubarb

---

<sup>37</sup>Dr Edward Lapworth MD of Oxford; Raach, *English Country Physicians*, p. 62.

---

**4** Case 170] S.O.: Observ. LXXV [Second Century], p. 169. **5** wretchedly attacked by melancholy and worms] S.O.: aged 16, was miserably tormented with *ascarides*. **6** Mrs Bovey above] pp. /157-58/. **10** Case 171] S.O.: Observ. LXXVI [Second Century], pp. 170-71. **15** thirteen] S.O.: eighteen.

ana sc.i, faeculorum aronis, bryoniae ana sc.s, castorei dr.i.s,  
tartari cremoris dr.s, spiritus succini gr.4. Cum syrupo de fumaria  
composita quantum satis, fiat pilulae N.vi pro quavis drachma.

Capiat tres harum pilularum hora somni: die sequenti 4 sedes.

5        **/1777/** Pro flatu stomachi:

**R:** speciei diambrae dr.i, olei salviae chymici, nucis moschati,  
caryophyllae ana gut.4, sacchari in aqua rosarum dissoluti unc.ii.

Fiant rotulae. Capiat post pastum.

Pro paralysi:

10    **R:** speciei rorismarini, olei succini ana, quibus nuca et cervix levis  
illita illinantur.

Pro deliquio animi:

**R:** speciei pleres archonticonis unc.s, sacchari optimi unc.ii. Sit  
dosis coch.s. Statim a syncope et cordis tremore usu huius  
15    liberata, et est pulvis auro dignus et semper secum gestat.

Usa decoctione guaiaci:

**R:** *guaiaci unc.8, corticis eiusdem, rosmarini, ligni sassaphras,*  
*sarsaparillae ana unc.i, foliorum betonicae, salviae, lavendulae,*  
*chamaedryos ana p.i, radicis helenii, paeoniae, iridis, corticis citri*  
20    *siccati ana unc.i, aquae fontanae lib.vi. Infunde horis 24 in loco*  
*calido. Postea coquantur, vase clauso et deinde saccharo dulcoretur,*  
*et condiatur speciei diambrae dr.s. Capiat mane unc.vi et sudet, et*  
*circa 4<sup>r</sup> horam pomeridianam iterum capiat, sine sudore.*<sup>424</sup> Clyster  
ex decoctione communale, et seminibus carminativis, et pulvere

---

<sup>424</sup>Sennert, *Medicina practica*, pp. 654-655 : **R** ligni guaiaci unc.viii, corticis eiusdem, rad. helen, paeon. iridis, cortic. citri siccorum an. unc.i, aqu. purae lib.x. Infunde hor. xxiii in loco calido, postea coquantur. Colat. dulcoretur saccharo et condiatur spec. diagalang vel diacynamomi dr.i. Capiat aeger mane et post meridiem unc.vi ac mane sudet.

---

2 tartari] ♀.

each 1dr, bark of caper root, winter cherry, tamarisk each 1sc,  
arum, bryony dregs each ½sc, castor 1½sc, cream of tartar ½dr,  
amber spirit 4gr. Make 6 pills with sufficient fumitory syrup for as  
many drachms. Take 3 pills at bedtime: four stools the next day.

5            **/1777/** For wind in the stomach:

**R:** diambra powder 1dr, chymical oils of sage, nutmeg, cloves each 4  
drops, sugar dissolved in rose water 2oz. Make rolls. Take after  
meals.

For the paralysis:

10        **R:** rosemary powder, oil of amber each, with which anoint the neck,  
rubbing on lightly at the back and front.

For fainting:

**R:** pleres archonticon powder ½dr, best sugar 2oz. The dose should  
be ½ spoonful. Using these freed her at once from the fainting and  
15        palpitations of the heart. It is a powder worth gold and she always  
carries it with her.

She used guaiacum decoction:

**R:** *guaiacum 8oz, its bark, rosemary, sassaphras and sarsaparilla*  
*wood each 1oz, leaves of betony, sage, lavender, germander each 1*  
20        *pinch, roots of elecampane, peony, iris, dried citron rind each 1oz,*  
*spring water 6 pints. Infuse for twenty four hours in a hot place.*  
*Then boil in a closed vessel and sweeten with sugar, and flavour*  
*with diambra powder ½dr. Take 6oz in the morning and sweat, and*  
*again in the afternoon about four o'clock without sweating. An*  
25        *enema of the common decoction, carminative seeds and Holland*

---

**15** palpitations of the heart] S.O. adds: with which she had usually been troubled.  
she always carries it with her] S.O.: I always carry about with me.

Holland, et usa terebinthinae Cypri saepe in forma pilularum.

His laus Deo a paralyti et animae deliquio et hystERICA  
passione, Deo soli laus, liberata, a mortiferis morbis.

5

[Case 172] /178/ Vomitus continuus, dolor  
stomachi, lumbago, stupor pedum.

Generosa Wagstaffe de Warwick, vidua circa aetatis annum 48,  
vomitu continuo, stomachi dolore et capitis sicut pugionibus  
10 transfossa et transadigata, lumbagine, stupore pedum gravata.

℞: poculi chymici dr.vi: vomitus iii, sedes ii.

Pro cardialgia:

℞: conservae rosarum recentium unc.i, speciei aromaticum rosatum  
Gabrielis sc.i, *theriacae Londinensis* dr.i.<sup>425</sup> Misce, pro ii vicibus.

15

Pro dorso:

℞: olei scorpionum dr.ii, olei amygdalarum dulcium unc.ii. Misce.

Nox quieta, et torminibus bene levata.

Die sequenti mane, iniiciatur enema:

℞: radicis altheae unc.i, parietariae M.ii, meliloti, malvae, florum  
20 chamaemelli ana M.i, seminum lini, foenigraeci ana unc.s, foeniculi  
dr.ii. Coquantur in satis quantum aquae. Colaturae ℞ unc.10,  
cassiae extractae pro glistere unc.i, olei amygdalarum dulcium  
recentium unc.ii, pinguedine gallinae vel anserinae unc.i.

Fiat unguentum pro latere.

25

℞: *unguenti dialtheae unc.ii, olei amygdalarum dulcium unc.s.*  
*Dissolvantur et misceantur ad ignem pro unguento quo cum*

---

<sup>425</sup>*Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*, p. 90.



powder, and she used Cyprus turpentine often, in the form of pills.

She was freed by these, praise God, from the paralysis,  
fainting and the fit of the mother, praise God alone, from deadly  
illnesses.

5

[Case 172] /178/ Continuous vomiting, stomach  
ache, lower backache, numbness of the feet.

Mrs Wagstaffe, a gentlewoman of Warwick, widow, about 48 years  
old: weighed down by continuous vomiting, stomach ache and  
10 headache as if stabbed and transfixed by daggers, lower backache  
and numbness of the feet.

**R:** the chymical cup 6dr: three vomits, two stools.

For the heartburn:

**R:** fresh conserve of roses 1oz, Gabrieli's aromatic rose powder 1sc,  
15 London treacle 1dr. Mix for 2 doses.

For the back:

**R:** oil of scorpions 2dr, sweet almond oil 2oz. Mix. The night was  
restful, and she was well relieved of the torments.

The next morning, inject an enema:

20 **R:** marsh mallow root 1oz, pellitory of the wall 2 handfuls, melilot,  
mallow, chamomile flowers each 1 handful, linseed, fenugreek seeds  
each ½oz, fennel 2dr. Boil in sufficient water. **R:** of the strained  
liquid 10oz, cassia extract for enemas 1oz, fresh sweet almond oil  
2oz, chicken or goose fat 1oz.

25 Make an ointment for the side:

**R:** marsh mallow ointment 2oz, sweet almond oil ½oz. Dissolve and

---

**6** Case 172] S.O.: Observ. LXXVII [Second Century], pp. 171-72. **10** by daggers]  
S.O.: with needles and daggers.

*inunxisset latus. Superimposuit linteum tepide butyro perlitum bis in die.*<sup>426</sup>

Usa est pro flatu:

- 5     **R:** conservae dianthos, buglossi ana unc.i.s, conservae veronicae rubrae unc.i, radicis enulae campanae conditae, zingiberis conditi ana unc.s, speciei aromaticum rosatum dr.i.s, confectionis alkermes unc.s. Cum **/179/** syrupo regis vel de pomis fiat electuarium.

Dosis instar nucis moschati post pastum.

Post pastum capiat rotulam:

- 10    **R:** specierum diambrae dr.s, diamoschi dulcis sc.i, olei anisi chymici gut.iii, sacchari in aqua boraginis dissoluti quantum satis. Fiant rotulae. Purgata diatartaro bis in septimana.

Pervigiliam removi sic:

- 15    **R:** unguenti de alabastro vel populeono unc.s, laudani Paracelsi dissoluti in aqua rosarum gr.10. Hoc tempore inungantur.

*Atque his perpaucis adiumentis, Deo me indignum servulum adiuvante mox ad sanitatem rediit.*<sup>427</sup> Laus trino et uno Deo. 1634.

- 20                    [Case 173] Ventriculi doloris, scotomiae, surditatis, palpitationis cordis cura.

Generosa Cookes, annorum plus minus 48, constitutionis corporis gracilioris, conqueritur de dolore ventriculi, scotomia, tinnitu, surditate, gravedine, cordis palpitatione, quae symptomata omnia

- 25    cum liquido constet soboles esse flatuum hypochondriacorum

---

<sup>426</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 181 [also p. /121/]. | <sup>427</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria VIII', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 566: *Atque his perpaucis adiumentis, Deo suum fidelem ministrum adiuvante mox ad sanitatem rediit optime.* [The phrase 'me indignum servulum' occurs in several places in Ruland].

*mix at the fire for an ointment, with which anoint the side. Cover it with a cloth smeared with warm butter, twice a day.*

For wind she used:

- 5     **R:** rosemary, bugloss conserves each 1½oz, clove-gillyflower 1oz, preserved elecampane root, preserved ginger each ½oz, aromatic rose powder 1½dr, alkermes confection ½oz. **/179/** Make an electuary with syrup - regis, or of apples. Dose: the amount of a nutmeg after meals.

After meals take this roll:

- 10    **R:** diambra powder ½dr, sweet diamoschu 1sc, chymical oil of anise 3 drops, sufficient sugar dissolved in borage water. Make rolls. She was purged with diatartar twice a week.

I removed the wakefulness in this way:

- 15    **R:** alabaster or populeon ointment ½oz, Paracelsus's laudanum dissolved in rose water 10gr. Rub on the temples.

*With these very few aids and with the help of God, I his unworthy servant soon restored her to health. Praise God, three and one. 1634.*

- 20                   [Case 173] Cure of stomach ache, dimness of vision, deafness, palpitations of the heart.

- Mrs Cookes, a gentlewoman, 48 years more or less, of a slender build: complains of stomach ache, dimness of vision, tinnitus, deafness, cold in the head, palpitations of the heart. All of these  
25    symptoms seem to be due chiefly to hypochondriac winds springing

---

**16** With... 18 one] S.O.: and so she was healed. **20** Case 173] S.O.: Observ. LXXVIII [Second Century], pp. 172-173.

ortum ducentium ab obstructione et dyscrasia potissimum lienis et potissimam collimandam, ut pars illa protopathiam affecta, aliasque nobilioris: puta cor et caput per consensum laedens.

Ad debilem reducatur crisin, ut rite suo fungitur officio, /180/

5 primo igitur repurgentur prime via facili decoctione sequenti:

**R:** sarsaparillae unc.ii, hermodactylis unc.i.s, guaiaci, liquiritiae ana unc.i, senae unc.ii, polypodii quercini unc.ii, epithymi unc.s, enulae campanae dr.vi, agarici, rhabarbari ana dr.ii, seminum anisi, carvi, coriandri ana unc.s. Macerentur in vase clauso in lib.4 aquae  
10 fontanae, horis 24, deinde ebulliant. Cooperietur vas ne vapor exhalat. **R** huius decoctionis lib.s, syrupi magistralis ad melancholiam unc.4. Sit dosis a unc.ii ad 4. Rite purgata.

Deinde:

**R:** electuarii chalybeati unc.i.s, de tamarindis unc.i. Misce. Dosis  
15 unc.s et utetur exercitio, et bis in septimana sic pilulis sequentibus purgata:

**R:** pilularum stomachicarum, sine quibus ana dr.s, de paeoniae, chamaeipyti ana sc.i. Fiant pilulae N.12, iiii hora somni. Deinde  
20 capiat electuarium ut pro Generosa Finnes, folio /168/. Pro surditate aqua cardui benedicti, bis probe destillata, et in aure destillata.

His intra paucos dies liberata, laus Deo.

25 [Case 174] Sanguinis sputum.

Degle de Bengwort, nutrix, aetatis 29; sputo sanguinis discolorata,

from obstruction and a diseased state of the spleen so that the general function is affected directly and the nobler subsequently, the pure head and heart suffering by consent.

To bring on a weak crisis so that [her body] performs its  
5 functions, **/180/** the [winds] should first be purged again, starting in an easy way with the following decoction:

**R:** sarsaparilla 2oz, colchicum 1½oz, guaiacum, liquorice each 1oz, senna 2oz, polypody of the oak 2oz, dodder ½oz, elecampane 6dr, agaric, rhubarb each 2dr, seeds of anise, caraway, coriander each  
10 ½oz. Soak in 4 pints spring water in a closed vessel for twenty four hours, then boil. Cover the vessel so that no steam escapes. **R:** ½ pint of this decoction, magisterial syrup for melancholy 4oz. The dose may be from 2 to 4oz. He was properly purged.

Next:

15 **R:** steeled electuary 1½oz, of tamarinds 1oz. Mix. Dose: ½oz, and she is to take exercise, and twice a week she was purged with the following pills:

**R:** pills - stomachic, sine quibus each ½dr, of peonies, ground-pine each 1sc. Make 12 pills, 3 at bedtime. Then take the electuary as  
20 for Mrs Fiennes, page /168/. For the deafness, blessed thistle water, properly double distilled, was dripped into her ears.

These freed her within a few days, praise God.

[Case 174] Spitting up blood.

25 Nurse Deacle of Bengeworth, aged 29: discoloured by spitting blood

---

**1** spleen] *S.O.* adds: and liver. **2** directly...4 its] *S.O.* omits. **24** Case 174] *S.O.*: *Observ. LXXIX [Second Century]*, pp. 173-74.

ex erosione venae in pulmone, icteritiaque citrina debilitata, et defoedata.

Errosio fit ex bile, nam *a pulmone pluribus modis excerni*  
*/181/ sanguis ab eo loco possit, aut aperto in pulmone vase, aut*  
5 *nimum rarefacto, aut etiam eroso [...] constat adaperto vase ob*  
*sanguinis et copiam et fervorem et acrimoniam, sanguinem in hac*  
*muliere erupisse.*<sup>428</sup> *Prodire autem sanguinem qui reiciebatur,*  
*adaperto in pulmone vase, reiecti sanguinis copia, tenuitas, floridus*  
*color, et spuma multa intermista plena fide indicabant, idque magis*  
10 *quod citra dolorem ullum in pectore perceptum, is cum molesta tussi*  
*egreditur (Hippocrates: Quicumque spumosum sanguinem expuat, his*  
*e pulmone eductio fit) [...] qui a pectore exit cum dolore reiicitur, quod*  
*pars ea membrosa sit et nervosa, pulmonum, caro laxa mollis et*  
*fungosa, [...] alitur pulmo [...] sanguine exacte puro, flavo subtili et*  
15 *vaporoso.*<sup>429</sup>

*Hec a me annuente Divina clementia cito sequentibus*  
*liberata:*<sup>430</sup>

---

<sup>428</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 218: At vero quum pluribus modis excerni sanguis ab eo loco possit, aut aperto in pulmone vase, aut nimium rarefacto, aut etiam eroso: [...] constat autem adaperto vase ob sanguinis et copiam et fervorem et acrimoniam, sanguinem in hoc viro erupisse.

<sup>429</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, pp. 217-18: Prodire autem sanguinem qui reiciebatur adaperto in pulmone vase, reiecti sanguinis copia, tenuitas, floridus color, et spuma multa intermista, plena fide indicabant, idque magis quod citra dolorem ullum in pectore perceptum, is cum molesta tussi egrederetur. Quicumque (ait Hippocrates) spumosum sanguinem expuunt, his e pulmone eductio fit; [...] a pectore enim qui exit, cum dolore reiicitur, quod pars ea membranosa sit et nervosa pulmonum vero caro laxa, mollis et fungosa, ut Galen lib.4 de usu partium cap. xv et lib item sexto cap. x ... alitur enim pulmo (ut proxime citatis locis testatur Galenus) sanguine exacte puro, flavo, subtili et vaporoso. | <sup>430</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 203: Hic a me annuente Divina clementia mox liberatus est sic.

---

7 autem] ante.

from an eroded vein in the lungs, weakened and disfigured by yellow jaundice.

The erosion is due to bile, for *from the lungs* /181/ *blood can be produced in many ways, either from an opening in a pulmonary vessel, or excessive thinning or even erosion. It is agreed that a*  
5 *vessel opened because of blood, and much hot corrosive blood broke out in this woman. Moreover, the expulsion of much thin, highly coloured blood mixed with froth indicates with full confidence the production of blood being driven out when a vessel has been opened,*  
10 *and more so if any pain appears in or near the chest with a troublesome cough (Hippocrates: 'anyone who spits out frothy blood is bringing it up from the lungs'). What comes from the chest is discharged with pain because this part is full of organs and nerves. The flesh of the lungs is loose, soft and spongy; the lungs are fed*  
15 *with entirely clean, finely golden and vaporous blood.*

*I freed her quickly with the aid of divine mercy, and with the*

---

3 The... 15 blood] S.O. omits.

**R:** oxymellitis simplicis unc.4, syrupi capillarum veneris unc.ii.

Misce, pro ii matutinis.

Medicina praeparata purgetur:

**R:** rhabarbari pulverizati dr.i.s, syrupi rosarum solutivi unc.i, aquae

5 plantaginis unc.4, syrupi capillarum veneris unc.i. Misce. Rite purgata, deinde venae sectione, **/182/** deinde astringentibus:

***R:** lapidis haematitis subtilissime triti et cum aqua plantaginis loti dr.i, {qui mirificam in sistendo sanguine vim habet<sup>431</sup>} coralli rubri, boli Armeni ita praeparati ana dr.iii, terrae sigillatae [...] dr.i.s,*

10 *pulveris diaireos simplicis (cum astringentibus pectoralia admisceri debent) dr.i. Fiat pulvis tenuissimus. Dosis dr.i.s pro vice in aqua hordei, decoctionis plantaginis et c. entinodiae.<sup>432</sup> Capiat stomacho ieiuno et hora somni unc.ii aqua sperniolae Crollii, et sic per plures dies.<sup>433</sup>*

15 Omni 3<sup>a</sup> vel 2<sup>a</sup> die glister ex emollientibus:

***R:** malvae, bismalvae, [...] violarum, blitis, mercurialis ana M.i, prunorum N.5, caricarum pinguium N.12, seminum melonum cum cortice contusarum unc.i, seminum anisi, marathri ana dr.i, hordei cum cortice, furfuris macri ana p.i. Fiat omnium decoctio in satis*  
20 *quantum seri lactis ad unc.12. In colatura dissolve catholici unc.i, cassiae extractae pro clystere dr.v, sacchari rubri unc.ii. Fiat*

---

<sup>431</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 190. | <sup>432</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, pp. 149-50: Ad sanguinem sistendum hac sum usus potione: **R** lapidis aematitis subtilissime triti et cum aqua plantaginis loti dr.i, coralli rubri similiter pulverati et loti, boli Armenii praeparati ana dr.iiii, terrae sigillatae [...] dr.i.s, pulveris diaireos simplicis (cum adstringentibus enim pectoralia quaedam misceri debent quo eorum vis ad pulmones pectorialium ope feratur) dr.i. Misce fiat omnium pulvis tenuissimus. Dabam dr.i.s pro vice ex aqua hordei, decoctionis plantaginis et centinodiae. | <sup>433</sup>Croll, *Basilica chymica*, p. 276: [it is to be used 'ad sistendam haemorrhagiam internam'].



*following:*

**R:** simple oxymel 4oz, maidenhair syrup 2oz. Mix: for two mornings.

She was purged with the following prepared medicine:

5 **R:** powdered rhubarb 1½dr, loosening rose syrup 1oz, plantain water 4oz, maidenhair syrup 1oz. Mix. She was properly purged, then bled, **/182/** then [treated with] astringents:

***R:** haematite stone finely ground and washed with plantain water 1dr {it has wonderful power in stopping bleeding} red coral, prepared  
10 bole Armeniac each 3dr, sealed earth 1½dr, simple diaireos powder 1dr (which ought to be mixed with astringents for administration to the chest). Make a fine powder. Dose: 1½dr per dose in barley water, decoctions of plantain and knotgrass. Take on an empty stomach, and Croll's frog spawn water at bedtime. Continue the  
15 course for several days.*

An emollient enema every third or second day:

***R:** mallows, marsh mallows, violets, beets, mercury each 1 handful, plums 5, fat Carian figs 12, melon seeds with the husks bruised 1oz, anise and fennel seeds each 1dr, barley with the husk, rye bran  
20 each 1 pinch. Make a decoction of everything in sufficient milk whey for 12oz. In the strained liquid dissolve catholicon 1oz, cassia extract*

*glister*.<sup>434</sup>

Atque his Deo Optimo Maximo annuente curata.

[Case 175] Hysterica passio, melancholia.

- 5 Generosa Editha Staughton, melancholia misere afflicta,  
**/183/** menstruis nondum erumpentibus anno aetatis 17,  
hystericaque passione cruciata *ut vivere noluerit, mori*  
*nescieret*.<sup>435</sup> Facile irascibilis cum amicissimis, de se putat  
omnia dici et continuo patrem se occidere exclamat. Noctequae  
10 muscit et saepe noctequae vociferat se patrem cum multis  
aliis venientem ad illam necandam. Purgata a medico experto,  
attamen pater meum petit consilium, *et ne multis remediis,*  
*quorum summopere eam taederet, se fatigare obnixè rogabat.*  
*Respondi curam fore difficilam, cum iam illius constitutio et*  
15 *temperamentum in melancholicam constitutionem desierit.*  
*Proin multa polliceri nolui et per grata et amica remedia curam*  
*inchoandam iudicavi*.<sup>436</sup>

*Omnium primo alvus glisteri emolliente, flatusque*  
*discutiente, nec non humores concoquente, solvatur*.<sup>437</sup>

- 20 **R:** *iuris pulli (in quo coquatur acetosa, pimpinella, borago,*

<sup>434</sup>Vallerioli, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 144: **R** malvae, bismalvae, parietariae [...] blitis, mercurialis et acanthi, cuiusque M.i, seminum melonum cum corticibus contusorum ... unc.i, seminum malvae, althaeae, et cucumeris fativi, cuiusque unc.s, florum chamaemeli et meliloti, cuiusque p. i furfuris macri, hordei cum cortice, singulorum p. i. Fiat omnium decoctio ad lib.i et coletur. In colatura dissolve catholici unc.i, cassiae cum melle dr.vi, mellis et olei violacei ana unc.ii sacchari rubei unc.i. Fiat clyster. | <sup>435</sup>Burton, *Anatomy*, Pt.1, Sec.2, Mem.4, Subs.6, p. 346 [quoting Seneca]. | <sup>436</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 67: et ne multis remediis, quorum summopere eam taederet, se fatigare obnixè rogabat. Respondi, curam fore difficilem, cum iam illius constitutio et temperamentum, tot annorum spatio, in melancholicam constitutionem desierit. Proin multa polliceri nolui, et pergrata et amica remedia, curam inchoandam iudicavi. | <sup>437</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 30.

*for enemas 5dr, brown sugar 2oz. Make an enema.*

These cured her, with the aid of almighty God most high.

[Case 175] Fit of the mother, melancholy.

- 5 Mrs Edith Stoughton, a gentlewoman: wretchedly afflicted with melancholy. /183/ Her periods had not yet started at 17 years of age. She was tortured by a fit of the mother so that *she did not wish to live, does not know how to die*. She is easily angered by her closest friends. She thinks that they say all kinds of things about  
10 her, and constantly shouts that her father is coming to kill her. At night she mutters and often declares that her father is coming with many others to murder her. She has been purged by an experienced physician, nonetheless her father entreats my advice. *He asked firmly that I should not fatigue her with many remedies, of*  
15 *which she was exceedingly weary. I replied that a cure would be difficult, for her constitution and temperament had resulted in a melancholic state. Accordingly I did not wish to make many promises, but I judged that a cure could be started with a pleasant and supportive remedy.*  
20 *First of all, her bowel movements should be freed with an*

---

4 Case 175] S.O.: Observ. LXXX [Second Century], pp. 174-76. 7 so...die] S.O. omits. 14 He...weary] S.O. omits. 17 Accordingly...19 remedy] S.O.: I advised there should be few to trouble her.

*hyssopus) lib.i, olei communalis unc.ii.s, salis tartari dr.i. Fiat  
glistet, et sic per ii dies.*

Deinde purgetur sic:

- 5 *R: praedicti iuris unc.v, tartari cremoris sc.4, olei vitrioli gut.5.*<sup>438</sup> Fiat  
potio. *Sic humores naturae obedientes reddentur, deinde vena  
sinistri brachii aperienda.*<sup>439</sup> Iterum die sequenti **/184/** purgatur,  
deinde sanguisugae haemorrhoidibus applicantur, *iterum  
purgantibus medicamentis lenientibus (ne exiccemus corpus)*  
10 *purganda et fortioribus utemur potionibus potius quam pilulis quia  
magis siccant pilulae.*<sup>440</sup> Idcirco *pomo elleborato Roderici a Fonseca*  
*uti vellem.*<sup>441</sup> Rite purgata. Dosis ellebori in pomo cocto dr.i,  
postea exempto et detur pomum.

- Humores a cerebro avertendi, ligaturis et glysteribus fortioribus*  
15 *principes partes corroborandae.*<sup>442</sup>  
**R:** conservae rosarum vitriolatae, boraginis, buglossi ana unc.i,  
corticis citri conditi, conservae veronicae rubrae ana unc.s, speciei  
electuarii de gemmis, laetificantis ana sc.ii, hyacinthi praeparati  
sc.i, confectionis alkermes dr.i, specierum diamargaritonis frigidi,

<sup>438</sup>Rodrigo de Fonseca, *Consultationes*, pp. 83-84: **R** iuris pulli lib.i, olei com. unc.ii.s, salis tartari dr.i. m. Fiat clyster, aliquando fiant ex puro oleo adhumectanda intestina, in hanc eandem intensionem medicamenta sunt per os assumenda, quae etiam aperiant obstructions sine calore, ex iure pulli, in quo coquantur acetosa, pimpinella, borrago, hyssopus cuius sumere poterit ad unc.v cum drac. una salis tartari [...] cui si addantur praeterea guttae quatuor spiritus vitrioli. | <sup>439</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 30: Hinc humores naturae obedientes reddentur. | <sup>440</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 30: Tandemque purgantibus medicamentis, primo multum lenibus (ne exiccemus calefaciamusque corpus) excludentur e corpore. [...] Potius autem potionibus purgantibus quam pillulis utemur, quod magis siccant pillulae liquidis medicamentis. | <sup>441</sup>Rodrigo de Fonseca, *Consultationes*, p. 68. | <sup>442</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 30: Humores postea a cerebro avertemus ligaturis, frictionibus, clysteribus fortioribus, suppositoriis, cucurbitulis, similibusque diversionum instrumentis. Mox corroborabimus principes corporis partes.

**1** tartari] ♀.

*emollient clyster, dispelling wind but not cooking the humours:*

*R: chicken broth (in which cook sorrel, pimpernel, borage, hyssop) 1 pint, common oil 2½oz, salt of tartar 1dr. Make an enema, repeat for two days.*

5           Then she was purged in this way:

*R: the above broth 5oz, cream of tartar 4sc, oil of vitriol 5 drops.*

*Make a potion. Thus the natural humours will be restored to obedience. Next the left brachial vein should be opened. She was purged again /184/ the next day, then leaches were applied to the*

10   *haemorrhoidal veins. She should be purged again with softening purgative medications (so as not to dry out the body) and preferably use stronger potions than pills, because pills are more drying. I therefore wished her to use Rodrigo de Fonseca's helleborated apple.*

*She was rightly purged: Dose: hellebore 1dr cooked in an apple,*  
15   *afterwards remove and give the apple.*

*Humours should be diverted from the brain, the principal parts strengthened with bindings and stronger clysters:*

*R: vitriolated conserves of roses, borage, bugloss each 1oz, preserved citron peel, red speedwell conserve each ½oz, electuary*

---

10 She... 12 drying] S.O.: omits. 13 Rodrigo de Fonsecas] S.O.: omits.

diatragacanthi frigidi ana dr.i.s. Cum syrupo de pomis fiat electuarium. Dosis dr.i ante pastum. Flatus discutiendi pulvere ut folio /33/.

5 Usa fuit vino sequenti:

*R: radicum aperitivarum ana unc.i, corticis radicis capparum unc.i, ligni sassaphras unc.i.s, foliorum absinthii, chamaepythi ana M.i.s, herbarum ceterach, melissae, chamaedryos ana M.i, florum boraginis, buglossi, scabiosae /185/ ana p.ii, foliorum genestae p.i, seminum*

10 *foeniculi unc.i, seminum carvi dr.ii, seminum sileris montani dr.i.*

*Conquassentur, imponentur in doliolum in quo scobe ligni iuniperi in posita sit. Affundendo vini albi lib.30. Sic bene obturatum in cava ad usum asservetur. Post macerationem octo diebus factam, vellem ut de eo lib.9 sumeret, in iisque infunderet rhabarbari dr.vi, foliorum*

15 *senae unc.ii, mechoachan unc.s, epithymi, cinamomi ana unc.s, caryophylli dr.i. Sicque hoc vinum asservaret, quod purgans aliud praeparans. [...] Bibat vinum purgans mane duabus horis ante prandium, sumendo simul cochlearia aliquot iusculi gallinae per iii dies postea de vino purgante, 4<sup>a</sup> die haustum.*<sup>443</sup>

20

<sup>443</sup>Platter, *Observationum [...] libri tres*, p. 67: **R** rad. aperiti.an. unc.i, cort. rad. ebuli et sambuci an. dr.vi cort. tamaricis unc.ii, cort. rad. capparorum unc.i, ligni sassafras unc.i.s, fol. absynthii, chamaeipyth. ana M.i.s, herbarum ceterach. melissae, chamaedrios an. M.i. flo. borag. bugloss. scabiosae ana p. ii, fol. genistae p. i, semin. foeniculi unc.i, seminum carvi dr.ii, semin. Sileris mont. dr.i. Conquassentur, imponentur in dolium in quo scobe ligni iuniperi posita sit, affundendo mensuras xv vini, sicque bene obturatum in cava vinaria ad usum asservetur. Post macerationem octo diebus factum, iussi ut de eo mensuris iii sumeret, in iisque infunderet rhabarbari dr.vi, fol. senae unc.ii, mechoacae unc.s, epithymi, cinnamo. ana unc.s, garioph. dr.i, Sicque hoc vinum asservaret, quod purgans aliud vero praeparans appelavi. [...] Bibat vinum praeparans, mane duabus horis ante prandium, sumendo simul cochlearia aliquot iusculi gallinae per dies tres, postea de vino purgante quarto die haustum.

powders - of gems, laetificans each 2sc, prepared emeralds 1sc,  
alkermes confection 1dr, powder for cold diamargiton, cold  
diatragacanth each 1½dr. Make an electuary with apple syrup.  
Dose 1dr before meals. Dispel the winds with the powder on page  
5 /33/.

She used the following wine:

*R: the opening roots each 1oz, bark of caper root 1oz, sassaphras  
wood 1½oz, wormwood and ground-pine leaves each 1½ handfuls,  
shoots of spleenwort, balm, germander each 1 handful, borage,  
10 bugloss, scabious flowers /185/ each 2 pinches, broom leaves 1  
pinch, fennel seeds 1oz, caraway seeds 2dr, silphium seeds 1dr.  
Crush, put in a barrel in which juniper wood chips have been placed.  
Pour on 30 pints white wine. Close well and store in a cellar until  
used. Eight days after soaking, I wished her to drink 9 pints of it in  
15 which was infused rhubarb 6dr, senna leaves 2oz, mechoacan ½oz,  
dodder, cinnamon each ½oz, cloves 1dr. Store the wine like this  
because it is another purgative. Drink the purgative wine in the  
morning two hours before eating, taking it with a few spoonfuls of  
chicken broth at the same time, for three days. Afterwards, on the  
20 fourth day, take a draught of the purgative wine.*

---

16 Store...purgative] S.O.: and so it was used instead of purges.

Purgatione finita, cor et cerebrum confortanda, ut dictum.

Nota: *omnibus medicamentis addemus ea quae humectare possunt, cum maiori ex parte melancholia ab intemperie sicca proveniat.*<sup>444</sup>

Cum de vigiliis admodum quaeritur propinavi illae cubitum iturae  
5 diacodii simplicis coch.i. Sequenti nocte reiterando, nam sudorem  
movenet et somnum conciliat.

Saepe utetur tartaro, nam *magnam vim habet cristallo tartari  
domandi* /186/ *humores melancholicos et atros, nam trahit ad se  
proprietates quasdam acetositates. Experimentum sumi potest in  
10 aceto acerrimo, si enim ponatur in boccia lib.4 aceti fortissimi, et unc.i  
tartari vini, destillabitur per ignem aqua seu phlegma sine ulla  
ariditate, quia tartarum trahit per sympathiam spiritus acidus ipsius  
aceti.*<sup>445</sup>

*Atque sic ab hoc gravissimo et diuturno morbo per singularem  
15 Dei Optimi Maximi gratiam liberata est.*<sup>446</sup>

[Case 176] Scorbuti cura, Ianuarii i 1634.

Magister Thomas Underhil filius primogenitus, de Loxley, circa  
20 aetatis annum 12 plus minus; febre maligna, petechiis  
apparentibus, aestate praeterita laboravit. Postea in morbilos  
incidebat, perperam curatus, causa scorbuti. Cum meum petivit  
consilium, tumore dextri lateris circa costas spurias et nothas

---

<sup>444</sup>Bruele, *Praxis medicinae*, p. 30: Omnibus autem medicamentis addemus ea quae humectare possunt, cum maiori ex parte ab intemperie sicca hic morbus proveniat. | <sup>445</sup>Rodrigo de Fonseca, *Consultationes*, p. 53. | <sup>446</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum* [...] *centuriae*, p. 160.

---

7 tartaro] ꝑ. | tartari] ꝑ. 11 tartari] ꝑ. 12 tartarum] ꝑ. 22 petivit] petissit.



'After purging, strengthen the heart and brain', as the saying is. NOTE: *We add moistening matter to all medications since melancholy comes mostly from excessive dryness.* When I was strongly pressed about sleeplessness I gave simple diacodium 1 spoonful as she went to bed. I repeated it the next night because it promotes sweating and brings on sleep.

She is to use tartar often, *for crystal tartar has great power to subdue /186/ melancholy and dark humours, as it draws to itself certain vinegary properties. An experiment can be made with sharp vinegar, for if one places four pints of very sharp vinegar and 1oz wine tartar in a container, water or phlegm are distilled at the fire without any dryness, because the tartar draws the acid spirits of the vinegar to itself by sympathy.*

Thus she was freed from a most severe and long-standing illness, through the unique grace of almighty God most high.

[Case 176]<sup>38</sup> Cure of scurvy. 1 January 1634.

Master Thomas Underhill, first born son, of Loxley, aged about 12 more or less: suffered the previous year from malignant fever with visible scabs. Then he fell into the measles and was incompletely cured, the cause of the scurvy. When he asked my advice he was weighed down by swelling of the right side around the false and

---

<sup>38</sup>See Appendix B: New Patient Identifications.

**3** When I was strongly pressed about sleeplessness] S.O.: For her watching.  
**8** humours...14 freed] S.O. omits. **17** Case 176] S.O.: Observ LXIX [First Century], pp. 59-61 [note case out of order in S.O.]. **18** Master Thomas Underhill] S.O. omits.  
**20** Then...scurvy] S.O.: After fell into the measles, of which he was cured. **22** false and floating ribs] the lowest five ribs, which do not connect directly to the sternum.

gravatus sine dolore et discoloratione, ita ut hepatis tumor  
 diiudicatur, ipse macelentus ita ut sceliton diiudicares,  
 melancholicus, ulceribus nigris et crustosis tibiis apparentibus.  
 His symptomatibus et vomitu inani et febre erratica, fastidioque cibi  
 5 laborante, scorbuto confirmato diu laborare diiudicabam, nec me  
 fefellit opinio, nam urina rubra sicut **/187/** in febre ardenti absque  
 tamen siti multa aut potus desiderio. *Pulsus parvus, debilis et*  
*inaequalis, vix digitis percipiebatur,*<sup>447</sup> quae signa manifesta scorbuti  
 confirmati, et *languere magis quam aegrotare* dixerit.<sup>448</sup> *Obnixe me*  
 10 *parentes rogarunt, ut nihil eorum, quae ad valetudinem sui filii*  
*pertinere putarem, missum facerem [...] id ubi ex officio me debere*  
*parentibus ostendi* curam longam difficilem.<sup>449</sup>

Cura instituo hoc modo:

**R:** tartari crystalli dr.ii, speciei trium santallorum dr.i, pulveris  
 15 Holland dr.ii. Misce, fiat pulvis pro 4 diebus: omni die 3 vel 4 sedes  
 sine torminibus. Locus affectus inungatur *unguento fido*  
*Valleriolae,*<sup>450</sup> ulceribus diacalcitheos, deinde per iii dies tartari  
 cremoris dr.i mane, et hora post vini chalybeati nostri unc.4,  
 essentia fumariae et germandriae (secundum Balduino Ronsseo,  
 20 folio 259, libro Senerti *de scorbuto* in octavo<sup>451</sup>) unc.s, syrupi  
 becabungae unc.ii, nasturtii aquatici unc.i, succi cochleariae  
 praeparati unc.vi. Misce, dosis coch.4, et utetur exercitio, ex quo ii  
 sedes et vomitu. Primo die phlegma eiiciebat, 3<sup>a</sup> die diacurcumae

<sup>447</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto*, p. 125. | <sup>448</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto*, p. 148.

<sup>449</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto*, p. 288: Quibus auditis obnixe me parentes  
 rogarunt, ut nihil eorum, quae ad valetudinem suae filiae pertinere putarem,  
 missum facerem [...] id ubi ex officio me debere, parentibus ostendi.

<sup>450</sup>Valleriola, *Observationum [...] libri sex*, p. 234. | <sup>451</sup>Ronsse, 'Scorbuto  
 commentarius', in Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus*, p. 259..

**14** tartari] ȳ. **17** tartari] ȳ. **20** 259] 159 [The same correction is in S.O., so Cooke  
 must have checked at least this reference].

floating ribs without pain or discoloration, so that I diagnosed swelling of the liver. He was so thin you would have thought him a skeleton, melancholic, with black crusted ulcers appearing on his legs. From these symptoms and unproductive vomiting, erratic fever, and aversion to food I judged that he suffered from long-established scurvy. Nor did my opinion fail me, for his urine was red as /187/ in burning fever, though without much thirst or desire to drink. *His pulse was small, weak and unequal, hard to be feel with the fingers*, which is a clear sign of established scurvy, and he said *he was more tired than ill. The parents asked me earnestly to disregard nothing which I thought relevant to the good health of their son. I made clear to the parents as I was duty-bound*, that the cure would be long and difficult.

I start the cure in this way:

15 **R**: crystal tartar 2dr, diatrion santalon powder 1dr, Holland powder 2dr. Mix. Make a powder for four days: three or four stools each day without discomfort. Anoint the affected area with *Valleriola's Fidum ointment* and diacalchitys for the ulcers, then cream of tartar for three days: 1dr in the morning and an hour later our steeled wine 4oz, with essence of fumitory and germander ½oz, (following Baudouin Ronsse, page 259, in Sennert's book *De scorbuto*, in octavo) brooklime syrup 2oz, watercress 1oz, prepared scurvy grass juice 6oz. Mix. Dose: 4 spoonfuls and he is to take exercise, resulting in two stools and one vomit. The first day he vomited phlegm. On the third day: diacrocuma ½oz in the morning, and

---

1 pain] S.O. omits. 5 I...me] S.O. omits. 9 and he said he was more tired than ill] S.O. omits. 15 crystal tartar] S.O. *crystal veneris* [copper sulphate]. 18 diacalchitys] S.O. *diapalm* [a different name for the same preparation].

unc.s mane, et postea vinum chalybeatum. Omni 3<sup>a</sup> die purgatus  
*diatartaro Quercetani* coch.s, in pomo sub cineribus cocto.<sup>452</sup> Usus  
birea antiscorbutica nostra. Spleni applicare iubebam emplastrum  
de ammoniaco Forresti.

5           Usque aliquando potum:

℞: succi cochleariae lib.s, syrupi becabungae, nasturtii aquatici ana  
unc.i.s, pro iii matutinas. Non omisit vinum chalybeatum cum  
succo cochleariae et syrupo becabungae et nasturtii aquatici per  
totam mensem. /187[b]/ Purgatus pilulis de ammoniaco Riverii: ex  
10 dr.s fiat pilulae N.3.<sup>453</sup> Capiat pilulam unam omnia tertia die, ex  
qua 2 vel iii sedes. Hora cubitus, mane, purgatus. Latere dolenti et  
tumido, unguentum ex unguento splenitico magistrale unc.i,  
unguenti dialtheae unc.s, mane et sero. Usus birea nostra  
antiscorbutica, omni alio interdicto. Post usum pilulorum  
15 praedictorum per ii dies, in tumorem pedum dolorificum incidebat,  
ut nocte dormire non potuit, nec diu pedum movere ob omnem  
levem tibiaram motum animae paene deliquium habuit.

Me veniente, ad corroborationem stomachi dabam pulveris  
Pannonici rubri sc.i, magisterii corallorum sc.s, lapidis bezoar gr.iii.

20           Iubebam tibias in decoctione sequenti:

℞: becabungae M.4, absinthii, meliloti, chamaemillae, salviae ana  
M.i. In satis quantum bireae fiat balneum, bis in die usque a  
tumore et dolore spacio 3 dierum penitus liberatus. Purgatus

---

<sup>452</sup>Du Chesne, *De priscorum philosophorum [...] materia*, p. 330; [according to the text, the recipe is also to be found in the *Pharmacopoea Dogmaticorum*, possibly pulvis melangogus Quercetani, p. 126, to which it is similar]. | <sup>453</sup>Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, pp. 120-121: hoc utique unum erat ex numero praecipuorum purgantium D. Rivierii [following the recipe].

---

9 /187b/] Strictly 188; Hall has repeated the previous page number.

afterwards steeled wine. Every third day he was purged with *Du Chesne's diatartar* ½ spoonful, cooked in an apple under ashes. He used our antiscorbutic beer. I ordered Foreest's ammoniac plaster applied to the spleen.

5           To drink, always, at any time:

**R:** scurvy-grass juice ½lb, brooklime, watercress syrups each 1½oz, for three mornings. He did not omit the steeled wine with scurvy grass juice and brooklime and watercress syrup for the whole month. /187[b]/ He was purged with Rivière's ammoniac pills.

10          Make 3 pills from ½dr. Take 1 pill every third day, resulting in two or three stools. He was purged at bedtime and in the morning. For the painful swollen side: an ointment of magisterial splenic ointment 1oz, marsh mallow ointment ½oz, morning and evening. He used our antiscorbutic beer, all others being prohibited. After  
15          using the above pills for two days he fell into a painful swelling of the feet, so that he could not sleep at night nor move his feet any more, and he almost fainted from every slight movement of the legs.

            When I came, I gave red Pannonian powder ½sc, magisterium of corals ½sc, bezoar stone 3gr to strengthen the stomach.

20          I prescribed the following decoction for his legs:

**R:** brooklime 4 handfuls, wormwood, melilot, chamomile, sage each 1 handful. Make a bath in sufficient beer, use twice daily without a break. He was completely freed from the swelling and pain within three days. He was purged with pills - Ruffus's, stomachic and

pilulis Ruffi, stomachi, hierae cum agarico ana [xxx]. Fiant pilulae

6. Detur i hora somni. Tandem tibiis bene curatis, misere dolore  
humeri dextri cruciatus. Unguento fido 24 horarum spacio  
liberatus, nunquam praeter misit vinum chalybeatum nisi die  
5 purgationis.

Post pastum pulverem sequentem, quantum super 12 [denarii]  
tenere potuit, devorabat:

℞: speciei pleres archonticonis unc.s, sacchari unc.ii. Misce.

Maxime et bis in septimana purgatus pilulis Riverii ut supra.

10 Aliquando pilulas ii mane, ex quibus 3 vel 4 sedes:

℞: pilularum de ammoniaco dr.i, gummi gambogiae praeparati gr.9,  
sine quibus dr.s.

Hac methodo laus Deo curatus.

15 [Case 177] /188/ Magister Iohannes Trap,  
theologus, ob insignem pietatis et doctrinae nulli  
secundus, 33<sup>o</sup> suae aetatis anno vix exacto,  
natura melancholicus et litteris deditus.

Superiori anno in melancholiam hypochondriacam et dolorem  
20 lienis cum anexis symptomatibus scorbuticis incidebat, nimirum  
respiratione difficili post levem corporis motum, palpitatione cordis,  
precipiti quasi motu flatus ad cor irruens, ita ut lipothymiae metum  
ipse haud levem incussit. Flatu disperso, post breve tempus melius  
fuit. *Febre denique lenta erratica, anorexia et animi languore*  
25 *assiduo conficiebatur et insolito marcere, unde ad tabem deduci*

---

1 xxx] spotted, illegible. 15 Case] Strictly 189; Hall has continued from the previous incorrect page number. | Magister] This case has no clinical heading. 16 et] H.used & for et throughout this page, but nowhere else.

hiera with agaric each [xxx]. Make 6 pills, give 1 at bedtime.

Finally when his legs were well cured, he was tortured by wretched pain in the right upper arm. He was freed within 24 hours by Fidum ointment, besides never missing the steeled wine except on  
5 days of purgation.

He swallowed the following powder, the amount that can be held on twelve [pennies], after food<sup>39</sup>:

℞: pleres archonticon powder ½oz, sugar 2oz. Mix. He was very powerfully purged twice weekly with Rivière's pills as above: 2 pills  
10 sometime in the morning, resulting in three or four stools.

℞: ammoniac pills 1dr, prepared gamboge gum 9gr, sine quibus ½oz.

By this method, praise God, he was cured.

15 [Case 177] /188/ Mr John Trapp, minister,  
second to none for manifest piety and learning,  
having just passed the thirty third year of his age,  
melancholic by nature and devoted to books.

Last year he fell into a hypochondriac melancholy and splenic pain  
20 with related scorbutic symptoms, evident from difficulty in  
breathing after slight movement of the body, palpitations of the  
heart rushing headlong like the motion of wind to the heart so that  
it instilled a fear, by no means trifling, of weakness. When the wind  
dispersed, he felt better after a short time. *Finally he was*  
25 *constantly consumed by a slow erratic fever, loss of appetite and*

---

<sup>39</sup>Approximately 14 grams, or 1 drachm and 2 grains.

---

1 xxx] Blotted, illegible. 15 Case 177] S.O: Observ. LXXXI, [Second Century], pp. 176-78; this case has no clinical heading. 19 Last year] S.O.: omits.

*omnes arbitrabantur.*<sup>454</sup> Die Sabbathi finita concione, viribus exhaustis, vix loqui potuit.

Ego vero, ex subita urinae mutatione et pulsu inequali cognita vitae consuetudine atrophica scorbutica laborare  
5 affirmabam: eoque plus quia cum *his anxietates ad praecordia per intervalla infestantes* habuit.<sup>455</sup> *Accedit hac atrophica laborantibus saepe numero corpus languere magis quam aegrotare, ut de re nulla magis quam corporis languore conquerantur.*<sup>456</sup> Primis morbi insultibus, incassum  
10 medicamentis vulgaribus utetur, tandem meum petit auxilium et consilium.

*His paucis remediis citra ullam medicamentorum molestiam atque nauseam saporemve ingratum eruditum iuvenem e orci faucibus tuto et cito et iucundo eripimus,*  
15 *eumque sanitati restituimus. Vivit modo optime valetudine fruens.*<sup>457</sup> Deo termoximo sit laus et gloria in aeternam amen.

Anno Domini 1635 March 11<sup>a</sup>:

R: tartari vitriolati sc.4, in pomo sub cineribus cocto. Urina ex hac  
in quantitate maiore colore vero sicut aqua fontana. Sedes ii  
20 habuit.  
12:

---

<sup>454</sup>Potier, *Insignium curationum*, p. 33: lenta tandem febre continuo conficiebatur, anhelitus difficultate, tussi, anorexia et insolito marcere, unde ad tabem deduci omnes arbitrabantur. | <sup>455</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 311: per intervalla anxietates ad praecordia infestantes. | <sup>456</sup>Eugalenus, *De scorbuto morbo*, p. 117: Accedit hac atrophica laborantibus sepe numero totum corpus languere, ipsisque, aegrotantibus videri magis languere se, quam certo aliquo morbo detimeri, utpote quidem nulla re magis quam corporis languore conquerantur. | <sup>457</sup>Potier, *Insignium curationum*, p. 4: Sic paucis, at optimis remediis, citra ullam medicamentorum molestiam atq. nauseam saporemve ingratum R. et egregium patrem e faucibus orci tuto, cito et iucunde eripimus, eumq. sanitati restituimus; vivit modo optima valetudine fruens.

---

18 tartari] ꝛ.



*feebleness of spirit and unaccustomed faintness, from which everyone concluded that he was wasting away. After he finished his sermon on Sunday his strength was exhausted. He could hardly speak.*

5           I however, having observed the sudden change of the urine and uneven pulse and from being aware of his customary way of life, declared that he suffered from atrophic scurvy, the more so because with these he had worrying troubles in his precordium at intervals. *In agreement with the sufferings from this atrophy, his*  
10 *body was often more tired than ill, so that he complained of nothing more than weariness of the body.* When first assaulted by this illness he used common medicines to no purpose, and at last asked my help and advice.

*With these few remedies, without any annoyance, nausea or*  
15 *unpleasant taste of medicines, we rescued this learned young man from the jaws of death entirely, quickly and pleasantly, and restored him to health. He lives very well, enjoying good health. To God*  
*thrice greatest be praise and glory for ever. Amen.*

11 March 1635:

20 **R:** vitriolated tartar 4sc cooked in an apple under the ashes. This produced a greater quantity of urine, coloured indeed like spring water. He had two stools.

12th:

---

**1** faintness...he<sup>2</sup>] S.O. omits. **5** I... 11 body] S.O. His urine changed often, his pulse was mutable and unequal, and he languished much. **14** With... 18 Amen] S.O. which was readily performed by me in prescribing the following, by which he was restored from the very jaws of death, both safely, quickly and pleasantly. **17** To God thrice greatest be praise and glory for ever Amen] S.O. omits.

**R:** mercurii dulcis gr.20, tartari vitriolati sc.i, gummi gambogiae  
praeparati gr.iii. Dentur ut antea: iiii sedes.

**/199/** 14:

5 Tartari crystalli dr.i, sedes i. Rotulas nostras pectorales nocte in  
tussem et catarrhum in ore tenebat.

15:

**R:** vini nostri chalybeati unc.4, cum syrupo sceletyrbico Forresti  
unc.iii. Primo die coch.2 et 2<sup>a</sup> die coch.4, et usus exercitio per  
horas duas.

10 *Ad confortationem lienis:*

**R:** passularum maiorum lib.s. Coque in vino generoso ad pultis  
consistentiam, excerne per setaceum et admisce conservae anthos,  
buglossi ana unc.s, speciei laetificantis, aromatici rosati,  
diamargaritonis calidi, diacinamomu ana sc.ii, ligni aloes odorati dr.s,  
15 corticum citri conditorum, pulveris cinamomi ana dr.s, limaturarum  
chalybis praeparatarum et subtilissime pulverizatarum unc.s  
(praeparata fuit cum sulphure secundum Quercetanum<sup>458</sup>) croci  
orientalis sc.i. Misce. Capiat mane instar castaniae.<sup>459</sup>

19:

---

<sup>458</sup>Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*, pp. 243-244. | <sup>459</sup>Hartmann, *Praxis chymiatrica*, p. 133; Ad confortationem lienis maxime confere electuarium sequens alias Electuarium Solenandri dictum. **R** passularum maiorum lb.s. Coque in vino generoso ad pultis consistentiam, excerne per setaceum et admisce conservae anthos, corticum citri condit., pulveris cinam. an dr.i, spec. aromaticae rosat., diamargariton calidi, diacinamomi an sc.ii, ligni aloes odorati dr.s, croci orientalis vel essentia eiundem sc.s. M. Capiat ad libitum magnitudinis castaneae. [As Hartmann says, this is based on a recipe in Solenander, *Consilium Medicinalium*, p. 221, but Hall's wording matches Hartmann more closely. There are slightly different versions in Holler, *De morbis internis*, p. 371, and Horst, *Observationum [...] libri quatuor*, p. 259].

**1** mercurii ☿. | tartari] ♀.

199; Hall's numbering jumps ten pages. **3** /199/] Strictly 190; Hall has jumped ten page numbers from the previous page. | 14] in margin. **4** Tartari] ♀. **6** 15] in margin. **19** 19] in margin.

R: mercurius dulcis 20gr, vitriolated tartar 1sc, prepared gamboge gum 3gr. Give as before: four stools.

/199/ 14th:

crystal tartar 1dr: one stool. He held our pectoral rolls in his mouth  
5 at night, for cough and catarrh.

15th:

R: our steeled wine 4oz, with Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup 3oz: on  
the first day 2 spoonfuls, on the second 4 spoonfuls. He exercised  
for two hours.

10 To strengthen the spleen:

R: large raisins ½lb. Boil in good wine to the consistency of a  
poultice, sift through a sieve and mix with rosemary, bugloss  
conserves each ½oz, powders of laetificans, aromatic roses, cold  
diamargiton, diacinamomu each 2sc, sweet-smelling aloe wood ½dr,  
15 preserved citron peel, cinnamon powder each 1dr, finely powdered  
prepared steel filings ½oz (prepared with sulphur following Du  
Chesne) oriental saffron 1sc. Mix. Take the amount of a chestnut in  
the morning.

19th:

---

**16** following Du Chesne] S.O. omits. **17** chestnut] S.O.: a filbert.

R: syrupi magistralis ad melancholiam unc.ii, aquae buglossi unc.ii, tartari subtilissime pulverizati dr.i. Misce. Quater deliciat. Iterum die sequenti vino chalybeato ut antea usus.

Aprilis 2:

- 5 Purgatus ut antea *cum quo assellavit 4 vicibus*.<sup>460</sup> Per iii dies vinum exhaustit chalybeatum.

7 die:

Purgatus, tartari cremoris dr.i. Biream nunc habuit nostram antiscorbuticam. Electuario finito, caepit coch.vi sequentis aquae:

- 10 R: aquae limacum nostrae, aquae ranarum simplicis ana unc.4, confectionis alkermes sc.ii, manus christi perlati unc.s, syrupi sceletyrbici Forresti unc.ii, *aquae nostrae antiscorbuticae* unc.vi, *spleniticae* unc.ii.<sup>461</sup> Misce, haec aqua consumpta et bibita. Iterum electuarium petit, in quo inquit maxima curae spes erat. Inquit  
15 auro digna. Electuario iterum usa per 8 dies. Omni 4<sup>a</sup> die purgatus sed de amaritudine oris conquestus; aqua poculi chymici dr.v. Liberatus et iterum ad electuarii usum reversus.

His, Dei nutu, ab omni dolore liberatus, ut rite recteque curatus et mihi ingentes reddebat gratias. Laus Deo.

20

- [Case 178] /200/ Comes Northamptoniensis circa  
aetatis annum 32, veredo celeri canes venaticos assequutus  
25 tempore frigido et pluvioso, frigore accepto, repente pleuritide

<sup>460</sup>Torrella, 'De dolore in pudendagra', in Luisini, *De morbo Gallico*, p. 472: cum quibus quatuor vicibus ascellavit. | <sup>461</sup>Dorncrell, *Dispensatorium novum*, pp. 33-36.

5 assellavit] ascellavit. 8 tartari] ꝛ. 23 /200/] Strictly /191/; Hall has continued from the previous incorrect page number.

R: magisterial syrup for melancholy 2oz, bugloss water 2oz, finely powdered tartar 1dr. Mix. He evacuated 4 times. The next day he used steeled wine as before.

2 April:

- 5 Purged as before, *by which he evacuated four times*. In three days he finished the steeled wine.

7th:

Purged, cream of tartar 1dr. He now had our antiscorbutic beer.

- 10 When the electuary was finished, he took 6 spoonfuls of the following water:

- R: our snail water, simple frog water each 4oz, alkermes confection 2sc, pearled manus Christi ½oz, Foreest's scheletyrbic syrup 2oz, our *antiscorbutic water* 6oz, *splenitic* 2oz. Mix. This water was consumed and drunk. He asked for the electuary again, in which
- 15 he said there was the greatest hope of a cure. He said it was worth gold. He used the electuary again for eight days. Every fourth day he was purged, but complained of bitterness in the mouth. Our chymical cup: 5dr. He was freed and again returned to the use of the electuary.

- 20 These by god's will freed him from all pain, and cured him rightly and properly and he thanked me greatly. Praise God.

- [Case 178] /200/ The [second] Earl of Northampton, about 32 years old, following his hunting dogs on a swift steed in
- 25 cold and rainy weather: caught a cold and was wretchedly attacked

---

**13** splenitic] *S.O.* adds: both Doncrelius. **23** Case 178] *S.O.*: Observ. LXXII [Second Century], pp. 178-179. This case has no clinical heading. **24** on a swift steed] *S.O.* omits.

ventosa et tormine ventris misere lancinatus *ad verae pleuritidis similitudinem. Tussiculam, inquietudinem, febriculam, sitim et dolorem distensivum adfert.*<sup>462</sup>

Me praesente cum domum reversus, glister hunc  
5 prescribebam:  
**R:** decoctionis communalis pro clystere lib.s, diaphaeniconis, diacatholiconis ana unc.i, pulveris Holland dr.ii. Fiat clyster, sedes iii cum magna flatuum copia, cum exoptatu eventu nam dolor mitigatus.

10 In thorace adhuc sentiebat punctionem pro quo expellendo:  
**R:** *unguenti dialtheae unc.ii, olei amygdalarum dulcium unc.s. Dissolvantur et misceantur ad ignem pro unguento, quo cum inunxissem pectus et latus. Superimposui linteum duplicatum tepide butyro perlitum, et dolor remisit,*<sup>463</sup> *et nox quieta et arctior quam solebat, somno complexus.*<sup>464</sup>  
15

Die saepe syrupis his expertis usus:  
**R:** syrupi scabiosae magistralis, capillarum veneris, liquiritiae, hyssopii ana unc.i. Capiat saepe cum baculo liquiritiae. Nocte rotulam unam pectoralem nostram in ore tenebat. Mane iterum  
20 inungi vellem.

---

<sup>462</sup>Feyens, *De flatibus*, p. 121: Tum enim ad similitudinem verae pleuritidis tussiculam, inquietudinem, febriculam interdum, sitim et dolorem distensivum adfert. | <sup>463</sup>Ruland the Elder, 'Centuria III', *Curationum [...] centuriae*, p. 181: **R** unguenti dialtheae unc.ii, olei amygdal. dul. unc.s. Dissolvantur et misceantur ad ignem pro ung. quo cum inunxisset latus. Superimposuit linteum duplicatum tepide butyro perlitum. Et dolor remisit. | <sup>464</sup>Cicero, 'Scipionis Somnium, Book VI', *De Re Publica*: arctior, quam solebat, somnus complexus est.

by a sudden windy pleurisy and abdominal colic, *very like a true pleurisy. It caused a small degree of coughing, restlessness, fever, thirst and painful distension.*

Being at hand when he returned home, I prescribed this  
5 enema:

*R:* common decoction for an enema ½ pint, diaphoenicon, diacatholicon each 1oz, Holland powder 2dr. Make an enema: three stools with a large amount of wind, with the desired result for the pain eased.

10 At this point he felt a pricking pain in his chest, to banish which:

*R: marsh mallow ointment 2oz, sweet almond oil ½oz. Dissolve and mix at the fire for an ointment, with which I anointed the chest and sides. I placed over it a folded cloth smeared with warm butter. The*  
15 *pain diminished, the night was restful, and he was seized by heavier sleep than was his custom.*

During the day he used these proven syrups frequently:  
*R:* magisterial scabious, maidenhair, liquorice, hyssop syrups each 1oz. Take often with a liquorice stick. At night he held one of our  
20 pectoral rolls in his mouth. In the morning I wished him to be anointed again.

Penitus a dolore liberatus, et mensae in cenaculo assedebat.

[xxx].

---

**2 xxx]** Uncertain abbreviation; a possible reading is *tr<sup>es</sup> c*, which might be read *terminus curae* referring only to this one report, or *terminus curarum* referring to the whole manuscript. Either would be unique in the manuscript. If the latter reading is preferred, then Hall deliberately chose to end the *Libellus* at this point, though in a surprisnly low key. Neither alternative is certain enough to include in the text.



He was completely freed from the pain and sat down to eat in his dining room. [xxx].

---

**1** and...room] *S.O.* omits. **2** xxx] Abbreviation, see Latin fn concerning the uncertain reading: I suggest the translation is either 'Finished, the end of the cure', or 'Finished, the end of cures'. The first would relate only to specific case, though as such it would be unique. The latter would imply that Hall decided to end the entire manuscript here, in which case it seems rather abrupt. I have not felt confident enough to give a translation in the text.

## CHAPTER 1: RECREATING HALL'S WORKING LIBRARY

The identification of Hall's working library is significant in several contexts. It is the essential first step for my immediate needs, towards answering further questions about when, why and how Hall acquired his books, what he did with them and how they reflect his approach to practice. Hall's books help us to see how an English physician in the seventeenth century used his medical library (or at least the Latin part of it) in two different ways. My thesis is that he used it both to identify therapies for his patients during his working practice, and also to help him turn his initial case notes into the draft for a book in Latin. Vivian Nutton writes that 'medical historians and historians of the book can benefit from each other'.<sup>1</sup> I hope this study can contribute to that mutual benefit, by expanding our knowledge of the link between physic as practised and as presented in learned Latin texts.

I begin by discussing briefly the historiography of medical libraries and books before identifying the books in Hall's working library. The qualification of 'working' is important, as there is no reason to believe the books Hall used were the only ones he possessed. What can be put together is a partial list based on the books Hall chose to use. These reflect two aspects of his working life: first, sources of remedies used in treating his patients; second, sources used in composing his *Little Book of Cures*. The working library is based partly on information in Hall's manuscript but missing from *Select Observations*, and partly on anonymous

---

<sup>1</sup> Vivian Nutton, 'Books, Printing and Medicine', p. 431.

borrowings which Hall made from his books. Hall's borrowings make up between thirty and forty per cent of the whole of his text, a remarkable proportion. Such a use of texts has not been described in any other casebook from Hall's period.

I then consider the nature of Hall's books, and the relationship between them and the periods of his life at which he acquired them. This leads to consideration of the networks through which he would have been able to buy books while living in Stratford-upon-Avon. Finally, I compare Hall's working library with the contents of other libraries and book lists of the period.

## **1.1 EARLY MODERN MEDICAL LIBRARIES**

The two major sources for English libraries, *Books in Cambridge Inventories* and the *Private Libraries of Renaissance England* series (PLRE) are considerably more sparse for the early seventeenth century than they are for the sixteenth.<sup>2</sup> Cambridge inventories with medical content jump from Thomas Lorkin (Professor of Physic at Cambridge, 1564-1590) to John Nidd (ca.1620/30-1659). Nidd was not medically qualified but left over a hundred medical texts. The PLRE volumes (so far up to volume 8) contain no medical collections of relevance for the last decade of the sixteenth century or later. Identifying a library, even a partial one, for the years between 1600 and 1650 adds important new information. My methodology for this described in Appendix A. It may be useful in other contexts in which the contents of libraries have to be identified indirectly from a study of book use.

---

<sup>2</sup> Leedham-Green, *Books in Cambridge Inventories*; Fehrenbach, *Private Libraries in Renaissance England*.

Vivian Nutton recently wrote that ‘the history of the medical book in the renaissance is only just beginning’.<sup>3</sup> This chimes with a more general view that ‘there is scope both to increase our knowledge of the facts and also thereby our understanding of the significance and impact of book owning’ in relation to English private libraries in the seventeenth century.<sup>4</sup> Such attention as has been given to English medical libraries has concentrated mainly on the sixteenth century and earlier. The seventeenth century has been treated as an afterthought, if at all.<sup>5</sup>

It is a commonplace in the history of early modern medicine that Latin was the language in which the learned, university educated, physicians received their education. The texts required in medical curricula were in Latin, though English ones might have had a supporting role.<sup>6</sup> Yet much of the secondary literature on libraries implicitly or explicitly excludes Latin texts in favour of the vernacular.<sup>7</sup> Even when the importance of Latin for medical

---

<sup>3</sup> Nutton, ‘Books, Printing and Medicine’, p. 421.

<sup>4</sup> David Pearson, ‘The English Private Library in the Seventeenth-century’, *Library*, 4th ser., 13 (2012) 379-399 (p. 379).

<sup>5</sup> Peter Murray Jones, ‘Book Ownership And The Lay Culture Of Medicine’, in Hilary Marland and Margaret Pelling (eds), *The Task of Healing: Medicine, Religion and Gender in England and the Netherlands 1450-1800*, (Rotterdam: Erasmus, 1996) pp. 49-68; *Ibid.*, ‘Medical Libraries and Medical Latin 1400-1700’, in Wouter Bracke and Herwig Deumens (eds), *Medical Latin from the Late Middle Ages to the Eighteenth Century* (Brussels: Koninklijke Academie voor Geneeskunde van België, 2000) pp. 115-135; *Ibid.*, ‘Medical Libraries’, in Leedham-Green and Webber (eds), *The Cambridge History of Libraries*, Vol.1, pp. 461-471; C.D. O’Malley, ‘Tudor Medicine and Biology’, *Huntingdon Library Quarterly* 32 (1968) 1-27; Paul Slack, ‘Mirrors of Health and Treasures of Poor Men: the Uses of the Vernacular Medical Literature of Tudor England’, in Charles Webster (ed.), *Health, Medicine And Mortality in the Sixteenth Century* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1979) pp. 237-273; Eric Sangwine, ‘Private Libraries Of Tudor Doctors’, *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences*, 33 (1978) 167-184.

<sup>6</sup> Siraisi, *Medieval and Early Renaissance Medicine*, p. 50; Jones, ‘Medical Libraries’, p.117.

<sup>7</sup> Slack, ‘Mirrors of Health’, p. 238; Mary E. Fissell, ‘The Marketplace of Print’, in Jenner and Wallis (eds), *Medicine and the Market*, p. 108-132; Elizabeth Lane Furdell, *Publishing and Medicine in Early Modern England* (New York: University of Rochester Press, 2002).

education is recognised, the subsequent use of it in medical practice is underplayed by comparison with vernacular texts.

Andrew Wear noted the importance of Latin literacy in medical education, but goes on to say that 'knowledge of medical theories and therapeutic practices were largely communicated to practitioners ... by vernacular texts'.<sup>8</sup> Though he observes that medical books in Latin were imported in large numbers, he points to the overwhelming publishing of English texts in England to support his argument that the vernacular was the main medium of communication.<sup>9</sup> In a contrasting view C.D. O'Malley regarded English physicians as mostly 'content to place reliance upon continental books that they imported', while they 'disdained the use of the vernacular'.<sup>10</sup> Peter Murray Jones notes that medical Latin texts were owned by both non-medical and medical Cambridge academics who 'shared a medical culture whose language was Latin'.<sup>11</sup> His observation relates though to ownership rather than how the owners used their books.

These mixed views of the Latin and vernacular literature in physicians' and other libraries is the background to my study. Hall relied almost entirely on Latin texts in his practice and in writing his manuscript. This is not to say that he did not own or read English medical texts, but for professional purposes the Latin texts were the important ones.

---

<sup>8</sup> Wear, *Knowledge and Practice*, pp. 35-36.

<sup>9</sup> Wear, *Knowledge and Practice*, p. 40.

<sup>10</sup> O'Malley, 'Tudor Medicine And Biology', pp. 1-2.

<sup>11</sup> Jones, 'Book Ownership And The Lay Culture Of Medicine', p. 50.

## 1.2 RECREATING HALL'S WORKING LIBRARY

What might we surmise about Hall's books, in the absence of evidence from his own manuscript? We know that he inherited his father's medical books on his death in 1607.<sup>12</sup> Little is known of William Hall (died 1607). He may have been a physician, an empiric or a gentleman with the vernacular and Latin medical books which were common in a gentleman's library. William Hall also referred to books on astrology, astronomy and alchemy in his will. There is no sign in John Hall's manuscript that he shared his father's interests in terms of medical practice.

John Hall was a medical student at Cambridge from 1589 to 1597. An anonymous Cambridge bookseller's probate inventory of 1588/89 gives an idea of the kind of books which appealed to the medical readers at the time. It contains works by Hippocrates and Galen, epitomes and commentaries on them and books in both Latin and English by sixteenth-century authors. Such books might be shared and borrowed by students as well as bought, but all these and others were available to the student with deep pockets, generous parents or helpful tutors.<sup>13</sup>

So far this could apply as a generality to any student of the period, but in Hall's case we can turn for a more personal view to *Select Observations*. James Cooke, translator and editor of *Select Observations*, visited Susanna Hall specifically to see her late husband's books in 1642, suggesting a collection worth viewing. He referred to Hall's interest in scurvy and claimed that he was ahead

---

<sup>12</sup> Marcham, *William Shakespeare and his Daughter*, p. 22.

<sup>13</sup> Leedham-Green, *Books in Cambridge Inventories*, vol.1, pp. 382-419; Jones, 'Medical Libraries', p. 467.

of his time in its treatment. The literature on scurvy was extensive by Hall's time, so he would have had a wide range of texts to choose from. Cooke added that Hall had travelled abroad and knew some French, so might have owned one or more books in that language.<sup>14</sup>

Harriet Joseph's commentary on *Select Observations* identified six of Hall's sources: Johannes Crato von Krafftheim (1519-1585), John of Gaddesden (ca. 1280-1361), Joseph Du Chesne (1544-1609), Horst (either Jakob (1537-1600) or Gregor (1578-1636), Daniel Sennert (1572-1637) and Severinus Eualenus (1535-?).<sup>15</sup> The reference to Du Chesne includes the title of his book – *Diaeteticon polyhistoricon* (wrongly abbreviated by Cooke as *Diaetet. polychrest.*).<sup>16</sup> The references to Sennert and Eualenus include page numbers (not always accurate) but not titles. The page numbers and contexts make it possible to identify the books as Sennert's *De scorbuto tractatus* and Eualenus's *De scorbuto morbo* – confirming Hall's interest in scurvy.<sup>17</sup> Joseph identified the other authorities – Crato, John of Gaddesden and Horst – from eponymous remedies rather than references to books. Joseph was correct in identifying Crato as one of Hall's borrowings, though her evidence on this point was not good. She was referring to Hall's use of Crato's amber pills (*pilulae de succino*) but this preparation is listed in both the *Pharmacopoea Augustana* and the *Pharmacopoeia*

---

<sup>14</sup> Hall, *Select Observations*, 1st Edn, Sig. A3r-A4v.

<sup>15</sup> Joseph, *Shakespeare's Son-In-Law*, p.xiii.

<sup>16</sup> Joseph Du Chesne, Joseph, *Diaeteticon polyhistoricum* [sic] (Frankfurt: Schönwetter, 1607)

<sup>17</sup> Daniel Sennert, *De scorbuto tractatus* (Wittenberg: Zacharia Shürer, 1624); Severinus Eualenus, *De scorbuto morbo liber* (Leipzig: Michael Rantzenberger, 1604)

*Londinensis* and might have been obtained from one of those. It proves no direct connexion between Hall and Crato's own writings.

Hall's manuscript contains many more references to medical authorities which Cooke removed from *Select Observations*. Some mention a particular book, others a person or an eponymous name in a remedy. Table 1 lists the authorities named in the manuscript including those identified by Joseph. Horst is now identified as the younger Gregor. This expanded list shows that Hall drew on a much wider range of texts than *Select Observations* alone suggests.

<b>Table 1. Sources named in <i>Select Observations</i> and Hall's manuscript</b>	
<b>Author</b>	<b>Title</b>
Amatus Lusitanus	<i>Curationum ... centuriae quatuor</i>
College of Physicians of London	<i>Pharmacopoeia Londinensis</i>
Johannes Crato	<i>Consiliorum ... liber sextus</i>
Oswald Croll	<i>Basilica chymica</i>
Tobias Dornkrell	<i>Dispensatorium novum</i>
Joseph Du Chesne	<i>Diaeteticon polyhistoricon</i>
Severinus Eugalenus	<i>De scorbuto morbo liber</i>
Gregor Horst	<i>Observationum ... libri quatuor</i>
Jacques Houllier	<i>De morbis internis</i>
John of Gaddesden	<i>Rosa Anglica</i>
Jean Liébault	<i>Thresor des remedes secrets</i>
Giovanni Battista da Monte	<i>Consultationum ... centuria prima</i>
Bernard Penot	<i>De denario medico</i>
Felix Platter	<i>Praxeos ... de functionum laesionibus</i>
Felix Platter	<i>Praxeos ... de doloribus</i>
Rodrigo de Fonseca	<i>Consultationes medica</i>
Guillaume Rondelet	<i>Methodus curandorum</i>
Martin Ruland the Elder	<i>Balnearium restauratum</i>
Martin Ruland the Elder	<i>Curationum ... centuriae</i>
Daniel Sennert	<i>De scorbuto morbotractatus</i>
Valesco de Taranta	<i>Epitome operis</i>
François Valleriola	<i>Observationum ... libri sex</i>

The twenty authors and twenty-two books identified from the manuscript are a fairly mixed selection. Bernard Penot (ca. 1520/30-1617) and Oswald Croll (ca.1560-1609) were at the Paracelsian extreme of chymical practice, while Crato was firmly



opposed to Paracelsus' ideas.<sup>18</sup> Other authors – Ruland the Elder (1533-1602) , Joseph Du Chesne, Felix Platter (1536-1614), Sennert (1533-1602) for instance - were chymiatric in orientation but not Paracelsians. The Galeno-Hippocratic tradition is also represented by books from the mid-sixteenth century. Those by Amatus Lusitanus (1511-1568), Giovanni Battista da Monte (1498-1551) and Valesco de Taranta (1382-1418) were all published between 1550 and 1560.

One unusual book listed is *Thresor de remedes secrets pour les maladies des femmes* by Jean Liébault (ca.1535-1596).<sup>19</sup> This is in French, which must have been Hall's choice as it was also available in Latin. This is the only evidence to support Cooke's claim that Hall 'had been a traveller, acquainted with the French tongue'.<sup>20</sup> Judging by the manuscript, Hall's acquaintance was slight: he added a translation in a mixture of English and Latin between the lines of the French text he borrowed. Perhaps he bought the book as much to practise his French while travelling as for its medical content.

The differences between the lists for *Select Observations* and the *Little Book* throw some light on Cooke's activities as an editor and his deliberate creation of Hall as a physician driven by empirical observation. John Bird's foreword 'To the Judicious Reader' undercuts the importance of books in Hall's practice.

---

<sup>18</sup> Charles Gunnoe and Jole Shackelford, 'Johannes Crato von Krafftheim (1519-1585): Imperial Physician, Irenicist and Anti-Paracelsian', in Marjorie Plummer and Robin Barnes (eds), *Ideas and Cultural Margins in Early Modern Germany* (Farnham: Ashgate, 2009) pp. 201-216.

<sup>19</sup> Jean Liébault, *Thresor des remedes secrets pour les maladies des femmes* (Paris: Jacques du Puys, 1585)

<sup>20</sup> Hall, *Select Observations*, 1st edn, sig. A4r.

Prescriptions from learned sources fell ‘short in performing the cures they promise’ and were not as trustworthy as first-hand experience.<sup>21</sup> Cooke’s and Bird’s words should not be taken as entirely disinterested. They were in effect writing advertising copy, not neutral appraisals.

Cooke removed all references to texts except those by Du Chesne, Sennert and Eugalenus (and in fact did remove most references to the latter two). The excisions were not random. Most were from sixteenth-century sources, while those retained were from seventeenth-century books. There are exceptions in both directions. For example, John of Gaddesden remained in *Select Observations* despite his *Rosa Anglica* dating from the fourteenth century. Several references to the *Pharmacopoeia Londinensis* (published 1618) were removed. Their presence would have undercut Cooke’s claim that Hall was not interested in authorities.

There is written evidence in Hall’s manuscript for all the titles listed above. To these books must be added the final set of sources, the anonymous borrowings identified by on-line searches (see Appendix A for the methodology). The additional titles and authors added are listed in Table 2. This brings the complete list of Hall’s working library to forty-three authors and sixty titles, which are listed in the bibliography under ‘Hall’s Working Library’.

The count is conservative. The number of texts could have been made much higher by counting each separate century of Ruland the Elder’s *Curationes* as a separate publication, the format in which they were published in the 1580s and 1590s. As they were

---

<sup>21</sup> Ibid., Sig. A6r-A6v.

also published in a single volume in 1577 I have counted them as a single book. Similarly, Sennert's *De scorbuto morbo tractatus* contains, as well as his own work, reprints of texts on scurvy by Baudouin Ronsse, Johann Echt, Johannes Wier, Johann Lange, Salomon Alberti and Mathaeus Martini. There is no evidence that Hall used any of these independently of Sennert's volume, so only the latter is included in the library. A different problem is encountered with the borrowings from Crato. As well as appearing in books under his name, several but not all of the borrowings from Crato appear in the massive compendia by Johannes Schenk von Grafenberg (1530-1598).<sup>22</sup> These do not provide any additional borrowings not found elsewhere. Relying on Crato's volumes alone gives the lowest number of books needed to cover all Hall's identified borrowings from this author.

---

<sup>22</sup> Johannes Schenk von Grafenberg, *Observationum medicarum, rararum, novarum, admirabilium, et monstrosorum, tomus unus (tomus alter)* (Frankfurt: Rhodius, 1600).

<b>Table 2. Authors and texts identified from anonymous borrowings in Hall's manuscript</b>	
<b>Author</b>	<b>Title</b>
Thomas Adams	<i>Mystical Bedlam</i>
Amatus Lusitanus	<i>Curationum centuriae quinta et sexta</i>
Jean Béguin	<i>Tyrocinium chymicum</i>
Gualtherus Bruele	<i>Praxis medicinae</i>
Richard Burton	<i>Anatomy of Melancholy</i>
Rodrigo de Castro	<i>De universa mulierum medicina</i>
Girolamo Cardano	<i>Ars curandi parva</i>
Johannes Crato	<i>Consiliorum ... liber,</i> “ <i>liber secundus,</i> “ <i>liber quartus,</i> “ <i>liber quintus</i> “ <i>liber sextus</i>
John Donne	<i>Devotions Upon Emergent Occasions</i>
Joseph Du Chesne	<i>De priscorum philosophicorum materia,</i> <i>Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum</i>
Thaddaeus Dunus	<i>De curandi ... per venae sectionem</i>
Pieter van Foreest	<i>Observationum ... de febribus ephemeris et</i> <i>continuis libri duo</i>
Jean Feyens	<i>De flatibus</i>
Jean Fernel	<i>Consiliorum liber,</i> <i>Therapeutices universalis</i>
Bernard de Gordon	<i>Lilium medicinae</i>
Johann Hartmann	<i>Praxis chymiatrica</i>
Luigi Luisini	<i>De morbo gallico omnia</i>
da Monte	<i>Consultationes medicae</i>
Albert Occo	<i>Pharmacopoeia Augustana</i>
Pierre Potier	<i>Insignium curationum,</i> <i>Pharmacopoea spagirica</i>
Felix Platter	<i>Praxeos ... de vitiis,</i> <i>Observationum ... libri tres</i>
Henrik Ranzau	<i>De conservanda valetudine</i>
Jakob Rueff	<i>De conceptu</i>
Martin Ruland the Younger	<i>De morbo Ungarico</i>
Daniel Sennert	<i>De febribus,</i> <i>Medicina practica</i>
Reiner Solenander	<i>Consiliorum medicinalium ... Solenandri</i>
Benedetto Vettori	<i>Exhortatio ad medicum recte sanctequae</i> <i>medicari cupientem</i>
Leonello Vittori	<i>De aegritudinibus infantium</i>
Jodocus Willich	<i>Urinarum probationes</i>

The three books with English titles are worth noting. They were all written predominantly in English, but in each case Hall made use only of Latin borrowings. Two of them are religious works, by Thomas Adams (1583-1652) and John Donne (1572-1631). Their paths may have crossed around 1621 when Adams was a preacher at St Gregory by St Paul's and Donne was Dean of

St Paul's Cathedral. Adams was a Puritan vicar and preacher whose sermon *Mystical Bedlam* used madness as an allegory of different ways of falling off from godliness. Hall used as one of his epigraphs a sentence from 'The Impatient' who, 'when the ties of softer afflictions will not hold him, he must be manacled with the chaines of judgements'.<sup>23</sup> John Donne's *Devotions upon Emergent Occasions* describes Donne's physical and spiritual course through a severe illness. Hall used a line from the *Devotions* to describe a treatment he received during his own illness, the application of a live pigeon to his feet to draw down the humours.<sup>24</sup> Descriptions of this therapy were available in standard medical texts, but Donne's more religious expression of what it was to be seriously ill must have spoken directly to Hall's own circumstances and religious beliefs.

The third English book which Hall used was that monumental work, *The Anatomy of Melancholy* by Robert Burton (1577-1640). In the Second Partition, Section 1, Member 4, subsection II, Burton considered the need for patients to be 'conformable, and content to be ruled' by their physician. Among the authorities he quoted are da Monte, giving an English translation in the main text and Latin paraphrases in two footnotes. Hall used Burton's footnotes rather than da Monte's original text.<sup>25</sup> The context was a conversation with a patient, in which Hall asked

---

<sup>23</sup> Thomas, Adams, *Mystical Bedlam: or, the World of Mad-Men* (London: Clement Knight, 1615) [http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:99836259](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:99836259), p. 68.

<sup>24</sup> John Donne, *Devotions upon Emergent Occasions: and Severall Steps in my Sicknes* (London: Thomas Jones, 1624) [http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:99851467](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:99851467) p. 284.

<sup>25</sup> Robert Burton, *The Anatomy of Melancholy*, ed. by Holbrook Jackson (New York: New York Review of Books: 2001) p. 302.

for and received assurances of the patient's cooperation during a long and difficult treatment. It demonstrates the way Hall used concepts from his sources in his discussions with patients, though it does not prove that the words in his text were precisely those he used in conversation.

The extent of Hall's borrowings seems to have been unique, but there is evidence that other physicians did the same to a lesser degree. Hall himself provides evidence of this. Mrs Delabere (Case 111) went to Bath and was prescribed a sweating decoction to use after bathing. Her remedy was based on a mixture of two recipes taken from Du Chesne's *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum*.<sup>26</sup> Hall did not state who prescribed this but it was clearly not him. From another source, John Symcotts started his 'Observations 1636' with sentences in Latin, the first taken from Sennert's *Opera omnia*: 'Si multi pravi succi in corpore abundant purgationes periculosiores sunt' (If many corrupt humours abound in the body, purgations are more dangerous).<sup>27</sup> This is followed by a longer extract also from Sennert, expanding on the same subject.<sup>28</sup> Symcotts went on to describe cases from his own experience exemplifying this problem.

Hall was used as an unattributed source himself, by James Cooke in *Mellificium chirurgiae*. Cooke follows the custom of the time by listing in his preface several authorities from whom he took remedies. Among those he mentioned in his address 'to the young

---

<sup>26</sup> *Libellus*, pp. /97-98/; Joseph Du Chesne, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum restituta* (Frankfurt: Schönwetter, 1607) p.53.

<sup>27</sup> Daniel Sennert, *Opera omnia ... tomus I* (Paris: Apud Societatem, 1631), <http://books.google.com/books?id=m8tuWGj-kUMC>, p. 690; Poynter and Bishop, *John Symcotts*, p. 51.

<sup>28</sup> Daniel Sennert, *Institutionum medicinae libri V, 2nd edn* (Wittenberg: Zacharia Schurer, 1620) <http://books.google.com/book?id=qhtAAAAcAAJ>, p.1001; Poynter and Bishop, *John Symcotts*, p. 51.

Chyrurgeon' and which were also used by Hall are Sennert, Beguin, Potier, Foreest, Houllier, Ruland, Plater and Du Chesne.<sup>29</sup> Cooke continues:

besides thou hast the secrets of practitioners, whose names are worthy to be mentioned, and should if it were not for fear of offending them, they came unexpectedly into my hands, and are as freely set out for thy benefit.

One recipe which Cooke very probably borrowed from Hall is his treatment of Mrs Wincoll (Case 10) for prolapsed anus. Hall took this from Penot's *De denario medico*.<sup>30</sup> Cooke was writing a textbook not a series of case reports, so his grammar differs from Hall's manuscript and from *Select Observations*. His remedy (in Latin) is nonetheless almost identical to Hall, Penot and his own translation in the first edition of *Select Observations*.<sup>31</sup> The English directions for treatment which follow are clearly from the same source.<sup>32</sup> Further evidence of Cooke's use of Hall is his comment before giving the recipe: 'externally use this fomentation, with which two was cured'. Hall had added at the end of his report on Mrs Wincoll that he had successfully treated one of Mr Broad's servants in the same way.

---

<sup>29</sup> Cooke, *Mellificium chirurgiae*, sig. A7r.

<sup>30</sup> Penot, *De denario medico*, p. 64.

<sup>31</sup> Cooke, *Mellificium chirurgiae*, p. 308: R chamom. vel potius flor. Cham M.i vini malvatici lib.is macerentur per hor. unam et alteram super carbones lento igne; compare *Libellus*, p. /11-12/, Hall, *Select Observations* (1st edn) p. 16.

<sup>32</sup> Cooke, *Mellificium chirurgiae*, pp. 308- 309: Foment with linen stuffes as hot as can be suffered, after which with the finger put it in its proper place, then with a sponge wet in the same decoct and wrung forth, applyed hot to the fundament, and sit upon it; compare *Little Book*, p. /12/, Hall, *Select Observations*, p. 16.

### 1.3 THE FREQUENCY OF HALL'S USE OF SOURCES

As a measure of how often an author was used by Hall, a count of his borrowings is less quantitatively objective than might appear. Sometimes Hall used all the sentences of a paragraph but reordered and combined with other borrowings. I have had to use my judgement on whether to count such examples as a single borrowing or as several. The results are nevertheless sufficiently clear to allow for some conclusions.

Thirteen authors (30 per cent) contributed 352 (80 per cent) of the 438 total borrowings identified (Table 3). The first four authors listed contributed over half of all borrowings, with Ruland the Elder on his own contributing a quarter.

<b>Table 3. Authors mostly commonly used as sources</b>		
<b>Author</b>	<b>Number</b>	<b>Per Cent</b>
Ruland the Elder	109	25
Platter	53	12
Sennert	35	8
Valleriola	31	7
Bruele	26	6
Eugalenus	19	4
Horst	18	4
Ruland the Younger	16	4
Crato	12	3
Du Chesne	11	3
Amatus Lusitanus	8	2
<i>Pharmacopoeia Londinensis</i>	7	2
Foreest	7	2
Others	86	20
Total	438	100

The list contains both earlier and later authors. Ruland the Elder, Valleriola, Bruele, Crato, Amatus Lusitanus and Foreest are all of the sixteenth century. Sennert, Eugalenus and Horst only arrived in Hall's library after the mid-1620s, so their high rankings are based on relatively few years' use. These three are all



associated with Hall's interest in scurvy, so their presence testifies both to Hall's growing interest in the disease and to his dependence on learned texts for his knowledge of it. The other seventeenth-century authors, Ruland the Younger, Platter and Du Chesne, represent chymiatric practice, but not on a narrow Paracelsian model. Entirely absent from the list are Hall's more strongly chymiatric purchases of the Stratford-upon-Avon years (1607-1635). He seems to have purchased them, tried one or two recipes, but then returned to his small number of familiar sources.

It is important to emphasise that frequency of use implies familiarity with a text, but not necessarily relevance to therapeutic use. Of 258 borrowings relating to therapies, 202 (78 per cent) came from fourteen (31 per cent) authors (Table 4).

<b>Table 4. Authors mostly commonly used as sources for therapies</b>		
<b>Author</b>	<b>Number</b>	<b>Per Cent</b>
Platter	45	17
Ruland the Elder	32	12
Valleriola	18	7
Bruele	16	6
Ruland the Younger	15	6
Sennert	14	5
Horst	13	5
Crato	11	4
Du Chesne	11	4
<i>Pharmacopoeia Londinensis</i>	7	3
Amatus Lusitanus	5	2
Dornkrell	5	2
Feyens	5	2
de Fonseca	5	2
Other	45	22
Total	438	100

Twelve authors are common to both Tables, but there are some changes in rankings. Ruland the Elder's percentage has fallen by half and Platter is now the most frequently used author. The explanation is that a large number of Hall's borrowings from Ruland

are expressions of thanks for divine favour, used as codas to conclude the report of a successful cure. It appears that Hall's interest in Ruland was as much for these suitable avowals of a religious nature as because of his therapeutic content. Otherwise the balance between sixteenth- and seventeenth-century authors remains unchanged. The absence of Eugalenus is explained by the nature of his book: it concentrates mainly on the diagnosis of scurvy, contains little on therapy. What little it does provide is too general in most instances to be of practical use.

#### **1.4 GENRES AND CATEGORIES OF LATIN MEDICAL TEXTS**

So far I have treated Hall's books as individual entities. It would also be informative to consider them in groups with similar characteristics but this calls for a method of creating the groups. Here I consider different methods of creating such groups, and their usefulness in relation to Hall's books.

Several historians have touched on the varieties of Latin medical books dealing more with practice than theory which were published in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. This has appealed particularly to scholars with an interest in the history of ideas. They have tended to deal more with the concepts in medical books than the use their owners might have made of them. In distinction to the historiography which exists on English libraries and vernacular texts, this approach is concerned primarily with Latin texts and therefore has a Europe-wide context.

The historian of ideas Joël Coste has proposed a division of practical books into four broad genres: *practicae*, *consilia*, *regimens*

and pharmacopoeas or dispensatories.<sup>33</sup> Nancy Siraisi's work covers similar ground, but with particular emphasis on consilia and epistolae.<sup>34</sup> Ian Maclean has put the various types of medical books into a wider context of book ownership and readers.<sup>35</sup> Gianna Pomata has analysed curationes and observationes in most depth and provided concise descriptions of these and other forms of medical writing.<sup>36</sup> Using these sources it is possible to create a broad chronology of the changing words used in the titles of books through the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. The views of the authors mentioned are in broad agreement and are summarised in the following paragraphs.

Practicae had their roots in medieval medicine. In the early sixteenth century they were being written primarily by university-based physicians rather than by those working in towns or courts.<sup>37</sup> They dealt with diseases and remedies rather than patients, following a standard pattern of presentation, starting with illness of the head and ending with the feet. General illnesses such as fevers were often dealt with separately.<sup>38</sup>

---

<sup>33</sup> Joël Coste, 'Practical medicine and its literary genres in France in the early modern period', [http://www.biusante.parisdescartes.fr/histmed/medica/medpratique\\_eng.htm](http://www.biusante.parisdescartes.fr/histmed/medica/medpratique_eng.htm).

<sup>34</sup> Nancy Siraisi, 'Cardano and the Art of Medical Narrative', *Journal of the History of Ideas*, 52 (1991) 581-602; Siraisi, *History, Medicine, and the Traditions of Renaissance Learning*; Siraisi, 'Medicine, 1450-1620, and the History of Science', *Isis*, 103 (2012) 491-514; Siraisi, *Communities of Learned Experience*.

<sup>35</sup> Ian Maclean, *Logic, Signs and Nature*, pp. 46-67; Ian Maclean, 'The Medical Republic Of Letters Before the Thirty Years War', *Intellectual History Review*, 18 (2008) 15-30.

<sup>36</sup> Pomata, *Praxis Historialis*; Pomata, 'Sharing Cases'.

<sup>37</sup> Maclean, *Logic, Signs*, p.46.

<sup>38</sup> *Ibid.*, p.56.

Consilia were written replies, often from a senior to a more junior colleague, to a request for a second opinion.<sup>39</sup> They were structured rather to put an illness tidily into a theoretical framework than to examine the illness as it presented in an individual patient.<sup>40</sup> Epistolae were related to consilia. These circulated widely, initially as letters between physicians but then often collected in books. They covered a wider range of topics than consilia, in less formal style.<sup>41</sup> Silvia De Renzi has shown that consilia and epistolae were genuinely part of the working life of a physician, not necessarily written for publication.<sup>42</sup> Consultationes is another term frequently encountered, usually indicating a mixture of consilia and epistolae.

Curationes were collections of successful cures designed to legitimise therapies by their practical success. They first appeared around the middle of the sixteenth century. They suited town and court physicians who needed to advertise their successes in order to compete in the medical market place. Evidence of successful treatments was supported by references to the names of the successfully treated patients. This element of self-advertisement connects them to the writings of Galen as models.

Observationes developed slightly later in the sixteenth century. They put more emphasis on careful observation of each individual patient without necessarily concentrating on successful outcomes. A crucial innovation was the use of personal experience of patients and treatments as a subject for learned commentary.

---

<sup>39</sup> Ibid, 'The Medical Republic of Letters', 19.

<sup>40</sup> Siraisi, 'Medicine 1450-1620', p. 502.

<sup>41</sup> Siraisi, *Communities of Learned Experience*, p. 3-7.

<sup>42</sup> De Renzi, 'A Career in Manuscripts'.

According to Pomata this approach owed more to Hippocrates than Galen, but others have emphasised a revived Galenic interest in them as well.<sup>43</sup> According to Nutton, *Observationes* was used in titles from around 1560 but it was not ‘a fashionable headline for a book’ before the end of the sixteenth century.<sup>44</sup> It went on to become the predominant title and model in the late seventeenth century, as evidenced by Cooke’s choice of *Select Observations* as the title for his editions of Hall, rather than following Hall’s use of *Curationes* in his title.

Maclean and Pomata have provided contrasting ways of understanding these and other terms. Both use the word genres as a label for the groups they propose, but use it in very different ways.

Maclean, in *Logic, Signs and Nature*, states that medical genres ‘can be distributed in various ways’.<sup>45</sup> He refers to Pascal Lecoq’s (1590) bibliography as an example of a categorisation from the sixteenth century.<sup>46</sup> Maclean’s own choice is to ‘attempt a distribution by readership rather than subject’ which in practice becomes a division between books for students and those appealing to a wider readership. Among books for students he includes general texts on practical medicine (particularly those based on lectures) *practicae*, *consilia*, *compendia*. He also puts volumes dealing with single topics such as ‘syphilis, childhood diseases and

---

<sup>43</sup> Pomata, ‘Sharing Cases’, pp. 215-217; Nance, ‘Wondrous Experience’, pp. 102-103.

<sup>44</sup> Nutton, ‘Pieter van Foreest’, p. 26.

<sup>45</sup> Maclean, *Logic, Signs and Nature*, p. 55.

<sup>46</sup> Pascal Lecoq, *Bibliotheca medica sive catalogus illorum, qui ex professo artem medicam in hunc usque annum scriptis illustrarunt* (Conrad Waldkirch: Basel, 1590) <http://books.google.com/books?id=mMGaNuKfC38C>.

gynaecology' in this group.<sup>47</sup> Books with broader appeal include those touching on natural philosophy, Aristotelian handbooks, alchemy and astrology, remedies, and remarkable cases).<sup>48</sup>

Pomata in 'Sharing Cases' offers a much tighter definition of what constitutes a genre. Though her subject is primarily observationes, she considers other genres (practicae, consilia epistolae and curationes) insofar as they touch on the development of observationes from the mid-sixteenth century through to the end of the seventeenth century. For Pomata, these are not variable distributive criteria in Maclean's sense but are 'epistemic genres', that is, genres 'recognised and employed by the native members of a culture'.<sup>49</sup> She does not state, but it is implicit in her discussion that the 'native members' referred to are early modern physicians (or at least the book-writing minority among them) and not medical historians. Pomata also states that 'a striking aspect of early modern medical literature is the variety of genres indicated by the very titles of publications'.<sup>50</sup>

Neither Maclean's nor Pomata's model of genres meets my need to categorise Hall's books. This is not to say that they are not valuable in other contexts. Maclean's genres are personal to his needs, while leaving it open to others to distribute books differently. Pomata's epistemic genres are, if she is correct, not open to such personal choice, and further, are reflected in the titles of books. Certainly observationes and the related words were 'recognised and employed' by physicians, but it does not follow that each had a

---

<sup>47</sup> Maclean, *Logic, Signs and Nature*, pp. 55-57.

<sup>48</sup> Ibid., pp. 57-58.

<sup>49</sup> Pomata, 'Sharing Cases', p. 196.

<sup>50</sup> Ibid., p. 194.

separate and distinct meaning when used in the titles of practical medical textbooks. Pomata recognises that the meanings of words such as *observationes* changed over time.<sup>51</sup> Many texts had titles reflecting more than one of her genres.<sup>52</sup> Conversely several genres may be combined in a single text which does not reflect all the contents. The *Therapeutices universalis libri septem* of Jean Fernel (1497-1558) for example contains a section on method, a pharmacopoea, curationes and consilia.

To resolve the tension between Maclean's and Pomata's concepts, I have turned to the categories (used here as a more neutral word than genres) found in bibliographies from Hall's period. This avoids the potential problem of creating a personal categorisation without wider applicability, and acts as a test for Pomata's genres. If she is correct, there should be a match between the categories in bibliographies and the titles of books.

## 1.5 EARLY MODERN BIBLIOGRAPHIES AND HALL'S BOOKS

Bibliographies of the period offer a way of examining how texts were grouped and perceived by writers who must surely have wanted their categories to be meaningful and useful to readers. Both Maclean and Pomata used the *Bibliotheca medica* of Pascal Lecoq (1567-1632) as a starting point.<sup>53</sup> Maclean also used the two editions (1611 and 1625) of the *Bibliotheca classica* compiled by

---

<sup>51</sup> Pomata, 'Sharing Cases', p. 204.

<sup>52</sup> Ibid., pp. 215-216. Examples among Hall's books include Crato, *Consiliorum et epistolarum ... liber*; Foreest, *Curationes et observationes*; and Potier, *Insignium curationum et singularum observationum*.

<sup>53</sup> Maclean, *Logic, Signs and Nature*, p.55; Pomata, 'Sharing Cases', p. 194.

Georg Draud (1573-1635).<sup>54</sup> Pomata also refers to other bibliographies, but all come from after 1650, some as late as the eighteenth century.<sup>55</sup> Like them I start with Lecoq, but then turn to Draud as his bibliographies were published during Hall's years of practice.

Lecoq's bibliography contains five headings for practical texts: pharmacopoeas, practicas medendi (also referred to as therapeuticae materiae scriptores) and consilia. He added to these two single subject headings, plague and venereal disease.<sup>56</sup> Under practicae medendi Lecoq listed authors of widely varying texts including (from Hall's library) Bruele (*Praxis medicinae*), Crato (*Consiliorum et epistolarum ... libri*), Ruland the Elder (*Curationum ... centuriae*) and the *Observationes* of François Valleriola (1504-1580).

The section on consilia includes the *consiliae* of both Fernel and Reiner Solenander (1524-1601) and da Monte's *Consultationum ... centuria prima*. It did not though include Crato's volumes of *Consiliorum et epistolarum ... libri*, which were listed under practicae medendi.<sup>57</sup> There is little sign here that books with similarly worded titles formed distinctive groups.

Georg Draud's bibliographies of 1611 and 1625 differ considerably from Lecoq's in their internal organisation. Instead of Lecoq's seven general headings, both Draud's medical sections (he also covered other fields of publishing such as theology and law)

---

<sup>54</sup> Georg Draud, *Bibliotheca classica, sive catalogus officinalis* (Frankfurt: Pierre Kopf, 1611); Georg Draud, *Bibliotheca classica, sive catalogus officinalis* (Frankfurt: Balthazar Ostern, 1625). Maclean refers to them in *Logic, Signs and Nature*, pp. 39-40, 48-49, 52, 55.

<sup>55</sup> Pomata, 'Sharing Cases', p. 194.

<sup>56</sup> Lecoq, *Bibliotheca medica*, p. 303.

<sup>57</sup> Lecoq, *Bibliotheca Medica*, pp. 450-453.



contain several hundred headings. This is in part because of Draud's tendency to create a separate heading for each single topic book, even if it contained only one entry. He also used several different headings for general works on medicine, including *Artes medicae*, *Medica in genere*, *Medendi methodi* and others. Nonetheless, most books are listed under a small number of headings, and I have used these to categorise Hall's library.

Table 5 below lists those of Hall's books which appear under Draud's general headings. Table 6 does the same for single topic books. Some books are listed under more than one heading.

The books listed under Draud's heading of *Consilia et consultationum medicae* show the most consistent match to one of Pomata's genres. It contains all Hall's texts with either *consilia* or *consultationes* in the title. There is no overlap with other headings. The *Observationes* heading is almost as tidy, though it includes one text, Potier's *Insignium Curationum*, which by title and contents would fit better under either *curationes* or *chymica*.

<b>Table 5. Hall's Books Listed under Draud's General Headings</b>	
<i>Artes Medicae</i>	Cardano, <i>Ars curandi parva</i>
<i>Chymica</i>	Béguin, <i>Tyrocinium chymicum</i> , Croll, <i>Basilica chymica</i> (also listed under <i>Medicamenta chymica</i> ),
<i>Consilia et consultationum medicae</i>	Crato, <i>Consiliorum ... libri</i> Fernel, <i>Consiliorum liber</i> de Fonseca, <i>Consultationes medicae</i> , da Monte, <i>Consultationum ... centuria prima</i> , Solenander, <i>Consiliorum ... Solenandri</i>
<i>Medicatio empirica</i>	Vettori, <i>Exhortatio ad medicum recte sancteqe medicari cupientem</i> Ruland the Elder, <i>Curationum ... centuriae</i> (also under <i>Morborum curatio</i> )
<i>Morborum curatio</i>	Amatus Lusitanus, <i>Curationum centuriae quatuor</i> , Bernard de Gordon, <i>Lilium medicinae</i> , Penot, <i>De denario medico</i> , Potier, <i>Pharmacopoeia spagirica</i> , Rondelet, <i>Methodus curandorum</i> (also under <i>Medendi methodi</i> ) Ruland the Elder, <i>Curationum ... centuriae</i> (also under <i>Medicatio empirica</i> )
<i>Morborum internorum curatio</i>	Houllier, <i>De morbis internis</i>
<i>Medicina veterum philosophorum</i>	Du Chesne, <i>De priscorum philosophorum materia</i>
<i>Observationes medicae</i>	Foreest, <i>Observationum ... libri duo</i> Platter, <i>Observationum ... libri tres</i> Potier, <i>Insignium curationum</i> , Valleriola, <i>Observationum ... libri sex</i>
<i>Pharmacopoeae</i>	Du Chesne, <i>Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum</i> , <i>Pharmacopoea Augustana</i> , Dornkrell, <i>Dispensatorium novum</i> ,
<i>Practica et praxes medicae</i>	Bruele, <i>Praxis medicinae</i> , John of Gaddesden, <i>Rosa Anglica</i> , Platter, <i>Praxeos</i> [all three volumes]
<i>Sanitatis conservanda</i>	Ranzau, <i>De conservanda</i> , Du Chesne, <i>Diaeteticon polyhistoricon</i> (also listed under <i>diaeta</i> , <i>Medicinales historiae</i> )
<i>Therapeutica</i>	Fernel, <i>Therapeutices universalis</i>

<b>Table 6. Hall's Books Listed under Draud's Single Topic Headings</b>	
<i>Balnea sive vulnera</i>	Ruland the Elder, <i>Balnearium restauratium</i>
<i>Febres</i>	Sennert, <i>De febribus</i>
<i>Flatus</i>	Feyens, <i>De flatibus</i>
<i>Hominis humanique corporis conceptus</i>	Rueff, <i>De conceptu</i>
<i>Infantium medicina</i>	Vittori, <i>De infantium aegritudinibus</i>
<i>Morbi Gallicus</i>	Luisini, <i>De morbo Gallico</i>
<i>Morbi Ungaricus curatus</i>	Ruland the Younger, <i>De morbo Ungarico</i>
<i>Muliebres morbi</i>	Rodrigo a Castro, <i>De universa mulierum medicina</i>
<i>Scorbuti cura</i>	Eugalenus, <i>De scorbuto morbo</i>
<i>Urinarum iudicia</i>	Willich, <i>Urinarum probationes</i>
<i>Venae sectiones</i>	Dunus, <i>De curandi ratione ... liber quartus</i>

Draud did not use curationes as a heading. The contents of his approximately similar heading of Morborum curatio show considerable variation. Amatus Lusitanus and Ruland the Elder fit comfortably enough, but Rondelet's *Methodus* follows the practica structure and Bernard de Gordon's medieval work is unquestionably a practica. Houllier's *De Morbis internis* also follows the practica structure but has its own unique category, Morborum internorum curatio. Penot's *De denario medico* is more an alchemical than a medical text. Potier's *Pharmacopoea spagirica* would fit better under either chymica or with other pharmacopoeas.

Draud's medicatio empirica heading contains only a few titles. Of Hall's library, it includes the *Exhortatio ad medicum recte santeque medicari cupientem* of Benedetto Vettori (1481-1561) and Ruland the Elder's *Curatium ... centuriae*, also listed under *Morborum curatio*. Being listed under empirica may have been a mixed blessing in terms of public image, though clearly Hall had no problem with it. Ruland the Elder felt impelled to defend his use of the word in the introduction to his first Century. His son Martin

Ruland the Younger (1569-1611) delivered a vehement defence of his father's empiricism in the preface to the fifth.<sup>58</sup>

Practica seems to have been losing its exclusiveness as a category in Draud's time. Draud listed only three of Hall's authors under this heading: Gualtherus Bruele (active end sixteenth century) , John of Gaddesden and Platter. Rondelet, Houllier and Bernard de Gordon (ca.1283-ca.1320) all used the practica format but were listed under Morborum curatio. Vettori's practica-structured *Exhortatio* turns up under empirica.

Fourteen (almost half) of the entries in Table 5 fall under the headings of Consilia et consultationum medicae, medicatio empirica and morborum curatio (with its subset, morborum curatio internorum). This brings out the practical bent of Hall's library as used in his manuscript. It should be noted that eleven books, more than in any other category, are listed under single topic headings. These are diverse, covering illnesses, specific patient groups, treatments and diagnostic criteria. Large numbers of such books were published and, if Hall is a typical example, were important resources for practitioners, not students only.

There are some striking absences from Hall's library, notably of books dealing with general theory. Fernel *Therapeutices universalis* is the only representative of such texts in Table 5. Also absent are Disputationes, Quaestiones and similar academic texts such as commentaries. If Hall owned such books he chose not to use them in his manuscript. This is understandable as his manuscript describes patients, illnesses and remedies from a very

---

<sup>58</sup> Ruland the Elder, *Curationum ... centuriae*, sig.A3v; pp. 397-398.

practical angle. Even his occasional borrowings relating to theory were taken from practical texts.

The evidence from this for Pomata's epistemic categories is mixed. These patterns suggest that in the early seventeenth century the old category of *consilia* (sometimes linked with *epistolae* as *consultationes*) and the new one of *observationes* were both fairly securely defined. *Curationes* were much less clearly identified and overlapped more with *practicae* than with *observationes*. One possible explanation for this is that the distinctions, as Pomata draws them, were clearer for the middle of the sixteenth century compared to the end of the seventeenth. The early seventeenth century falls in the middle of Pomata's period of study, and may have been transitional with some flux in the use and meaning of words.

## **1.6 COMPARISONS WITH OTHER MEDICAL LIBRARIES**

How typical was Hall's library of other medical libraries of the time? Finding an answer is complicated both by the incompleteness of Hall's library and by the scarcity of comparators. This makes it necessary to concentrate on books owned by Hall and found in the comparison libraries, as the only firm evidence is for books which Hall definitely owned and used. There are two reasons why he might not have used a book in his manuscript: either he owned it but did not need to use it in his composition or he did not own it at all. Thus no conclusions can be drawn from books in other libraries but not identified in Hall's.

Maclean distinguished between real and ideal libraries, the latter being ‘a recommended reading list for students and practitioners’.<sup>59</sup> I have used both real and ideal libraries here. Two real libraries are taken from Cambridge probate inventories, those for Thomas Lorkin (ca.1528-1591) and John Nidd (?-1659).<sup>60</sup> Thomas Lorkin was Professor of Physic at Cambridge until his death, making his library the earliest comparator. Nidd’s, at the other extreme, was the latest. He was not a physician, but owned an extensive medical library of 126 volumes. A third real library is that of Robert Burton in Oxford, based on his own records of book purchases.<sup>61</sup> He was also not a physician, and his focussed interest in melancholy might have affected his choice of reading. The final real library list is the catalogue of the Bodleian Library in 1605, with some later additions.<sup>62</sup> As an institutional library, this was larger than any but exceptional personal libraries, and might be expected to contain a wider range of material.

The two final comparators are ideal library lists, compiled by Rodrigo de Castro (1560-1638) and Peter Lauremberg (1585-1639). Castro outlined his library for a ‘futurus medicus’, ‘in artis medicae limine’, in 1614.<sup>63</sup> He was a firm Hippocratic-Galenist who attacked

---

<sup>59</sup> Maclean, *Logic, Signs*, p. 65.

<sup>60</sup> Leedham-Green, *Books in Cambridge Inventories*, Vol. I, pp. 492-508, 576-584.

<sup>61</sup> Nicolas Kiessling, *The Library of Robert Burton* (Oxford: Oxford Bibliographic Society, 1988) p. xxvii.

<sup>62</sup> Bodleian Library, *The First Printed Catalogue of the Bodleian Library 1605 and a facsimile* (Oxford: Clarendon, 1986)

<sup>63</sup> Rodrigo de Castro, *Medico-politicus: sive de officiis medico-politicis tractatus* (Hamburg: Froben, 1614) <http://books.google.com/books?id=elvDs7yW6sEC> [accessed 15 February 2016] pp. 84-92.

the spread of Paracelsian chymistry across Europe.<sup>64</sup> He recommended classical Greek, Arabic, Hebrew and Latin books before turning to the sixteenth- and seventeenth-century authors, the neoterici. Peter Lauremberg (1585-1639) was writing a few years later to suggest books for his students. He was more sympathetic to chymiatry and included a variety of newer books of this sort, including his own.<sup>65</sup>

The comparators are not perfect. Two are probate inventories, one a list compiled by the owner, one is institutional and two are ideal libraries. Their dates span nearly seven decades, from before Hall started to practice to twenty-four years after his death. A library can only contain books published before the date at which its contents were listed. In this respect the range of dates may be advantageous, as different comparators cover different periods of Hall's book-buying time. Lists often refer only to authors, not to book titles. Only comparisons by author are possible, so the book in Hall's library may not be the same as that by the same author in another library. Given these limitations, any attempt at analysis would be foolish but some description is possible. Table 8 shows how references to authors are distributed across libraries.

Six authors are mentioned in four of the libraries: Bruele, Fernel, Platter, Rondelet, Valleriola and Valesco de Taranta. The reasons given (if any) are not always what one might expect. Castro recommended Fernel as a general work on medicine, while for

---

<sup>64</sup> Jon Arrizabalaga, 'Medical Ideals in the Sephardic Diaspora: Rodrigo de Castro's Portrait of the Perfect Physician in Early Seventeenth-century Hamburg', *Medical History Supplement*, 29 (2009) 107-124;

<sup>65</sup> Peter Lauremberg, *Laurus delphica: seu consilium quo describitur methodus perfacilis ad medicinam* (Leiden: Johannes Maire, 1621) pp. 19-44.

Lauremberg his importance was as an authority on the pulse.

Some of the names will be familiar to present-day historians, but Bruele's *Praxis* is not widely mentioned in today's scholarship, and references to Valesco de Taranta are hard to come by. The presence of three practicae - Valesco (1560), Bruele (1599) and Platter (1602-1608) - demonstrates the ongoing appeal of this style of book both for authors and readers. Among authors mentioned three times, sixteenth-century writers are commonest. Du Chesne overlapped with Hall, but the presence of Houllier, da Monte, Bernard de Gordon and Vettori shows that older texts still retained their appeal.

<b>Table 7: Authors in Hall's library and in other library lists</b>							
<b>No</b>	<b>Author</b>	<b>Comparator Libraries</b>					
		<b>Lorkin (1591)</b>	<b>Bodleian (ca.1605)</b>	<b>Castro (1614)</b>	<b>Lauremberg (1621)</b>	<b>Burton (1640)</b>	<b>Nidd (1659)</b>
4	Bruele	X	X		X	X	
4	Fernel		X	X	X		X
4	Platter		X		X	X	X
4	Rondelet	X	X	X			X
4	Valleriola	X	X	X		X	
4	Valesco de Taranta	X	X	X		X	
3	Bernard de Gordon	X		X		X	
3	Du Chesne			X	X	X	
3	Houllier		X	X	X		
3	da Monte	X	X	X			
3	<i>Pharm. Augustana</i>		X	X			X
3	Vettori	X		X		X	
2	Amatus Lusitanus	X		X			
2	Beguin				X		X
2	Crato			X		X	
2	Croll				X		X
2	Castro		X				X
2	Feyens					X	X
2	John of Gaddesden	X	X				
2	Ruland the Elder					X	X
2	Sennert		X		X		
2	Willich		X		X		
1	Cardano	X					
1	Dornkrell		X				
1	Eugalenus		X				
1	de Fonseca		X				
1	Foreest			X			



1	Hartmann						X
1	Liébault		X				
1	Ranzau		X				
1	Rueff					X	
1	Ruland the Younger		X				
1	Solenander			X			
1	Vittori			X			
0	Dunus						
0	Horst (Gregor)						
0	Luisini						
0	Penot						
0	<i>Pharm. Londinensis</i>						
0	Potier						
	TOTALS	10	19	15	9	11	10

There is a fair degree of overlap between Hall and all the comparators, ranging from nine common authors with Lauremberg, to fifteen with Castro and nineteen with the Bodleian library. At opposite ends of the time period, there are ten matches with both Lorkin and Nidd. Overall the pattern suggests that Hall owned a fair number of books that were part of the mainstream expectation for a physician's library, while still showing some signs of individual interests. Sennert and Ruland the Elder only appear twice and Eugalenus only once though all three authors were published early enough to have been mentioned in all the comparators.

### 1.7 WHEN DID JOHN HALL ACQUIRE HIS BOOKS?

Hall's involvement with physic, from his matriculation at Cambridge in 1589 to his death in 1635, spanned 46 years. This was a period of change in styles of medical writing and long enough for Hall's own interests to change and develop. Did he replace old standbys with new, add new modes of thinking to his repertoire or rely on old favourites throughout his career?

Hall's working library at the time he was writing contained books written over eight decades, from 1550 into the 1630s. Such lengthy spans were not unusual.<sup>66</sup> What Hall's library shows is that such older books were not simply sitting on shelves waiting to be inventoried, but were regularly used even in the later years of his practice.

Many books had lengthy publishing histories so that dating an acquisition is not easy. Hall might have acquired a book any time after it was published and before his first dated use of it. The dates of acquiring mid-sixteenth-century books are most difficult to pin down. They might have been purchases from his university years, gifts from his father at that time or inherited from him in 1607. For books published later, particularly those published after 1607, Hall seems to have been using them (and therefore owning them) fairly soon after their publication. An exception to this is Eugalenus's *De morbo scorbuto*, published in 1604 but not mentioned by Hall before a report in 1629. One must be careful not to over-interpret the evidence, but some trends are discernible and presented below.

The books in Hall's library and first published between 1550 and 1569 are predominantly Galenic and Hippocratic in outlook. Hall's more theoretical texts (by Fernel and Cardano – neither extensively used ) come from this period. Older examples of practicae (Valesco de Taranta, Bernard de Gordon) and consilia (da Monte, Solenander) are present, as are several authors of curationes

---

<sup>66</sup> Sixteenth-century authors in John Nidd's inventory of 1659 include Rondelet, Feyens, Bruele and Ruland the Elder: Leedham-Green, *Books in Cambridge Inventories*, Vol. 1, pp. 578-579.

(Amatus Lusitanus, Rondelet). Vettori's *Exhortatio* was listed under *medicatio empirica* by Draud, but might be grouped with the *practicae*, a style popular with students. Da Monte and Rondelet represent important strands in academic teaching, from Padua and Montpellier respectively. Both are authors who would have appealed to medical students as well as practitioners. Several books from this period deal with single topics, including conception, medicinal baths, venesection, the French disease and illnesses in children. They seem to me over-specialised for a student (though Maclean includes them among books for students<sup>67</sup>) and may be some of them were texts Hall inherited from his father. None of them made a major contribution to his borrowings.

Books published between 1570 and 1589 are more of a mixture. Houllier represents another important academic strand, this time from Paris, to supplement da Monte and Rondelet. *Consilia* are still present (Fernel) alongside *curationes* (Ruland the Elder, Houllier) and the new style of *observationes* (Valleriola, Foreest). Both Ruland the Elder and Valleriola were important sources for Hall throughout his career, so were perhaps authors whose writings he came to know well while at university.

Considering his enormous output and Hall's evident attraction to series of publications (for example those by Ruland the Elder, Crato, Platter) it seems somewhat strange that Foreest is represented by only a single volume. Hall did use some of Foreest's remedies for scurvy (particularly *syrupus sceletyrbicus Foresti*) but these were reprinted in other texts Hall owned such as Sennert's *De*

---

<sup>67</sup> Maclean, *Logic, Signs and Nature*, pp. 56-57.

*scorbuto tractatus*. There is no evidence that Foreest was an original source for Hall's knowledge of scurvy. Ruland the Elder's *Curationum ... centuriae* was first published as a single volume in 1577 and subsequently in ten separate volumes of a century each. The latter would have been cheaper and useful to a student as vade mecums, while the former, if Hall owned it, might have come from his father. Single topic books are again present, dealing with uroscopy, regimens of health and women's illnesses. There is some change in the type of books, but more importantly, in their use. Both Ruland the Elder and Valleriola's texts are books he knew well and relied on as standards throughout his working years.

The 1590s were the main period of Hall's medical education, followed by a time probably gaining practical experience, before moving to Stratford-upon-Avon around 1607. *Practicae* still feature, both the traditional (John of Gaddesden, Bruele) and more recent versions (Platter). An important medical publishing event of this time must have been the series of Crato's *Consiliorum et epistolarum ... libri*. Crato and Ruland the Elder were the sources of recipes in Hall's earliest dated case, in 1611. Balancing Crato's anti-Paracelsian stance are three books giving indications of Hall's interest in chymiatric medicine (the *Dispensatorium novum* of Tobias Dornkrell (1571-1605), Croll's *Basilica chymica* and Du Chesne's *De priscorum philosophicorum ... materia*). Two authors from this period were used frequently by Hall, Bruele and Crato. Others were used more sparingly.

The final phase of Hall's book-buying comes with his life in Stratford-upon-Avon after 1607. The pattern is quite different from

what has come before. Almost every medical book he acquired in this period is chymiatric to some degree. Some of Hall's new books were very definitely so: Penot's *De denario medico* is more alchemical than medical, while works by Béguin, Potier and Johann Hartmann (1568-1631) take a strong chymiatric line. Hall was also buying books by authors already on his shelves, including new works by Du Chesne and Platter (both important sources, particularly Platter's *Observationum ... libri tres*). Sennert became important to Hall from the mid-1620s onwards. He was published from early in the seventeenth century, but all of Hall's borrowings come from later books.

Pharmacopoeas make up a good proportion of acquisitions. Hall might have acquired Du Chesne's *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum* early (it was published in 1607) and there is evidence from remedies used that he owned the 1613 edition of the *Pharmacopoea Augustana*. At some point he updated this with the *Pharmacopoeia Londinensis* (1618). His continuing interest in chymiatric matters is shown by the use of Potier's *Pharmacopoea spagirica* (1622), even though the *Pharmacopoeia Londinensis* was supposed to have become the exclusive standard for England at that time.

Five other books require a mention, two in particular because Hall used them intensively. Ruland the Younger's *De morbo Ungarico* was published in 1610. Hall used it in only five of his cases, but relied on it almost entirely in each of them. It was his standard work on malignant fevers, to the exclusion of other texts. The second is Gregor Horst's *Observationum ... libri quatuor*. This was published in 1625, but despite its late date Hall used it often,

particularly as a source for treatments of scurvy. The other three are Hall's English books, the two volumes of devotions by Donne and Adams, and Burton's *Anatomy of Melancholy*. They are a reminder that Hall was much involved in the religious and social life of Stratford-upon-Avon. As a committed puritan member of the Church of England he almost certainly had an extensive library of religious texts as well as medical ones.<sup>68</sup>

In sum, Hall's working library was not static but grew over decades, reflecting the different stages of his working life. He started with books useful to a student and at a later in life developed new interests in chymical practice and scurvy. Among the books inherited from his father may have been a small number of theoretical texts and some unusual single topic texts, perhaps reflecting his father's tastes rather than his own. Once settled in Stratford-upon-Avon he bought new books regularly, mainly ones that combined a practical slant with a chymical interest. In most of his practice he continued to rely on books he had known since his early education.

## **1.8 HOW DID JOHN HALL ACQUIRE HIS BOOKS?**

This question is most relevant to Hall's time in Stratford, as the earlier periods are relatively straightforward. There were bookshops in Cambridge where he was a student and books could be borrowed from colleges or staff. His father might have provided him with the beginnings of a library before or during his studies,

---

<sup>68</sup> See Wells, 'His son-in-law John Hall', pp. 91-93, and Ann Hughes, 'Religion and Society in Stratford-upon-Avon, 1619-1638', *Midland History* 19 (1994) 58-84, for Hall's involvement in the church and civic life of Stratford-upon-Avon.

which would explain the presence of several books from around 1550 to 1575.

Once Hall had settled in Stratford-upon-Avon he no longer had a bookseller immediately on hand, but still bought at least twenty books between 1607 and 1635. In some cases there is evidence for him using new books soon after their publication, so he must have been able to choose, purchase, read and apply them quite rapidly. He used the *Consultationes* of Rodrigo de Fonseca (1550-1622) in the year it was published (1619) and Horst's *Observationum ... libri quatuor* the year after its publication in 1625.

London was the centre of the English book trade and the essential link in the importation of books from Europe – the 'Latin Trade'. From 1616 to 1627 this was supposedly a monopoly of the Stationers Guild in London.<sup>69</sup> Most of the imported books came to London from one of the trade fairs in Germany, of which Frankfurt was the most important in Hall's time. Book fair catalogues were published twice yearly and circulated widely. If Hall had access to these he might have been able to make specific requests based on them. Obtaining a specific book could be a complicated and frustrating process for a country gentleman, whether on personal visits to London or through a trusted intermediary.<sup>70</sup> Pedlars and chapmen formed an extended network for booksellers to distribute their wares outside of London.<sup>71</sup> They might have carried catalogues to tempt wealthier buyers as well as more popular literature. Stratford-upon-Avon had a regular carrier service to and

---

<sup>69</sup> Julian Roberts, 'The Latin Trade'.

<sup>70</sup> Scott-Warren, 'News, Sociability, and Bookbuying'.

<sup>71</sup> John Barnard and Maureen Bell, 'The English Provinces', in McKenzie and Barnard, *The Cambridge History of the Book in Britain*, Vol. 4, pp. 665-686.

from London from Elizabethan times. It carried letters as well as other goods and might have carried books or catalogues.<sup>72</sup>

There was another, shorter link to booksellers, perhaps more useful for a working physician (though there is no more supporting evidence for it than for a direct connexion to London). This would have been through booksellers in Oxford. They had a market among both University staff and students and with the growing Bodleian Library, founded in 1602.<sup>73</sup> In 1615 the Bodleian Curators commissioned two London booksellers to visit every Frankfurt Fair and also other important outlets on the Continent.<sup>74</sup> The Bodleian Committee met soon after the arrival of each Fair's catalogue to decide on purchases. It would have been easier and more informative for Hall to visit Oxford twice a year to inspect new purchases at the Library and peruse the catalogues, than to travel to London. He could then have used the same trade links as the Library to order and receive any books he wanted. There is a closer match between the authors in Hall's library and the Bodleian than with any of the other booklists shown in Table 8, which offers tentative support for this.

## **1.9 CHANGES IN HALL'S USE OF BOOKS OVER TIME**

So far this chapter has considered Hall's library primarily as it was when he used it to compose the *Little Book*. In the following I touch briefly on what evidence there is for changes in his use of

---

<sup>72</sup> Alan Stewart, *Shakespeare's Letters* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2008) p. 128.

<sup>73</sup> Levy, 'How Information Spread among the Gentry'.

<sup>74</sup> Roberts, 'The Latin Trade', p. 160; Jones, 'Medical Libraries', pp. 469-470.



books over time. Did new books replace old or did old favourites retain their places throughout his career?

Not all of the dating evidence can be used to answer this. A minority of Hall's consultations are datable and not all of Hall's borrowings can be taken as contemporaneous with the original consultation. He might have used borrowings for descriptions of patients or their illnesses without having owned the source at the time of the consultation. The best dating evidence is that of the remedies, which must have been available at the time the patient consulted Hall.

Table 9 shows how different books or series of books were used in datable consultations and the periods of time over which they were used. Nine books are mentioned three times or more, Ruland the Elder's *Curationum ... centuriae* and Platter's *Observationes* occurring most frequently (eleven and nine times respectively). They are followed by Horst's *Observationum ... libri quatuor* and Sennert's *De scorbuto* each with eight appearances each.

<b>Table 8. Most frequently used texts, with number of consultations they appear in, and dates of earliest and latest known use.</b>			
<b>Author, title</b>	<b>Number of consultations</b>	<b>Earliest dated consultation</b>	<b>Latest dated consultation</b>
Ruland, <i>Curationum ... centuriae</i>	11	1611	1633
Platter, <i>Observationes ... libri tres</i>	9	1619	1634
Horst, <i>Observationum ... libri quatuor</i>	8	1626	1633
Sennert, <i>De Scorbuto</i>	8	1629	1634
Platter, <i>Praxeos</i>	5	1617	1634
Valleriola, <i>Observationum ... centuria prima</i>	5	1619	1633

Crato, <i>Consiliorum ... libri</i>	4	1613	1626
Eugalenus, <i>De Scorbuto morbo</i>	4	1629	1633
Du Chesne, <i>Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum</i>	3	1611	1630

Most of the books in this list were first published in the 1590s or later. There are relatively fewer from earlier in the sixteenth century than appeared in Tables 3 and 4. Ruland the Elder and Valleriola are exceptions to this, both having been published before 1590. Hall used them consistently from before 1620 into the 1630s. Ruland the Elder and Du Chesne both appeared in Hall's earliest dated consultation in 1611 and remained in use by him for around twenty years. At the other extreme Horst, Sennert and Eugalenus, Hall's main texts on scurvy, only came into use in the late 1620s, though quite intensively from then on.

This supports the evidence in Table 4 that Hall relied mainly on old favourites, using recently acquired works only occasionally. There is one possible suggestion of a fundamental change. Hall used Crato from 1613 until 1626, which was also the first year in which Hall used a remedy from Horst. Since he used Horst several times thereafter but not Crato, this may be evidence of Hall abandoning an older text in favour of something newer.

## 1.10 CONCLUSIONS

This chapter has used the evidence from the critical edition to explore the way in which Hall used Latin medical books both in his practice and the composition of his manuscript.

Hall's use of borrowings from books in his library is a hitherto unnoticed phenomenon in medical manuscripts in the early seventeenth century. However, the practice was not unique to him. It should not be surprising that learned physicians, educated through the use of Latin textbooks, should use them in their daily practice. It has not though been previously demonstrated in this detail. This has implications for historians of early modern English medicine: more weight should be given to Latin texts than has been the case in the past. Any Latin text in a casebook should be considered as possibly coming from a published Latin source, even if there is no explicit reference to it. The ability to read medical Latin and an interest in it is a skill which should be encouraged among historians of medicine. There are also implications for historians interested in medical ideas. Latin texts were an important sources of practical working knowledge for the physicians of their time. Hall's manuscript shows that they reflect practice as well as theory.

A second outcome of my analysis is to suggest that systems of creating categories, and especially Pomata's account of epistemic genres, should be treated with care. The contents of books do not always match tidily what their titles suggest. Comparing headings in Draud's bibliographies with Hall's library suggests that categories were flexible. *Consilia* and *observationes* were well-defined, other categories much less so. Possibly this reflects a period of change in the early seventeenth century, and that categories in the mid-sixteenth and late seventeenth centuries were more fixed.

A third result relates to the length of time over which Hall both acquired and used his library, which is likely to apply to any other study of similar collections. His library was a dynamic creation. Its changing character over time reflects changes in Hall's interests at different stages of his life. Libraries should not be treated as unchanging entities without internal structure, but as tools for the study of changing practice in early seventeenth-century medicine.

## **CHAPTER 2: JOHN HALL'S MANUSCRIPT IN THE CONTEXT OF CASEBOOKS**

John Hall's manuscript (and its published form as *Select Observations*) is commonly referred to as a casebook, and it is indeed a book and contains case reports. The earliest reference to it as a casebook is the title embossed on its British Museum cover: 'The Casebook of Dr. John Hall', added between its purchase in 1868 and its transfer to the British Library. But what makes it a casebook, and how is it similar to or different from other manuscripts referred to in the same way?

As long as studies in history dealt with only a single text or a handful there was little problem with this label. Increasingly though historians have been drawing on a wider range of documents and in greater numbers, so that the question of whether everything within that label is comparable has become more pressing. Fortunately many references to casebooks in general include mention of John Hall in particular, so focussing on the latter is a useful way of reviewing the former.

### **2.1 JOHN HALL AS SEEN BY MEDICAL PRACTITIONERS**

Hall's casebook intrigued medical practitioners long before it became of interest to historians. The earliest reference to *Select Observations* I have found in a medical journal is an anonymous piece in the *Bristol Medico-Chirurgical Journal* in 1891, reproduced the following year in *Shakespeariana*. The tone is approving, despite being written nearly 300 years after Hall practised:

His treatment was based on sound principles. Not seldom his success was obtained by the induction of copious vomiting and nearly always by very free purgation. In these days of elegant pharmacy we are in danger of forgetting the value of this mode of treatment, and we might do well to follow the example of our ancestors ... and, on their lines, secure quickly very good results.<sup>1</sup>

Three decades later opinions had shifted. *Select Observations* was still seen as a practical if out-dated medical text, as well as being of historical interest. R.W. Leftwich, in 1918, thought Hall's medical practice 'very medieval, even for his time'.<sup>2</sup> Walter Lindley thought him 'not a great man', while Eli Moschcowitz described *Select Observations* as 'a book [...] which, medically speaking, is of no value'.<sup>3</sup>

Over succeeding decades the association of John Hall with Stratford-upon-Avon and Shakespeare continued to stimulate writing by medical practitioners, generally with more approving opinions as time has passed. He was 'not unlike his sturdy contemporary [...] Thomas Sydenham';<sup>4</sup> 'a man of character and

---

<sup>1</sup> Anon, *Bristol Medical Chirurgical Journal*, September 1891, quoted in *Shakespeariana* (New York: Shakespeare Society of New York, 1892) pp. 190-193, [http://www.forgottenbooks.com/books/Shakespeariana\\_1000051080](http://www.forgottenbooks.com/books/Shakespeariana_1000051080).

<sup>2</sup> R.W. Leftwich, 'Shakespeare's Medical Son-in-law, John Hall', *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine: Session 1917-8, Supplement*, 11 (1918) 77-78 (p. 77).

<sup>3</sup> Walter Lindley, *Dr John Hall: Shakespeare's Son-in-law*, reprinted from the *Medical Record* May 20 1916 (William Wood: New York, 1916) pp. 9-10; Eli Moschcowitz, 'Dr John Hall: Shakespeare's Son-in-law', *Bulletin of the Johns Hopkins Hospital*, 19 (1918) 148-152, (p. 148).

<sup>4</sup> E.P. Scarlett, 'Shakespeare's Son-in-law: Dr John Hall', *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 43 (1940) 482-488 (p. 485).

originality ...admired by his colleagues';<sup>5</sup> one who preferred 'the acceptance of new ideas rather than adherence to the old dogma'.<sup>6</sup> This fascination has continued into the twenty-first century, with the assessment of his medical practice tending to become more balanced over time.<sup>7</sup> Nearly all these authors refer to John Hall as 'Dr' Hall, though he never received a doctorate nor claimed to have one in his lifetime.<sup>8</sup>

Two publications from the 1970s and 1980s discuss specific aspects of Hall's practice, both being based on *Select Observations*. Basil Clarke described how Hall treated patients with mental disorders, using the term quite widely to include the mother (an illness caused by movement of the womb, associated with mental problems, falling sickness, some aspects of scurvy, frenzy and melancholy).<sup>9</sup> Kenneth Carpenter's study of scurvy used Hall to illustrate the therapeutic approaches available to a practitioner of

---

<sup>5</sup> B. Levin, 'Visiting the Home of an Elizabethan Physician', *Journal of the American Medical Women's Association*, 16 (1961) 151-152 (p.152).

<sup>6</sup> V.A. Jones, John Hall: Seventeenth-century Physician of Stratford-upon-Avon', *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine*, 70 (1977) 709-714 (p. 713).

<sup>7</sup> P.M.W Copeman and W.S.C. Copeman, 'Dermatology in Tudor and Early Stuart England', *British Journal of Dermatology* 81 (1969) 303-310; Robert G. Richardson, 'Dr John Hall, Shakespeare's Son-in-law: a vignette of Elizabethan Medicine', *Practitioner* 225 (1981) 593-595; M.P. Earles, 'The Medical Practice of John Hall', *Pharmaceutical Historian*, 27 (1997) 10-12; J.M.S. Pearce, 'Migraine treated by Shakespeare's Son-in-law Dr John Hall', *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery and Psychiatry*, 75 (2004) 987; Tim Betts and Hannah Betts, 'John Hall and his Epileptic Patients: Epilepsy Management in Early Seventeenth Century England', *Seizure*, 7 (1998) 411-414; Nicholas Barton, 'Physician of Stratford, Dr John Hall: his life, times and patients', *Journal of Medical Biography*, 8 (2000) 8-15; J.M.S Pearce, 'Dr John Hall (1575-1635) and Shakespeare's Medicine' *Journal of Medical Biography*, 14 (2006) 187-191; Angel Fernandez-Flores, 'On the Practice of John Hall in the Field of Dermatology in the Seventeenth Century', *Clinics in Dermatology*, 28 (2010) 356-363.

<sup>8</sup> Wells, 'John Hall', p. 86.

<sup>9</sup> Basil Clarke, *Mental Disorder in Earlier Britain: Exploratory Studies* (Cardiff: University of Wales Press, 1975) pp. 282-285. See also Appendix D for a definition.

his time.<sup>10</sup> Both these texts might seem at first sight to be examples of the older school of medical history (medical practitioners writing about medical practitioners and concentrating on evidence of progress) but neither really fits that description. Both describe the illnesses they discuss in the terms of Hall's period, with no attempt at retrospective diagnosis. Both are dispassionate in their descriptions, using Hall illustratively without any suggestion that he was either amusingly old-fashioned or excitingly forward-looking. The way they approached Hall would not have looked out of place in the new school of social history of medicine (as practised by academic historians with wider interests than medical progress) though neither author shows any signs of being influenced directly by that thinking. By contrast, an article in a history journal in 1970, examining emotional disorders among Hall's cases, put retrospective diagnosis at its centre: 'The symptomatology of emotional illness as displayed by Dr Hall's patients [...] clearly follows the pattern of symptoms seen today' and looks back to the previous model of the history of medicine.<sup>11</sup>

## **2.2 CASEBOOKS AND JOHN HALL IN THE HISTORY OF MEDICINE**

Casebooks appeared in the history of medicine at a later date than in medical journals and are mentioned rarely before the 1980s. The term was used initially to describe new editions of manuscripts or

---

<sup>10</sup> Kenneth Carpenter, *The History of Scurvy and Vitamin C* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 1988) pp. 37-39.

<sup>11</sup> John Howells and M.L. Osborn, 'The Incidence of Emotional Disorder in a Seventeenth-century Medical Practice', *Medical History* 14 (1970) 192-198, (fn, p. 198)



books. Poynter and Bishop used it in 1951 for one of John Symcotts's documents, to distinguish it from his letters and commonplace book.<sup>12</sup> Harriet Joseph used it without comment in her facsimile editions of *Select Observations*, making no distinction between Hall's manuscript and the published book.<sup>13</sup> Joan Lane's edition of *Select Observations* was published in 1996 but in many ways its style and content has more in common with these texts and the early interests of the social history of medicine than with the cultural history which was more dominant at the time she published. Her aim was to identify and fill out the lives of each of Hall's patients, including their family connexions, treating aspects of his medical practice as a subsidiary issue.<sup>14</sup> Dewhurst described Thomas Willis's manuscript as a casebook, but did point out that it had no title originally, and that Willis later in his career referred to his records as 'diaries of diseases'.<sup>15</sup> Neither Joseph nor Dewhurst were medical historians: Joseph was a Shakespeare scholar, and Dewhurst a psychiatrist which led him to some rather strange retrospective diagnoses. Their texts though have been much used by historians of medicine since then.

MacDonald's study of mental illness, through the lens of Richard Napier's astrological records, was also published in 1981.<sup>16</sup> Roy Porter referred approvingly to MacDonald's work in his call for 'medical history from below' which was to set a pattern for much

---

<sup>12</sup> Poynter and W.J. Bishop, *John Symcotts*.

<sup>13</sup> Joseph, *Shakespeare's Son-in-law*.

<sup>14</sup> Joan Lane, *John Hall*.

<sup>15</sup> Dewhurst, *Willis's Oxford Casebook*, p. 61.

<sup>16</sup> MacDonald, *Mystical Bedlam*.

work in the social history of medicine.<sup>17</sup> MacDonald's text is more transitional than is often recognised. It does not mention the social history of medicine at all and makes no overt criticism of previous styles of studying history. MacDonald's main influences were from figures eminent in other branches of history, Michel Foucault, Keith Thomas and Lawrence Stone.<sup>18</sup>

Robert Sawyers's more wide-ranging study of Napier's cases followed in 1986. This was more polemic in its justification for a new way of doing history ('I seek to remedy some of the deficiencies of earlier histories of medicine') and turned to the social sciences and anthropology in order to find new tools for historical research.<sup>19</sup> In this it is part of the cultural history approach which was gaining popularity at that time. Both MacDonald and Sawyer referred to Napier's records as casebooks without qualification or definition. Both used a small number of similar documents, including *Select Observations* and Symcotts's casebook, for comparisons.

Two important works by cultural historians of medicine followed soon after, by Beier and Nagy. Beier's *Sufferers and Healers* (1987) drew on a variety of sources including casebooks, with the focus now on 'the experience of ill health' and 'the choices of seventeenth-century patients'. She studied the modes of practice of more main-stream practitioners than Napier, but avoided leading figures such as Court and London physicians. Her choices included a London surgeon, Joseph Binns, John Symcotts, Dr Barker of Shrewsbury and an anonymous practitioner from

---

<sup>17</sup> Porter, 'The Patient's View', pp. 183-184.

<sup>18</sup> MacDonald, *Mystical Bedlam*, pp. xiii-xiv.

<sup>19</sup> Sawyer, 'Patients, Healers and Disease', p. 3.

Cambridge. It is a sign of the new approach that she used the original manuscripts for all these sources except Symcotts.<sup>20</sup> Equally significant is that the majority of her sources are letters and diaries giving the experience of illness from the sufferer's point of view.

Nagy's *Popular Medicine in Seventeenth-Century England* was published in 1988.<sup>21</sup> Her sources for professional practice include John Hall (via *Select Observations*), John Symcotts and an unknown Yorkshire practitioner's accounts.<sup>22</sup> This last contains a small amount of clinical and personal information, but its main purpose was to list the physician's fees from each patient. Nagy did not refer to any of these sources as casebooks, preferring instead to describe them as 'records' or 'notes'.

These studies all used *Select Observations* along with other sources to argue a particular case, but it has been put to other uses. Ease of access via the facsimile editions allied to the wide range of illnesses Hall recorded has made *Select Observations* useful as a source of illustrative examples. Andrew Wear for example used John Hall's treatment of Joan Lynes for tympany to illustrate a successful cure even though bystanders thought her incurable.<sup>23</sup> There are many other examples of such illustrative uses in a wide variety of texts.<sup>24</sup>

---

<sup>20</sup> Beier, *Sufferers and Healers*, pp. 3, 6, 51-131.

<sup>21</sup> Nagy, *Popular Medicine*, (1988) p. 53.

<sup>22</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 43-53.

<sup>23</sup> Wear, *Knowledge and Practice*, p. 130, quoting Hall, *Select Observations*, p. 115.

<sup>24</sup> R. Elwyn Hughes, 'The Rise and Fall of the "Antiscorbutics": Some Notes on the Traditional Cures for "Land Scurvy"', *Medical History* 34 (1990) 52-64; Andrew Wear, 'Epistemology and Learned Medicine in Early Modern England', in Don Bates (ed.), *Knowledge and the Scholarly Medical Traditions* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1995) p. 172; Roy Porter, *The*

Alongside the changing nature of references to casebooks has been a steady increase in the number being identified and used. John Raach in 1943 knew of only five from between 1600 and 1635, one of them being *Select Observations* and another Richard Napier's.<sup>25</sup> Lane in 1996 still only mentioned three (Mayerne, Napier and Symcotts) besides Hall.<sup>26</sup> Nagy and Beier respectively used three and five casebooks (along with other material) in their research.<sup>27</sup> MacDonald remarked in *Mystical Bedlam* that he had examined 'some' casebook manuscripts in the British Library, but gave no references.<sup>28</sup>

An early example of casting a wider net is Katherine Williams's study of hysteria a few years later, for which she used fifteen casebooks.<sup>29</sup> More recently, Wendy Churchill used around forty casebooks in original manuscripts, for her study of women's health between 1590 and 1740.<sup>30</sup> Lauren Kassell has identified eleven astrological and thirty-six medical casebooks meeting her definition and written prior to 1700.<sup>31</sup> Even allowing for the relatively longer timescales of these latter studies this is a

---

*Greatest Benefit to Mankind: a Medical History of Humanity from Antiquity to the Present* (London: Harper Collins, 1997) pp. 232-233; Margaret Pelling, *The Common Lot: Sicknes, Medical Occupations and the Urban Poor in Early Modern England* (London: Longman, 1998) p. 35; Pelling, *Medical Conflicts*, pp. 203, 242, 263; Sarah Read, *Menstruation and the Female Body in Early Modern England* (London: Palgrave Macmillan, 2013) p. 71; Newton, *The Sick Child* pp. 67, 74; Newton, "Nature Concocts and Expels": the Agents and Processes of Recovery from Disease in Early Modern England', *Social History of Medicine* 28 (2015) 465-486; Jennifer Evans and Sara Read, "Before Midnight she had Miscarried": Women, Men and Miscarriage in Early Modern England', *Journal of Family History*, 40 (2015) 3-23.

<sup>25</sup> John Raach, 'A Seventeenth-century English Medical License', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 13 (1943) 210-216 (p. 216).

<sup>26</sup> Lane, *John Hall*, p. xiii.

<sup>27</sup> Nagy, *Popular Medicine*, pp. 4-19; Beier, *Sufferers and Healers*, pp. 51-132.

<sup>28</sup> MacDonald, *Mystical Bedlam*, pp. 257, 258, 288-289.

<sup>29</sup> Katherine Williams, 'Hysteria in Seventeenth-century Case Records and Unpublished Manuscripts', *History of Psychiatry*, 1 (1990) 383-401 (p. 389).

<sup>30</sup> Churchill, *Female Patients*.

<sup>31</sup> Kassell, 'Casebooks in Early Modern England', p. 600.

remarkable jump, which owes much to the development of online searchable catalogues and databases. This development, clearly excellent in itself, has brought with it the question that earlier authors felt no need to confront: what exactly is a casebook?

## **2.3 DESCRIBING AND DEFINING CASEBOOKS**

Churchill and Kassell have attempted in different ways to say what is, or is not, a casebook. Churchill adopted a comparative and semi-quantitative approach, while Kassell treats casebooks more analytically as ‘artefacts of the medical encounter’.<sup>32</sup> Their analyses are complementary and together provide a good basis for a consideration of Hall’s manuscript.

### **2.3.1 Wendy Churchill and Casebook Contents**

Churchill’s study refers to many unpublished manuscripts which no one else has so far used, making the point that such texts are becoming easier to access with on-line databases and digitisation.<sup>33</sup> She gives no definition of casebooks, but makes a clear distinction between them and other practitioner manuscripts such as accounts, correspondence and published books.

Her description of casebooks starts with consideration of their style, organisation and purpose. They might be written in Latin or English or a mixture, a point also made by Kassell.<sup>34</sup> Most, Churchill observes, are only roughly chronological, often with evidence of information being inserted at later dates than the first

---

<sup>32</sup> Ibid., p. 595.

<sup>33</sup> Churchill, ‘Medical practice’, 10.

<sup>34</sup> Churchill, *Female Patients*, p. 17; Kassell, ‘Casebooks’, p. 601.

consultation with a patient.<sup>35</sup> She points out that casebooks cover time-spans from months to years, with consultations not necessarily evenly spaced, and that only a minority were dated.<sup>36</sup> Some records were kept on loose sheets of paper which were subsequently bound, so the chronological order is uncertain. Others show clear signs of editing and reorganisation, though usually 'there is no apparent underlying pattern or rationale (aside from chronology)' for the selection.<sup>37</sup> Most practitioners did not overtly state why they kept casebooks, so suggestions for reasons can only be interpretations from the texts. Potential publication, self-reflection and learning are possibilities. In this respect, Nance has put forward other suggestions in relation to Turquet de Mayerne: they may serve as a method of deliberation, a record of past treatment, endorsement of a philosophy and as a defence of controversial therapies.<sup>38</sup>

Churchill has analysed the patient information in casebooks in more detail than has previously been done.<sup>39</sup> Variables she considers are age and sex, marital and socio-economic status, race, religion and geography. Sex is the variable most frequently present in the casebooks she examined, though rarely recorded in its own right. It is most often inferred from gendered titles or references to the patients' relationship, such as wife or daughter, to someone else. It was commonly not recorded for pre-adolescent children. Most casebooks contain a majority of female patients, usually

---

<sup>35</sup> Ibid., *Female Patients*, p. 17.

<sup>36</sup> Ibid., p. 19.

<sup>37</sup> Ibid, p. 21.

<sup>38</sup> Ibid., pp. 24-25; Nance, *Turquet de Mayerne*, p. 53.

<sup>39</sup> Churchill, *Female Patients*, pp. 27-33, 43-57.

between fifty and sixty per cent. Exceptions are casebooks associated with practitioners working in Cambridge and Oxford with their large male academic population base, at the Court in London and for some surgeons in London.<sup>40</sup> Age is recorded less often than sex, often only approximately, and usually more precisely for children than adults.<sup>41</sup> Children and elderly people appear less often in casebooks than do those of ages in between. Perhaps this was because of a general belief that medical treatments were more dangerous for these ages, or that medical treatment was less likely to be successful for these patients.<sup>42</sup>

Churchill finds social titles unhelpful as indicators of marital status, mainly because the meaning of Mrs as a title was undergoing changes in the seventeenth century.<sup>43</sup> She also found titles as a whole imprecise as socio-economic indicators. For her analyses, she used two groups, 'lower social orders' and 'others', which included all ranks from the professions (in towns) and yeomanry (in the country) and upwards.<sup>44</sup> The poorest members of society are rarely found in casebooks and must be under-represented relative to the population.<sup>45</sup>

Religion is hardly referred to in any casebooks other than Hall's, as Churchill notes.<sup>46</sup> Race is important for her study as she included practitioners working in the British West Indies. Place of residence was recorded for a minority of patients. The information

---

<sup>40</sup> Ibid., pp. 27, 47-54.

<sup>41</sup> Ibid., p.28.

<sup>42</sup> Ibid., pp. 54-55.

<sup>43</sup> Ibid., p. 28.

<sup>44</sup> Ibid., p. 29.

<sup>45</sup> Ibid., p. 55.

<sup>46</sup> Ibid., p. 30.

shows that a practitioner's patients were often drawn from a wide area, but it is less clear whether they were commonly seen at the practitioner's offices or visited at home.<sup>47</sup>

### **2.3.2 Lauren Kassell's Definition and Descriptions**

Kassell takes Churchill's descriptions of the contents of casebooks a step further by attempting to define them. Her need to understand casebooks grew out of a desire to 'assess the representativeness of Forman's and Napier's records'.<sup>48</sup> Her work on this is essential to understanding both what a casebook is, and how much difference there may be between one casebook and another. Her key definition is that casebooks are 'serial records of practice'. This is amplified as 'a body of manuscripts that record a series of consultations' but are not 'uniform in mode of production, content, or epistemology'.<sup>49</sup> They had 'a common purpose: to document medical encounters'.<sup>50</sup> Casebooks are also 'a variety of records of practice, mostly generated by literate men, unpolished, not for the ready use of an intended reader'.<sup>51</sup> Medical and astrological casebooks are distinct, because the latter are essential to the process of casting and analysing a horoscope, whereas medical ones were purely a record.<sup>52</sup>

Within her definition, Kassell separates the 'first record of practice', 'written during, or shortly after, a medical consultation', from collections made later, which might be organised in various

---

<sup>47</sup> Ibid., p. 31-33.

<sup>48</sup> Kassell, 'Casebooks', p. 600.

<sup>49</sup> Ibid., p. 600.

<sup>50</sup> Ibid., p. 596.

<sup>51</sup> Ibid., p. 597.

<sup>52</sup> Ibid., pp. 608-609.



ways. Casebooks might be modelled on ‘diaries, registers and testimonials’.<sup>53</sup> The most obvious of these is diaries, though ‘modelled on’ is perhaps inappropriate. For Willis and Mayerne, their primary casebooks simply were diaries.<sup>54</sup> Registers were a second model, though Kassell notes that there is little evidence for this.<sup>55</sup> Kassell suggest testimonials as another model, referring to ‘Italian cure testimonials’ or the advertisements of ‘folk healers’.

Excluded from the definition of casebooks are: collections of medical information mixing consultation details with other medical information (though it is hard to find a better description of John Symcotts’s writing, which Kassell accepts as a casebook); commonplace books with information organised under headings; recipe collections, ‘though the prescription books on which they are based might be included’.<sup>56</sup> Her ultimate conclusion is that ‘the processes of producing the records – from jotted notes to printed observations – are as important to the history of medicine as the final product’.<sup>57</sup>

Kassell also proposes a checklist for analysing medical casebooks, starting with production, then retention and reuse, and finally collection and printing. It moves on to the learning of the author; page format and layout; record order; rough or fair copy; and again retention and reuse. Finally, printing moves a casebook

---

<sup>53</sup> Ibid., p. 605.

<sup>54</sup> Ibid., p. 606.

<sup>55</sup> Ibid., p. 607.

<sup>56</sup> Ibid., p. 608

<sup>57</sup> Ibid., p. 624.

on to ‘the creation of the medical record as a class of historical documents’.<sup>58</sup>

Kassell’s discussion makes an excellent beginning, though there are problems with it. There is a degree of circularity in the reasoning, with a definition based on examining casebooks (and other material), being applied to define the casebooks used to create the definition. The multiple statements about casebooks are not entirely consistent, in that a text may sometimes seem fall within the compass of one but not another. Commonplace books, medical curiosities and recipe collections are excluded in one place, but appear to be included in another.<sup>59</sup> Printed documents are included in Kassell’s list of casebooks, even though the statement about historical documents above seems to exclude them. I suggest that what Kassell has produced is better regarded as a series of expanding descriptions than as a firm definition. This is a useful approach if the intention is to create a broad pond in which to fish.

## **2.4 JOHN HALL’S MANUSCRIPT CONSIDERED AS A CASEBOOK**

Taken together, Churchill and Kassell’s work creates a framework within which Hall’s manuscript can be examined and answers attempted. There is sufficient overlap between them that their frameworks can be used together. Kassell provides a structure of key words into which Churchill’s comparative material can be slotted. Using this structure, I shall look at Hall’s manuscript:

- a) as the documentation of medical encounters (its purpose);

---

<sup>58</sup> Ibid., p. 615.

<sup>59</sup> Ibid.: compare p. 606 and p. 608.

- b) as a serial record of practice (its chronologies);
- c) as it is modelled on other writing (its sources);
- d) as part of a process (its relationships to other documents, via reorganisation, editing and rewriting).

Kassell also included consideration of casebooks as artefact, their physical existence, but this has already been covered in the Background so is not repeated here.

#### **2.4.1 The Purposes of the Manuscript**

Kassell states that the common purpose of casebooks is to 'document medical encounters'. Each word in that phrase contributes something important for my analysis.

'Encounters' indicates that at least two people are involved.

It is not part of Kassell's definition, but she does state that the encounters are 'between medical practitioners and their patients'.<sup>60</sup> I take this to mean that the records should, at least in a proportion of cases within each casebook, give enough information to identify the two people involved. Practitioners may be identified by name, or be anonymous or only uncertainly identified. Not all documents recording encounters are necessarily included as casebooks. By convention, records of treatment by lay people are excluded from casebooks even though they may document encounters in the same way. In Hall's case, the contents and history of his manuscript confirm his authorship though he is not named in it. Turning to his patients, nearly all are identified by name. Those who are not can mostly be identified by their connexion to another person, as for

---

<sup>60</sup> Kassell, 'Casebooks', p. 596.

instance Nash's servant at the Bear Inn (Case 6) or the Reverence Hollyoak's son (Case 159).

Kassell further specifies that the encounters are 'medical', so medical content is an important if not essential element. A complete medical encounter, in my judgement, has three components: a complaint, a treatment and a conclusion. The first two are essential. There may be more than one of each of the components if the encounter is long and complex. Thus while account books identify patients (as, to be useful, they have to) they were not primarily kept for a medical purpose even if medical information is included. Similarly, records of pharmaceutical prescriptions for identifiable patients may possibly be useable as casebooks, though they have limited value in the absence of information on the complaint and/or outcome. Hall's case reports do in every case provide all the three components, though the length varies considerably. The two shortest reports are only three and four lines long (John Emes, Case 13; Michael Drayton, Case 22) while the longest two run to over one hundred lines (Elizabeth Hall, Case 36; Mrs Fiennes, Case 167).

The third of Kassell's words considered here is documentation: that is, that casebooks should contain information about the patients. Churchill's quantitative analysis is useful here in giving a guide as to what information one might or might not expect to find in them.

Sex is the most commonly identified personal characteristic in casebooks, and in Hall's manuscript is identifiable for all patients. This is in some measure due to Hall's use of Latin, which

means that gender can be identified from verb and pronoun endings in the absence of other information. Age was less frequently recorded. Hall recorded the ages of 57 of 184 patients (31 per cent), which Lane raised to 120 (65 per cent) by calculating it from combinations of other information. The percentages are similar for men and women.<sup>61</sup> Hall's ages are often approximate, but follow the general pattern of being more accurately stated for children. As in casebooks generally, there are relatively small numbers of reports relating to children and elderly patients.

The benefits of Lane's painstaking investigation into patient identities is clear from the additional information on age which it has supplied, as noted above. Her detailed analysis of individual patients may seem to belong to an outdated methodology and interest, but the results demonstrate how much extra information could potentially be gained if her studies were applied to other casebooks.

Churchill showed that most casebooks, including Hall's, had a small majority of female over male patients. This has been commented on elsewhere, but never put in a context of other time periods.<sup>62</sup> Evidence from the NHS in the twentieth century shows a consistent and unexplained excess of female over male patient consultations. The male/female ratios seen in early modern casebooks may owe as much to long-term trends in gendered

---

<sup>61</sup> Lane, John Hall, pp. xviii-xx.

<sup>62</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xviii.

differences of attitude to health care as to selection by the writers of casebooks.<sup>63</sup>

I agree with Churchill in not treating marital status as an important variable, mainly because of the absence of useful comparators. Socio-economic status is a more important variable. Churchill states that 'socio-economic status in early modern medical documents is frequently imprecise'.<sup>64</sup> While this is sometimes true, the converse may be more of a problem. Hall had a much wider range of social indicators to draw on than we do now, and the problem is in part due to our lack of equivalents for the more minutely divided social scale of the seventeenth century. Hall's manuscript is similar to others in having a small number of clearly specified high-ranking patients (led by the Earl and Countess of Northampton) and an equally small number of the low-ranking, for instance the anonymous serving maid at the Bear Inn (Case 6) and the poor man, Hudson (Case 91). In between the extremes is a significant division which is concealed by Churchill's creation of two broad bands. This relates to the distinction between patients entitled *Generosus/-a* and *Magister/-ra*. Both might now be translated as Mr and Mrs (as Cooke did in *Select Observations*) but this is to blur a social distinction still important in the early seventeenth century.

---

<sup>63</sup> Ian Banks, 'No Man's Land: Men, Illness and the NHS', *BMJ*, 323 (2001) 1058-1060; Lesley Doyal, Sarah Payne and Ailsa Cameron, *Promoting Gender Equality in Health* (London: Equal Opportunities Commission, 2003); Yingying Wang *et al.*, 'Do Men Consult less than Women? An Analysis of Routinely Collected UK General Practice Data', 2013, <http://bmjopen.bmj.com, 10.1136/bmjopen-2013-003320>.

<sup>64</sup> Churchill, *Female Patients*, p. 29.

Ninety-one patients, almost half of Hall's total, were given one of these titles (fifty-eight *Generosus/-a*, thirty-three *Magister/-ra*). In forty-three the titles are associated with a place name, and it is this which points up the distinction.<sup>65</sup> Thirty out of thirty-four combinations of *Generosus/-a* and a place name refer to patients in small towns, villages or estates outside Stratford-upon-Avon, while seven out of nine associations of *Magister/-ra* or relate to inhabitants of Stratford-upon-Avon. Hall used *Generosus/-a* primarily when he was referring to the county gentry – those entitled to bear arms but more importantly able to 'live idly off the rents of their landed estates'.<sup>66</sup> Hall's association of the gentry titles with the place names of their estates (and Lane's careful work on identifying them) makes it clear that this definition still held good at his time. A gentlewoman or gentleman was associated with land and identified by that association.

Stratford-upon-Avon citizens entitled *Magister/-ra* were part of a different important social bloc - the 'eminent persons' or 'chief inhabitants' of parishes, wealthier than the general run of inhabitants, often the holders of local offices in the church and civil authorities.<sup>67</sup> Their status was measured against the local population only, rather than any wider group, as was the case with the gentry. This local status is born out by what is known of Hall's patients or their relatives. Three of them were clergymen – Mr

---

<sup>65</sup> The next commonest titles Hall used were *Eques* for men (knights and knight baronets) and *Domina* (Lady) for their wives (five and eighteen in number, respectively).

<sup>66</sup> Peter Earle. *The Making of the English Middle Class* (London: Methuen, 1989) pp. 5-6.

<sup>67</sup> H.R. French, 'Social status, Localism and the "Middle Sort of People" in England 1620-1750', *Past and Present*, 166 (2000) 66-99 (pp. 82-87).

Rogers (Case 72, Vicar of Holy Trinity Church 1606-1619), Mr Wilson (Case 4, Vicar 1619-1638) and John Trapp (Case 177, Curate and Schoolmaster). Three women (Mrs Smith, Case 3; Mrs Chandler, Cases 8 and 24; Mrs Baker (Case 127) were the wives of Aldermen to whom can be added Alderman Tyler (Case 140) and Alderman Smith, father of an unnamed daughter (Case 158). Some Stratford-upon-Avon citizens also had gentry status. Mrs Combe (Case 140) of the influential Combe family, Anne Greene (Case 65) daughter of the Town Steward and Hall's own wife Susanna were all recorded as gentlewomen. This social distinction is an important one and subsuming it into more general categories risks losing information on the social mix of patients across towns and counties.

Race does not appear in Hall at all, but religion, though of little importance in most of Churchill's sources, was certainly so to Hall. His references to six patients (including one priest) as Roman Catholic were used to boost his reputation in the introduction to the first edition of *Select Observations*.<sup>68</sup> Less remarked on is how Hall characterised patients who shared his Puritan approach to life. The link between piety and 'Godliness' in the self-identification of Puritans is strong.<sup>69</sup> Hall described twelve of his female patients as pious and devout (*pia, religiosa*).<sup>70</sup> Five of them, according to Lane,

---

<sup>68</sup> John Bird, 'To the Judicious Reader', in *Select Observations*, 1st edn, Sig. A5v: 'I take this to be a great signe of his ability, that [...] such as hated him for his religion, often made use of him'

<sup>69</sup> Peter Marshall, *Reformation England 1480-1642* (London: Bloomsbury Academic, 2012) pp. 135, 147-148; Andrew Chambers, 'Reading, the Godly, and Self-writing in England, circa 1580-1720', *The Journal of British Studies*, 46 (2007) 797-798.

<sup>70</sup> Countess of Northampton, Case 1; Mrs Smith, Case 3; Mrs Harvey, gentlewoman, Case 60; Lady Beaufou, Case 73; Lady Rous, Case 75; Lady Jenkinson, Case 120; Anne Ward, Case 146; Mrs Fiennes, gentlewoman, Case 147; Mrs Jackson, gentlewoman (minister's wife), Case 149; Mrs Vernon,



showed personal or family leanings towards Puritanism but gives no information on the others.<sup>71</sup> This suggests that for Hall, *pia* and *religiosa* were characteristics of Puritan women of high social class and ministers' wives, though he gave few examples of behaviour to justify the descriptions. Lady Rainsford (Case 163) was 'well-deserving of everyone' and 'most devoted to reading the Holy Scriptures'. She, the Countess of Northampton and Mrs Harvey were all 'modest'. Puritan men were described rather differently. The Stratford-upon-Avon curate John Trapp (Case 177) was noted for 'manifest piety and learning', while another cleric, Thomas Fawcett (Case 145) was 'distinguished for his learning'. Evidently religion was expressed in very different ways in men and women.

#### **2.4.2 Chronologies and Series**

In this section I shall be using the words *chronologies* and *series* in a somewhat technical sense from my years as an epidemiologist. They, and my use of them in what follows, need an explanation. The Oxford Dictionary of English defines a series as 'a number of events ... of a similar or related kind coming one after another', and *chronology* as 'the arrangement of events or dates in the order of their occurrence'. This makes clear that a *chronology* is a special sort of *series*, based in events coming one after another in date order. Other sorts of *series* may be based on other orders – for

---

gentlewoman, (minister's wife), Case 154) Lady Rainsford, Case 163; Mrs Wilson, gentlewoman (probably a minister's wife), Case 171;

<sup>71</sup> Lane, *John Hall*: p. 119 (Lady Harvey); p. 145 (Lady Rous); p. 277 (Ann Ward); p. 281 (Frances Fiennes, Gentlewoman); p. 335 (Anne Wilson, Gentlewoman).

example the head to foot order of entries in a *practica* textbook is organised in an anatomical series.<sup>72</sup>

In casebooks, there are both chronologies and non-chronological series to consider. Underlying the casebook itself will be the order in which patient consultations originally occurred. This is a chronology but it is one to which we often do not have direct access. In a primary casebook, that is, one recorded at or very close to the date of consultation itself, the casebook order will reflect the consultation chronology very closely. Even so, there is not necessarily an exact match. In a lengthy illness there may be several consultations with second and subsequent consultation notes either appended to the first consultation or as a separate entry.<sup>73</sup> Conversely in secondary casebooks, meaning those based on a primary casebook but composed some time later (as is the case with Hall's) there need be no direct match between the order of the dates of consultations and the order of their casebook records. Other factors such as geography, patient details or types of illness may have been used instead of consultation chronology to organise the manuscript.

In my analysis of Hall's manuscript which follows I use 'series' to refer to the order in which the case reports it contains were recorded by Hall. It seems more likely that he had some idea of how he wished to proceed (or different ideas at different stages of the composition) than that he picked cases entirely at random. We

---

<sup>72</sup> A not too technical introduction to the analysis of series is: Paul Keller, *Statistical Process Control Demystified* (New York, McGraw Hill, 2011).

<sup>73</sup> Dewhurst, *Willis's Oxford Casebook*: Robert Wyld was seen by Willis on 10 Jan. 1650 and again on 10 Sep. 1650 for a continuation of his illness, but given a separate record: pp. 67-79.

have only the internal evidence of the casebook itself as a guide and can make no initial assumptions as to what those ideas were. Underlying that series are two chronologies which need to be carefully distinguished.

The first chronology refers to the underlying order of the consultation dates. Once again the only available evidence is in Hall's manuscript itself. In some cases Hall recorded an exact or approximate date of the consultation or series of consultations. For others, a date of consultation, at least to the nearest year, may be calculable from patient information. This is the approach Joan Lane adopted. Once she had identified a patient from information Hall provided (such as name, age and sex, place of residence or occupation) she was often able to find a date of birth or baptism for the patient. From this and the patient's age at consultation a year of consultation can be calculated. Alternatively, when Hall had recorded a date of consultation, Lane could calculate the patient's age by combining that with the date of birth or baptism.

The second chronology is that of the recording of case reports in Hall's manuscript. Dates of recording are even rarer than dates of consultation in casebooks (Symcotts's casebook is a rare exception to this). Nonetheless, combining the order reports were written in and their consultation dates (where known) does provide some information. The crucial fact here is that the report of a consultation in a casebook must have occurred after the date of the consultation on which it was based. If a hypothetical consultation was for example dated to 1620, the actual recording of it in a casebook must have been in 1620 or later. It cannot have been

written into the casebook the previous year. Further, the date of one consultation has implications for the recording of all subsequent records. If the hypothetical consultation was recorded in 1620 or later, that applies too to all subsequent case reports regardless of when the consultation took place. This chronology of course can only be applied if there is evidence, as there is for Hall's manuscript, that it was composed without gaps from beginning to end. If there is evidence for gaps having been left in a casebook and subsequently filled in, this reasoning cannot be applied without further investigation.

Having set out the reasoning behind the analysis of chronologies and series, it can now be applied to the information in Hall's manuscript.

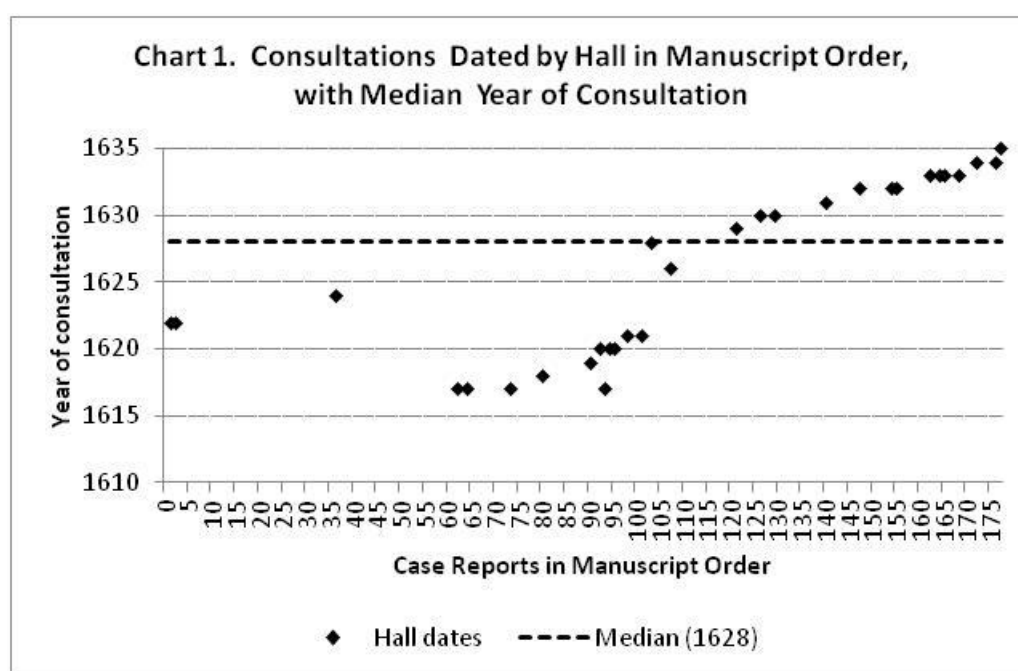
The earliest chronological consultation in Hall's manuscript is that of Elizabeth Boughton (Case 69 ) dated by Lane to 1611.<sup>74</sup> This is just four years after Hall is first known to have been in Stratford-upon-Avon. The latest is John Trapp (Case 177) dated by Hall to 11 March 1635, six months before his death, and demonstrating that he was still working then. The manuscript therefore contains reports of consultations spanning nearly his whole working life. The first report (Case 1) in Hall's manuscript (therefore the first in the manuscript series) is a consultation with the Countess of Northampton. He gave the date of the consultation as 6 March 1622. All the other reports must have been written after that date, even if the consultation (as with Elizabeth Boughton) was earlier. A tighter fix on the chronology of the manuscript's

---

<sup>74</sup> Lane, *John Hall*, p. 131.

composition is given by Ann Smith's consultation (Case 3) which by Lane's calculation is dated to 1634.<sup>75</sup> All subsequent reports from Case 4 onwards must have written in 1634 or 1635, whatever the dates of the consultations. This gives a very tight time scale for Hall's final composition of the manuscript.

It is possible to analyse the chronologies of the consultations and composition of the casebook in more detail, by looking at the dates and order of reports. Chart 1 shows the relationship between the series of reports in Hall's manuscript and of all the consultations for which he gave dates. The dotted line across the chart shows the median year of dated consultations – that is, the year which falls in the middle of all the dates.

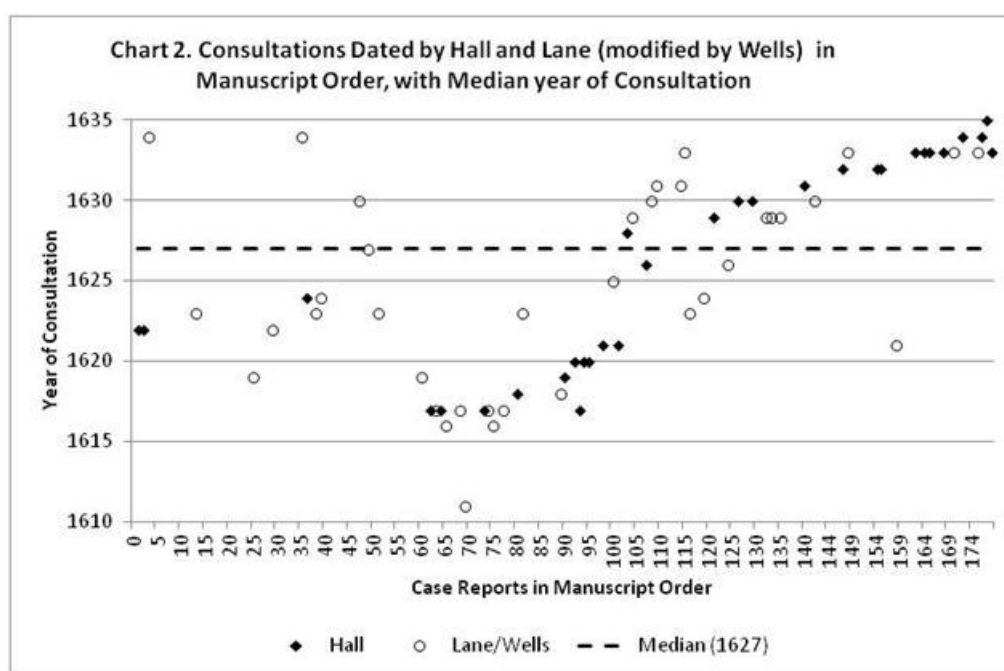


At first sight there appears to be a fairly simple relationship. All the dated consultations up to Case 107 fall on or below the median, while all those after it are above. This suggests that Hall started by writing up his earlier cases before moving on to later ones. However

<sup>75</sup> Ibid., p. 9.

there are only three dated consultations in the first sixty reports and they are all earlier than the next eleven. This leaves considerable gaps in any postulated chronology.

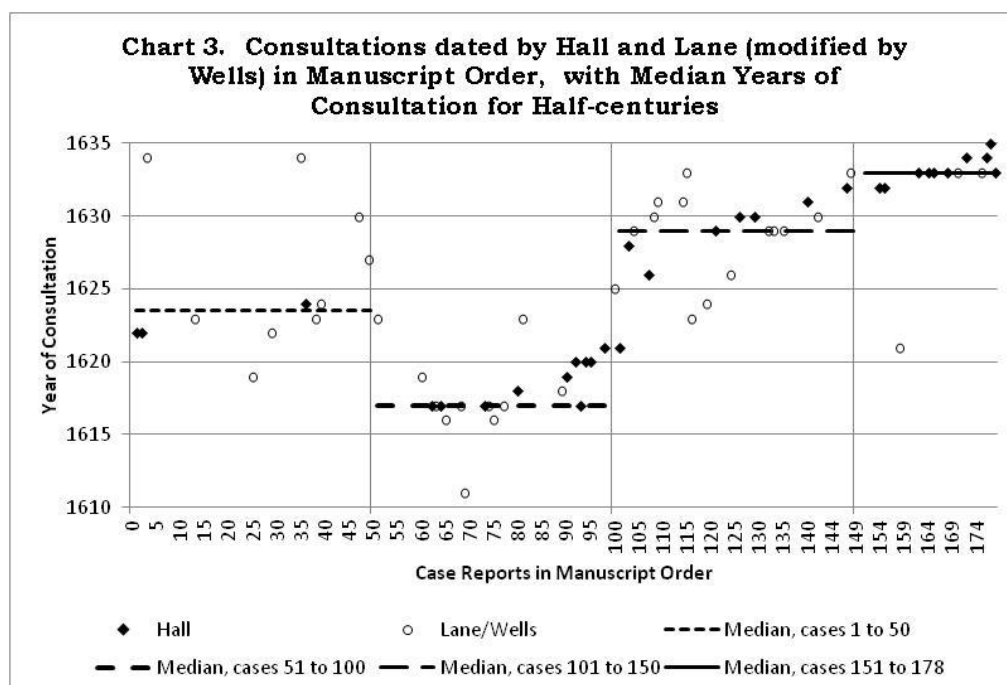
Fortunately the additional information from the consultations for which Lane calculated dates is available and these are added in Chart 2. I have used only years which could be calculated exactly, not those which are only approximate. The additional consultation years have a wider scatter, but broadly confirm the pattern in Chart 1, while filling in some of its gaps. The chart shows a wide scatter initially, with most consultations dated after 1620. This is followed by a period in which all the dates precede 1625. Then there is a rising trend towards the end of the series.



The run of dates all falling before 1625 comes between cases 50 and 100. Centuries of one hundred cases were a common way in which authors organised their texts. Ruland the Elder, an author particularly important to Hall as Chapter 1 showed, divided all his

case reports into ten centuries. The half century point around Case 50 may also have been meaningful to Hall. He changed his style of case headings from patient to illness centred at case 47. Using these pointers, I have subdivided the information in Chart 2 into half-centuries (the final one being incomplete).

This is shown in Chart 3 and brings out a clearer pattern. The first half-century contains a wide span of consultations from 1619 to 1634 around a median of 1624, with no clear concentration of dates. This suggests that the date of consultation was not important to Hall at this stage of writing. The second half-century has a similar time span, but all the consultations in it are dated before 1625. Most are concentrated between 1615 and 1620, and the median is 1617. This looks as if Hall chose to concentrate on a particular set of dated records at this point in his composition.



In the third half-century all the dates are after 1620, the time span narrower and the median, 1629, is later. The final incomplete half-century has the narrowest range: all the cases except one are dated

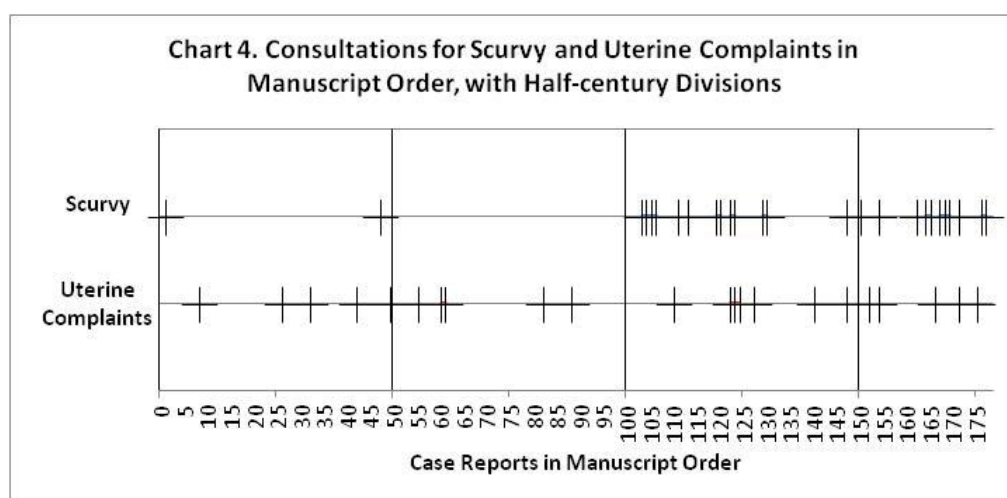
between 1632 and 1635 with a median of 1633. This coincides with the period when Hall was actively writing his manuscript and suggests that he was concentrating on recent consultations and recording them almost as they occurred.

This sub-division of cases also relates to changes in Hall's style of composition. The reports in the first half century occupy on average one page per case. In the second half-century the average drops to two-thirds of a page, before rising in the last two half-centuries to about one and quarter pages per report. This probably reflects Hall's dependence on old consultation notes for the period before 1625, compared to those he was making in parallel with composing the manuscript. The reports in the final half-century come close to being a series of primary reports, though with Hall's added social comments.

This chronology provides a framework for considering other series, by which I mean consecutive runs of reports with some common thread other than timing, such as geography or illness. As in most casebooks, there is little evidence for this model of organisation. The most obvious series, or rather two overlapping series, occurs right at the beginning. The first two consultations were with the Countess and Earl of Northampton, both placed in Ludlow. The Countess had an eye problem and three similar illnesses were recorded soon after (Cases 3, 4 and 7). The last of these was for another patient in Ludlow. The report on Case 3 is dated to 1634, so it would have been fresh in Hall's mind as he wrote and perhaps reminded him of similar problems. If so, he did not persevere with this approach to organisation.



The lack of identifiable series does not mean that there is no structure to Hall's manuscript. An alternative way of looking at the arrangement of case reports is to consider irregularities in the way they are organised. An example of these is the distribution of Hall's reports referring to scurvy, which are markedly skewed (Chart 4). There are two short concentrated series: Cases 103 to 106 all refer to scurvy, as do seven out of nine from Cases 162 to 171. More important is the larger scale imbalance, with twenty-four out of twenty-six reports being found in the last two half-centuries. For comparison, the chart also shows the distribution of cases of uterine complaints (red and white fluxes and the mother), which are much more evenly spread.



Even though only a few of the reports of scurvy have consultation dates, the distribution gives a guide to their timing. There are no reports mentioning scurvy in the second half-century, which probably contained consultations all dated before 1625. Reports mentioning scurvy in the third half-century are most likely datable to 1625 or later. Those in the fourth are probably datable to 1630 or later. The two reports of scurvy in the first half-century

are dated to 1622 (Case 1, Countess of Northampton) and 1634 (Case 47, Mrs Wagstaffe). Hall's treatment of the Countess contains no mention of the specialist literature he referred to frequently in subsequent reports. The pattern strongly suggests that Hall's interest in scurvy started somewhere between 1620 and 1625 (perhaps initiated by the illness of the Countess described in the first case report) and reached a peak after 1630.

Discussions of casebooks tends to treat them as unitary records with little variation over time. Hall's reports of scurvy provide evidence that a casebook can vary internally and that the variation can be identified. This must reflect the changing interests of the author, either during the consultations, or the process of composition or both. It suggests that comparisons within a single casebook may be as informative as comparisons between different ones.

### **2.4.3 Models for Casebooks**

Kassell put forward three different models (or analogues) for casebooks: diaries, registers and testimonials.<sup>76</sup> Hall's model though is Ruland's the Elder's *Curationum*, part of the Latin learned, not the popular vernacular literature. This is a far cry from Kassell's suggestion that testimonial models were drawn from 'folk healers' and 'Italian cure testimonials'.<sup>77</sup> So far the argument for Ruland as Hall's model has rested primarily on the similarity between the texts' titles, but it goes deeper.

---

<sup>76</sup> Kassell, 'Casebooks', p. 607.

<sup>77</sup> Ibid., p. 609.

Figures 3 and 4 in Chapter 1 showed that four texts based on real patient-practitioner interactions were among those Hall used most frequently. Besides Ruland the Elder, he turned most often to works by Valleriola, Platter and Horst, all with titles identifying them as *Observationes*. Comparing them helps to bring out why Ruland appealed most to Hall as a model.

Ruland organised his reports into ten centuries of one hundred cases each. Apart from the division into centuries, there is no other apparent structure in terms of chronology or series of illnesses. The large number was partly possible because each report is relatively short, usually under a page long and rarely reaching two pages. This is related to Ruland's almost complete avoidance of theory or reference to other authorities – an expression of his emphasis on empiricism.

Each report starts with a short heading, usually a two to four words summary of the illness. The first paragraph gives details of the patient, usually name, age, occupation and often relationships if the patient were a woman, a child or a servant. There is very little about the patient-practitioner interactions and descriptions of patients are usually brief. Ruland then turned directly to therapies. Each is listed under one word sub-headings – potus, gargarismus or purgatio for example. There are rarely more than three or four such remedies in each case report and suggestions that the initial therapies were unsuccessful and needed repeating or changing are uncommon. The same arrangement of one-word subheadings for therapies occurs often but not consistently in Hall. Hall differs in giving more extensive medical histories with repeated or different

therapies if the illness changed or the patient did not respond. The concluding paragraphs in Hall and Ruland show close similarities. Both Ruland and Hall (often borrowing from Ruland) frequently finished with a statement that the patient was freed of illness or cured, associated with thanks to God as the ultimate source of healing.

The *Observationes* used by Hall are all structured differently. Valleriola's come in six books of ten reports each, not grouped by illnesses. Platter's text is divided into three books matching his three-volume series, *Praxeos*, and subdivided further into related illnesses like a *practica*. Horst split his book both by clinical condition and anatomically, into fevers and illnesses of the head, chest and abdomen. The reports in all three are considerably longer than in Ruland, due primarily to the amount of theory included in the text. Valleriola's reports are the longest. They are the only ones which have marginal references to authorities – biblical and classical as well as medical. Horst often but unsystematically added marginal subheadings to structure the theory elements of his reports, referring to signa, causa, prognosis and similar. Platter tended to discuss points of theory in his text, but without giving any references to support his arguments. What Hall has taken from the *Observationes* model is a longer narrative than is found in Ruland.

Hall was not writing from a university background and from the evidence of his library theory had little interest for him unless it directly related to an illness. Writing a text like Platter's or Horst's would have involved a large amount of extra work in a field which patently did not particularly interest him. Hall followed Ruland

most closely by merging his own empirical experience with the learned medical scholarship he found in books.

#### **2.4.4 Processes and Production**

The process of production of a casebook is, for Kassell, ‘as important to the history of medicine as the final product’.<sup>78</sup> Here I shall try to reconstruct the process that led from Hall’s putative primary records to his manuscript in its fair copy as we have it. This is some considerable distance away from a primary casebook in content and style, pointing to a process which probably took several stages. None of the earlier phases of Hall’s writing have survived, so they can only be recreated from comparisons with other manuscripts.

I have looked at four casebooks written at or very soon after the consultations they recorded. They were written by Thomas Willis, Stephen Bradwell, John Pratt and the author of an anonymous ‘medical practice book’.<sup>79</sup> All show consultations in chronological order and contain only information related to consultations: patient identities, illness and therapies, occasionally outcomes. None contain any additional material suggesting another purpose. In three cases the original manuscripts were consulted, the fourth being Dewhurst’s translation of Willis’s casebook.

The layout of reports varies. Willis left at least a full page blank after the end of each first consultation, sometimes filling the space up with further material on the same patient but added at a

---

<sup>78</sup> Kassell, ‘Casebooks’, p. 624.

<sup>79</sup> Dewhurst, *Willis’s Oxford Casebook*; BL, Sloane MS 275, ‘Stephen Bradwell, *Diarium Practicum*’; BL, Sloane MS 461, ‘Medical Practice Book 1610-1626’; BL, Sloane MS 80, ‘John Pratt MD, register’.

later date. The other three have fewer gaps between reports though Stephen Bradwell left more spaces between his reports than the other two.

In all four, individual reports start with clear statements of patient identities. There is usually a title and name, sometimes a relationship in the case of child or servant, occasionally an indication of an address. Sex was not recorded as such and age was rarely mentioned. An initial summary of the illness was sometimes combined with the name in the heading or stated separately. The casebooks vary considerably in the detail of illness recorded. Bradwell's are the most concise and Willis's the longest, mainly because he often went into a lengthy consideration of the theory behind his diagnosis, a feature not seen in the other manuscripts. There is little difference in the presentation of remedies, but Willis more than the others often presents an extended narrative of treatment, response, relapse and further treatment.

All four casebooks share a common feature in relation to their conclusions: an almost complete absence of reference to outcomes. The most common pattern is for a report to end abruptly after a remedy. Willis recorded outcomes more often than the others but still for a minority, about forty-five per cent of all reports. Some of these ended in deaths, so that only about one third finish with a positive statement of cure or recovery.

Given the detail which Hall put in his reports, sometimes decades after the consultation, I suggest that his primary records were most likely to be similar to Willis's though without the latter's

lengthy theoretical sections. They would have recorded the outlines of a consultation, including patient identity, statement of illness and therapies. Like Willis, Hall probably recorded details of the course of illnesses and changes in therapy. The presence of two sentences in English in Hall's manuscript (Cases 106 and 140) point to his notes of conversations with patients having been written in English. Prescriptions would mostly have been in Latin, whether taken from a learned source or his own. He may have recorded more of his conversations with patients than other practitioners and perhaps noted outcomes relatively often.

Such records would not look very different from those in Hall's manuscript if the latter were stripped of his patient descriptions and conversations, occasional elements of theory and relatively lengthy conclusions often giving thanks to God. All these are elements heavily dependent on borrowings in his manuscript, pointing to their being later additions.

There is a wide gap between such pared down primary records and what is recorded in Hall's manuscript. There was most probably an intermediate stage, a rough copy or copies in which Hall translated his English into Latin and started to embellish the original reports with borrowings describing the patients and recording the outcomes. The pool of consultations from which they were selected may have been smaller than Cooke's reference to 'not less than a thousand' suggests.<sup>80</sup> If my estimate of Willis's figures for recorded successful outcomes (around one third) are taken as a guide then around 300 of Hall's consultations may have been

---

<sup>80</sup> Cooke, 'To the Friendly Reader', in Hall, *Select Observations*, 1st edn, sig. A4v.

recorded as successful. The figure may be slightly higher for Hall because his long practice in a single locality means that he would have become aware of more successes as a result of seeing his patients ‘in passing’ (as in Cases 77, 118, 144). Even so the numbers to choose from were probably quite limited if he wanted to concentrate on his successes. This second version would then have been Hall’s rough copy for the manuscript as we have it and may have been the other book he mentioned acquiring from Susanna Hall.<sup>81</sup>

If this hypothetical pattern of writing is correct, Hall must have started thinking about his manuscript some years earlier than its actual composition. I suggest the late 1620s as the most likely time for this. The earliest possible year is 1622, the consultation date for Case 1. Several of the reasons for writing the manuscript mentioned suggested by Nance or Kassell might have applied to him at this time. The mid-1620s was a period when civic and religious difficulties were starting to affect his life outside of medical practice. Planning a manuscript might have been a welcome distraction.<sup>82</sup> This was also the period when Hall was establishing himself (at least in his own eyes) as a specialist in scurvy. His manuscript shows that his relationships with other physicians were not always the best, while Cooke’s comments suggests that his interest in scurvy was not appreciated:

It seems the Author had the happinesse ... to lead the way to  
that practice almost generally used by the most knowing, of  
mixing Scorbuticks in most remedies: it was then, and I know

---

<sup>81</sup> Ibid. ,sig. A3v.

<sup>82</sup> Wells, ‘John Hall’, pp. 92-93.



for some time after thought so strange, that it was cast as a reproach upon him by those most famous in the profession.<sup>83</sup> Nance's suggestions that keeping 'a record of past treatment' and compiling 'a defence of controversial therapies' were reasons why a physician might choose to keep a casebook could apply here.<sup>84</sup> There are two surviving letters referring to Hall, that by Lady Tyrrell commending him to a friend and Sid Davenport's criticising him for his slowness to attend him at home. They show how important a physician's reputation could be in a competitive marketplace.<sup>85</sup> Whatever the reason, by 1634 he had enough material to start making his final choices and writing up his fair copy as we have it.

Hall's manuscript is an indication that the earliest version of a manuscript is not always the most informative. If all we had were his primary notes they would certainly be of interest, but would not provide the wealth of patient information that his final manuscript contains.

#### **2.4.5 Moving Into Print**

Kassell included several printed books within her casebook definition, making a distinction between those printed as textbooks during or soon after the author's life time, and those produced much later. By this she meant editions such as those by historians such as those of Symcotts by Poynter and Bishop, of Willis by

---

<sup>83</sup> Cooke, 'To the Reader' in Hall, *Select Observations*, 1st edn, Sig.A4r.

<sup>84</sup> Nance, *Turquet de Mayerne*, p. 53.

<sup>85</sup> Folger Shakespeare Library, Washington D.C, MS X.d 164 (3), Lady Tyrrell's letter to Lady Temple, quoted in Joseph, *Shakespeare's Son-in-law*, p. xi; Shakespeare Birthplace Trust Record Office, ER1/1/94, Sid Davenport's letter to John Hall, quoted in Joan Lane, *John Hall*, pp. xxvi-xxvii.

Dewhurst.<sup>86</sup> This fails to bring out a narrower but still important distinction exemplified by Hall, between textbooks printed during an author's lifetime and those produced soon after his death. Indeed, a superficial reading of Kassell's reference to Hall can easily give the impression that he was personally responsible for publishing *Select Observations*.<sup>87</sup>

The first edition of *Select Observations* was published in 1657, twenty-two years after Hall's death. Though the evidence of the style and content of Hall's manuscript points to intending it for publication, he had no hand in the final editing or publishing process. There were significant changes in medical thinking between Hall's death in 1635, the first edition of *Select Observations* in 1657 and the second in 1679. This period in England saw the rise of Helmontianism, increasing acceptance of chymical practice, and the foundation of the Royal Society in 1660, and change in attitudes to learning from experience.<sup>88</sup> Some changes related to this passage of time are visible in *Select Observations*, such as Cooke's removal of references to by-then outdated sixteenth-century texts and his change of the report headings and the title from Cures to the by then more fashionable Observations. Cooke also went to great lengths in his introduction to present an image of Hall's practice as driven by empirical observation and not book-learning – an image which bears little relation to reality.

*Select Observations* is as much or more a text of its publication dates (1657 and 1679) as of its composition. The issue

---

<sup>86</sup> Kassell, 'Casebooks', pp. 620, 622, 614, 619.

<sup>87</sup> Ibid., p. 620; similarly Newton, *The Sick Child*, p. 15.

<sup>88</sup> Wear, *Knowledge and Practice*, pp. 353-398.

is not that texts such as *Select Observations* should not be treated as casebooks, but about their interpretation. It is necessary to be clear as to which elements in it relate to the date of composition and which to the dates of editing and publication.

If then, printed texts are to be accounted casebooks, priority should be given to those published in their author's lifetime and with their overt involvement. In this respect I draw attention to a series of reports which were published by their author and meet Kassell's criteria for a casebook, but have received very little attention. The second edition of *Select Observations* includes, as well as Hall's reports, 'an hundred like Counsels and Advices, for several Honourable Persons' collected by James Cooke.<sup>89</sup> These relate mostly to treatment of members of the Earl of Warwick's family and staff by several different physicians, including Thomas Willis. Cooke recorded in his preface that he was commanded 'to receive all prescriptions, so to see them made up in several places where I have attended, both to see them taken, and to observe their success', so that he was involved in all the consultations he recorded.<sup>90</sup> They should be included in any compilation of casebooks from the late seventeenth century, and deserve study in their own right.

---

<sup>89</sup> Cooke, *Select Observations*, 2nd Edn, Title page.

<sup>90</sup> Cooke, 'The Preface to the Reader', *Select Observations*, 2nd edn, Sig. A5r-A5v.

## CONCLUSION

In the introduction to my thesis I said that it was about one man and one document, and I emphasise that statement again here. The most important part of this thesis is the critical edition of Hall's manuscript. It offers significant improvements in completeness and accuracy over Cooke's *Select Observations*.

The key message it brings out is the necessity of checking with original Latin documents rather than working only with translations. When working with early modern casebooks written wholly or partly in Latin, an ability to read basic Latin is essential, not an optional extra. When quoting from documents, the distinction between the author's original words and a translator's should always be made clear.

The process of producing the critical edition has thrown up other findings. The most significant of these is Hall's use of borrowings from Latin printed texts, a hitherto unknown expedient in the writing of casebooks. This in turn facilitated other avenues of investigation, leading to the identification of the books in Hall's working library. In keeping with my focus on Hall and his manuscript, I have placed many of my conclusions in an outline of Hall's life and what the new reading of his manuscript has revealed about it. I finish by considering matters arising from the two specific topics addressed in Chapters 1 and 2: Hall's working library, and what his manuscript contributes to ideas about casebooks.

John Hall started his medical education and training in Cambridge in 1589. He would have been taught using traditional Latin texts, which he might have owned or borrowed, perhaps from the newly established library of Lorkyn's bequest. Some of the older books in his library might have come from his father at this time. His frequent use of late sixteenth-century texts in later practice, including Valleriola's *Observationum* and Ruland the Elder's *Curationum*, suggests that these were early favourites which he learned to rely on. Most of his texts were in the Hippocratic and Galenic line. While some show a leaning towards chymiatric practice, nothing suggests he was a committed Paracelsian. There is nothing to suggest he shared his father's interest in astrology as part of medical practice. If he owned English medical texts, there is no evidence to show that they were important in his practice. Hall probably travelled abroad at least briefly after graduating, going by the evidence of Cooke's comment in *Select Observations* on his knowledge of French and his ownership of at least one French text, Liébaut's *Thresor des Remedes Secrets*.

Once settled and married in Stratford-upon-Avon in 1607, Hall built up a wide-ranging practice particularly among the country gentry and leading town citizens. He also treated poorer citizens of Stratford-upon-Avon on occasion, as well as developing links with some leading noble families, particularly the Earls of Northampton and the Talbot family in Shrewsbury. His treatments were mainly based on well-established remedies to be found in pharmacopoeas, but on occasion also taken from his other medical books. He used specialist texts to find therapies for specific

purposes, such as for the treatment of children. These came either from single-topic books such as Vittori's *De aegritudinibus infantium*, or from specific remedies within more general texts.

Hall would have kept records of his consultations, probably similar in content and style to other surviving primary casebooks such as Willis's. They were most likely written in a mixture of English for recording the consultation conversations and Latin for the remedies. They did not contain the personal descriptions of patients that he added later. These records were available to him later when he started to write his manuscript.

Hall continued to purchase and use newly published books throughout his life, but preferred to rely on a small number of familiar authors for most of his treatments. These included some from the sixteenth century such as Valleriola, Ruland the Elder, Crato and Bruele, alongside more contemporary authors such as Platter and, for scurvy, Gregor Horst, Eugalenus and Sennert. He was interested enough in the new chymical ideas to keep purchasing books about them, but was cautious about applying them in practice.

London was the centre of the English book trade, particularly for imported Latin books (the 'Latin Trade') but Oxford offers an alternative possibility for his purchases. There were well-established bookshops there. The link through the Bodleian Library to the European book fairs would have been more informative for Hall than any alternative in London at the time.

Some time in the 1620s, perhaps as a result of successfully treating the Countess of Northampton in 1622, Hall developed an

interest in the diagnosis and treatment of scurvy. He bought specialist books on the subject and in his own mind at least developed a knowledge of this disease greater than that of other physicians in nearby towns. He felt the need to emphasise his successes in relation to other physicians, particularly in relation to scurvy. While happy to be called on for a second opinion when others were not producing a successful cure, he found the experience of being on the other side of a second opinion threatening.

Hall's relationships with non-physician practitioners in and around Stratford-upon-Avon were on the whole friendly. He accepted that surgeons, nurses and midwives would often be the first to provide treatment, and that patients would turn to him only if their illness was not cured. In the same way he accepted self-treatment by patients as the norm. He provided copies of remedies to patients on request, including remedies taken from his Latin texts. My findings show there was a direct link between the learned medical world and that of the wider medical market place in which lay people exchanged recipes.

At some time in the middle to late 1620s Hall conceived the idea of producing a book of his own cures. The reasons for this are unclear, more likely to be a combination of factors than a single stimulus. He was at this time increasingly caught up in the troubles between the Town Council and the Parish Church in Stratford-upon-Avon. A retreat to medical matters may have provided a comfort. His new-found interest in scurvy might have been something he felt worth recording, especially as a way of

establishing his reputation compared to other physicians nearby. Publications by nearby physicians, John Cotta and James Hart in Northampton, would have showed him that being a provincial physician was no bar to becoming an author.

Hall's primary sources for his composition would have been his original casebooks. The tidiness and minimal corrections in his manuscript imply that there was an intermediate rough stage in which he chose his material and started arranging it. At this stage he must have decided that he would write in Latin rather than English. This is perhaps another sign of his need to establish his learned credentials. The use of Latin led him to supplement his own Latin knowledge by borrowing texts from books in his library.

The secondary casebooks translated into Latin were the raw material for his final manuscript which he started in 1634, or 1633 at the earliest. He must have decided by this time that he intended to concentrate on successful treatments following the model of *curationes* rather than *observationes*. His long practice in a single town, and consequent knowledge of the population he served, would have helped him identify successes, and enabled him to add information on the long-term follow-up of patients. At this stage if not earlier he chose a title which echoed Ruland's *Curationum*. Changes to his manuscript are rare, but show that there was still a process of correction in his final fair copy. The first forty-seven reports all have headings giving patients' names and were chosen from all periods of his practice with no particular chronology. Thereafter he switched to using the illness as a heading, with patient details at the start of the main text. He also worked more



chronologically, starting with earlier (pre-1625) consultations and moving forwards to the 1630s. By 1634/35 the consultations and their transfer into the manuscript must have been almost simultaneous, as evidenced by the greater length and detail of the final reports.

Throughout the manuscript Hall presents himself as an empathetic practitioner, recording his patients' joys and sorrows sympathetically. He took particular pleasure in the successful outcome of pregnancies for both mother and child after his treatments. At the same time he made it clear to his patients, when necessary, that treatments might be long and difficult, and that he relied on their cooperation to achieve a successful result. Hall's recording of his interactions with patients is a unique feature of his manuscript. This does not necessarily indicate uniqueness in practice. Given that he was in many ways a typical physician of his time (apart from the interest in scurvy and the decision to draft a book) it is probable that these aspects of his practice were shared by other practitioners and may be found in other manuscripts.

The opportunity to recreate Hall's working library was an unexpected bonus of this critical edition. Forty-three authors and sixty titles can be found in Hall's text compared to the six authorities identifiable in *Select Observations*. About half of the new sources are in references which Cooke removed from *Select Observations*, but the other half could only be identified by matching Hall's texts to originals available on the internet. This technique, though time-consuming, offers a new perspective on the

composition of early modern medical manuscripts and a new way of investigating them.

Few medical libraries from the early seventeenth century have been identified, so Hall's is an important addition. While not large by comparison with other libraries, Hall's was respectable, especially given that our knowledge of it is incomplete. The combination of the library with the evidence of Hall's use of his books demonstrates that he had little interest in theory in isolation from practice. Hall used his library to guide him in diagnosis and to provide remedies, either applied exactly as written or modified to suit the patient and the illness. As with other libraries, Hall's contained books published over a lengthy timescale. Some of his books were used within a year or so of their purchase (Gregor Horst's *Observationum*) while others had been published some five decades before he was practising (Valleriola's *Observationum*). The *practicae* of John of Gaddesden and Bernard de Gordon were medieval texts recently republished, while Beguin's *Tyrocinium chymicum* and Penot's *De denario medico* demonstrate strong new chymical and Paracelsian views. Hall managed to combine all of these in his practice within a predominantly Galenic and Hippocratic concept of illness.

The titles above all illustrate the important point that Hall relied almost exclusively on Latin texts in his practice. This is a significant finding which has not been much explored. Different strands in the history of medicine have concentrated either on the relationship between learned and lay medicine (using predominantly vernacular English texts as sources) or on the relationship between

Latin medical books and the theory and ideas they present. What Hall's manuscript demonstrates is that Latin textbooks were part of the daily working resource of a physician and must be taken into account in that context.

Hall's working library consisted almost entirely of practical books, with consilia and curationes making up about half of the total. Most of the rest were drawn from other categories of practical texts. He also owned a number of books on single topics, including illnesses (Ungaric fever, scurvy), patient groups (women, children) and diagnostic techniques (uroscopy). Judging by Hall's ownership and use of them, these were an important practical resource. Hall's working library was not static but changed its character over time, reflecting the changes in his career from student to established practitioner and his changing interests. On the other hand, a comparison between Hall's borrowings and his book ownership shows no tidy and direct relationship between them. Hall's library contained a considerable number of chymical texts, but they were not used for borrowings as frequently as were some of the older and more traditional volumes. His ownership reflects, but does not directly represent, his use of texts in his daily medical practice.

Chapter 2 looks at Hall's manuscript in the context of casebooks. Its *Select Observations* version has been called a casebook since the nineteenth century. It was of interest to medical writers for many years before coming to the attention of historians. Its use by medically qualified authors from the late nineteenth century, and by historians from the 1970s, illustrates changing attitudes to medical history for over a hundred years. In the late

nineteenth and early twentieth century it was still regarded by physicians as relevant to medical practice, though becoming outdated. By the mid-twentieth century Hall was becoming a figure to be admired by medical writers for being ahead of his time. More recent accounts in medical journals have been more balanced, presenting him as a figure within his own time.

*Select Observations* became of increasing interest to the new wave of social and cultural historians from the 1970s and 1980s onwards. Historians tend now to draw a clear distinction between the progress- and personality-centred histories of previous generations of medically qualified historians and the new broader social and cultural approaches. The evidence from the uses made of Hall's and other casebooks suggests a much less clear-cut change of attitudes at the time.

Since the 1980s there has been a trend towards the use of much larger numbers of casebooks in history studies, a response to the development of internet resources which have made finding and accessing casebooks less difficult than previously. This trend has led to a need for clearer ideas of what is or is not a casebook. Wendy Churchill and Lauren Kassell have addressed this point in different ways. The evidence from Hall's manuscript allows their arguments to be taken further.

Churchill's semi-quantitative analysis shows points on which Hall's manuscript is similar to the common pattern of the casebooks she examined, and others on which it differs. Sex is the most common patient variable identified, age being much less often recorded. My work on Hall's manuscript has benefited greatly from

the additional information gained by Joan Lane's work on identifying and dating Hall's patients, providing additional age information on over half the patients. She also greatly increased the number of patients for whom a date of consultation could be established.<sup>1</sup>

Social titles are important indicators of status. I part company with Churchill in preferring not to aggregate them, in particular keeping clear the distinction between those Hall called *generosus/-a* (the landed gentry) and *magister/-ra* (the leading town citizens). Religion concerned Hall more than other casebook compilers. As well as his well known identification of some patients as Roman Catholic, there are also pointers to the Puritan patients whose values he shared.

Kassell has proposed a definition of casebooks as 'a serial record of practice', while recognising a wide diversity in ways of doing this. Her models for keeping casebooks are appropriate to primary casebooks, drawing on diaries and account books. Hall's manuscript demonstrates that learned Latin texts could also be models.

Both Churchill and Kassell point to the internal structure of casebooks, particularly their chronologies. With the aid of the additional consultation dates provided by Lane, it has been possible to establish that Hall wrote most of his manuscript in 1634 and 1635. His method of composition changed at intervals, starting by drawing on consultations across a wide range of dates. He

---

<sup>1</sup> Lane, *John Hall*; Her approach belongs to a different methodology in the history of medicine, but my work with Hall's patients shows how beneficial her approach might be in gaining deeper understanding of casebooks generally.

subsequently switched to a more chronological method which began with earlier cases and worked forwards to those near his death in 1635. This pattern helps to provide information on changing patterns of his practice, as with the late development of his interest in scurvy.

Printed works such as *Select Observations* are included within Kassell's definition of casebooks. My comparisons between Hall's manuscript and Cooke's much altered edition has made me wary of posthumously printed works, even if published within a few decades of the death of the author. At the least one must take account of any significant time lag between the dates of original composition and publication, and related changes in medical thinking and practice when interpreting them. I point to James Cooke's own casebook, published in the second edition of *Select Observations*, as a source which deserves more attention than it has received. It meets Kassell's definition, and in addition was seen into print by Cooke himself.

I conclude by returning to the centrality of John Hall and his manuscript in this critical edition. I hope it will prove useful, but reiterate the need not to allow any translation to stand in the way of due attention to Hall's own words.

## **APPENDICES**

### **APPENDIX A: THE METHODOLOGY USED FOR IDENTIFYING JOHN HALL'S BORROWINGS**

The process of identifying the borrowings grew from some chance findings, and was a lengthy and complicated task. It started simply enough, with a few on-line searches to check the spellings of technical words but then became a process of checking Hall's manuscript from beginning to end. The most accessible if not the most reliable database for doing this was [books.google.co.uk](http://books.google.co.uk). Other significant supplementary sources were the digital collection of the Bayerische Staatsbibliothek ([digitale-sammlung.de](http://digitale-sammlung.de)) and of the Bibliothèque nationale de France ([bnf.fr](http://bnf.fr)). The Early European Books database ([eeb.chadwyck.co.uk](http://eeb.chadwyck.co.uk)) is too recent a development to have been much help, but must be an important resource in the future.

The first few searches on single words showed by chance that they were frequently embedded on longer passages which matched text in the *Libellus*, and that a systematic search would be necessary to identify as many borrowings as possible. Trial and error showed that searching for two- or three-word strings produced the most matches, though it was not adequate as a strategy on its own. In some cases Hall had changed the word order of his source, and these passages could only be identified by searching on groups of separate words. Growing familiarity with Hall's own Latin helped to identify certain phrases or expressions as probable borrowings

(gerunds and gerundives are uncommon in his own words, but quite frequent in borrowings for example).

Spelling variations and the limitations of Google's OCR (optical character recognition) software also created problems. Hall sometimes abbreviated words in a different way from his source, or expanded words which had been abbreviated and vice versa. Abbreviations were not standardised at the time, and varied between authors and editions. Sometimes the patients' sexes and ages in Hall's source differed from his own patient, so that so that grammatical endings changed. In addition, Google OCR struggled to cope with the poor quality of print in many of the sources, and with early modern printing conventions. Long esses are usually rendered as f, and ligatures are often unrecognised; 'v' and 'u' had their early modern values. The essential questions were first, how might the original text have been spelt compared to Hall's, and then, how might that text appear when digitised? Sometimes several trials of different combinations of spellings, abbreviations, and possible OCR readings were needed to produce a result.

Unfortunately one important section of text was almost entirely unsearchable: the recipes. These are almost always abbreviated in the originals, but in no standard way even within a single book. They also contain non-standard characters such as pharmaceutical and quantity symbols which the OCR did not recognise. The recipes I have identified were usually found by searching on adjacent plain text such as preparation instructions. A few borrowings were identified directly from the sources. Hall had a tendency to borrow several texts from pages in close proximity, so



that a search forward and back from an identified text did sometimes reveal others.

For my standard searches I set year limits of 1550 to 1635. The choice of 1550 was a pragmatic one based on experience, and 1635 was the year of Hall's death. In no case did test searches prior to 1550 find a text which could not be identified after that, and it seemed unlikely though not impossible that Hall's library would have gone that far back. This timescale also had the benefit of covering the probable life span of John's father William, and therefore including books he might have acquired and passed on to his son. The end point was useful as a standard cut-off, but was not definitive. Several texts were identified by searching later periods, on texts with better quality printing, and then working backwards to an edition in Hall's lifetime. The borrowing from Thomas Adams in the epigraph for example, was initially found in a nineteenth century volume of collected sermons.

I have not included as borrowings any identical texts from two or more sources. This is a conservative approach as Hall might well have owned one or more of them, but in the absence of a firm identification they have all been excluded. Fortunately different editions often had slight differences of words which allowed one or other to be identified as Hall's. My approach throughout has been conservative, and it is very likely that there are other unidentified borrowings still to found. A method of searching for recipes which is not overly time consuming would certainly reveal more. On the other hand, I am confident that I have not to any serious extent misidentified any borrowings or their sources.

## **APPENDIX B: NEW PATIENT IDENTIFICATIONS**

Joan Lane's work on identifying John Hall's patients is and will remain indispensable.<sup>1</sup> It was however completed twenty years ago and does contain a few inaccuracies. She did not have access to the range of material now accessible to scholars on the internet, and conducted her research through the written material available to her, and by correspondence.<sup>2</sup> In addition, her main source was *Select Observations*, not Hall's manuscript, so she was misled in some cases by Cooke's errors or editing. Her comments suggest she cast an eye over the introductions and conclusions to each case in the manuscript, but did not go into the Latin text in any depth. Her work is nonetheless the essential starting point on anything to do with the patients.

I have changed the identification or attributions of ten patients. Several identities remain unknown or uncertain, but new identities are proposed for four named patients. For other patients, details such sex, age and consultation date change or become less certain.

### **Case 6, Mr Nash's serving maid, (S.O. p. 12, Lane p.15)**

The Latin makes it clear that this was a female servant, but Cooke's translation made the gender male. Lane identified the patient as Joseph Jelphe which cannot be correct. The patient is now unidentified. The consultation remains undated.

### **Cases 27, 34, Captain Basset (S.O. pp. 21, 62, Lane pp. 47, 63)**

---

<sup>1</sup> Lane, *John Hall*, pp. 1-349.

<sup>2</sup> Warwick, Warwickshire County Record Office, CR3999 Box C26, Joan Lane's files.

Lane identified the patient as Captain Basset from Devon, who was commissioned Captain under Count Mansfeldt in 1624. Based on this identification and his age, he would have consulted Hall in 1634. This does not fit though with Hall's comment that Captain Basset 'remained well for a long time', as he was already writing his manuscript in that year.

A different Captain Basset served in Ireland in 1599 and 1600.<sup>3</sup> He petitioned King James for a pension in 1605 'having long served in the wars of Ireland'.<sup>4</sup> This Captain Basset served at the same time as the husband of another of Hall's patients, Katherine Lady Hunks.<sup>5</sup> If this is correct it suggests a consultation around 1620, which fits better with Hall's comment on his subsequent health. The patient's identity changes and the consultation moves to around 1620.

### **Case 39, Joan Judkin (S.O. p. 36, Lane p. 75)**

Hall gave two ages for this patient, first writing 'et.50' and a few lines later, 'et.40'. Cooke used the first age, from which Lane derived a consultation date of 1634. The second date is written in a different ink and pen from the main text, so I prefer to see it as a correction, which Hall then failed to follow through by deleting the

---

<sup>3</sup> *Calendar of the State Papers relating to Ireland of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1600, March-October*, E.G. Atkinson (ed.), (London: HMSO, 1903) [https://archive.org/details/1905calendarofstatep10greauoft](https://archive.org/details/1905calendarofstatep10greauoft/page/200), p. 200; James Wills (ed.), *Lives of Illustrious and Distinguished Irishmen from the Earliest Times to the Present Period, Vol. II Part I* (Dublin: MacGregor, Poulson, 1840) [https://archive.org/details/livesofillustrio02will](https://archive.org/details/livesofillustrio02will/page/139), p. 139; Fynes Morrison, *An History of Ireland from the year 1599 to 1603, to which is added a Description of Ireland, Vol. I* (Dublin: George Ewing, 1735) <http://www.archive.org/stream/anhistoricalyirelan00morygoog/page/n106/mode/2up>, p. 97.

<sup>4</sup> Sir George Carewe to Viscount Cranborne, [?1605, before May 4], Two letters – (1) in favour of Captain Saxey and Captain Bassett; <https://www.british-history.ac.uk/cal-cecil-papers/vol17/pp167-206>.

<sup>5</sup> Lane, *John Hall*, p. 245.

age he wrote first. The patient's identity is unchanged but the consultation moves to 1624.

**Case 40, Mr Winter (S.O. p. 75, Lane p. 75)**

Cooke gave Winter's age as 44, and Lane identified him as John Winter of Huddington, Worcestershire. What Hall wrote was '*et.4.*', with a raised dot after the 4, which is different from the dashes he used to indicate an incomplete date, as in Case 156. Hall frequently used the raised dot to indicate spaces between words. Winter suffered from worms, and his treatment, with a mild purge and an umbilical plaster, is similar to that Hall used for other children rather than for adults. The young Mr Winter may have been one of John Winter's three children, born before his wife died in 1622. There is no record of their dates of birth. The patient identity changes, but the consultation can only be approximately dated to the early or mid 1620s.

**Case 86, Wilson of Stratford-upon-Avon (S.O. p. 78, Lane p.159)**

Cooke interpreted this patient as being male, but the grammar of the text makes it clear she was female. The patient remains unidentified and the date of consultation unknown.

**Case 109, Mr P (S.O. p. 97, Lane p. 197)**

Hall wrote '*Generos<sup>s</sup> p<sup>s</sup>anno seq.*' which Cooke contracted to Mr P. Lane compared this with Hall's original and read '*p<sup>s</sup>anno*' as Psamire (an easy error with Hall's italic) and took this to be Hall's method of anonymising the patient. I translate the phrase as 'The above gentleman in the following year'. This identifies the patient as the George Underhill of the previous case, and the date of the consultation as 1631-2.

**Case 122, Mrs Richardson (S.O. p. 112, Lane p. 223)**

Lane identified this patient as Elizabeth Richardson, baptised 1569, married 1607, who bore three children between 1607 and 1611. Her husband died in 1624. Cooke omitted Hall's closing remark: 'after her husband died she married and bore children six years afterwards'. It is hard to match this with Lane's patient, for whom no other marriage is recorded either before or after that to William Richardson. The identification is doubtful, and no date can be suggested for the consultation.

**Case 160, Peter Hugges, (S.O. p.155, Lane p. 309)**

Cooke did not give this patient's name, describing him only as 'the Lord of Northampton's gentleman'. On this basis Lane identified him as William Beale. Five lines into the Latin text though, Hall named the patient 'Peterus Hugges Wallicus' – Peter Hugges the Welshman. He was perhaps seen on one of Hall's visits to Ludlow. There are no more details for Peter Hugges, and the consultation cannot be dated.

**Case 169, Mr Kimberley, (S.O. p.167, Lane p. 331)**

Apart from the name, we know only that Hall saw this patient at the age of 26. Lane identified him as either Gilbert (born 1590) or William (born 1592), giving dates of consultation in 1616 or 1618. However, Hall treated his Mr Kimberley with two remedies reproduced almost word for word from Horst's *Observationum* published in 1625. The consultation must have been after that date, making both Gilbert and William unlikely candidates. Lane's notes also mention William, Robert and Justinian Kimberley, sons of Robert, a shoemaker in Bromsgrove. Justinian was born in 1601

so would have been 26 in 1627, a feasible date. There is no positive evidence and the patient is left unidentified and the consultation undated.

**Case 176, Simon Underhill (S.O. p. 160, Lane p. 319)**

Lane dated the consultation to 1629 based on Hall's estimate of age ('about 40 years') and the patient's baptism in 1589. Hall also gave a consultation date of 1633, which Cooke omitted. The patient's identity is probably unchanged, but I prefer Hall's date for the consultation.

## APPENDIX C: JOHN HALL'S PHARMACOPOEIA

This Appendix provides a key to the ingredients and methods of manufacture of compounds referred to by Hall. It is not intended to indicate the source of the recipe, though I have used books from Hall's working library as much as possible. Simples are not listed as they have many sources, but nearly all may be found in the *Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*. English equivalents for compounds in the *Pharmacopoeia Londinensis* can be found in Culpeper's *London Dispensatory*.<sup>6</sup>

What is evident is that Hall used a relatively small range of compounds, though he combined them in different ways to create much more variety in his recipes. The *Pharmacopoeia Londinensis* contributes 119 compounds, with another thirty seven coming from other sources.

For comparison, the second edition of the *Pharmacopoeia* lists 785 compounds, so Hall used only about 15 per cent of what it had to offer. This suggests that Hall preferred to use a small number of familiar compounds rather than experimenting with the whole range available in a very long list.

At the foot of the main table is another giving the relationships between the different quantities used.

---

<sup>6</sup> Nicholas Culpeper, *A Physicall Directory, or, a Translation of the Medical Dispensatory made by the College of Physicians in London* (London: Peter Cole, 1649).

<b>Pharmacopoeia Londinensis, 2nd Edition:</b>		
<b>Used in Little Book</b>	<b>Used in Source</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>Interpretation of certain common names</b>	<b>Nuncupationum quarundam communium interpretatio</b>	
Capillary herbs	Quinque herbae capillares	sig. D2
Cordial Flowers	Quinque flores cordiales	sig. D1
Emollient plants	Quinque herbae emollientes	sig. D1
Opening roots	Quinque radices communes aperitivae, diureticae, maiores	sig. D2
<b>Compound Waters</b>	<b>Aquae Compositae</b>	
Aqua vitae	Aqua vitae	13
Caelestis water	Aqua caelestis	6
Cordial water frigida Saxoniae	Aqua cordialis frigida Saxoniae	8
Water for the womb	Aqua hystERICA	9
<b>Medicated wines</b>	<b>Vina medicata</b>	
Wine of squills	Vinum scilliticum	15
<b>Decoctions</b>	<b>Decocta</b>	
Common decoction for an enema	Decoctum commune pro clystere	19
<b>Syrups</b>	<b>Syrupi</b>	
Apple syrup	Syrupus de pomis	39
Augsburg syrup	Syrupus Augustanus	33
Chicory syrup with rhubarb	Syrupus de cichorio cum rhabarbaro	34
Diacodium	Syrupus de meconio	29
Loosening rose syrup	syrupus rosaceus solutivus	30
Magisterial scabious Syrup	Syrupus scabiosae compositae Magistralis	41
Magisterial syrup for melancholy	Syrupus magistralis ad melancholiam	37
Marshmallow syrup, Fernel's	Syrupus de altheae Fernelii	32
Mugwort syrup	Syrupus de artemisia	32
Oxymel of squills	oxymel scilliticum	46
Syrup regis	Syrupus de pomis regis saporis	39
<b>Lohochs</b>	<b>Lohoch</b>	
Lohoch of fox lungs	Lohoch e pulmone vulpis	50
Lohoch sanum et expertum	Lohoch sanum et expertum	51
<b>Conserves and sugars</b>	<b>Conservae et sacchara</b>	
Barley sugar	Penidia	57
Manus Christi	Manus Christi	56



<b>Powders</b>	<b>Species sive pulveres</b>	
Aromatic rose powder, Gabrieli's	Species aromaticum rosatum Gabrielis	59
Diacidonium powder	Diacidonium simplex	78
Diacyminum	Species electuarii diacymini	62
Diaireos	Diaireos simplex	63
Diamargiton	Diamargiton	64
Diambra	Diambra	65
Diamoschu, sweet	Diamoschu dulcis	65
Diarrhodon abbatis	Diarrhodon Abbatis	67
Diatragacanth	Species electuarii Diatragacanthi frigidi	67
Diatrion santalon	Diatrion santalon	68
Diaturbith with rhubarb	Diaturbith cum rhabarbaro	74
Hiera picra, Galen's	Hiera picra simplex	98
Holland powder	pulvis Radulphi Holland	73
Holy powder	Pulvis sanctus	73
Laxative senna powder	Pulvis senae	74
Liberans confection	Confectio liberans	69
Pleres Archonticon	Pleres Archonticon	71
Sandalwood powder	Diatrion santalon	68
<b>Electuaries</b>	<b>Electuaria</b>	
Alkermes confection	Confectio alkermes	76
Caryocostinum electuary	Caryocostinum	91
Diacatholicon	diacatholicon	95
Diacinnamomum	Diacinnamomum	77
Diacorallion	Diacorallion	77
Diacrocuma	Diacrocuma	95
Diaphoenicon electuary	Electuarium Diaphoenicon	93
Diascordium	Diascordium	85
Electuary of cold gems	Electuarium de gemmis frigidis	63
Electuary of gems	Electuarium de gemmis calidis	62
Electuary of rose juice	Electuarium e succo rosarum	98
Hamech confection	Confectio Hamech	96
Hyacinth confection	Confectio de hyacintho	79
Laetificans electuary, Galen's	Electuarium laetificans Galeni	69
London treacle	Theriaca Londinensis	90
Mithridate	Mithridatium	85
Philonium Persicum	Philonium Persicum	86
Softening electuary	Electuarium lenitivum	97
Venice treacle	Theriaca Andromachi	88

<b>Pills</b>	<b>Pilulae</b>	
Aggregative pills	pilulae aggregativae sive polychrestae	106
Alephanginae pills	Pilulae alephanginae	103
Aloes rosata	Aloe rosata	103
Amber pills, Crato's	Pilulae de succino	105
Imperial pills	Pilulae imperiales	105
Laudanum pills, Paracelsus'	Laudanum	112
Opoponax pills	Pilulae de opoponace	111
Pills aureae	pilulae aurae	107
Pills cochiae	pilulae cochiae	108
Pills foetidae	Pilulae foetidae	108
Pills hierae simplex	pilulae hierae cum agarico	104
Pills hiera with agaric	pilulae hierae cum agarico	104
Pills of hermodactyls	Pilulae de hermodactylis	108
Pills sine quibus	Pilulae sine quibus nolo esse	110
Rhubarb Pills	Pilulae de rhabbaro	105
Ruffus's Pills	Pilulae pestilentialis Ruffi	105
Stomachic pills	pilulae stomachicae	105
<b>Trochees</b>	<b>Trochischi</b>	
Alhandal trochees	Trochischi alhandal	115
Trochiscated agaric	trochischi de agarico	115
White trochees, Rhazes's	Trochischi albi	123
Winter cherry trochees	Trochisci alkekengi	123
<b>Plasters</b>	<b>Emplastra</b>	
Diacalciteos	Diapalma vel Diacalciteos	169
Diachylon	diachylon	168
Labdanum plaster, Crato's	Emplastrum stomachicum magistrale	181
Melilot plaster	Emplastrum de meliloto	174
Oxycrocium plaster	Emplastrum oxycrocium	177
Plaster for the womb	Emplastrum pro matrice	173
Plaster of red lead	Emplastrum de minio	174
Sandalwood salve	Ceratum santalinum	182
<b>Ointments</b>	<b>Unguenta</b>	
Agrippa's Ointment	Unguentum Agrippae	150
Alabaster ointment	Unguentum alabastrum	150
Basilicon ointment	Unguentum basilicum	144
Chest ointment	Unguentum pectorale	157
Comitissa ointment	Unguentum Comitissae	154
Cooling ointment, Galen's	Unguentum refrigerans Galenii	146
Cyclamen ointment	Unguentum de artanita	152
Magisterial splenic ointment	Unguentum splenicum magistrale	159

Marshmallow ointment	Unguentum dialtheae	145
Martiatum ointment	Unguentum Martiatum	155
Ointment for worms	Unguentum ad lumbricos	161
Populeon ointment	unguentum populneum	157
Tapsi valentia	Tapsi valentia	160
White ointment	Unguentum album	143
<b>Chymical Oils</b>	<b>Olea Chymica</b>	
Oil of amber	Oleum succini	189
Oil of vitriol	Oleum vitrioli	190
<b>Chymical Preparations</b>	<b>Praeparationes Chymicae</b>	
Cream of tartar	cremor sive sal tartari	191
Crocus Martis	Crocus Martis	192
Flowers of sulphur	Flores sulphuris	192
Magisterium of corals	Magisterium coralliorum	193
Magisterium of pearls	Magisterium perlarum	193
Mercurius dulcis	Mercurius dulcis	194
Mercurius vitae	Mercurius vitae	194
Vitriolated tartar	Tartarum vitriolatum	196
<b>Certain medical preparations extremely necessary in pharmacopoeias</b>	<b>Medicamentorum quorundam praeparationes pharmacopoeis apprime necessariae</b>	
Briony dregs	Bryoniae foecula	204
May butter	Butyrum Maiali	204
Prepared steel	Limaturae chalybis praeparatio	205
Prepared tutty	Tutiae praeparatio	210
<b>Other Pharmacopoeias</b>		
<b><i>Pharmacopoeia Augustana (1613)</i></b>		
<b>Used in Little Book</b>	<b>Used in Source</b>	<b>Page</b>
Apperient decoction	Decoctio apperitiva	98
Diagrydium	Scammonii praeparatio ... Diagrydium vocatur	296
Diasereos	Syrupus diasereos	40
Red Pannonian powder	pulvis rubeus Pannonicus	113
Senna powder, Montagnana's	Pulvis senae Montagnanae	105
Steeled electuary, Crato's	Electuarium chalybeatum Cratonis	195
Stomach oil, Crato's	Oleum stomachicum Cratonis	251
<b>Dornkrell, <i>Dispensatorium novum</i></b>		
<b>Used in Little Book</b>	<b>Used in Source</b>	<b>Page</b>
Antiscorbutic water, Dornkrell's	Aqua antiscorbutica	33
Splenitic water, Dornkrell's	Aqua antisplenitica	35

<b>Du Chesne, <i>Pharmacopoea Dogmaticorum</i></b>		
<b>Used in Little Book</b>	<b>Used in Source</b>	<b>Page</b>
Ammoniac pills, Rivière's	Pilulae ammoniaci Rivieri	120
Coral tincture	Tinctura coralliorum	210
Carminative diacolocynth oil, Du Chesne's	Oleum diacolocynthidos carminativum purgativum Quercetani	135
Raisin lohoch, Du Chesne's	Lohoch passularum Quercetani	144
Saltpetre	Sal prunellae	244
Steeled wine	Vinum chalybeatum	210
<b>Potier, <i>Pharmacopoea spagirica</i></b>		
<b>Used in Little Book</b>	<b>Used in Source</b>	<b>Page</b>
Frog water	Aqua ranarum	67
<b>Other Sources</b>		
<b>Amatus Lusitanus, <i>Centuriae ... quinta videlicet et sexta</i></b>		
Plaster against Rupture	Emplastrum contra Rupturam	94
<b>Crato, <i>Consiliorum ... liber secundus</i></b>		
Turpentine pills with rhubarb	Pilulae de terebinthina cum rhabarbaro	371
<b>Crato, <i>Consiliorum ... liber quintus</i></b>		
Headache pills, Fernel's	Pilulae Cephalalgicae Fernelii	338
<b>Croll, <i>Basilica chymica</i></b>		
Distilled frog spawn water	Aqua sperniola distillata	277
<b>Du Chesne, <i>De priscorum philosophorum materia</i></b>		
Diatartar	Diatartarum solutivum	330
<b>Rodrigo de Fonseca, <i>Consultationes medicae</i></b>		
Diatartar	Diatartar	53
Helleborated apple	Pomum elleboratum	84
<b>Penot, <i>De Denario medico</i></b>		
Mercury water	Aqua mercurialis	61
<b>Platter, <i>Praxeos ... de doloribus</i></b>		
Anti-gout pills	Pilulae ex hermodactylis	711
<b>Ruland, <i>Balnearium</i></b>		
Powder for rheum	Pulvis in rheumati	142
<b>Ruland, <i>Curatium</i></b>		
Chymical cup	Poculum chymicum	281, 303
Laxative senna powder	Pulvis senae laxativae	675
Mercury water	Aqua mercurialis	158

Sneezing powder	Sternutatorium Rulandi	5
<b>Ruland the Younger, <i>De morbo Ungarico</i></b>		
Oxyrrhodinum	Oxyrrhodinum	143
<b>Sennert, <i>De scorbuto tractatus</i></b>		
Ammoniac salve, Foreest's	Ceratum ammoniacum Foresti	700
Scheletyrbic syrup, Foreest's	Syrupus scheletyrbicus Foresti	173, 683
<b>Solenander, <i>Consiliorum</i></b>		
Opening electuary	Electuarium de vino	221
<b>Valleriola, <i>Observationum</i></b>		
Fidum ointment	Unguentum fidum Valleriolae	234
<b>Horst, <i>Observationum</i></b>		
Purgative morsels of mechoacan	Morsuli purgantes de mechoachan	295
Vesicatory plaster	Emplastum vesicatorium de cantharidibus	293

<b>Quantities</b>		
Twenty grains Three scruples Eight drachms Twelve ounces Nine pints	make	One scruple One drachm One ounce One pound or pint One gallon
Pinch	As much as may be held between the thumb and first two fingers	

## APPENDIX D: A MEDICAL AND PHARMACEUTICAL GLOSSARY

This appendix lists, with definitions, the more unusual medical and pharmaceutical words and phrases (other than remedies) used in the Little Book. Rather than attempt to explain them myself, or to use present-day definitions, I have relied on English medical texts of Hall's period, mostly using ones which give information on the causes as well as the appearance of illnesses. I have resorted to Latin texts (with my own translations when necessary) only when I could find nothing more appropriate in English.

**Abdominal swelling:** Ascites is that, when great store of winds, but greater of water, is gathered together in that place, which doth lie between the guts and the syphach [peritoneum].<sup>7</sup>

**Bastard tertian fever:** is caused, when choler is mixed for the most part with fleame [phlegm] [...] in this feaver also the time of the fits doth exceed twelve hours [...] the signes of concoction do appear more slowly, neither is there such greate heate [...] as in the exquisite tertian.<sup>8</sup>

**Bleeding from the mouth:** Blood is oft voyded from the gummies, and mouth itselfe, and then the spittle is of a bloody colour and very little voyded out and that without a cough; if it doe come from the throad [...] it is voyded by hemming, not by cough [...] but if the blood doth come from the lungs, then is the blood foamy [...] as oft as blood is voyded because some great veine is burst, then plenty of blood is cast up.<sup>9</sup>

---

<sup>7</sup> Bruel, *Physicians Practice*, p. 319.

<sup>8</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 234.

<sup>9</sup> Bruel, *Physicians Practice*, p. 198.

**Catarrh:** is a distillation commonly taken, and is a deflux of humours and excrements from the head or braine into the other parts of the body.<sup>10</sup>

**Cold:** a cold distemper simply, without the fluxe of any cold humour. This paine in the head is caused of outward cold, as when the aire is very cold, especially when one tarrieth in it long time bareheaded.<sup>11</sup>

**Colic:** a continuall passion of the bowel which is called colon, and there follows it a difficulty of voiding excrements, and wind at the lower parts.<sup>12</sup>

**Consent** (see under Propriety): a pain by propriety is when the cause [...] is in the part pained, as when the head-ach comes from humors in the head [...]when it proceeds of vapors sent up from the stomach or any other part it's called head-ach by consent or sympathy.<sup>13</sup>

**Continual burning fever:** if choler do putrifie and rot within the vessels, it causeth a continuall tertian, or burning fever.<sup>14</sup>

**Diarrhoea:** a copious and great fluxe of the wombe [sic] without exulceration and inflammation. It is caused through weakness of the instruments that belong to digestion, also through abundance of nourishment and meat that is moist and vicious, and through

---

<sup>10</sup> Bruel, *Physicians Practice*, p. 151.

<sup>11</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 5.

<sup>12</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 309.

<sup>13</sup> Anon., *A Physical Dictionary or: an Interpretation of such Crabbed Words and Terms of Art as are derived from the Greek or Latin* (London: John Garfield, 1657) [http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:124064249](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:124064249), sig. L3.

<sup>14</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p.214.

corruption of the same meate. Moreover, gnawing and biting of those things that are contained in the belly.<sup>15</sup>

**Difficulty of breathing:** Asthma ... caused when as grosse and clammy humors by gotten in abundantly into the gristles or lappets of the lungs, or that there be some other swelling in it, like a botch.<sup>16</sup>

**Dropsy of the chamber pots:** Diabetes ... Latini urinae incontinentiam, urinae fluorem, urinam involuntariam, hydropem matellae, vel aquam intercutem ad matulam vocant; [Diabetes ... in Latin they call it incontinence of urine, flowing of urine; involuntary urination, dropsy of the pot; or dropsical water in the chamber pot].<sup>17</sup>

**Dysentery:** an exulceration and inflammation of the bowels ... caused through exulceration of the bowels which sometimes chanceth through outward causes, as of cold, heate, and moistnesse [...] drinking of pernicious and naughtie medicines [...] eating of fruit. <sup>18</sup>

**Epilepsy:** a convulsion, drawing and stretching of all the parts of the whole body, but not continually [...] there be three differences in this sicknesse or disease. The first is caused when this sicknesse cometh only of disease in the braine, as it chanceth when grosse or clammy fleame or sharpe choler doth stop the passage of the spirit in the ventricles [...] secondly it is caused through an evill affect in the mouthe and stomacke, that is, when the braine laboureth to drive away the vapours and humours that ascend up to it from the

---

<sup>15</sup> Ibid., p. 119.

<sup>16</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p.81.

<sup>17</sup> Ruland the Elder, *Curationum*, p. 152.

<sup>18</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 123.



stomacke. Thirdly [...] when the patient feeleth a thing like unto a cold aire, coming from some member and creeping up to the braine.<sup>19</sup>

**Erratic fever:** are such feavers as be contrary to [those which come justly at their appointed time] because they keep no certaine and juste time nor any order of fits, nor the intermission between them, as be those feavers which ingender of melancholy.<sup>20</sup>

**Exercise:** Qui hoc electuarium assumit exercitio utatur; [Whoever takes this electuary should take exercise].<sup>21</sup>

**Excessive quantity of urine:** diabetes is a continuall disease about the reines, causing much thirst; and also whatsoever is drunk, even as it is taken it is pissed out againe. The disease is ingendred of weaknesse of the retentive vertue of the reines.<sup>22</sup>

**Flux of the reds:** Uteri fluor in Latin, fluxe of the matrice in English, is a continuall distillation, and flowing out for a long time, of the whole body purging itselke [...] for some is red as bloud purified [...] if pure blood come forth, as in the cutting of a veine, you must take good heede that some erosion and gnawing be not ingendred in the wombe.<sup>23</sup>

**Flux of the whites:** fluxe of the matrice [...] is a continuall distillation and flowing out for a long time of the whole body purging itself. That which is voided out doth represent such forme and

---

<sup>19</sup> Ibid, p. 40.

<sup>20</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 216.

<sup>21</sup> Crato, *Consiliorum ... Liber Secundus*, p. 379.

<sup>22</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 165.

<sup>23</sup> Ibid., p. 188.

colour as the humour that doth abound in the bodie [...] some white, which cometh of fleame.<sup>24</sup>

**Frenzy:** a disease where the mind is hurt, and doth onely differ from madnesse [...] for that a feaver is joyned with the frenzie, and therefore the frenzie may be called a continuall madnesse and fury joyned with a sharpe feaver.<sup>25</sup>

**Generalised dropsy** (anasarca): a passion, that it is not without plenty of watery humours, because the blood-breeding faculty is vitiated [...] anasarca is a scattering of phlegmy humours over the whole body [...] the whole body increaseth most unnaturally, for it is all over swelled.<sup>26</sup>

**Giddiness:** a disease wherein the patient doth imagine that his head is turned round about [...] through the inordinate moving of windy vapours and spirits contained in certaine parts of the braine [...] caused either of the braine itselfe being distempered and evill affected, or of the mouth of the stomacke offending the braine.<sup>27</sup>

**Gonorrhoea:** excretion and shedding of seede or sperme against the patients will, and without sicknesse of the yard. It is caused through imbecilitie and weaknesse of the retentive virtue in the vessels containing the sperm [...] this disease chanceth not only to men, but also to women, and in women it is hard to cure.<sup>28</sup>

**Gout:** the joynt-gout is a feeblenesse of the joynts, and pain coming upon them at certain distances of time; for the most part it is

---

<sup>24</sup> Ibid., p. 188.

<sup>25</sup> Ibid., p. 21.

<sup>26</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 319.

<sup>27</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, pp. 18-19.

<sup>28</sup> Ibid., pp. 178-179.

caused by a flux, which winds itselfe betweene the ligaments, filmes, and tendones of the joynts.<sup>29</sup>

**Haemorrhoids:** an unfolding and spreading abroad of the veines of the well. Of these some be blind, which do swell, and do send out none, or very little blood; some be open, which be set wide open abroad certaine times, and do send forth blood. The haemorrhoids are caused through dreggie and melancholy blood, when there is abundance thereof, which the liver sendeth to those veins.<sup>30</sup>

**Heartburn** (cardialgia): the paine of the stomacke is a painefull sense of the mouth of the stomacke caused by a biting matter; p. 241: caused by sharpe and biting humours, which doe sticke about the mouth of the stomacke, whereby the appetite is abated, and they are in more paine before meate than after.<sup>31</sup>

**Heart palpitations:** panting and trembling of the heart [...] caused of all such things as do trouble and affect the heart above nature.<sup>32</sup>

**Hectic fever:** when heate is kindled in the sound, hard and fleshie parts of mans bodie [...] like to a hote vessel; for as the vessell doth heate the water that is poured into it: so also the feaver hectic.<sup>33</sup>

**Hemiplegia:** the palsy possessing one side.<sup>34</sup>

**Hypochondriac melancholy:** The hypochondriacal or windy Melancholy is often caused by the overboyling of dreggish blood, which was settled neere unto the stomack, or gristles of the short ribs, by a distemper of the liver, stomacke, or miseraical veins; hence it is that grosse and burnt humours are carryed up to the

---

<sup>29</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 380.

<sup>30</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 135.

<sup>31</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 239.

<sup>32</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 92.

<sup>33</sup> Ibid., p. 215.

<sup>34</sup> Anon, *A Physical Dictionary*, sig. G3.

principall seate of the braine, and so doe disquiet it and stirre up melancholy.<sup>35</sup>

**Jaundice:** a shedding either of yellow choler or of melancholy all over the body [...] many times the jaundice is caused and doth chance when the blood is corrupted without fever, of some outward occasion, and is made cholericke.<sup>36</sup>

**Leeches:** where wee cannot conveniently scarifie, the leeches are to bee applied as in the hemorrhodes, and other griefes of the anus.<sup>37</sup>

**Liver obstruction:** caused of vapours and grosse windinesse, hard to digest. But sometime it is caused of grosse and vicious humours in the ends of the veines, springing from the flat part of the liver, by which veines nourishment is sent to the liver from the stomach and bowels.<sup>38</sup>

**Lyentery:** in this disease the bowels do not hold the meate, but they let it slide away before it be changed and perfectly digested, even in the same forme and likenes that it was eaten [...] it is caused oftentimes through a grievous fluxe disenteria by name going before, which causeth deepe exulceration of the bowels.<sup>39</sup>

**Magisterium:** magistral syrup is a particular syrup prescribed by a skilful physitian to his patient for a particular disease.<sup>40</sup>

**Malignant fever:** Cum vero ab aliis causis ortum habet, morbus malignus vel febris maligna vocatur; Bruel, *Praxis Medicinae*, p.

---

<sup>35</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 34.

<sup>36</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p.81.

<sup>37</sup> Alexander Read, *The Chirurgical Lectures of Tumors and Ulcers Delivered on Tusedays as Appointed* (London: Francis Constable, 1635) [http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:99850908](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:99850908).

<sup>38</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 141.

<sup>39</sup> Ibid., p. 121.

<sup>40</sup> Anon, *A Physical Dictionary*, sig. I1.

412; translated as: when it is caused by outward causes, it is called a pestilent feaver, or plague.<sup>41</sup>

**Mass:** by mass, alwaies understand the composition brought into such a thickness, that you may easily with your fingers make it into pills.<sup>42</sup>

**Melancholy:** an alienation of the mind, troubling reason [...] without a feaver, and is chiefly engendred of melancholy occupying the mind [...] sometime it is caused of the common vice of melancholy bloud being in all the veines of the whole body [...] oftentimes onely the bloud which is in the brain is altered [...] sometime is engendred through inflammation, and evill affect about the stomacke and sides.<sup>43</sup>

**Mother:** is a running back of the wombe, or of malignant vapors bred in the wombe, unto the higher parts, whereby the bowels, midriffe, and stomacke, are sometimes so crushed, that they cannot be widened by breathing.<sup>44</sup> See also Suffocation of the womb.

**Nosebleed:** oftentimes bleeding at the nose is caused by nature, which doth by this means expell the excrements, and that which is troublesome to the body [...] sometime it is caused by the evil affection of the veins [or] the veines bleed because some gnawing humour hath got thereinto; also: haemorrhagia [...] doth signify bleeding at the nose [...] through which for the most part nature doth expel the superfluous blood in many.<sup>45</sup>

---

<sup>41</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 397.

<sup>42</sup> Nicholas Culpeper, *A Physical Directory: or, a Translation of the London Dispensatory made by the Colledge of Physicians of London* (London: Peter Cole, 1649) p. 198.

<sup>43</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 45.

<sup>44</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 372.

<sup>45</sup> Ibid., pp. 142-143.

**Obstructed menstruation:** The menstruis are wont to be suppressed and stopped against nature, either through overmuch grossnesse, or slendernesse. For fat folk are more without bloud than other folke, and they have lesse and streighter [narrower] veines [...] but those that are leane and slender [...] have no superfluous blood in them.<sup>46</sup>

**Omphacine:** Omphacy, unripe, it signifies properly the juyce of unripe grapes.<sup>47</sup>

**Pain in the side of the head:** Hemicrania is a painfull evil remaining in one halfe of the head, either on the right halfe or on the left [...] in English is called the migrime. This paine cometh befits, and some the grieve is felt within the skull, in some within deepe in the braine, and in some other night to the temples [...] this paine is caused by ascending and flowing of many vapours or humours either hote or colde, either by the veines or arteries, or both.<sup>48</sup>

**Passing blood:** a disease of the reines, through the which thin wheyish blood is pissed. It is caused through weeknesse of the reines [...] or [...] through amplitude of the reines [or] through breaking of a vein in the reines [or] through gnawing of the veines by sharpe humours flowing from above.<sup>49</sup>

**Phthisis:** a kind of consumption.<sup>50</sup>

**Pleurisy:** an inflammation of the thinne and small skinne which clotheth the ribs on the inner side [...] whereby it appeares that

---

<sup>46</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 188.

<sup>47</sup> Anon., *A Physical Dictionary*, Sig. K1.

<sup>48</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physik*, p. 17.

<sup>49</sup> Ibid., p. 158.

<sup>50</sup> Anon., *A Physical Dictionary*, sig. L1.

every paine of the side is not a pleurisy [...] if the pain be great because of windines, this is a bastard pleurisy, then are they without a fever.<sup>51</sup>

**Quartan fever:** An intermitting quartane is ingendred of melancholy petrified and rotted without the vessels. It is so named because it ceaseth two days, and returneth againe the fourth day.<sup>52</sup>

**Quiet day(s):** the day that the sicke hath not his fever.<sup>53</sup> Other examples showing that it refers to treatments on the middle day between attacks of a tertian fever are found in Plater and Ruland.<sup>54</sup>

**Quotidian fever:** caused of sweete fleam [phlegm] being putrified and rotten without the vessels: and is so called, because it returneth every day.<sup>55</sup>

**Rheum from the eyes:** an inflammation of the tunicle or membrane growing close unto the eye [...] there cometh withall a tumor of the eye, redness and a loading paine [...] sometimes the eye is swollen to the cheeks, and store of tears fall from them caused by vehement paine, and pricking of the eye.<sup>56</sup>

**Saltpetre:** said to be beneficial in Ungaric fever.<sup>57</sup>

**Scurvy:** a stopping of the spleen hindering thereby the course of melancholy, whiche mingling with the rest of the bloud infecteth all the body with vile wasting corruption, the grosse part whereof falling downe, staineth the legs with spots like unto pomgranats,

---

<sup>51</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 186.

<sup>52</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p.215.

<sup>53</sup> Ibid., p. 233.

<sup>54</sup> Ruland the Elder, *Curationum ... centuriae*, p. 683; Plater, *Observationum ...libri tres*, p. 268.

<sup>55</sup> Barrough, *Method*, p. 215.

<sup>56</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, pp. 126-7

<sup>57</sup> Du Chesne; *Pharmacopoea Dogmaticorum*, p. 244.

and the thinner part being carried up defileth the tender gums with sharpe fretting and loathsome growing out of the flesh.<sup>58</sup>

**Sore throat:** The squinancy is an inflammation of the throate, or the highest parts of the gullet, hindering breathing and swallowing, when as the fault is neyther in the brest nor lungs. This disease doth threaten present danger by strangling because [...] a man is deprived both of breath and sustenance.<sup>59</sup>

**Spasm of the mouth** (tortura oris): if it be from moisture, it is a kind of palsie; if through dryness, then a kind of cramp; and is commonly a sign of death.<sup>60</sup>

**Stone:** the stone of the reines happeneth oftener to men of perfect age than to children. The cause [...] is continuall crudity and rawnesse of the stomach, whereby abundance of grosse and earthy humours is heaped up together, and burning or fierie heate about the reines parcheth the humours, and knits them together, and hardeneth them into a stone.<sup>61</sup>

**Suffocation of the womb:** is nothing else but a drawing back of it up to the upper parts. It is caused through the stretching out of it, which is ingendred of fulnesse that followeth after the retention and stopping of the menstruis. For in a woman, the wombe when it is reached and stretched out, it runneth not to another place like a

---

<sup>58</sup> Richard Banister, 'A Discourse of the Scorby, translated out of Wyers observations', in Richard Banister, *A Treatise of One Hundred and Thirteene Diseases of the Eyes ... with some Profitable Additions* (London: Thomas Man and William Brome, 1587?) p. 1.

<sup>59</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 160.

<sup>60</sup> Anon., *Physical dictionary*, sig. N4.

<sup>61</sup> Barrough, *Method*, p. 161.



wandering beast, but is drawne backe through the extension.<sup>62</sup> See also 'Mother'.

**Tenesmus:** a continuall desire to go to the stool or siege, which the patient cannot deferre nor eschue [sic], and yet he avoydeth nothing, except it be a little blood.<sup>63</sup>

**Tertian fever:** a pure and exquisite tertian is caused when choler doth putrifie and rot within the vessels. It is so called, because it ceaseth one day, and cometh again the third day.<sup>64</sup>

**Tympany:** a kind of dropsy [...] when there is greater store of wind than wter, whereby the abdomen is stretched beyond measure, then it is called *tympanites*, and than rather a noyse of wind then water, is perceived if the belly be strooke.<sup>65</sup>

**Ulcer at the mouth of the bladder:** The bladder is exulcerate eitherr through some bile, or botch, or swelling [...] or by eating and gnawing of a fluxe [...] there followeth this sharpe pain of the bladder [...] when the ulcers be foule and filthie, there commeth forth dreggie and slimie matter.<sup>66</sup>

**Ungaric fever:** Inter febres malignas, et quidem non raro petechiales, est febris illa, quae vulgo morbus Ungaricus [...] dicitur; [Among the malignant fevers, and indeed not rarely those with rashes, is the fever commonly called the Ungaric disease].<sup>67</sup>

**Uterine wind:** The wombe is puffed up through cold, or humors corrupt in it, or through abortion or sore travell in childbirth the

---

<sup>62</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 189.

<sup>63</sup> Ibid., p.126.

<sup>64</sup> Ibid., p. 215.

<sup>65</sup> Bruel, *Physician's Practice*, p. 319.

<sup>66</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 171.

<sup>67</sup> Daniel Sennert, *De Febris Libri IV* (Wittenberg: Vidue et Haeredes Zacharia Shürer, 1628) <http://books.google.com/books?id=CWNVAAAaAAJ>, pp. 543.

dore of it being shut, or a clod of bloud being in it, and stopping it.

68

**Wheat barley:** called [...] in Latin Hordeum nudum of other some Hordeum mundum. It maye be called in Englishe wheate barley because it hath no mo huskes on it then wheat hath.<sup>69</sup>

**Wind and phlegm in the stomach:** windinesse is engendred through flegmaticke humours in the stomack, or else through meates dissolved into vapors through want and debilitie of heate.<sup>70</sup>

**Worms:** There be three kinds of worms. The first be round and long, named Teretes. The second be broad, called therefore Lati. The third are called Ascarides. The first kind [...] be round and hand breadth in length [...] often in the slender and small guts, and they go into the stomach, and therefore are voided often by the mouth [...] peculiar to infants and children. The second kind [...] be broad and long like a gard or band [...] Ascarides be thin and short like small worms. They be found most commonly in the right gut, and in the end of the fundament. All [...] are engendred and caused of crude, raw, grosse and flegmaticke matter and through inconvenient rottennesse.<sup>71</sup>

---

<sup>68</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 196.

<sup>69</sup> William Turner, *The First and Second Partes of the Herball ... set out with the Names of the Herbes* (Birchmann: Cologne, 1548) Second Part, f. 16v.

<sup>70</sup> Barrough, *Method*, p.114.

<sup>71</sup> Barrough, *Method of Physick*, p. 132.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### MANUSCRIPT SOURCES

#### British Library

Egerton MS 2065, 'The Casebook of Dr John Hall', ca. 1634-1635  
Sloane MS 80, 'John Pratt MD, register'  
Sloane MS 275, 'Stephen Bradwell, Diarium Practicum'  
Sloane MS 461, 'Medical Practice Book 1610-1626'

#### Shakespeare Birthplace Trust Record Office

MS ER1/1/94, Sid Davenport's letter to John Hall

#### Bedfordshire and Luton Archives and Record Service

MS X125/13, 'John Symcott's Casebook'

#### Warwickshire County Record Office

CR3999, Box C26, 'Joan Lane's research files'

#### Folger Shakespeare Library, Washington D.C.

MS X.d 164 (3), Lady Tyrrell's letter to Lady Temple

### PRINTED SOURCES

#### John Hall's Working Library

NOTE: These are the editions used as references in this thesis. They are not necessarily the editions owned by John Hall. The dates following publication details give the range of publication dates of editions which Hall might have had access, based on information from <http://www.worldcat.org>. If no date range is given, there is evidence that Hall used the specific edition listed.

Adams, Thomas, *Mystical Bedlam: or, the World of Mad-Men*  
(London: Clement Knight, 1615)

[http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:99836259](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:99836259),  
accessed 25 January 2016

Amatus Lusitanus, *Curationum medicinalium centuriae quatuor, quarum duae priores ab auctore sunt recognite, duae posteriores nunc primum edite* (Basel: Froben, 1556)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=nm23CNbcS58C>, accessed 23 October 2014, 1556-1557

———, *Curationum medicinalium centuriae duae, quinta videlicet ac sexta* (Venice: Valgrisius, 1560)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=jFVSQwAACAAJ> accessed 25 January 2016, 1557-1580

- Béguin, Jean, *Tyrocinium chymicum e natura fonte et manuali experimentia depromptum* (Königsberg: Iohannes Fabricius, 1618) 1608-1634
- Bernard de Gordon, *Lilium medicinae inscriptum: de morborum prope omnium curatione* (Lyons: Rovillius, 1574)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=UsoOYpbbGTgC> accessed 10 April 2016, 1557-1580
- Bruele, Walter, *Praxis medicinae theorica et empirica familiarissima* (Leiden: Plantin, Raphelangius, 1599) 1621-1632
- Burton, Robert, *The Anatomy of Melancholy*, ed. by Holbrook Jackson (New York: New York Review Books, 2001)
- Cardano, Girolamo *Ars curandi parvi, tomus I* (Basel: Officina Henricpetriana, 1564) 1524-1621  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=IvdbAAAACAAJ>, accessed 25 January 2016
- Castro, Rodrigo de, *De universa mulierum medicina, pars secunda, sive praxis* (Hamburg: Froben, 1604) 1603-1628
- College of Physicians of London, *Pharmacopoeia Londinensis*, 2nd edn (London: John Marriot, 1618)  
[http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:99838713](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:99838713), accessed 28 January 2016
- Collegium Medicum (Augustana), *Pharmacopoeia Augustana* (Augsburg: Kruger, 1613)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=I15u3Nzkpi8C>, accessed 28 January 2016
- Crato, Johannes, *Consiliorum et epistolarum medicinalium ... liber: ... nunc primum a Laurentio Scholzio ... in lucem editus* (Frankfurt: Wechel, Marnius et Aubrius, 1591) 1591-1611
- , *Consiliorum et epistolarum medicinalium, liber secundus: nunc primum studio et opera Laurentii Scholzii ... in lucem editus* (Hanover: Wechel, Marnius et haeredes Aubrii, 1609)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=bQoMcgAACAAJ>, accessed 26 April 2015, 1592-1609
- , *Consiliorum et epistolarum medicinalium ... liber tertius: nunc primum labore et industria Laurentii Scholzii ... in primum editus* (Hanover: Wechel, Marnius et heredes Aubrii, 1609)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=VYirPMHxxMgC>, accessed 25 January 2016, 1592-1609
- , *Consiliorum et epistolarum medicinalium ... liber quartus: nunc primum studio et labore Laurentii Scholzii ... in lucem editus* (Hanover: Wechel, haeredes Aubrii, 1614)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=EGRvJSH89TsC>, accessed 17 November 2014, 1593-1619
- , *Consiliorum et epistolarum medicinalium ... liber quintus: nunc primum labore et studio Laurentii Scholzii .. in lucem editus* (Frankfurt: Wechel heredes, Marnius et Aubrius, 1594)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=ErhEL20O6aAC> accessed 11 November 2014, 1591-1619
- , *Consiliorum et epistolarum medicinalium ... liber sextus: nunc primum studio et opera Laurentii Scholzii ... in lucem editus* (Hanover: Wechel, haeredes Marnii, 1611)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=dIQ-AAAACAAJ>, accessed 25 January 2016

- Croll, Oswald, *Basilica chymica* (Frankfurt: Marnius et heredes Aubrii, 1609) 1600-1634
- Fonseca, Rodrigo de, *Consultationes medicae singularibus remediis refertae* (Venice: Ioannis Guerilius, 1620)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=aSTvZwEACAAJ> accessed 18 November 2014, 1611-1625
- Monte, Giovanni Battista da, *Consultationum medicinalium centuria prima* (Venice: Valgrisius, 1556)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=7GMGiK3uSpQC>, accessed 8 October 2014, 1554-1569
- \_\_\_\_\_, *Consultationes medicae* (Basel?: n.pub, 1583)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=VAYtnbW8UsAC>, accessed 25 January 2016
- Donne, John, *Devotions upon Emergent Occasions: and Severall Steps in my Sicknes* (London: Thomas Jones, 1624)  
[http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:99851467](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:99851467), accessed 17 November 2014
- Dorncrell, Tobias, *Dispensatorium novum continens descriptiones et usum praecipuorum medicamentum* (Ultzen: Cröner, 1600) 1600-1623
- Du Chesne, Joseph, *De priscorum philosophorum verae medicinae materia, praeparationis modo, atque in curandis morbis, praestantia* (Geneva: Vignon, 1603) 1593-1630
- \_\_\_\_\_, *Diaeteticon polyhistoricon* (Frankfurt: Schönwetter, 1607)
- \_\_\_\_\_, *Pharmacopoea dogmaticorum restituta* (Frankfurt: Schönwetter, 1607)
- Dunus, Thaddaeus, *De curandi ratione per venae sectionem liber quartus* (Zurich: Frosch, 1579)
- Eugalenus, Severinus, *De scorbuto morbo liber* (Leipzig: Michael Rantzenberger, 1604) 1588-1624
- Feyens, Jean, *De flatibus humanum corpus molestantibus* (Geneva?: in Officina Sanctandreana, 1592)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=9JLSHtKi9bsC>, accessed 8 May 2014, 1582-1592
- Fernel, Jean, *Therapeutices universalis seu medendi rationis libri septem* (Lyons: Sebastianus Honoratus, 1571)
- \_\_\_\_\_, *Consiliorum liber* (Lyons: Soubbron et Du Prez, 1597) 1579-1627
- Foreest, Pieter van, *Observationum et curationum medicinalium de febribus ephemeris et continuis libri duo* (Antwerp: Plantin, 1584) 1584-1614
- John of Gaddesden, *Praxis medica, rosa anglica dicta* (Augsburg: Michael Manger, 1595)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=vh5VAAAAcAAJ>, accessed 25 January 2016
- Hartmann, Johann, *Praxis chymiatrica* (Leipzig: Grossius, 1633)  
<http://nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10726860-5>
- Horst, Gregor, *Observationum medicinalium singularium libri quatuor* (Ulm: Saurius, 1625)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=hvaKQwAACAAJ>, accessed 5 November 2014

- Houllier, Jacques, *De morbis internis libri II* (Frankfurt: Wechel, 1589)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=BBEzIG9aiNUC>, accessed 25 January 2016, 1570-1623
- Liébault, Jean, *Thresor des remedes secrets pour les maladies des femmes* (Paris: Jacques du Puys, 1585)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=d1J1I0Un9jcC>, accessed 9 January 2014
- Luisini, Luigi, *De morbo Gallico omnia quae extant apud omnes medicos* (Venice: Zilettus, 1566) 1566-1567,  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=fFNBAAAAcAAJ> accessed 11 November 2014
- Penot, Bernard, *De denario medico, quo decem medicaminibus, omnibus morbis internis medendi via docetur* (Berne: Ioannis le Preux, 1608)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=jfBLAAAAcAAJ> accessed 24 November 2014, 1608-1618
- Platter, Felix, *Praxeos: Tractatus de functionem laesionibus* (Basel: Conrad Waldkirch, 1602) 1602-1625  
 ———, *Praxeos: tractatus secundus de doloribus* (Basel: Conrad Waldkirch, 1603) 1603-1625  
 ———, *Praxeos: tractatus tertius et ultimus de vitiis* (Basel: Conrad Waldkirch, 1608)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=E9ldQwAACAAJ> [accessed 25 Jan 2016, 1608-1625  
 ———, *Observationum in hominis affectibus plerisque, corpori et animo, functionem laesione, dolore, aliave molestia et vitio incommodantibus: libri tres* (Basel: Conrad Waldkirch, 1614) 1586-1614
- Potier, Pierre *Pharmacopoea Spagirica* (Bologna: n.pub., 1622)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=9fY9AAAAcAAJ>, accessed 25 January 2016, 1622-1625  
 ———, *Insignium curationum, et singularium observationum centuria prima* (Bologna: Nicolai Tebaldini, 1622)  
[http://books.google.com/books?id=A\\_c9AAAAcAAJ](http://books.google.com/books?id=A_c9AAAAcAAJ), accessed 2 May 2014, 1622-1632
- Ranzau, Henrik, *De conservanda valetudine liber in privatum librorum suorum usum* (Antwerp: Plantin, 1584)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=Uws8AAAAcAAJ>, accessed 7 October 2013, 1553-1584
- Rondelet, Guillaume, *Methodus curandorum omnium morborum corporis humani in tres libros distincta* (Paris: Carolus Macaeus, 1574) <http://books.google.com/books?id=t9pEAAAAcAAJ>, accessed 6 November 2013, 1553-1567
- Rueff, Jacob, *De conceptu et generatione hominis, et iis quae circa hec potissimum consyderantur, libri sex* (Zurich: Frosch, 1554), <https://archive.org/details/deconceptuetgene00rf>, accessed 29 January 2016, 1554-1587
- Ruland the Elder, Martin, *Balnearium restauratum, in quo curantur morbi tam externi quam interni* (Basel: n.pub., 1579)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=kEE6AAAAcAAJ>, accessed 20 June 2013, 1556-1613

- \_\_\_\_\_, *Curationum empyricarum et historicarum, in certis locis et notis personis optime expertarum, et rite probatarum, centuriae decem* (Lyons: Pierre Ravaud, 1628) 1577-1628
- Ruland the Younger, Martin, *De morbo Ungarico recte cognoscendo et foeliciter curando* (Leipzig: Jacobus Apellius, 1610)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=OOBfAAAAcAAJ>, accessed 21 February 2014, 1600-1610
- Sennert, Daniel, *De scorbuto tractatus* (Wittenberg: Zacharia Shürer, 1624)
- \_\_\_\_\_, *De febribus libri IV* (Wittenberg: Vidue et haeredes Zachariae Shüreri, 1628)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=CWNVAAAAcAAJ>, accessed 26 January 2016, 1605-1633
- \_\_\_\_\_, *Medicina practica* (Lyons: Pierre Ravaud, 1629)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=y-FEAAAAcAAJ>, accessed 28 August 2013, 1620-1634
- Solenander, Reiner, *Consiliorum medicinalium* (Hanover: Wechel, Marnius, heredes Aubrii, 1609)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=XM-izfadGdAC>, accessed 15 November 2013, 1558-1609
- Valesco de Taranta, *Epitome operis perquam utilis morbis curandi* (Lyons: Ioan. Tornaesius: Gulielmus Gazeius, 1560)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=TjuVpU8HMTwC>, accessed 27 Jun. 2013
- Valleriola, François, *Observationum medicinalium libri sex* (Lyons: Gryphius, 1573)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=mh1BAAAAcAAJ>, accessed 12 August 2015
- Vettori, Benedetto, *Exhortatio ad medicum recte, sancteque medicari cupientem: medicatio empirica singulorum morborum* (Venice: Erasmus, Valgrisius, 1550)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=MVdWAAAAcAAJ>, accessed 9 September 2014, 1550-1551
- Vittori, Leonello, *De aegritudinibus infantium tractatus* (Venice: Erasmus, Valgrisius, 1557)  
<http://books.google.co.uk/books?id=8Ao8AAAAcAAJ>, accessed 26 April 2015, 1550-1562
- Willich, Jodocus, *Urinarum probationes* (Basel: Henricpetri, 1582)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=3t1RAAAAcAAJ>, accessed 27 October 2014

### **Other Books before 1700**

- Anon., *A Physical Dictionary or: an Interpretation of such Crabbed Words and Terms of Art as are derived from the Greek or Latin* (London: John Garfield, 1657)  
[http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:124064249](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:124064249), accessed 3 March. 2015
- Banister, Richard, 'A Discourse of the Scorby, translated out of Wyers observations', in Richard Banister, *A Treatise of One Hundred and Thirteene Diseases of the Eyes ... with some Profitable Additions* (London: Thomas Man and William Brome, 1587?)

- Barrough, Philip, *the Method of Physick, containing the Causes, Signes and Cures of Inward Diseases in Mans Body*, 6th edn (London: Richard Field, 1624)
- Bruel, Walter, *Praxis Medicinae, or, the Physicians Practice, wherein are Contained Inward Diseases from the Head to the Foote* (London: William Sheares, 1639)  
[http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:99837046](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:99837046), accessed 11 December 2015
- Castro, Rodrigo de, *Medico-politicus: sive de officiis medico-politicis tractatus* (Hamburg: Froben, 1614)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=elvDs7yW6sEC>, accessed 15 February 2016
- Cooke, James, *Mellificium Chirurgiae, or the Marrow of Many Good Authors, wherein is briefly and faithfully handled the Art of Chirurgery* (London, Samuel Cartwright, 1648).
- Cotta, John, *A Short Discoverie of Severall Sorts of Ignorant and Unconsiderate Practisers of Physicke in England* (London: John Barnes, 1619)
- Culpeper, Nicholas, *A Physical Directory: or, a Translation of the London Dispensatory made by the Colledge of Physicians of London* (London: Peter Cole, 1649)
- Draud, Georg, *Bibliotheca classica, sive catalogus officinalis* (Frankfurt: Pierre Kopf, 1611)  
 ———, *Bibliotheca classica, sive catalogus officinalis* (Frankfurt: Balthazar Ostern, 1625)
- Gesner, Conrad, *Historiae animalium liber 1* (Zurich, Frosch, 1551)
- Hall, John, *Select Observations on English Bodies: or, Cures both Empiricall and Historicall performed upon very eminent Persons on desperate Diseases*, trans. and ed. by James Cooke, 1st edn (London: John Sherley, 1657)  
 ———, *Select Observations on English Bodies of Eminent Persons in Desperate Diseases ... to which is now added, an hundred like Counsels and Advices, for several Honourable Persons: by the same author*, trans. and ed. by James Cooke, 2nd edn (London: Benjamin Shirley, 1679)
- Lauremberg, Peter, *Laurus delphica: seu consilium quo describitur methodus perfacilis ad medicinam* (Leiden: Johannes Maire, 1621) <https://books.google.co.uk/books?id=xhRmAAAACAAJ>, accessed 15 February 2016
- Lecoq, Pascal, *Bibliotheca Medica sive Catalogus illorum, qui ex Professo Artem Medicam in Hunc Usque Annum Scriptis Illustrarunt* (Basel: Conrad Waldkirch, 1590)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=mMGaNuKfC38C>, accessed 10 August 2015
- Read, Alexander, *The Chirurgical Lectures of Tumors and Ulcers Delivered on Tusedays as Appointed* (London: Francis Constable, 1635)  
[http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx\\_ver=Z39.88-2003&res\\_id=xri:eebo&rft\\_id=xri:eebo:citation:99850908](http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?ctx_ver=Z39.88-2003&res_id=xri:eebo&rft_id=xri:eebo:citation:99850908), accessed 25 January 2016
- Schenk von Grafenberg, Johannes, *Observationum medicarum, rararum, novarum, admirabilium, et monstrosum, tomus unus (tomus alter)* (Frankfurt: Rhodius, 1600).



- Sennert, Daniel, *Institutionum Medicinae Libri V*, 2nd edn  
(Wittenberg: Zacharia Schurer, 1620)  
<http://books.google.com/book?id=qhtAAAAcAAJ>, accessed  
14 February 2016
- , *Opera Omnia ... Tomus I* (Paris: Apud Societatem, 1631)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=m8tuWGj-kUMC>, accessed  
14 February 2016
- Turner, William, *The First and Second Partes of the Herball ... set out  
with the Names of the Herbes* (Birchmann: Cologne, 1548)  
Second Part, f. 16v

## **Books 1700 and Later**

- Barnard, John, and D.F. McKenzie (eds), *The Cambridge History of  
the Book in Britain, Vol.4 1557-1695* (Cambridge: Cambridge  
University Press, 1998)
- Barnard, John, and Maureen Bell, 'The English Provinces', in  
Barnard and McKenzie (eds), *The Cambridge History of the  
Book in Britain*, pp. 665-686
- Beier, Lucinda McCray, *Sufferers and Healers: the Experience of  
Illness in Seventeenth-century England*, (London and New York:  
Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1987)
- Besson, Alain, 'Private Medical Libraries', in Alain Besson (ed.)  
*Thornton's Medical Books, Libraries and Collectors: a Study of  
Bibliography and the Book Trade in Relation to the Medical  
Sciences*, 3rd edition (Ashgate: Aldershot, 1990) pp. 267-299
- Bodleian Library, *The First Printed Catalogue of the Bodleian Library  
1605 and a facsimile* (Oxford: Clarendon, 1986)
- Brackett, Virginia, *Companion to British Poetry 17th and 18th  
Centuries* (New York: Facts on File, 2009)
- Brinkworth, E.R.C., *Shakespeare and the Bawdy Court of Stratford*  
(Chichester: Phillimore, 1972)
- Bryson, Bill, *Shakespeare: the World as a Stage* (London: Harper  
Perennial, 2008)
- Bylebyl, Jerome J., 'Teaching Methodus Medendi in the  
Renaissance', in Fridolf Kudlein and Richard J. Durling (eds),  
*Galen's Method of Healing: Proceedings of the 1982 Galen  
Symposium* (Brill: Leiden, 1991), pp. 157-171
- Calendar of the State Papers relating to Ireland of the Reign of  
Elizabeth, 1600, March-October*, Atkinson, E.G. (ed), (London:  
HMSO, 1903) p. 200,  
<https://archive.org/details/1905calendarofstatep10greauoft>  
[accessed 4 February 2016]
- Carpenter, Kenneth, *The History of Scurvy and Vitamin C*  
(Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 1988)
- Churchill, Wendy, *Female Patients in Early Modern Britain* (Ashgate:  
Farnham, 2012)
- Church of England, *The Book of Common Prayer* (Collins: London,  
1968)
- Clarke, Basil, *Mental Disorder in Earlier Britain: Exploratory Studies*  
(Cardiff: University of Wales Press, 1975)
- Cook, Harold, *Decline and Fall of the Old Medical Regime in Stuart  
London* (Ithaca NY: Cornell University Press, 1986)

- Debus, Allen G., *The English Paracelsians* (New York: Franklin Watts, 1966)
- Dewhurst, Kenneth, *Willis's Oxford Casebook 1650-52*, (Oxford: Sandford Publications, Oxford, 1981)
- Doyal, Lesley, Sarah Payne and Ailsa Cameron, *Promoting Gender Equality in Health* (London: Equal Opportunities Commission, 2003)
- Earle, Peter, *The Making of the English Middle Class* (London: Methuen, 1989)
- Elmer, Peter 'Medicine, Religion, and the Puritan Revolution', in Roger French and Andrew Wear (eds), *The Medical Revolution of the Seventeenth Century* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1989) pp. 10-45
- Fehrenbach, Robert *et al* (eds), *Private Libraries in Renaissance England: a Collection and Catalogue of Tudor and Stuart Book-lists*, vols I to VIII (various cities and publishers, 1982-2014)
- Fissell, Mary E., 'The Marketplace of Print', in Jenner and Wallis (eds), *Medicine and the Market*, pp. 108-132
- Furdell, Elizabeth Lane, *Publishing and Medicine in Early Modern England* (University of Rochester Press: New York, 2002)
- (ed.), *Textual Healing: Essays on Medieval and Early Modern Medicine* (Leiden: Brill, 2005)
- Gunnoe, Charles, and Jole Shackelford, 'Johannes Crato von Krafftheim (1519-1585): Imperial Physician, Irenicist and anti-Paracelsian', in Marjorie Plummer and Robin Barnes (eds), *Ideas and Cultural Margins in Early Modern Germany*, (Farnham: Ashgate, 2009) pp. 201-216
- Howe, George, and John Grover Beard, *Latin for Pharmacists* (Philadelphia: P.Blakiston's Son and Co., 1916; repr. Kessinger Legacy Reprints, Whitefish MT, 2009) p. 74.
- Hunter, Michael, *Editing Early Modern Texts* (Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2009)
- Jenner, Mark, and Patrick Wallis (eds), *Medicine and the Market in England and its Colonies, c.1450-c.1850* (Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2007)
- , 'The Medical Marketplace', in Jenner and Wallis (eds), *Medicine and the Market*, pp. 1-23
- Johnston, Ian, *Galen: On Diseases and Symptoms* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 2006.
- Jones, Peter Murray, 'Book Ownership And The Lay Culture Of Medicine', in Hilary Marland and Margaret Pelling (eds), *The Task of Healing: Medicine, Religion and Gender in England and the Netherlands 1450-1800*, (Erasmus: Rotterdam, 1996) pp. 49-68
- , 'Medical Libraries and Medical Latin 1400-1700', in Wouter Bracke and Herwig Deumens (eds), *Medical Latin from the Late Middle Ages to the Eighteenth Century* (Koninklijke Academie voor Geneeskunde van België: Brussels, 2000) pp. 115-135
- , 'Medical Libraries', in Leedham-Green and Webber (eds), *The Cambridge History of Libraries*, pp. 461-471
- Joseph, Harriet, *Shakespeare's Son-in-law: John Hall, Man and Physician*, 2nd edn (Hamden CT: Archon Books, 1976)
- Kassell, Lauren, *Medicine and Magic in Elizabethan London* (Oxford: Clarendon, 2005)

- Keller, Paul, *Statistical Process Control Demystified* (New York, London, McGraw Hill, 2011)
- Kiessling, Nicolas, *The Library of Robert Burton* (Oxford: Oxford Bibliographic Society, 1988)
- Kudlein, Fridolf, and Richard J. Durling (eds), *Galen's Method of Healing: Proceedings of the 1982 Galen Symposium* (Brill: Leiden, 1991)
- Lane, Joan, *John Hall and his patients: the medical practice of Shakespeare's son-in-law*, with a medical commentary by Melvin Earles, (Stratford upon Avon: Shakespeare Birthplace Trust, 1996)
- Leedham-Green, Elizabeth, *Books in Cambridge Inventories: Book Lists from Vice-Chancellor's Court Probate Inventories in the Tudor and Stuart Periods*, 2 vols (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1986)
- Leedham-Green, Elizabeth, and Teresa Webber (eds), *The Cambridge History of Libraries in Britain and Ireland, Vol. 1 to 1640* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2006)
- Leong, Elaine, and Sarah Pennell, 'Recipe Collections and the Currency of Medical Knowledge in the Early Modern "Marketplace"', in Jenner and Wallis (eds), *Medicine and the Market*, pp. 137-140
- Leong, Elaine, and Alisha Rankin (eds), *Secrets and Knowledge in Medicine and Science, 1500-1800* (Ashgate: Farnham, 2011)
- Levi, Giovanni, 'On Microhistory', in Peter Burke (ed.), *New Perspectives on Historical Writing*, 2nd ed. (Cambridge: Polity, 2001) pp. 97-119
- Lindemann, Mary, *Medicine and Society in Early Modern Europe*, 2nd edn (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 2010)
- Lindley, Walter, *Dr John Hall: Shakespeare's Son-in-law*, reprinted from the Medical Record May 20 1916 (William Wood: New York, 1916)
- Locke, John, *Drafts for the Essay Concerning Human Understanding, and Other Philosophical Writings*, Vol. 1, edited by Peter H. Nidditch and G.A.J. Rogers (Oxford: Clarendon, 1990)
- MacDonald, Michael, *Mystical Bedlam: Madness, Anxiety and Healing in Seventeenth-Century England* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983)
- MacGregor, Neil, *Shakespeare's Restless World* (Allen Lane: London, 2012)
- Maclean, Ian, *Logic, Signs and Nature in the Renaissance: the Case of Learned Medicine* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2007)
- Malone, Edmond, *The Plays and Poems of William Shakespeare ... comprehending a life of the poet*, Vol.II (London: n. pub., 1821)
- Marcham, Frank, *William Shakespeare and his Daughter Susanna* (London: Grafton, 1931)
- Marland, Hilary, and Margaret Pelling (eds), *The Task of Healing: Medicine, Religion and Gender in England and the Netherlands 1450-1800*, (Erasmus: Rotterdam, 1996)
- Marshall, Peter, *Reformation England 1480-1642* (London: Bloomsbury Academic, 2012)

- McKenzie, Donald Francis, and John Barnard, *The Cambridge History of the Book in Britain*, Vol. 4 (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1998)
- Mitchell, C.M., *The Shakespeare Circle: A life of Dr. John Hall* (Birmingham: Cornish, 1946)
- Morrison, Fynes, *An History of Ireland from the year 1599 to 1603, to which is added a Description of Ireland*, Vol. I (Dublin: George Ewing, 1735)  
<http://www.archive.org/stream/anhistoricalyirelan00morygoog#page/n106/mode/2up> [accessed 4 February 2016]
- Nagy, Doreen Evenden, *Popular Medicine in Seventeenth Century England* (Bowling Green OH: Bowling Green State Popular Press, 1988)
- Nance, Brian, *Turquet de Mayerne as Baroque Physician: the Art of Medical Portraiture* (Rodopi: Amsterdam and New York, 2001)
- , 'Wondrous Experience As Text: Valleriola and the *Observationes Medicinales*' in Furdell (ed.), *Textual Healing*, pp. 108-118
- Newton, Hannah, *The Sick Child in Early Modern England, 1580-1720* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2014)
- Nutton, Vivian, 'Pieter van Foreest and the Plagues of Europe: some Observations on the *Observationes*', in H.L. Houtzager (ed.), *Pieter van Foreest, een hollands medicus in de zestiende eeuw* (Amsterdam and Atlanta GA: Rodopi, 1989) pp. 27-29
- Pelling, Margaret, *The Common Lot: Sicknes, Medical Occupations and the Urban Poor in Early Modern England* (London: Longman, 1998)
- , *Medical Conflicts in Early Modern London* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2003)
- Pettigrew, Todd. "'Profitable unto the Vulgar': the Case and Cases of John Cotta's *Short Discoverie*", in Furdell (ed.), pp. 115-137.
- Pomata, Gianna, 'Praxis Historialis: the Uses of *Historia* in Early Modern Medicine', in Gianna Pomata and Nancy Siraisi (eds), *Historia: Empiricism and Erudition in Early Modern Europe* (Cambridge MA: MIT Press, 2005) pp. 105-146
- Poynter, F.N.L., and W.J. Bishop, *A Seventeenth-century Doctor and his Patients: John Symcotts, 1592? – 1662*, Publications of the Bedfordshire Historical Record Society Vol. XXXI (Streatley: Bedfordshire Historical Record Society, 1951)
- Porter, Roy, *The Greatest Benefit to Mankind: a Medical History of Humanity from Antiquity to the Present* (London: Harper Collins, 1997)
- Raach, John, *A Directory of English Country Physicians 1603-1643* (Dawsons: London, 1962)
- Read, Sarah, *Menstruation and the Female Body in Early Modern England* (London: Palgrave Macmillan, 2013)
- Rolleston, Humphrey Davy, *The Cambridge Medical School: a Biographical History* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press: 1932)
- Roberts, Julian, 'The Latin Trade', in Barnard and McKenzie (eds), *The Cambridge History of the Book in Britain*, pp. 141-173.
- The Correspondence of Joseph Justus Scaliger*, edited by Paul Botley and Dirk van Miert, Vol. 1 (Geneva: Librairie Droz, 2012)

- Sharp, James, *The Bewitching of Anne Gunter* (New York: Routledge, 2001)
- Siraisi, Nancy, *Medieval and Early Renaissance Medicine: an Introduction to Knowledge and Practice* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1990)
- , *The Clock and the Mirror: Girolamo Cardano and Renaissance Medicine* (Princeton NJ: Princeton University Press, 1997)
- , *History, Medicine, and the Traditions of Renaissance Learning* (University of Michigan Press: Ann Arbor, 2007)
- , *Communities of Learned Experience: Epistolary Medicine in the Renaissance* (Baltimore MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 2013)
- Slack, Paul, 'Mirrors of Health and Treasures of Poor Men: the Uses of the Vernacular Medical Literature of Tudor England', in Charles Webster (ed), *Health, Medicine and Mortality in the Sixteenth Century* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1979) pp. 237-273
- Spurling, Hilary, *Elinor Fettiplace's Receipt Book* (Harmondsworth: Penguin Books, 1987)
- Stewart, Alan, *Shakespeare's Letters* (Oxford: Oxford University Press: 2008)
- The Proprietors, *A New and General Biographical Dictionary*, Vol.5 (The Proprietors: London, 1795)  
<http://books.google.com/books?id=yqADAAAAYAAJ> [accessed 5 February 2016]
- Traister, Barbara Howard, *The Notorious Astrological Physician of London: Works and Days of Simon Forman* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2001)
- Wallis, Patrick, 'Competition and Cooperation in the Early Modern Medical Economy', in Jenner and Wallis (eds), *Medicine and the Market*, pp. 47-68.
- Wear, Andrew, 'Epistemology and Learned Medicine in Early Modern England', in Don Bates (ed.), *Knowledge and the Scholarly Medical Traditions* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1995)
- , 'Religious Beliefs in Early Modern England', in Hilary Marland and Margaret Pelling (eds), *The Task of Healing: Medicine, Religion and Gender in England and the Netherlands, 1450-1800* (Rotterdam: Erasmus Publishing, 1996) pp. 145-16
- , *Knowledge and Practice in English Medicine, 1550-1680* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000)
- Webster, Charles (ed.), *Health, Medicine And Mortality in the Sixteenth Century* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1979)
- Wells, Greg, 'His Son-in-law John Hall', in Paul Edmondson and Stanley Wells (eds), *The Shakespeare Circle: An Alternative Biography* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2015)
- Wills, James (ed.), *Lives of Illustrious and Distinguished Irishmen from the Earliest Times to the Present Period, Vol. II Part I* (Dublin: MacGregor, Poulson, 1840)  
<https://archive.org/details/livesofillustrio02will> [accessed 4 February 2016]

## Journal Articles

- Anon, *Bristol Medical Chirurgical Journal*, September 1891, quoted in *Shakespeariana* (New York: Shakespeare Society of New York, 1892) pp. 190-193, [http://www.forgottenbooks.com/books/Shakespeariana\\_1000051080](http://www.forgottenbooks.com/books/Shakespeariana_1000051080), accessed 11 May 2016
- Arrizabalaga, Jon, 'Medical Ideals in the Sephardic Diaspora: Rodrigo de Castro's Portrait of the Perfect Physician in Early Seventeenth-century Hamburg', *Medical History Supplement*, 29 (2009) 107-124
- Andrews, Jonathan, 'Health, Medicine and Disease in the Eighteenth Century', *Journal for Eighteenth Century Studies*, 34 (2011), 503-515
- Banks, Ian, 'No Man's Land: Men, Illness and the NHS', *BMJ*, 323 (2001) 1058-1060
- Barton, Nicholas, 'Physician of Stratford, Dr John Hall: his life, times and patients', *Journal of Medical Biography*, 8 (2000) 8-15
- Betts, Tim, and Hannah Betts, 'John Hall and his Epileptic Patients: Epilepsy Management in Early Seventeenth Century England', *Seizure*, 7 (1998) 411-414;
- Bonzol, Judith, 'The Medical diagnosis of Demonic Possession in an Early Modern English Community', *Parergon*, 26 (2009) 115-140
- Chambers, Andrew, 'Reading, the Godly, and Self-writing in England, circa 1580-1720', *The Journal of British Studies*, 46 (2007) 797-798
- Cohen, R.A., 'Documents concerning James Cooke, Surgeon, of Warwick', *Medical History*, 1 (1957) 168-173
- Copeman, P.M.W, and W.S.C. Copeman, 'Dermatology in Tudor and Early Stuart England', *British Journal of Dermatology* 81 (1969) 303-310
- Cooter, Roger, 'After Death/After-'Life': The Social History of Medicine in Post-Postmodernity', *Social History of Medicine*, 20 (2007) 441-464
- De Renzi, Silvia, 'A Career in Manuscripts: Genres and Purposes of a Physician's Writing in Rome, 1600-1630', *Italian Studies*, 66 (2011) 234-248
- Earles, M.P., 'The Medical Practice of John Hall', *Pharmaceutical Historian*, 27 (1997) 10-12
- Evans, Jennifer, and Sara Read, "'Before Midnight she had Miscarried": Women, Men and Miscarriage in Early Modern England', *Journal of Family History*, 40 (2015) 3-23
- Fernandez-Flores, Angel, 'On the Practice of John Hall in the field of Dermatology in the Seventeenth Century', *Clinics in Dermatology*, 28 (2010) 356-363
- French, H.R., 'Social status, Localism and the "Middle Sort of People" in England 1620-1750', *Past and Present*, 166 (2000) 66-99
- Grafton, Anthony, 'Is the History of Reading a Marginal Enterprise?', *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of America*, 91 (1997) 139-157

- Gray, Irvine, 'Shakespeare's Son-in-law: the Antecedents of Doctor John Hall', *Genealogists' Magazine*, 7 (1936) 344-354
- Harkness, D.E., 'A View from the Streets: Women and Medical Work in Elizabethan England', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 82 (2008) 52-85
- Harley, David, 'James Hart of Northampton and the Calvinist Critique of Priest-Physicians: an unpublished Polemic of the early 1620s', *Medical History*, 42 (1998) 362-386
- Howells, John, and M.L. Osborn, 'The Incidence of Emotional Disorder in a Seventeenth-century Medical Practice', *Medical History*, 14 (1970) 192-198
- Hughes, Ann, 'Religion and Society in Stratford-upon-Avon, 1619-1638', *Midland History* 19 (1994) 58-84
- Hughes, R. Elwyn, 'The Rise and Fall of the "Antiscorbutics": Some Notes on the Traditional Cures for "Land Scurvy"', *Medical History* 34 (1990) 52-64
- Hunter, Michael, 'How to Edit a Seventeenth-century Manuscript', *The Seventeenth Century*, 10 (1995) 277-310
- Jones, V.A., 'John Hall: Seventeenth-century Physician of Stratford-upon-Avon', *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine*, 70 (1977) 709-714
- Kassell, Lauren 'Casebooks in Early Modern England: Medicine, Astrology and Written Records', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 88 (2014) 595-625
- Leftwich, R.W., 'Shakespeare's Medical Son-in-law, John Hall', *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine: Session 1917-8, Supplement*, 11 (1918) 77-78
- Leong, Elaine, 'Making Medicine in the Early Modern Household', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 82 (2008) 145-168.
- Levin, B., 'Visiting the Home of an Elizabethan Physician', *Journal of the American Medical Women's Association*, 16 (1961) 151-152
- Levy, F.J., 'How information Spread among the Gentry, 1550-1640', *Journal of British Studies*, 21 (1982) 11-34
- Maclean, Ian, 'The Medical Republic Of Letters Before the Thirty Years War', *Intellectual History Review*, 18 (2008) 15-30
- Moschcowitz, Eli, 'Dr John Hall: Shakespeare's Son-in-law', *Bulletin of the Johns Hopkins Hospital*, 19 (1918) 148-152
- Newton, Hannah, "'Nature Concocts and Expels": the Agents and Processes of Recovery from Disease in Early Modern England', *Social History of Medicine*, 28 (2015) 465-486
- Nutton, Vivian, 'Books, Printing and Medicine in the Renaissance', *Medica nei Secoli*, 17 (2005) 421-442
- O'Malley, C.D., 'Tudor Medicine and Biology', *Huntingdon Library Quarterly*, 32 (1968) 1-27
- Palladino, Paolo, 'And the Answer is ... 42', *Social History of Medicine*, 13 (2000) 147-152
- Pearce, J.M.S., 'Migraine treated by Shakespeare's Son-in-law Dr John Hall', *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery and Psychiatry*, 75 (2004) 987
- , 'Dr John Hall (1575-1635) and Shakespeare's Medicine' *Journal of Medical Biography*, 14 (2006) 187-191
- Pearson, David, 'The English Private Library in the Seventeenth Century', *Library*, 4th ser., 13 (2012) 379-399

- Pomata, Gianna, 'Sharing Cases: The *Observationes* in Early Modern Medicine', *Early Science and Medicine*, 15 (2010) 193-236
- Porter, Roy, 'The Patient's View: Doing History from Below', *Theory and Society*, 14 (1985) 175-98
- Raach, John, 'A Seventeenth-century English Medical License', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 13 (1943) 210-216
- Raach, John, 'English Medical Licensing in the Early Seventeenth Century', *Yale Journal of Biology and Medicine*, 16 (1944) 267-268
- Rabbie, E., 'Editing Neo-Latin Texts', *Editio*, 10 (1996) 25-48
- Richardson, Robert G., 'Dr John Hall, Shakespeare's Son-in-law: a vignette of Elizabethan Medicine', *Practitioner* 225 (1981) 593-595
- Sangwine, E., 'Private Libraries Of Tudor Doctors' *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences*, 33 (1978) 167-184.
- Scarlett, E.P., 'Shakespeare's Son-in-law: Dr John Hall', *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 43 (1940) 482-488
- Scott-Warren, Jason, 'News, Sociability and Bookbuying in Early Modern England: the Letters of Sir Thomas Cornwallis', *Library*, 4th ser., 1 (2000) 381-402
- Siraisi, Nancy, 'Cardano and the Art of Medical Narrative', *Journal of the History of Ideas*, 52 (1991) 581-602
- , 'Medicine, 1450-1620, and the History of Science', *Isis*, 103 (2012) 491-514
- Stein, Claudia, 'The Meaning of Signs: Diagnosing the French Pox in Early Modern Augsburg', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 80 (2006) 617-648
- Stevenson, Lloyd G., '“New Diseases” in the Seventeenth Century', *Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 39 (1965) 1-21
- T.E.C., 'A Sixteenth-century Cure for an English Infant Afflicted with a Fever and Worms', *Paediatrics*, 54 (1974) 577;
- Williams, Katherine, 'Hysteria in Seventeenth-century Case Records and Unpublished Manuscripts', *History of Psychiatry*, 1 (1990) 383-401
- Wang, Yingying, Kate Hunt, Irwin Nazareth, Nick Freemantle, Irene Peterson, 'Do Men Consult less than Women? An Analysis of Routinely Collected UK General Practice Data', *BMJ*, 2013, <http://bmjopen.bmj.com,10.1136/bmjopen-2013-003320>, accessed 2 May 2015

## UNPUBLISHED PAPERS AND THESES

- Sawyer, Ronald, 'Patients, Healers and Disease in the Southeast Midlands, 1597-1634' (unpublished PhD thesis, University of Wisconsin, Madison WI, 1986)

## WORLD WIDE WEB SOURCES

- Coste, Joël, 'Practical Medicine and its Literary Genres in France in the early Modern Period',



[http://www.biusante.parisdescartes.fr/histmed/medica/medpratique\\_eng.htm](http://www.biusante.parisdescartes.fr/histmed/medica/medpratique_eng.htm), March 2008, accessed 10 February 2016

Kassell, Lauren, et al, *The Casebooks Project: a Digital Edition of Simon Forman and Richard Napier's Medical Records 1596-1634*, <<http://www.magicanmedicine.hps.cam.ac.uk/>>, accessed 7 January 2016

Sir George Carewe to Viscount Cranborne, [?1605, before May 4], Two letters – (1) in favour of Captain Saxey and Captain Bassett; <https://www.british-history.ac.uk/cal-cecil-papers/vol17/pp167-206>, accessed 4 February 2016